SECOND LATIN BOOK
FOR
JUNIOR HIGH SCHOOLS

SANFORD - SCOTT

S·P·Q·R



TEMPLE OF JUPITER (A RESTORATION)

Lake Classical Series

A SECOND LATIN BOOK

FOR

JUNIOR HIGH SCHOOLS

BY

FREDERICK WARREN SANFORD

ASSOCIATE PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY OF NEBRASKA

AND

HARRY FLETCHER SCOTT

INSTRUCTOR IN LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY HIGH SCHOOL OF CHICAGO

SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY

CHICAGO NEW YORK

This book is dedicated to the
memory of
HAROLD W. JOHNSTON
by the authors
who count it an honor to have been
numbered among his pupils

PREFACE

When the First Latin Book for Junior High Schools was published, promisé of a second book was made. This volume is in fulfillment of that promise.

The First Book leads the pupil by easy stages through the forms of declension and conjugation to which the book is restricted and presents the more important case constructions suitable to the capacities of young students. It is the chief purpose of the Second Book to complete the presentation of declension and conjugation and to furnish an abundance of simple reading matter. Children demand an early introduction to connected discourse, which is the purpose of language. It is important that their earlier Latin readings shall be well within their powers. Not all difficulties can be eliminated. Difficulties are inherent in a highly inflected language. Not all should be eliminated. But the difficulties should be surmountable, with a view to the pupil's legitimate satisfaction from day to day. It happens that no Latin author saw fit to write simple Latin stories for children. The best substitute for such material seems to be a simplified form of narrative based more or less directly on ancient authors. This volume aims to serve the purpose indicated. Its plan is as follows:

I. Ten review lessons are provided, covering the principles of case construction presented in the First Book. These lessons follow the text of Caesar, pp. 93 ff., and they may be omitted by teachers who prefer to do so. But many teachers will find it worth while to spend the time necessary to cover them. Summer vacations have a well-known power to dim the knowledge acquired the preceding year.

II. The First Book left the subjunctive mood for presentation in the Second Book. In order that pupils may have the opportunity to apply in the most effective way knowl-

edge already gained before attacking new modal forms and uses, a number of pages of simple reading matter have been provided. These consist of the stories of Perseus and Hercules from Ritchie's *Fabulae Faciles*, a book published in England, but well known and much used in this country. The Latin is simple, the stories are interestingly told, the vocabulary is well selected. As here presented, neither story contains subjunctives, a fact which has made alterations necessary in certain parts of the Hercules.

III. The inflections and principles of syntax which were postponed from the first book are next given in a series of thirty-five lessons. The number of subjunctive constructions has been kept within reasonable limits. If pupils carry Latin but two years, elaborate study of the subjunctive is inappropriate. If they go further, other uses are best taken up in connection with the reading of more advanced Latin. These lessons include a number of case uses, together with those pronouns, adjectives, and irregular verbs which are commonly given in the first year's work of the four year high school, but which do not seem appropriate for the first year of the Junior High School, and are therefore omitted from the First Book of this series.

IV. A third story from *Fabulae Faciles* follows, that of the Argonauts. Only minor changes from the original form are made in this story. The pupil here finds subjunctive constructions amply illustrated.

V. The stories from Roman history contain, first of all, legends of early Rome recounted in the first book of Livy. They are given in a greatly simplified form in respect to vocabulary, constructions, sentence length, and order of words. The same ground was covered by the French teacher Lhomond in the eighteenth century. In this book, however, all the stories of the kings and several of the earlier biographical sketches of notables of the republic have been written anew from the sources without reference to Lhomond's work and in

much simpler form than his sketches. The later biographies have been adapted from his *Urbis Romae Viri Illustres*, considerably simplified and shortened.

VI. The reading matter concludes with the first book of Caesar's Gallic War in simplified form. In altering the text the authors have intended to smooth away the more serious difficulties and yet to leave the essential Caesarean qualities intact. Involved sentences have been simplified by being broken up into shorter sentences. All but very brief passages in indirect discourse have been converted to the direct form. The second part of the book, beginning with the thirtieth chapter, and weighted in the original text with indirect discourse, is thus reduced to a fairly easy narrative. It is one of the most attractive portions of the Gallic War. Its graphic account of Caesar's dealings with the German king Ariovistus, who had come into Alsace to stay, but did not stay, commands the unflagging attention of any pupil, if the difficulties of the language are not beyond his powers of mastery. The authors hope that the reading of a portion of Caesar's narrative in simplified form may serve to give some knowledge of the character of this work which has so long held its place among the masterpieces of prose narrative.

Even without the Caesar, it is the belief of the authors that the book affords sufficient reading matter for the year. With the extra amount offered, the teacher has the opportunity to make combinations of selections to suit the needs and capacities of his pupils.

VII. To the end of the Roman stories the text is furnished with page vocabularies, a feature of long standing in the Lake Classical Series. At the place of first occurrence the definition of each word, except proper nouns and adjectives, is presented on the same page with the text. This plan causes a saving of the pupil's time and makes possible effective vocabulary drill. In making up this page vocabulary, however, the vocabulary of the First Book has not been repeated, nor

have the words in the vocabularies of the thirty-five lessons been repeated in the page vocabularies attached to the stories following the Lessons. All words, including those of the First Book and of the thirty-five Lessons in this book, and all proper nouns and adjectives, are to be found in the final vocabulary.

VIII. Exercises in composition are given, one for each week of the time likely to be available after the Lessons are completed. An English-Latin vocabulary accompanies the composition section.

IX. In keeping with the present practice in high-school textbooks, a Grammatical Appendix displays the declensions and conjugations and the leading principles of syntax for convenient reference. The authors believe that it contains all the grammatical material essential at this stage of the pupil's studies.

X. A capable teacher finds in each day's reading lesson ample material for the study of English derivatives. As a supplement to such work, this book contains connected lists of English derivatives from Latin to be found in the terminologies of elementary science, grammar, geography, and elementary mathematics. No other device serves better to demonstrate the debt that our own language owes to Latin.

XI. In the preparation of notes the authors have intended not to smother the student with unnecessary erudition. The reading matter of the book is not difficult. The notes, accordingly, are brief. The aim has been to give apt and typical translations, stimulating suggestions, and where necessary, adequate explanations.

As in the First Book, consonant *i* has been represented by *j*. The uncontracted genitive of nouns in *-ius* and *-ium* has also been used. In *expecto*, *existo*, and other compounds of *ex* with words beginning with *s*, the later spelling, without *s*, has been employed. The advantage of the use of these forms for pupils who take but two years of Latin is obvious,

and for others the change to slightly different forms, if necessary, need cause no difficulty.

Pupils who have completed the work presented in the First and Second Latin Books for Junior High Schools will be prepared to read Caesar, Cicero, and Vergil with much greater ease and pleasure than those who have been limited to the preparation afforded by the first year work of the four-year course. In many cases it will perhaps be found wise to give a half year less than is usually assigned to Caesar and Cicero. The adjustment of the course, however, will depend largely upon the general plan of the individual school.

CONTENTS

PART III

PART IV

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

abbr.,	abbreviation
abl.,	ablative
acc.,	accusative
adj.,	adjective
adv.,	adverb
Arg.,	Argonauts
compar.,	comparative
conj.,	conjunction
contr.,	contracted
correl.,	correlative
dat.,	dative
defect.,	defective
dem.,	demonstrative
dep.,	deponent
dim.,	diminutive
distrib.,	distributive
e.g.,	*exemplī grātiā*, for example
f.,	feminine
ff.,	following
freq.,	frequentative
gen.,	genitive
Her.,	Hercules
i.e.,	*id est*, that is
imper.,	imperative
impers.,	impersonal
indecl.,	indeclinable
indef.,	indefinite
indic.,	indicative
intens.,	intensive
interj.,	interjection
interrog.,	interrogative
intr.,	intransitive
l.,	line
lit.,	literally
m.,	masculine
n.,	neuter
nom.,	nominative
num.,	numeral
p.,	past
part.,	participle
pass.,	passive
Per.,	Perseus
pf., perf.,	perfect
pers.,	personal
pl.,	plural
possess.,	possessive
pr.,	present
prep.,	preposition
pron.,	pronoun
pronom.,	pronominal
R.,	Roman Stories
rel.,	relative
sg., sing.,	singular
subjv.,	subjunctive
subst.,	substantive
superl.,	superlative
tr.,	transitive
voc.,	vocative

PERSEUS

Perseus and his mother were set adrift on the sea by Acrisius, king of Argos, the grandfather of Perseus, because an oracle had declared that Acrisius would some day perish at the hands of his grandson.

Jupiter, however, saved the mother and child, bringing them to the Island of Seriphus, where they were kindly received by Polydectes, the king.

When Perseus reached manhood he was ordered by Polydectes to bring him the head of Medusa, an undertaking which was likely to prove fatal. But Apollo and Minerva directed him on his journey and gave him a special equipment for his task. With the aid thus afforded, he accomplished the perilous exploit in safety and escaped from the companions of Medusa, who sought to kill him. On his way back he rescued Andromeda, daughter of Cepheus, the king of the Ethiopians, who was about to be devoured by a sea serpent. He married Andromeda, and soon after returned with her to the island from which he had been sent by the crafty Polydectes. Finding that his mother had taken refuge from the king, he turned the latter into stone through the magic power of the head of Medusa. Afterward, while taking part in athletic games he accidentally killed his grandfather, Acrisius, thus fulfilling the oracle which Acrisius had vainly sought to escape.

A SECOND LATIN BOOK
FOR
JUNIOR HIGH SCHOOLS

PART I

THE STORY OF PERSEUS

1. Set Adrift

Haec nārrantur ā poētīs dē Perseō. Perseus fīlius erat Jovis, maximī deōrum. Avus ejus Ācrisius appellābātur. Ācrisius volēbat Perseum, nepōtem suum, necāre; nam propter ōrāculum puerum timēbat. Comprehendit igitur Perseum, adhūc īnfantem, et cum mātre in arcā ligneā inclūsit. Tum arcam ipsam in mare conjēcit. Danaē, Perseī māter, magnopere territa est; tempestās enim magna mare turbābat. Perseus autem in sinū mātris dormiēbat.

---

1. **Haec,** *these things, i.e.*, the following stories. This substantive use of the neuter plural of *hic* is very common.

2. **Ācrisius:** predicate nominative after the passive of a verb of calling.

6. **Danaē:** a Greek name, with genitive ending in *-ēs*, acc. in *-ēn*.

7. **enim:** postpositive, *i.e.*, it stands after one or more words of its sentence; *nam* (see l. 3) regularly stands first in a sentence. Another postpositive word is *autem*, l. 8.

In section 1 point out two appositives; an ablative of agent.

---

2. avus, -ī, *m.*, grandfather.

3. nepōs, -ōtis, *m.*, grandson, nephew.

4. ōrāculum, -ī, *n.* [**ōrō**], oracle.

com-prehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum, *tr.*, seize, arrest.

5. ad-hūc, *adv.*, until now, as yet.

īn-fāns, *gen.* **-fantis,** *adj.*, infant; *subst., m. and f.*, infant, babe.

arca, -ae, *f.*, chest, box.

ligneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, [**lignum**], of wood, wooden.

inclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, *tr.* [**in**+**claudō**], shut up, enclose.

6. conjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr.* [**com-**+**jaciō**], throw together; hurl, cast.

7. enim, *conj.* (*postpositive*), for.

turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**turba**], disturb, throw into confusion.

8. autem, *conj.*, but, on the other hand, however, furthermore.

sinus, -ūs, *m.*, a fold; bosom.

dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *intr.*, sleep.



JUPITER

2. Cast on an Island

Juppiter tamen haec omnia vīdit, et fīlium suum servāre cōnstituit. Fēcit igitur mare tranquillum, et arcam ad īnsulam Serīphum perdūxit. Hujus īnsulae Polydectēs tum rēx erat. Postquam arca ad lītus appulsa est, Danaē in harēnā quiētem capiēbat. Post breve tempus ā piscātōre quōdam reperta est, et ad domum rēgis Polydectis adducta est. Ille mātrem et puerum benignē excēpit, et sēdem tūtam in fīnibus suīs dedit. Danaē hoc dōnum libenter accēpit, et prō tantō beneficiō rēgī grātiās ēgit.

---

9. **tamen**: usually postpositive, but sometimes stands first in its clause; the same is true of *igitur*, l. 4.

10. **mare tranquillum**: two accusatives after a verb of making. One accusative may be an adjective, as here.

11. **Serīphum**: in apposition with *īnsulam*. We usually say in English "the island of," "the city of."

12. **Postquam**: with *postquam* and *ubi* the perfect is the tense most frequently employed. In translation, with the English equivalents "after" or "when," we sometimes employ the past perfect tense, sometimes the past.

13. **piscātōre quōdam**: the forms of *quīdam* sometimes precede and sometimes follow the word they modify.

16. **dedit**: *eīs*, dative of indirect object, is to be understood.

In section 2 point out a complementary infinitive; a dative of indirect object.

---

10. **tranquillus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, calm, still.

11. **per-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum,** *tr.*, lead through, lead, bring, conduct.

12. **appellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum,** *tr.* [**ad+pellō**], drive to, bring to; *with or without* **nāvem,** land, put in.

harēna (*sometimes spelled* **arēna**), **-ae,** *f.*, sand; shore, beach.

13. **quiēs, -ētis,** *f.*, rest; peace, quiet.

piscātor, -ōris, *m.* [**piscor,** to fish], fisherman.

14. **domus, -ūs,** (-ī), *f.*, home, house.

ad-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead to, conduct, bring; incite, induce.

15. **benignē,** *adv.* [**benignus**], kindly.

excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**ex+capiō**], take out, take up, catch; receive, entertain.

sēdēs, -is, *f.* [**sedeō**], seat, chair; residence, abode.

17. **grātia, -ae,** *f.* [**grātus**], favor, influence; gratitude, thanks, requital; **grātiās agere,** to express thanks; **grātiam referre,** to make requital, to requite; **grātiā** (*with gen.*), for the sake of.

3. Perseus Sent on His Travels

Perseus igitur multōs annōs ibi habitāvit, et cum mātre suā vītam ēgit beātam. At Polydectēs Danaēn magnopere amābat atque eam in mātrimōnium dūcere volēbat. Hoc tamen cōnsilium Perseō minimē grātum erat. Polydectēs igitur Perseum dīmittere cōnstituit. Tum juvenem ad sē vocāvit et haec dīxit: "Turpe est vītam hanc ignāvam agere; jam dūdum tū adulēscēns es; quousque hīc manēbis? Tempus est arma capere et virtūtem praestāre. Hinc abī, et caput Medūsae mihi refer."

---

18. **annōs**: accusative of duration of time.

21. **Perseō**: dependent on *grātum;* for the case see App. 50.

23. **haec**: used as in l. 1; with *dīxit, spoke as follows.*

agere: subject of *est;* an infinitive used as a noun is in the neuter gender; hence the predicate adjective, *turpe*, is neuter.

24. **jam dūdum es,** *you have long been;* with *jam dūdum* a present tense is translated by an English present perfect, an imperfect by an English past perfect; *jam dūdum erās* would mean *you had long been.*

25. **abī**: imperative of *abeō*. What is the imperative of *eō?*

26. **refer**: the present imperative of *ferō* and its compounds is irregular. See App. 34.

---

19. **beātus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, happy, prosperous.

20. **atque,** *conj.*, and also, and.

mātrimōnium, -ī, *n.* [**māter**], marriage; **in mātrimōnium dare,** give in marriage, arrange a marriage for; **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** marry.

21. **minimē,** *superl. adv.* [**minimus**], least, very little; by no means, not at all.

23 **vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** *tr.* [**vōx**], call, summon.

turpis, -e, *adj.*, unseemly, shameful, disgraceful.

ignāvus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-+gnāvus,** busy], inactive, cowardly.

24. **dūdum,** *adv.*, before, formerly; **jam dūdum,** this long time, a long time ago.

adulēscēns, adulēscentis, -ium, *adj.* [*pr. part.* of **adolēscō**], youthful; *subst.*, *m.*, a young man, a youth.

quo-usque, *adv.*, till when? how long?

25. **prae-stō, -stāre, -stitī, -stitum,** *intr. and tr.*, stand before; excel, be better; exhibit, show.

hinc, *adv.* [**hic**], from this place, hence.

ab-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.*, go away, depart.

26. **re-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum,** *tr.*, bear back, bring back; **pedem referre,** withdraw, retire, retreat; **grātiam referre,** requite.

4. Perseus Gets His Outfit

Perseus, ubi haec audīvit, ex īnsulā discessit et, postquam ad continentem vēnit, Medūsam quaesīvit. Diū frūstrā quaerēbat; nam nātūram locī ignōrābat. Tandem Apollō et Minerva viam dēmōnstrāvērunt. Prīmum ad Graeās, sorōrēs Medūsae, pervēnit. Ab hīs tālāria et galeam magicam accēpit. Apollō autem et Minerva falcem et speculum dedērunt. Tum postquam tālāria pedibus induit, in āera ascendit. Diū per āera volābat; tandem tamen ad eum locum vēnit ubi Medūsa cum cēterīs Gorgonibus habitābat. Gorgonēs autem mōnstra erant speciē horribilī; capita enim eārum serpentibus omnīnō contēcta erant; manūs etiam ex aere factae erant.

---

27. Perseus: in Latin, when the verbs of a principal and a subordinate clause express action by the same person or thing, the noun or pronoun used to denote the subject frequently stands before the subordinate clause.

haec, *this;* see note on *haec*, l. 23.

31. galeam magicam: this rendered the wearer invisible.

33. pedibus, *on his feet;* dative, used with the compound *induit*.

āera: a word of Greek origin, which retains its Greek accusative form.

36. speciē horribilī, *of horrible aspect*, ablative of description.

37. aere: from *aes*.

---

28. continēns, -entis, *f.* [**contineō**], continent, mainland.

frūstrā, *adv.*, in vain, to no purpose.

29. ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, not know, be unaware of.

tandem, *adv.*, at length, finally.

30. prīmum, *adv.* [**prīmus**], in the first place, first of all; **cum prīmum,** as soon as; **quam prīmum,** as soon as possible.

31. tālāria, -ium, *n. pl.*, winged sandals.

galea, -ae, *f.*, helmet.

magicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, magical, magic.

32. falx, falcis, *f.*, sickle.

speculum, -ī, *n.* [**speciō,** look], mirror.

33. induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtum, *tr.*, put on.

āēr, āeris, *m.*, the air.

35. cēterī, -ae, -a, *adj.*, *pl.*, the other, the rest of.

36. mōnstrum, -ī, *n.*, [**moneō**], a divine omen, portent; monster.

speciēs, -ēī, *f.*, appearance, aspect.

horribilis, -e, *adj.* [**horreō**], terrible, fearful, dreadful.

37. serpēns, *gen.* **-entis,** *f.* [*pr. part. of* **serpō,** crawl], serpent.

omnīnō, *adv.* [**omnis**], altogether, entirely, at all; only.

con-tegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *tr.*, cover.

aes, aeris, *n.*, copper, bronze.

5. The Gorgon's Head

Rēs erat difficillima abscīdere caput Gorgonis; ejus enim cōnspectū hominēs in saxum vertēbantur. Propter hanc causam Minerva illud speculum dederat. Perseus igitur tergum vertit, et in speculum īnspiciēbat; hōc modō ad locum vēnit ubi Medūsa dormiēbat. Tum falce suā caput ejus ūnō ictū abscīdit. Cēterae Gorgonēs statim ē somnō excitātae sunt et, ubi rem vīdērunt, īrā commōtae sunt. Arma rapuērunt, et Perseum occīdere volēbant; ille autem, dum fugit, galeam magicam induit et, ubi hoc fēcit, statim ē cōnspectū eārum ēvāsit.

---

40. vertēbantur: the Latin imperfect, like the English past, often expresses repeated or customary action.

42. speculum: ancient mirrors consisted of polished metal plates.

hōc modō: ablative of manner.

46. dum fugit, *while he fled, while fleeing;* when a *dum* clause denotes situation, it takes the present indicative, regardless of the tense of the principal verb.

In section 5 what is the subject of the first sentence? Account for the case of *ictū*, 43; for the tense of *fēcit*, 47. What different forces have the perfects *vertit, vēnit,* and the imperfects *īnspiciēbat, dormiēbat,* 42-43?

---

39. abscīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* **[abs+caedō]**, cut off.

40. cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.* **[cōnspiciō]**, sight, view.

vertō, -ere, vertī, versum, *tr.*, turn.

43. ictus, -ūs, *m.*, blow, stroke.

44. somnus, -ī, *m.*, sleep.

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, call out, rouse.

45. īra, -ae, *f.*, anger, wrath, ire.

com-moveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.*, move deeply, excite, arouse, alarm.

rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum, *tr.*, seize, carry off.

46. occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* **[ob+caedō]**, cut down, kill.

dum, *conj.*, while; until.

48. ē-vādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsum, *intr.*, come out, make one's way; escape.

---

6. The Sea Serpent

Post haec Perseus in fīnēs Aethiopum vēnit. Ibi Cēpheus quīdam illō tempore rēgnābat. Hic Neptūnum, maris deum,

---

49. Cēpheus quīdam, *a certain Cepheus,* or *a man named Cepheus.*

50. tempore: ablative of time.

Hic: a pronoun referring to Cepheus.



MINERVA

ōlim offenderat. Neptūnus autem mōnstrum saevissimum mīserat. Hoc cotīdiē ē marī veniēbat et hominēs dēvorābat. Ob hanc causam pavor animōs omnium occupāverat. Cēpheus igitur ōrāculum deī Hammōnis cōnsuluit, atque ā deō jussus est fīliam mōnstrō trādere. Ejus autem fīlia, nōmine Andromeda, virgō fōrmōsissima erat. Cēpheus, ubi haec audīvit, magnum dolōrem percēpit. Volēbat tamen cīvēs suōs ē tantō perīculō extrahere, atque ob eam causam cōnstituit imperāta Hammōnis facere.

---

52. marī: it should be remembered that neuter nouns with the genitive plural in *-ium* have the ending *-ī* in the ablative singular.

53. omnium, *of all* (*i.e.*, *men*); a substantive use of an adjective; compare the neuter *haec*, l. 23.

54. ōrāculum: the word may mean the seat of an oracle, as here, or the reply given by an oracle. The consultation of oracles sprang from the belief that information and advice could be obtained from certain divinities. Oracles were usually given by oral utterances of a priest or priestess in a state of real or pretended frenzy, or by signs. The temple (with its oracle) of the Egyptian god Hammon stood in an oasis of the Libyan desert. His oracles were signs interpreted by a priest. The most famous oracle of antiquity was that of Apollo at Delphi, in Greece, where the oracular response was delivered by a priestess in a state of excitement resembling madness.

55. mōnstrō: *trādere* takes an indirect object.

nōmine: ablative of respect.

56. Cēpheus, ubi: the order for translation is explained in the note on *Perseus, ubi*, l. 27.

In section 6 explain the case of *deō*, 54; of *Andromeda*, 55; of *virgō*, 56. What are the principal parts of *volō?*

---

51. offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *tr.*, [**ob+fendō,** strike], offend.

saevus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fierce, savage.

52. dē-vorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, swallow, devour.

53. ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of.

pavor, -ōris, *m.* [**paveō,** be afraid], terror, alarm.

54. cōnsulō, -sulere, -suluī, -sultum, *tr. and intr.*, consult; consult the interests of (*with dative*).

56. virgō, virginis, *f.*, young woman, maiden, virgin.

fōrmōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**fōrma**], beautiful, handsome.

57. percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**per+capiō**], perceive, feel.

58. ex-trahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.*, draw out; extricate, release.

59. imperātum, -ī, *n.* [*pf. part. of* **imperō**], command, order.

7. A Human Sacrifice

Tum rēx diem certam dīxit et omnia parāvit. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Andromeda ad lītus dēducta est et in cōnspectū omnium ad rūpem alligāta est. Omnēs fātum ejus dēplōrābant, nec lacrimās tenēbant. At subitō, dum mōnstrum expectant, Perseus accurrit; et, ubi lacrimās vīdit, causam dolōris quaerit. Illī rem tōtam expōnunt et puellam dēmōnstrant. Dum haec geruntur, fremitus terribilis audītur; simul mōnstrum, horribilī speciē, procul cōnspicitur. Ejus cōnspectus timōrem maximum omnibus injēcit. At mōnstrum

---

60. diem: in the plural, *diēs* is always masculine, in the singular sometimes masculine, sometimes feminine.

omnia, *all things, everything;* or with *parāvit, made all preparations.* The masculine plural forms of *omnis* used substantively mean *all men,* as in l. 53, the neuter plural forms, *all things.*

63. nec tenēbant, *and did not restrain; neque* is regularly used in Latin for *and not.*

dum . . . expectant, *while they were awaiting;* the present tense with *dum,* as in l. 46.

64. accurrit: for vivid effect a past event or situation may be represented as present. The present in this use is called the historical present, which may often be translated by the English past. Several other examples occur in this section.

67. speciē: the case use is the same as in l. 36.

68. timōrem . . . omnibus injēcit, *inspired all with the greatest fear;* literally, *threw the greatest fear into all; omnibus* is a dative with a compound verb, as in l. 33.

---

60. certus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **cernō**], fixed, certain.

61. dē-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead away; draw down; **nāvem dēdūcere,** to launch a ship.

62. rūpēs, -is, *f.*, rock, cliff.

alligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**ad+ligō,** bind], bind to, tie to.

fātum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* **for,** speak], fate, destiny.

dē-plōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, deplore, lament.

64. accurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.* [**ad+currō**], run to, come up hurriedly.

65. ex-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, set forth, explain; expose, abandon; set ashore.

66. fremitus, -ūs, *m.* [**fremō,** roar], a roar, a loud noise.

terribilis, -e, *adj.* [**terreō**], dreadful, terrible.

67. procul, *adv.*, in the distance, at a distance, far off.

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.*, [**con-+speciō**], look, perceive. observe.

68. injiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr.* [**in+jaciō**], throw into, hurl upon; inspire in, cause.

magnā celeritāte ad lītus contendit, jamque ad locum appropinquābat ubi puella stābat.

---

69. magnā celeritāte: ablative of manner.

In section 7 account for the tense of *geruntur*, 66; of *stābat*, 70.

---

8. The Rescue

At Perseus, ubi haec vīdit, gladium suum rapuit, et, postquam tālāria induit, in āera sublātus est. Tum dēsuper in mōnstrum impetum subitō fēcit et gladiō suō collum ejus graviter vulnerāvit. Mōnstrum, ubi sēnsit vulnus, fremitum horribilem ēdidit et sine morā tōtum corpus sub aquam mersit. Perseus, dum circum lītus volat, reditum ejus expectābat; mare autem intereā undique sanguine īnficitur. Post breve tempus, bēlua rūrsus caput sustulit; mox tamen ā Perseō ictū graviōre vulnerāta est. Tum iterum sē sub undās mersit, neque posteā visa est.

---

72. in (*mōnstrum*), *on.*

80. neque: translate as in l. 63.

In section 8 account for the case of *gladiō*, 73; of *Perseō*, 79; of *ictū*, 79. What case is governed by *sub* with a verb of motion? By *in* meaning into? By *circum?* By *sine?*

---

72. tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, *tr.*, lift, elevate, raise; elate; remove.

dē-super, *adv.*, from above.

73. collum, -ī, *n.*, neck.

74. graviter, *adv.* [**gravis**], heavily; severely; with dignity, impressively.

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, *tr.*, feel, see, perceive.

75. ē-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, give out, put forth; give birth to; exhibit; inflict.

sub, *prep. with acc. and abl.*, under.

76. mergō, -ere, mersī, mersum, *tr.*, plunge, sink.

reditus, -ūs, *m.* [**redeō**], return.

77. inter-eā, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime.

undique, *adv.*, from all parts, on all sides, all around, everywhere.

sanguis, sanguinis, *m.*, blood.

īnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**in** + **faciō**], stain, dye, color.

78. bēlua, -ae, *f*, wild beast, monster.

80. unda, -ae, *f.*, wave.

9. The Reward of Valor

Perseus, postquam in lītus dēscendit, prīmum tālāria exuit; tum ad rūpem vēnit ubi Andromeda vīncta erat. Ea autem omnem spem salūtis dēposuerat et, ubi Perseus adiit, terrōre paene exanimāta erat. Ille vincula statim solvit et puellam patrī reddidit. Cēpheus ob hanc rem maximō gaudiō affectus est. Meritam grātiam prō tantō beneficiō Perseō rettulit; praetereā Andromedam ipsam eī in mātrimōnium dedit. Ille libenter hoc dōnum accēpit, et puellam dūxit. Paucōs annōs cum uxōre suā in eā regiōne habitāvit, et in magnō honōre erat apud omnēs Aethiopēs. Magnopere tamen cupiēbat mātrem suam rūrsus vidēre. Tandem igitur cum uxōre ē rēgnō Cēpheī discessit.

---

83. terrōre: ablative of cause, App. 78.

86. meritam grātiam rettulit, *made a deserved requital,* or *repaid the favor as it deserved.*

prō, *in return for.*

88. puellam dūxit, *married. Dūcō* has reference to that part of the ceremony in which the bridegroom led the bride to his own house. With regard to the woman, the verb for marry is *nūbere,* literally, *to veil oneself,* with the dative of the bridegroom's name.

In section 9 account for the case of *patrī* 85; of *Perseō,* 86; of *annōs,* 88. Point out a complementary infinitive. What cases are governed by the prepositions *ad, ob, apud?*

---

81. exuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.,* take off, remove.

82. vinciō, -īre, vīnxī, vīnctum, *tr.,* bind, fasten.

83. dē-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.,* set down, deposit; lay aside.

ad-eō, -īre, -iī *or* **-īvī, -itum,** *intr.,* go *or* come up to, come up, approach.

terror, -ōris, *m.* [**terreō**], terror, fright.

84. paene, *adv.,* nearly, almost.

ex-animō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.,* put out of breath, stun, exhaust.

vinculum, -ī, *n.* [**vinciō**], bond, fetter.

solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum, *tr.,* loosen, unbind, release; relax; *of ships, with or without* **nāvem** *or* **nāvēs,** set sail, weigh anchor.

85. afficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**ad+faciō**], do to; treat; affect.

86. meritus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **mereō**], due, deserved, just.

87. praeter-eā, *adv.,* in addition, besides, further.

89. regiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**regō**], region, district.

honor, -ōris, *m.,* honor, repute, esteem; **Honor, -ōris,** *m.,* Honor *personified as a god.*

90. apud, *prep. with acc.,* among, with; near; at the house of; on the bank of.

10. Turned to Stone

Postquam Perseus ad īnsulam nāvem appulit, sē ad locum contulit ubi māter ōlim habitāverat. At domum invēnit vacuam et omnīnō dēsertam. Trēs diēs per tōtam īnsulam mātrem quaerēbat; tandem quārtō diē ad templum Diānae pervēnit. Hūc Danaē refūgerat, quod Polydectem timēbat. Perseus, ubi haec cognōvit, īrā magnā commōtus est; ad rēgiam Polydectis sine morā contendit et, ubi eō vēnit, statim in ātrium irrūpit. Polydectēs magnō timōre affectus est, et fugere volēbat. Dum tamen ille fugit, Perseus caput Medūsae mōnstravit; ille autem, simul atque hoc vīdit, in saxum versus est.

---

93. **sē . . . contulit,** *betook himself, proceeded.*

97. **quod:** a conjunction.

99. **eō:** an adverb.

100. **magnō timōre affectus est,** *was very badly frightened.* What is it literally?

102. **simul atque,** *as soon as;* the same rule as to the tense of the verb applies to this phrase as to *postquam* and *ubi,* explained in the note on l. 12.

In section 10 account for the case of *vacuam, dēsertam,* 95; of *diē,* 96; of *ātrium,* 100; of *Medūsae,* 101. What case does *per* govern? What are the meanings of the adverbs *hīc, hinc, hūc?*

---

95. **dē-serō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum,** *tr.,* [**serō,** join], abandon, desert.

96. **quārtus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [quattuor], fourth.

97. **hūc,** *adv.* [hic], this way, to this place.

re-fugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, *intr.,* flee back; flee away, escape.

99. **rēgia, -ae,** *f.* [rēgius], palace.

eō, *adv.* [is], to that place, thither; on that account.

100. **ātrium, -ī,** *n.,* atrium, *the principal room or hall of a house.*

irrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr. and intr.* [in+rumpō], burst, break in, rush into, burst into.

102. **mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** *tr.* [mōnstrum], show, exhibit; point out.

---

11. The Oracle Fulfilled

Post haec Perseus cum uxōre suā ad urbem Ācrisiī rediit. Ille autem, ubi Perseum vīdit, magnō terrōre affectus est.

Nam propter ōrāculum istud nepōtem suum adhūc timēbat. In Thessaliam igitur ad urbem Lārissam statim refūgit; frūstrā tamen, neque enim fātum suum vītāvit. Post paucōs annōs rēx Lārissae lūdōs magnōs fēcit; nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīserat et diem ēdīxerat. Multī ex omnibus urbibus Graeciae ad lūdōs convēnērunt. Ipse Perseus inter aliōs certāmen discōrum iniit. At, dum discum conjicit, avum suum cāsū occīdit; Ācrisius enim inter spectātōrēs ejus certāminis forte stābat.

---

106. istud: this word is declined like *ille*, and usually means *that* or *that of yours.* Here the force is, *that oracle of which you know.*

107. Lārissam, *of Larissa;* an appositive translated like *Serīphum,* l. 11.

109. lūdōs fēcit, *gave games.*

in omnēs partēs, *in all directions.*

112. discōrum: the discus was a flat piece of stone or metal.

113. cāsū, *by chance, accidentally; cāsus* is one of a class of very common nouns used without prepositions to express manner.

What cases are governed by the prepositions *propter, ex, inter?* What is the regular position of *enim?*

---

106. iste, ista, istud, *demonstr. pron.,* that of yours, that.

109. lūdus, -ī, *m.,* game, sport.

110. ē-dīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictum, *tr.,* declare, proclaim, appoint.

112. certāmen, -inis, *n.* [**certō**], struggle, contest, rivalry.

discus, -ī, *m.,* discus, quoit.

in-eō, -īre, -iī *or* **-īvī, -itum,** *tr.,* enter; enter upon, form.

113. spectātor, -ōris, *m.* [**spectō**], onlooker, spectator.

114. forte, [*adv. abl. of* **fors,** chance], perhaps, by chance.

HERCULES

Hercules was a Greek hero, celebrated for his feats of strength. While only an infant he strangled two serpents which had been sent by Juno to destroy him. In his boyhood he devoted himself to athletic pursuits, and in a fit of anger he slew the centaur who was his teacher of music. Having been seized by the King of Egypt as a victim for sacrifice, he killed the king, as well as the priest who was about to sacrifice him. His next exploit was to cut off the ears of the envoys of the Minyae who had come to Thebes to demand tribute, thus causing a war in which the Thebans under the leadership of Hercules were victorious. While in a state of temporary madness he slew his children, and thereupon was ordered by the oracle at Delphi to give himself up to the service of Eurystheus, King of Tiryns. At his command he performed the celebrated Twelve Labors, as follows: 1. Slaying the Nemean lion. 2. Slaying the Hydra of Lerna. 3. Capturing the Cerynian stag. 4. Capturing the boar of Erymanthus. 5. Cleaning the Augean stables. 6. Killing the birds of Stymphalus. 7. Capturing the Cretan bull. 8. Capturing the horses of Diomede. 9. Obtaining the girdle of Hippolyte. 10. Bringing the oxen of Geryon from the island of Erythia. 11. Procuring the golden apples of the Hesperides. 12. Bringing Cerberus from the underworld. In connection with these labors he also performed numerous other exploits.

His death came from the putting on of a poisoned robe which had been dipped in the blood of the centaur, Nessus. After his death he was taken by Jupiter to Olympus.

THE STORY OF HERCULES

1. The Infant Prodigy

Herculēs, Alcmēnae fīlius, ōlim in Graeciā habitābat. Hic dīcitur omnium hominum validissimus fuisse. At Jūnō, rēgīna deōrum, Alcmēnam ōderat, et Herculem adhūc īnfantem necāre voluit. Mīsit igitur duās serpentēs saevissimās; hae mediā nocte in cubiculum Alcmēnae vēnērunt, ubi Herculēs cum frātre suō dormiēbat. Nec tamen in cūnīs, sed in scūtō magnō cubābant. Serpentēs jam appropinquāverant et scūtum movēbant; itaque puerī ē somnō excitātī sunt.

1. **Hic dīcitur fuisse,** *he is said to have been; dīcō* and verbs of similar meaning are frequently employed in the passive with a personal subject and a dependent infinitive.

3. **ōderat,** *hated;* this verb has only the tenses formed on the perfect stem; the perfect, however, is translated as a present the past perfect as an imperfect, and the future perfect as a future.

5. **mediā nocte,** *in the middle of the night.*

8. **itaque,** *and so;* more frequently the word means *therefore.*

3. **ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus,** *defect., tr.,* hate.

5. **medius, -a, -um,** *adj.,* middle, intervening, middle of.

cubiculum, -ī, *n.* [cubō], bedchamber.

6. **cūnae, -ārum,** *f. pl.,* a cradle.

7. **cubō, -āre, cubuī, cubitum,** *intr.,* lie down, recline.

---

2. Hercules and the Serpents

Īphiclēs, frāter Herculis, magnā vōce exclāmāvit; at Herculēs ipse, puer fortissimus, haudquāquam territus est. Parvīs manibus serpentēs statim prehendit et colla eārum magnā vī compressit. Tālī modō serpentēs ā puerō interfectae sunt.

9. **ex-clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** *tr.,* cry out, exclaim.

10. **haud-quāquam,** *adv.,* not at all, by no means.

12. **comprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum,** *tr.* [com-+premō], press together, squeeze; suppress.

tālis, -e, *adj.,* such, of such a kind.



JUNO

Alcmēna autem, māter puerōrum, clāmōrem audīverat et marītum suum ē somnō excitāverat. Ille lūmen accendit et gladium suum rapuit; tum ad puerōs properābat, sed, ubi ad locum vēnit, rem mīram vīdit; Herculēs enim rīdēbat et serpentēs mortuās mōnstrābat.

---

13. clāmor, -ōris, *m.* [**clāmō**], shout, shouting, noise.

14. marītus, -ī, *m.*, husband.

lūmen, -inis, *n.* [*compare* **lūx**], light, a light.

accendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, *tr.* [**ad+cendō,** burn], kindle, light.

16. mīrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wonderful, strange.

17. mortuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **morior**], dead.

---

3. The Music Lesson

Herculēs ā puerō corpus suum dīligenter exercēbat. Magnam partem diēī in palaestrā cōnsūmēbat; didicit etiam arcum intendere et tēla conjicere. Hīs exercitātiōnibus vīrēs ejus cōnfirmātae sunt. In mūsicā etiam ā Linō Centaurō ērudiēbātur. (Centaurī autem equī erant, sed caput hominis habēbant.) Huic tamen artī minus dīligenter studēbat. Hic

---

18. ā puerō, *from boyhood;* literally, *from a boy.*

exercēbat: the imperfect of repeated or habitual action.

19. palaestrā: the name given by the Greeks to the place in which instruction and training were given the young in wrestling and boxing.

20. vīrēs: review the declension of *vīs*, App. 3, (5).

23. huic artī . . . studēbat, *he devoted himself to this art;* dative with a special verb, App. 51.

---

18. dīligenter, *adv.* [**dīligēns,** industrious], industriously, diligently.

exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.* [**ex+arceō,** enclose], train, drill.

19. palaestra, -ae, *f.*, wrestling-place, place of exercise.

cōn-sūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, *tr.*, consume, spend.

discō, -ere, didicī, —, *tr.*, learn.

20. in-tendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *tr.*, stretch; bend, aim.

exercitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**exercitō,** train], exercise, training.

21. cōn-firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, strengthen, establish.

mūsica, -ae, *f.*, music.

22. ērudiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *tr.* [**ē+rudis,** rough], educate, instruct.

23. ars, artis, -ium, *f.*, art.

minus, *adv.* [*neut. of* **minor**], less.

studeō, -ēre, studuī, —, *intr.* (*takes dative*), be devoted, apply oneself, study; favor.

Linus Herculem ōlim culpābat, quod parum studiōsus erat. Tum puer īrātus citharam subitō rapuit et summīs vīribus caput magistrī īnfēlīcis percussit. Ille ictū prōstrātus est, et paulō post ē vītā excessit, neque quisquam posteā id officium suscipere voluit.

---

26. Ille: *he* (*i.e.*, Linus); *ille* is used to refer to some person other than the subject of the sentence immediately preceding.

27. paulō: an adverb, but in origin an ablative of degree of difference; with *post*, *a little later;* literally, *later by a little.*

id officium: *i.e.*, the task of instructing Hercules in music.

---

24. culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [culpa], blame, rebuke.

parum, *adv.*, too little, insufficiently.

studiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [studium], eager, fond, studious.

25. cithara, -ae, *f.*, cithara, guitar.

summus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*superl. of* superus], highest; utmost, greatest; top of, highest part of.

26. magister, -trī, *m.*, master, teacher.

īn-fēlīx, *gen.* **-fēlīcis,** *adj.*, unfortunate, unhappy.

percutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussum, *tr.* [per+quatiō, shake], pierce, strike.

prō-sternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum, *tr.*, spread out; overthrow, lay prostrate.

27. paulō, *adv.* [*abl. of* **paulum,** a little], (by) a little, a little.

quisquam, quicquam, *indef. pron.*, any one, any thing.

officium, -ī, *n.* [opus+faciō], duty, service.

28. suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.*, [sub+capiō], undertake.

---

4. Hercules Escapes from Being Sacrificed

Dē Hercule haec etiam inter alia nārrantur. Ōlim, dum iter facit, in fīnēs Aegyptiōrum vēnit; ibi rēx quīdam, nōmine Būsīris, illō tempore rēgnābat; hic autem, vir crūdēlissimus, hominēs immolāre cōnsuēverat. Herculem igitur corripuit et

---

29. haec inter alia, *these things among others.*

31. vir: in apposition with *hic.*

32. cōnsuēverat, *was accustomed; cōnsuēscō* means *become accustomed;* its perfect tense therefore denotes a present state, *has become accustomed,* *i.e.*, *is accustomed;* likewise the past perfect *cōnsuēverat* denotes a past state, *he had become accustomed*, *i.e.*, *was accustomed.*

---

31. crūdēlis, -e, *adj.*, cruel.

32. immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [in+mola, meal], sacrifice.

cōn-suēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, *intr.*, become accustomed; *pf.*, be accustomed, be in the habit of.

corripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tr.* [com-+rapiō], seize, take hold of, snatch up.

in vincula conjēcit. Tum nūntiōs dīmīsit et diem sacrificiō ēdīxit. Mox ea diēs appetīvit, et omnia rītē parāta sunt. Manūs Herculis catēnīs ferreīs vīnctae sunt, et mola salsa in caput ejus īnspersa est. Mōs enim erat apud antīquōs salem et fār capitibus victimārum impōnere. Jam victima ad āram stābat; jam sacerdōs cultrum sūmpserat. Subitō tamen Herculēs magnō cōnātū vincula perrūpit. Tum ictū sacerdōtem prōstrāvit, alterō rēgem ipsum occīdit.

---

33. sacrificiō, *for the sacrifice*, dative.

37. capitibus: dative with a compound verb, App. 55.

40. alterō: *ictū* is to be supplied.

---

33. sacrificium, -ī, *n.* [*compare* **sacrificō**], sacrifice.

34. rītē, *adv.* [*compare* **rītus,**] in a proper manner, fitly, duly.

35. catēna, -ae, *f.*, chain.

ferreus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ferrum**], of iron.

mola, -ae, *f.*, meal, coarse flour.

salsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sāl**], salted.

36. īnspergō, -spergere, -spersī, -spersum, *tr.* [**in+spargō,** sprinkle], sprinkle over.

antīquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ancient, of long ago.

sāl, salis, *m.*, salt.

37. fār, farris, *n.*, grain, meal.

victima, -ae, *f.*, victim (*for sacrifice*).

impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**in+pōnō**], place upon, impose; put on board.

āra, -ae, *f.*, altar.

38. sacerdōs, -ōtis, *m. and f.* [**sacer**], priest, priestess.

culter, -trī, *m.*, knife.

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *tr.* [**sub+emō**], take, take up.

39. cōnātus, -ūs, *m.* [**cōnor**], attempt.

per-rumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.*, burst through, burst asunder.

---

5. Ear-Cropping

Herculēs, jam adulēscēns, urbem Thēbās incolēbat. Rēx Thēbārum, vir ignāvus, Creōn appellābātur. Minyae, gēns bellicōsissima, Thēbānīs fīnitimī erant. Lēgātī autem ā Minyīs ad Thēbānōs quotannīs veniēbant et centum bovēs postu-

---

43. Thēbānīs: dative, depending on the adjective *fīnitimī*.

44. veniēbant: imperfect of repeated action.

---

43. bellicōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**bellum**], warlike, martial.

44. centum, *indecl. num. adj.*, hundred.

lābant. Thēbānī enim ōlim ā Minyīs superātī erant; tribūta igitur rēgī Minyārum quotannīs pendēbant. At Herculēs cīvēs suōs hōc stīpendiō līberāre cōnstituit. Lēgātōs igitur comprehendit, atque aurēs eōrum abscīdit. Lēgātī autem apud omnēs gentēs sacrī habentur.

---

47. cīvēs suōs, *his fellow citizens.* **stīpendiō:** ablative of separation, App. 64.

49. habentur, *are considered.* Ill treatment of envoys was assigned as the reason for several wars in antiquity.

In section 5 account for the gender, number, and case of *sacrī*, 49.

---

45. tribūtum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* **tribuō,** assign], tribute, payment.

46. pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsum, *tr.*, weigh, pay out, pay.

47. līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**līber**], set free, free, liberate, release.

---

6. Defeat of the Minyae

Ergīnus, rēx Minyārum, ob haec vehementer īrātus erat, et cum omnibus cōpiīs in fīnēs Thēbānōrum contendit. Creōn adventum ejus per explōrātōrēs cognōvit; ipse tamen pugnāre nōluit; nam magnō timōre affectus est; Thēbānī igitur Herculem imperātōrem creāvērunt. Ille nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsit et cōpiās coēgit. Tum proximō diē cum magnō exercitū profectus est. Locum idōneum dēlēgit et aciem īnstrūxit. Tum Thēbānī ē superiōre locō impetum in hostēs

---

53. magnō timōre: see note on Per., 100.

---

50. vehementer, *adv.* [**vehemēns,** vehement, violent], violently; very much, greatly.

52. explōrātor, -ōris, *m.* [**explōrō**], scout.

53. nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *tr. and intr.* [**ne+volō**], be unwilling, not to wish.

55. cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum, *tr.* [**com-+agō**], drive together, bring together, collect; compel, force.

56. proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, *intr.*, set out, start, depart.

57. superior, -ius, *adj.* [*comp. of* **superus**], higher; previous, preceding; superior.

fēcērunt. Illī autem impetum sustinēre nōn potuērunt, itaque aciēs hostium pulsa est atque in fugam conversa.

---

59. conversa: supply *est*, which, like the other forms of *sum*, is sometimes omitted in the perfect passive.

In section 6 account for the case of *timōre*, *Herculem*, 53; of *imperātōrem*, 54; of *diē*, 55.

---

58. sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [sub+teneō], hold up, sustain, withstand.

59. pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum, *tr.*, beat; drive out, drive away, rout.

con-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr.*, turn around, turn.

---

7. Madness and Murder

Post hoc proelium Herculēs cōpiās suās ad urbem redūxit. Omnēs Thēbānī propter victōriam maximē gaudēbant. Creōn autem magnīs honōribus Herculem decorāvit, atque fīliam suam eī in mātrimōnium dedit. Herculēs cum uxōre suā vītam beātam agēbat; sed post paucōs annōs subitō in furōrem incidit, atque līberōs suōs ipse suā manū occīdit. Post breve tempus ad sānitātem reductus est, et propter hoc facinus magnō dolōre affectus est; mox ex urbe effūgit et in silvās sē recēpit. Nōlēbant enim cīvēs sermōnem cum eō habēre.

---

61. gaudēbant: what are the principal parts of this verb? What kind of verb is it?

64. in furōrem incidit, *became insane;* how literally?

65. ipse suā, *his own;* but the two Latin words are more emphatic than the English translation.

68. sē recēpit, *betook himself*, *withdrew;* compare *sē contulit*, Per. 93.

---

60. re-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead back.

61. maximē, *superl. adv.* [maximus], in the highest degree, most, especially, exceedingly.

62. decorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [decus, decoration], adorn, honor.

64. furor, -ōris, *m.* [furō, to rage], madness, fury.

65. incidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, *intr.* [in+cadō], fall in, fall into.

66. sānitās, -ātis, *f.* [sānus], health, sanity.

67. facinus, facinoris, *n.*, deed; crime.

effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, *intr.* [ex+fugiō], escape.

68. sermō, -ōnis, *m.* [serō, entwine], talk, conversation.

8. Hercules Consults the Oracle

Herculēs magnopere cupiēbat tantum scelus expiāre. Cōnstituit igitur ad ōrāculum Delphicum īre; hoc enim ōrāculum erat omnium celeberrimum. Ibi templum erat Apollinis, plūrimīs dōnīs ōrnātum. Hōc in templō sedēbat fēmina quaedam, nōmine Pȳthia, et cōnsilium dabat iīs quī ad ōrāculum veniēbant. Haec autem fēmina ab ipsō Apolline docēbātur, et voluntātem deī hominibus ēnūntiābat. Herculēs igitur, quī Apollinem praecipuē colēbat, hūc vēnit. Tum rem tōtam exposuit, neque scelus cēlāvit.

72. omnium: supply *ōrāculōrum.*

73. dōnīs: presented by states and individuals.

Hōc in templō: a monosyllabic preposition may stand between a noun and a modifier.

In section 8, account for the case of *omnium*, 72; of *nōmine*, 74.

70. scelus, sceleris, *n.*, wickedness, crime.

ex-piō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [piō, appease], atone for, appease.

72. celeber, -bris, -bre, *adj.*, thronged; renowned, famous.

73. plūrimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*superl. of* **multus**], most, very much, very many.

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, fit out, furnish, equip; adorn.

sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum, *intr.*, sit.

75. doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum, *tr.*, teach; show, explain.

76. ē-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, assert; proclaim, reveal.

77. praecipuē, *adv.* [**praecipuus,** especial], especially.

colō, -ere, coluī, cultum, *tr.*, cultivate, till.

9. The Oracle's Reply

Ubi Herculēs fīnem fēcit, Pȳthia diū tacēbat. Tandem tamen jussit eum ad urbem Tīryntha īre, et Eurystheī rēgis omnia imperāta facere. Herculēs, ubi haec audīvit, ad urbem illam contendit, et Eurystheō rēgī sē in servitūtem trādidit.

80. Tīryntha: a word of Greek origin, retaining its Greek accusative form. Proper names must always be translated by the nominative.

82. in servitūtem, *in slavery.*

79. taceō, -ēre, tacuī, tacitum, *intr. and tr.*, be silent, be silent about.

82. servitūs, -ūtis, *f.* [**servus**], servitude, slavery.

Duodecim annōs in servitūte Eurystheī tenēbātur, et duodecim labōrēs, quōs ille imperāverat, cōnfēcit. Hōc enim ūnō modō tantum scelus expiārī potuit. Dē hīs labōribus plūrima ā poētīs scrīpta sunt. Multa tamen quae poētae nārrant vix crēdibilia sunt.

---

85. plūrima, *a great many things*, an adjective used substantively.
In section 9 account for the case of *eum*, 80; of *rēgī*, 82.

---

83. duodecim, *indecl. num. adj.* **[duo+decem]**, twelve.

84. labor, -ōris, *m.*, labor, toil.

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* **[in+parō]**, command; control.

87. crēdibilis, -e, *adj.* **[crēdō]**, credible.

---

10. First Labor — Slaying the Nemean Lion

Prīmum ab Eurystheō jussus est Herculēs leōnem occīdere, quī illō tempore vallem Nemaeam reddēbat īnfestam. In silvās igitur quās leō incolēbat statim sē contulit. Mox feram vīdit, et arcum quem sēcum attulerat intendit; ejus tamen pellem, quae dēnsissima erat, trājicere nōn potuit. Tum clāvā magnā, quam semper gerēbat, leōnem percussit. Frūstrā tamen, neque enim hōc modō eum occīdere potuit. Tum dēmum collum mōnstrī bracchiīs suīs complexus est, et faucēs ejus summīs vīribus compressit. Hōc modō leō brevī tem-

---

91. sēcum: the preposition *cum* regularly follows, and is attached to, a personal, a reflexive, or a relative pronoun.

---

88. leō, -ōnis, *m.*, lion.

89. īnfestus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unsafe, hostile.

91. fera, -ae, *f.*, wild beast, wild animal.

afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum, *tr.* **[ad+ferō]**, bring to, bring.

92. pellis, pellis, -ium, *f.*, skin, hide, pelt.

dēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, close, thick.

trājiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr. and intr.* **[trāns+jaciō]**, hurl across; pierce.

93. clāva, -ae, *f.*, staff, club.

95. dēmum, *adv.*, at last, at length.

bracchium, -ī, *n.*, the fore-arm, arm.

com-plector, -plectī, -plexus sum, *tr.* **[plector, embrace]**, clasp, embrace.

faucēs, -ium, *f. pl.*, throat.

pore exanimātus est; nūlla enim respīrandī facultās eī dabātur. Tum Herculēs cadāver ad oppidum in umerīs rettulit et pellem quam dētrāxerat posteā prō veste gerēbat. Omnēs autem quī eam regiōnem incolēbant, ubi fāmam dē morte leōnis accēpērunt, vehementer gaudēbant, et Herculem magnō in honōre habēbant.

---

97. respīrandī facultās, *chance of breathing, chance to breathe; respīrandī* is a gerund.

99. prō veste, *as a garment.*

---

97. re-spīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, breathe out; breathe.

facultās, -ātis, *f.* **[facilis]**, means, opportunity, chance.

98. cadāver, -eris, *n.*, a dead body; corpse.

umerus, -ī, *m.*, upper arm, shoulder.

99. dē-trahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.*, draw off, strip off.

vestis, -is, *f.*, garment, clothing.

100. fāma, -ae, *f.*, report, rumor, talk.

---

11. Second Labor — Slaying the Lernaean Hydra

Post haec jussus est ab Eurystheō Hydram necāre. Hoc autem mōnstrum erat quod novem capita habēbat. Herculēs igitur cum amīcō Iolāō profectus est ad palūdem Lernaeam, quam Hydra incolēbat. Mox mōnstrum invēnit et, quamquam rēs erat magnī perīculī, collum ejus laevā prehendit. Tum dextrā capita novem abscīdere coepit. Quotiēns tamen hoc fēcerat, nova capita exoriēbantur. Diū frūstrā labōrāvit; tandem hōc cōnātū dēstitit; cōnstituit deinde ar-

---

103. Hoc: although the reference is to *Hydram*, a feminine noun, the demonstrative, in accordance with Latin usage, takes its gender from the predicate noun *mōnstrum*.

109. exoriēbantur, *grew out;* imperfect of repeated action.

110. cōnātū: ablative of separation.

---

105. palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, swamp, marsh.

107. laeva, -ae, *f.* **[laevus,** on the left side**]**, the left hand.

108. quotiēns, *adv.* [quot, how many], *interrog.*, how often? *relative*, as often as.

109. ex-orior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, *intr.*, come forth, arise, appear.

110. dē-sistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, *intr.*, leave off, desist from.

borēs succīdere et ignem accendere. Hoc celeriter fēcit, et, postquam ligna ignem comprehendērunt, face ardente colla adussit, unde capita exoriēbantur. Nec tamen sine magnō labōre haec fēcit. Auxilium enim Hydrae tulit cancer ingēns, quī, dum Herculēs capita abscīdit, crūra ejus mordēbat. Postquam mōnstrum tālī modō interfēcit, sagittās suās sanguine ejus imbuit, itaque mortiferās reddidit.

---

112. comprehendērunt, *caught.*

113. unde, *from which,* =*ex quibus.*

In section 11 account for the gender of *hoc*, 109; for the case of *mortiferās*, 117.

---

111. succīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* **[sub + caedō],** cut down, fell.

112. lignum, -ī, *n.*, wood, firewood.

fax, facis, *f.*, torch, firebrand.

ārdēns, *gen.* **ārdentis,** *adj.* [*pr. part. of* **ārdeō],** glowing, fiery.

113. ad-ūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.*, burn, sear.

unde, *adv.*, from which place, whence.

114. cancer, -crī, *m.*, a crab.

115. crūs, crūris, *n.*, leg.

mordeō, -ēre, momordī, morsum, *tr.*, bite.

117. imbuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.*, soak, steep.

ita, *adv.*, so, in such a way, thus.

mortifer, -era, -erum, *adj.* **[mors + ferō],** death-dealing, deadly.

---

12. Third Labor — Capture of the Cerynian Stag

Postquam Eurystheō caedēs Hydrae nūntiāta est, magnus timor animum ejus occupāvit. Jussit igitur Herculem cervum quendam ad sē referre; nōluit enim virum tantae audāciae in urbe retinēre. Hic autem cervus, cujus cornua aurea fuisse trāduntur, incrēdibilī fuit celeritāte. Herculēs igitur prīmum

---

120. tantae audāciae: genitive of description, App. 44.

121. fuisse trāduntur, *are said to have been.*

122. celeritāte: ablative of description; either the ablative or the genitive in this use may stand in the predicate.

---

119. cervus, -ī, *m.*, stag.

120. audācia, -ae, *f.* **[audāx],** boldness.

121. cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn; wing (*of an army*).

aureus, -a, -um, *adj.* **[aurum],** of gold, golden.

122. in-crēdibilis, -e, *adj.*, incredible

vestīgia ejus in silvīs animadvertit. Deinde, ubi cervum ipsum vīdit, summīs vīribus currere coepit. Usque ad vesperum cucurrit, neque nocturnum tempus sibi ad quiētem relīquit. Frūstrā tamen, nūllō enim modō praedam cōnsequī poterat. Tandem, postquam tōtum annum cucurrerat (ita trāditur), cervum cursū exanimātum cēpit et vīvum ad Eurystheum rettulit.

---

125. sibi: dative after *relīquit,* but may be omitted in translation. **ad,** *for.*

127. cucurrerat: with *postquam* and *ubi* the perfect is the tense most frequently used, as has been stated before. The past perfect is here employed because its clause denotes a situation.

ita trāditur, *so the story goes.*

In section 12 account for the case of *Eurystheō,* 118; of *Herculem,* 119; of *annum,* 127; of *cursū,* 128.

---

123. vestīgium, -ī, *n.*, footstep, track.

animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr.* [**animus** + **advertō**], direct the mind to, observe, notice; punish.

124. usque, *adv.*, all the way, even, all the time, until.

vesper, -erī, *m.*, evening.

125. nocturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**nox**], nightly, at night, night (*as adjective*).

126. cōn-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr.*, follow up; overtake; gain.

128. cursus, -ūs, *m.*, chariot.

vīvus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**vīvō**], living, alive.

---

13. Fourth Labor — The Erymanthian Boar

Post haec jussus est Herculēs aprum qunedam capere, quī illō tempore agrōs Erymanthiōs vāstābat et incolās hujus regiōnis magnopere terrēbat. Herculēs rem suscēpit et in Arcadiam profectus est. Postquam in silvam paulum prō-

---

132. rem, *task*; *rēs* is to be rendered freely according to the context.

---

130. aper, aprī, *m.*, a wild boar.

131. incola, -ae, *m. and f.* [**incolō**], inhabitant, resident.

133. paulum, *adv.* [*acc. of* **paulum,** a little], somewhat.

prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *intr.* [**prō**+**gradior,** step], go on, advance, proceed.

gressus est, aprō occurrit. Ille autem, simul atque Herculem vīdit, statim refūgit et, timōre perterritus, in altam fossam sē prōjēcit. Herculēs igitur laqueum quem attulerat injēcit, et summā cum difficultāte aprum ē fossā extrāxit. Ille, etsī multum relūctābātur, nūllō modō sē līberāre potuit, et ab Hercule ad Eurystheum vīvus relātus est.

---

134. aprō: dative with *occurrit*, which is a compound of *ob* and *currō*.

In section 13, is the preposition *cum*, 137, necessary to the expression of manner? Account for the case of *vīvus*, 139.

---

134. occurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.* [**ob+currō**], run to meet, meet.

135. per-terreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territum, *tr.*, frighten thoroughly, terrify.

136. prōjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr.* [**prō+jaciō**], hurl forward, hurl down.

laqueus, -ī, *m.*, noose.

137. difficultās, -ātis, *f.* [**difficilis**], difficulty.

etsī, *conj.*, though, although, even if.

138. multum, *adv.* [*acc. of* **multum**], much, greatly.

relūctor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.*, struggle against, resist.

---

14. Hercules at the Centaur's Cave

Dē quārtō labōre, quem suprā nārrāvimus, haec etiam trāduntur. Herculēs, dum iter in Arcadiam facit, ad eam regiōnem vēnit quam Centaurī incolēbant. Mox, quod nox jam appetēbat, ad antrum dēvertit, in quō Centaurus quīdam, nōmine Pholus, habitābat.

Ille Herculem benignē excēpit et cēnam parāvit. At Herculēs, postquam cēnāvit, vīnum ā Pholō postulāvit. Erat

---

140. nārrāvimus: the plural as used by the author to refer to himself was formerly common in English also, especially in newspaper editorials.

143. jam, *now*, or *by this time; nunc* means *now* (absolutely), *at the present time.*

---

140. suprā, *adv.* [**superus**], above, before.

143. antrum, -ī, *n.*, cave.

dē-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, —, *intr.*, turn away, turn aside.

145. cēna, -ae, *f.*, dinner.

146. cēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr. and tr.* [**cēna**], dine, dine upon.

autem in antrō magna amphora, vīnō optimō replēta, quam Centaurī ibi dēposuerant. Pholus hoc vīnum dare nōlēbat, quod reliquōs Centaurōs timēbat; nūllum tamen vīnum praeter hoc in antrō habēbat. "Hoc vīnum," inquit, "mihi commissum est. Sī igitur hoc dabō, Centaurī mē interficient." Herculēs tamen eum irrīsit, et ipse cyathum vīnī ex amphorā hausit.

---

150. inquit: this verb is regularly used in the present tense with direct quotations and stands after one or more words of a quotation; it corresponds to the English "said I." It is defective, that is, it lacks some forms of person, tense, and mood.

---

147. amphora, -ae, *f.*, jar, flagon.

optimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*superl. of* **bonus**], best.

re-pleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, *tr.*, fill again, refill.

149. praeter, *prep. with acc.* [*compare* **prae,** before], except; past, beyond; in addition to; contrary to.

150. inquam, inquis, inquit, *intr. defect.*, say, *employed in direct quotations.*

152. irrīdeō, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, *intr.* [**in+rīdeō**], laugh at, jeer, mock.

cyathus, -ī, *m.*, cup.

153. hauriō, -īre, hausī, haustum, *tr.*, draw, drain; swallow.

---

15. The Fight with the Centaurs

Simul atque amphora aperta est, odor jūcundissimus undique diffūsus est; vīnum enim suāvissimum erat. Centaurī nōtum odōrem sēnsērunt, et omnēs ad locum convēnērunt.

Ubi ad antrum pervēnērunt, magnopere īrātī erant, quod Herculem bibentem vīdērunt. Tum arma rapuērunt, et Pholum interficere volēbant. Herculēs tamen in aditū antrī

---

154. odor, -ōris, *m.*, smell, odor.

jūcundus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pleasant, agreeable.

155. diffundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *tr.* [**dis-+fundō**], pour out, spread, diffuse.

suāvis, -e, *adj.*, sweet, agreeable, pleasant.

156. nōtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **nōscō,** learn, know], known, familiar.

158. bibō, bibere, bibī, —, *tr. and intr.*, drink.

159. aditus, -ūs, *m.* [**adeō, -īre**], entrance, means of approach, access.

cōnstitit, et impetum eōrum fortissimē sustinēbat. Facēs ārdentēs in eōs conjēcit; multōs etiam sagittīs suīs vulnerāvit. Hae autem sagittae eaedem erant quae sanguine Hydrae ōlim imbūtae erant. Omnēs igitur quōs ille sagittīs vulnerāverat venēnō statim absūmptī sunt; reliquī autem, ubi hoc vīdērunt, terga vertērunt et fugā salūtem petiērunt.

161. in, *at*, the usual meaning of *in* with words meaning *to throw*.
165. fugā, *in flight;* the ablative denotes means, however.

160. cōn-sistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *intr.*, take one's stand, halt, make a stand.
164. venēnum, -ī, *n.*, drug, poison.
ab-sūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, *tr.*, consume, destroy.
165. tergum, -ī, *n.*, back.

16. The Fate of Pholus

Postquam reliquī fūgērunt, Pholus ex antrō ēgressus est, et corpora spectābat eōrum quī sagittīs interfectī erant. Magnopere autem mīrātus est, quod tam levī vulnere exanimātī erant, et causam ejus reī quaerēbat. Adiit igitur locum ubi cadāver cujusdam Centaurī jacēbat et sagittam ē vulnere trāxit. Haec tamen, sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum, ē manibus ejus lāpsa est et pedem leviter vulnerāvit. Ille extemplō dolōrem gravem per omnia membra sēnsit, et post breve tempus vī venēnī exanimātus est. Mox Herculēs, quī reliquōs Centaurōs secūtus erat, ad antrum rediit, et magnō cum dolōre Pholum mortuum vīdit. Multīs cum lacrimīs

171, sīve . . . deōrum, *either by chance or by design of the gods.*
In section 16 point out two ablatives of manner; a deponent verb.

167. spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq. of* **speciō,** look], observe, watch, look at, look to.
168. mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr. and intr.* [**mīrus**], be astonished; wonder at.
levis, -e, *adj.*, light, slight, trifling.
170. jaceō, -ēre, jacuī, —, *intr.*, lie, be prostrate.
171. trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum, *tr.*, draw, drag.
172. lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum, *intr.*, glide, slip, fall.
leviter, *adv.* [levis], lightly, slightly.
extemplō, *adv.*, immediately, forthwith, without delay.
173. membrum, -ī, *n.*, limb, member.

corpus amīcī ad sepultūram dedit; tum, postquam alterum cyathum vīnī hausit, somnō sē dedit.

---

177. sepultūra, -ae, *f.* **[sepeliō],** burial.

---

17. Fifth Labor — Cleansing the Augean Stables

Deinde Eurystheus Herculī hunc labōrem graviōrem imposuit. Augēās quīdam, quī illō tempore rēgnum in Ēlide obtinēbat, tria mīlia boum habēbat. Hī in stabulō ingentis magnitūdinis inclūdēbantur. Stabulum autem illuviē ac squālōre obsitum erat; neque enim ad hoc tempus umquam pūrgātum erat. Hoc jussus est Herculēs intrā spatium ūnīus diēī pūrgāre. Ille, etsī rēs erat multae operae, negōtium suscēpit. Prīmum, magnō labōre fossam duodēvīgintī pedum fēcit, per quam flūminis aquam dē montibus ad mūrum stabulī perdūxit. Tum, postquam mūrum perrūpit, aquam

---

179. Herculī, *upon Hercules.*

181. tria mīlia boum, *three thousand cattle;* it must be kept in mind that the singular *mīlle* is an adjective, the plural *mīlia* a noun, used with a genitive of the whole. *Boum* is the genitive plural of *bōs*, App. 3, (5).

183. neque umquam, *never.*

185. erat multae operae, *was one of great labor;* a genitive of description standing in the predicate, like the ablative of description in l. 122.

186. duodēvīgintī pedum: the genitive of description with numerals is regularly employed to express measure. The reference is to width.

In section 17 account for the case of *magnitūdinis*, 182. What case is governed by *intrā?* By *contrā?*

---

181. obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* **[ob+teneō],** hold, possess.

stabulum, -ī, *n.*, stable, stall.

182. magnitūdō, -inis, *f.* **[magnus],** size, magnitude.

illuviēs, —, *abl.* **-ē,** *f.*, overflow; dirt, filth.

183. squālor, -ōris, *m.*, squalor, filth.

ob-serō, -serere, -sēvī, -situm, *tr.*, plant; cover, fill.

umquam, *adv.*, ever.

184. pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* **[pūrus+agō],** clean, cleanse; excuse; **pūrgātus, -a, -um,** *p. part. as adj.*, free from blame.

spatium, -ī, *n.*, space, distance, interval.

185. opera, -ae, *f.* **[opus],** effort, labor, toil.

negōtium, -ī, *n.* **[nec+ōtium],** business, matter; affair, task; difficulty, trouble.

186. duodēvīgintī, *indecl. num. adj.*, twenty.

in stabulum immīsit et tālī modō, contrā opīniōnem omnium, opus cōnfēcit.

---

189. immittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* **[in+mittō],** send in, let in.

opīniō, -ōnis, *f.* **[opīnor,** suppose], opinion; expectation.

---

18. Sixth Labor — The Birds of Stymphalus

Post paucōs diēs Herculēs ad oppidum Stymphālum iter fēcit; jusserat enim eum Eurystheus avēs Stymphālidēs necāre. Hae avēs rōstra aēnea habēbant, et carne hominum vēscēbantur. Ille, postquam ad locum pervēnit, lacum vīdit; in hōc autem lacū, quī nōn procul erat ab oppidō, avēs habitābant. Nūlla tamen dabātur appropinquandī facultās. Lacus enim nōn ex aquā sed ē līmō cōnstitit; Herculēs igitur neque pedibus neque lintre prōgredī potuit.

Tandem postquam magnam partem diēī frūstrā cōnsūmpsit, hōc cōnātū dēstitit et ad Vulcānum sē contulit auxiliumque ab eō petiit. Vulcānus, quī ā fabrīs maximē colēbātur, crepundia, quae ipse ex aere fabricātus erat, Herculī dedit. Hīs Herculēs dīrum crepitum fēcit, et avēs perterritae

---

193. carne: ablative governed by *vēscēbantur*. Name the deponent verbs that govern the ablative.

197. cōnstitit: from *cōnstō*.

198. pedibus, *on foot;* ablative of means, here suggesting in addition the idea of manner.

In section 18 account for the case of *Stymphālum*, 191; of *lintre*, 198; of *cōnātū*, 200; of *fabrīs*, 201.

---

193. rōstrum, -ī, *n.* **[rōdō,** gnaw], beak; *pl.*, **rōstra, -ōrum,** the Rostra, *a platform for speakers in the Forum, adorned with beaks of captured ships.*

aēneus, -a, -um, *adj.* **[aes],** of copper, of bronze.

carō, carnis, *f.*, flesh.

194. vēscor, -ī, —, —, *intr.*, (*takes ablative*) feed upon.

197. līmus, -ī, *m.*, mud, mire.

cōn-stō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, *intr.*, stand together; consist; *impers.*, **cōn-stat,** it is known, it is certain.

198. linter, -tris, *f.*, boat, skiff.

201. faber, -brī, *m.*, workman, smith.

202. crepundia, -ōrum, *n.*, *pl.* **[crepō,** to rattle], a child's rattle, a rattle.

fabricor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.* **[faber],** make, construct, build.

203. dīrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dreadful, dire.

crepitus, -ūs, *m.* **[crepō,** to rattle], clattering, noise.

āvolāvērunt; ille autem, dum āvolant, magnum numerum eōrum sagittīs trānsfīxit.

---

204. ā-volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intr.*, fly away.

205. trāns-fīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *tr.*, pierce, transfix.

---

19. Seventh Labor — The Cretan Bull

Tum jussit Herculem Eurystheus taurum quendam ferōcissimum ex īnsulā Crētā vīvum referre. Ille igitur nāvem cōnscendit et, cum prīmum ventus idōneus fuit, solvit. Ubi tamen īnsulae jam appropinquābat, magna tempestās subitō coörta est nāvisque cursum tenēre nōn poterat. Nautae paene omnem spem salūtis dēposuērunt; tantus timor animōs eōrum occupāverat. Herculēs, tamen, etsī nāvigandī imperītus erat, haudquāquam territus est.

Post breve tempus summa tranquillitās cōnsecūta est, et nautae, quī sē ex timōre jam recēperant, nāvem incolumem ad terram perdūxērunt. Herculēs ē nāvī ēgressus est, et, ubi

---

206. ferōcissimum, *very savage.* The translation of the superlative by *very* is frequently necessary.

208. cum prīmum, *as soon as.* With this phrase, as with *ubi, postquam, simul atque*, the perfect indicative is most frequently employed, as explained in the note on Perseus, 12.

solvit, *set sail. Solvō* is used in this sense either with or without *nāvem.*

Ubi . . . jam appropinquābat: the imperfect, like the past perfect, is employed with *postquam* and *ubi* in clauses denoting situation; compare l. 127.

209. īnsulae: dative with *appropinquābat.*

212. nāvigandī imperītus, *ignorant of, unskilled in, navigation.* The genitive of the gerund here depends upon an adjective; in l. 196 it was used with a noun, *facultās.*

215. sē recēperant, *had recovered.*

---

206. taurus, -ī, *m.*, bull.

208. cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *tr.* [com- + scandō, climb], climb; go aboard, embark on.

210. co-örior, -örīrī, -örtus sum, *intr.*, come forth, arise.

212. nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [nāvis+agō], sail, navigate.

213. imperītus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- + perītus], inexperienced, unskilled.

214. tranquillitās, -ātis, *f.* [tranquillus], stillness; a calm (*at sea*).

215. incolumis, -e, *adj.*, unharmed, safe.

ad rēgem Crētae vēnit, causam veniendī docuit. Deinde, postquam omnia parāta sunt, ad eam regiōnem contendit quam taurus vāstābat. Mox taurum vīdit, et, quamquam rēs erat magnī perīculī, cornua ejus prehendit. Tum ingentī labōre mōnstrum ad nāvem trāxit et cum praedā in Graeciam rediit.

---

20. Eighth Labor — Capture of the Horses of Diomede

Postquam ex īnsulā Crētā rediit, Herculēs ab Eurystheō in Thrāciam missus est et equōs Diomēdis redūcere jussus. Hī equī carne hominum vēscēbantur; Diomēdēs autem, vir crūdēlissimus, iīs prōjiciēbat peregrīnōs omnēs quī in eam regiōnem vēnerant. Herculēs igitur magnā celeritāte in Thrāciam contendit et hōs equōs ab Diomēde postulāvit. Quod tamen ille hōs trādere nōlēbat, Herculēs, īrā commōtus, rēgem interfēcit et cadāver ejus equīs prōjicī jussit. Ita mīra rērum commūtātiō facta est; is enim quī anteā multōs cum cruciātū necāverat ipse eōdem suppliciō necātus est. Ubi haec nūntiāta sunt, omnēs quī eam regiōnem incolēbant maximā laetitiā affectī sunt, et Herculī meritam grātiam referēbant. Nōn modo maximīs honōribus et praemiīs eum decorāvērunt, sed rēgnum etiam eī obtulērunt. Ille tamen rēgnum accipere nōlēbat et, postquam ad mare rediit, nāvem occupāvit. Ubi omnia ad nāvigandum parāta

---

225. carne: why ablative?

234. meritam grātiam referēbant: for the translation consult the note on Per. 86.

238. ad nāvigandum, *for sailing*; one of the commonest uses of the gerund is the accusative with *ad* in expressions of purpose.

---

226. peregrīnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [per +ager], strange, foreign; *subst.*, **peregrīnus, -ī,** *m.*, a foreigner.

231. commūtātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [commūtō], change.

232. cruciātus, -ūs, *m.* [cruciō, to torture], torture.

234. laetitia, -ae, *f.*, [laetus], joy, happiness.

235. modo, *adv.* [*abl. of* modus], only, merely, a little while ago; recently.

236. offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum, *tr.* [ob+ferō], bring before, offer.

sunt, equōs in nāvem collocāvit; deinde idōneam tempestātem nactus sine morā ē portū solvit et paulō post equōs in lītus Argolicum exposuit.

---

239. tempestātem, *weather;* with what meaning has the word been used previously?

240. nactus: the past participle of a deponent verb is usually active in meaning. It therefore agrees with the subject when denoting an act of the subject; an act attributed to the subject, if expressed by the past participle of a non-deponent verb, requires the ablative absolute construction.

paulō post: see note on l. 27.

In section 20, would it be proper to use *cum* with *magnā celeritāte*, 227? Would it be proper to omit *cum* in the phrase *cum cruciātū*, 232?

---

240. nancīscor, -ī, nactus sum, *tr.*, get, obtain; meet with, find.

---

21. Ninth Labor — The Girdle of Hippolyte

Gēns Amāzonum dīcitur omnīnō ex mulieribus cōnstitisse. Hae summam scientiam reī mīlitāris habēbant, et maximam virtūtem praebēbant; nam etiam cum virīs proelium committere audēbant. Hippolytē, Amāzonum rēgīna, balteum habuit celeberrimum, quem Mars eī dederat. Admēta autem, Eurystheī fīlia, fāmam dē hōc balteō accēperat, et eum possidēre vehementer cupiēbat. Eurystheus igitur Herculem jussit cōpiās cōgere et bellum Amāzonibus īnferre. Ille nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsit et, postquam magna multitūdō convēnit, eōs dēlēgit quī maximum ūsum in rē mīlitārī habēbant.

---

242. cōnstitisse: from *cōnstō*.

243. reī mīlitāris, *military science, art of war.*

244. proelium committere, *to engage in battle.*

249. bellum Amāzonibus īnferre, *to make war on the Amazons.*

---

242. mulier, -eris, *f.*, woman.

243. scientia, -ae, *f.* [**sciēns,** knowing], knowledge, expertness, skill.

mīlitāris, -e, *adj.* [**mīles**], military.

244. praebeō, -ēre, praebuī, praebitum, *tr.* [**prae,** before + **habeō**], hold forth, offer; furnish, supply; exhibit, show.

245. balteus, -ī, *m.*, girdle, belt.

247. possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.* [**por** *for* **prō + sedeō**], possess, have.

251. ūsus, -ūs, *m.* [**ūtor**], use; practice, experience.

22. The Girdle Refused

Hīs virīs Herculēs causam itineris exposuit; illī auctōritāte ejus adductī iter cum eō facere cōnstituērunt. Tum cum iīs quibus persuāserat nāvem cōnscendit et, ventum idōneum nactus, post paucōs diēs ad ōstium flūminis Thermōdontis appulit. Postquam in fīnēs Amāzonum vēnit, nūntium ad Hippolytam mīsit, quī causam veniendī docuit et balteum poposcit. Ipsa Hippolytē balteum trādere volēbat, quod dē Herculis virtūte fāmam accēperat; quod tamen reliquae Amāzonēs nōlēbant, negāvit. At Herculēs, ubi haec nūntiāta sunt, bellī fortūnam temptāre cōnstituit.

Proximō igitur diē cōpiās ēdūxit. Tum locum idōneum dēlēgit et hostēs ad pugnam ēvocāvit. Amāzonēs quoque cōpiās suās ex castrīs ēdūxērunt et nōn magnō intervāllō aciem īnstrūxērunt.

---

253. Hīs virīs: dative of indirect object.

auctōritāte: ablative of cause.

255. quibus: dative with *persuāserat*, App. 51.

256. post paucōs diēs: in this phrase *post* is employed as a preposition. It has also been employed as an adverb in phrases of the same or similar meaning, with ablative of degree of difference; *e.g.*, *paucīs post diēbus*.

ad ōstium Thermōdontis: the Thermodon was a river in Pontus, a country on the southern coast of the Black Sea. The Amazons were also represented as dwelling to the north on the river Don.

259. volēbat, *was willing*.

261. nōlēbant: the words *balteum trādere* are to be understood.

negāvit: this is the common word for *say that not* accompanied by indirect discourse. It is often used also, as here, with the meaning *refuse*.

haec: neuter plural used substantively.

265. nōn magnō intervāllō, *at no great distance* (*interval*); ablative of degree of difference.

What part of the verb is *veniendī*, 258?

---

256. ōstium, -ī, *n.* [*compare* **ōs**], door; mouth, entrance.

259. poscō, -ere, poposcī, —, *tr.*, ask, request, demand.

261. negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, say no, say that not; refuse, deny.

262. temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*intens. of* **tendō**], try, make trial of.

264. ē-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, call out.

265. intervāllum, -ī, *n.*, interval, distance.

23. The Battle

Palūs erat nōn magna inter duōs exercitūs; neutrī tamen initium trānseundī facere volēbant. Tandem Herculēs signum dedit et, ubi palūdem trānsiit, proelium commīsit. Amāzonēs impetum virōrum fortissimē sustinuērunt et contrā opīniōnem omnium magnam virtūtem praestitērunt; multōs quidem eōrum occīdērunt, multōs etiam in fugam conjēcērunt. Virī enim novō genere pugnae perturbābantur, nec solitam virtūtem praestābant. Herculēs autem, ubi haec vīdit, dē suīs fortūnīs dēspērāre coepit. Mīlitēs igitur vehementer cohortātus ad prīstinām virtūtem tantum dēdecus dēprecātus est; quibus verbīs animī omnium ērēctī sunt; nam multī, etiam quī vulneribus cōnfectī erant, proelium sine morā redintegrāvērunt.

---

267. nōn magna, *of no great extent.*

neutrī: the plural of *neuter* is employed with reference to two groups.

270. Amāzonēs magnam virtūtem praestitērunt: the Amazons were said to have ventured to attack the territories of other nations, and to have made their way even into Attica, the district about Athens.

271. praestitērunt: *praestō* may be transitive, as here, in the sense of *exhibit, display,* or it may be intransitive with the meaning *excel,* in which case it usually governs a dative.

274. nec: translate *and not.*

277. quibus: translate by a demonstrative, *these.*

278. etiam quī, *even those who.*

In section 23 point out a gerund; a genitive of the whole; an ablative of of cause.

---

273. genus, generis, *n.*, race, family, birth, descent; kind, class.

per-turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, throw into confusion, throw into disorder, disturb.

275. dē-spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, despair of, despair.

276. co-hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.*, encourage, rally, admonish.

prīstinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*compare* **prior**], former, original.

dē-decus, -decoris, *n.* [**decus,** decoration, honor], disgrace, dishonor.

277. dē-precor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.*, avert by prayer, deprecate.

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *tr.* [**ē** + **regō**], lift up; arouse, encourage.

279. red-integrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**integrō,** make whole], renew, restore.



AN AMAZON

24. Defeat of the Amazons

Diū et ācriter pugnātum est; tandem tamen ad sōlis occāsum magna commūtātiō rērum facta est, et mulierēs terga vertērunt atque fugā salūtem petiērunt. Multae autem vulneribus dēfessae, dum fugiunt, captae sunt; in quō numerō ipsa erat Hippolytē. Herculēs summam clēmentiam praestitit et, postquam balteum accēpit, lībertātem omnibus captīvīs dedit. Post haec sociōs ad mare redūxit et, quod nōn multum aestātis supererat, in Graeciam proficīscī mātūrāvit. Nāvem igitur cōnscendit et, tempestātem idōneam nactus, statim solvit. Antequam tamen in Graeciam pervēnit, ad urbem Trojam nāvem appellere cōnstituit; frūmentum enim quod sēcum habēbat jam dēficere coeperat.

---

280. Diū . . . pugnātum est, *the battle was long and fierce;* literally, *it was fought long and fiercely.* **ad sōlis occāsum,** *about sunset.*

286. nōn multum aestātis, *not much of the summer; multum* is neuter of the adjective used as a noun; *aestātis* is genitive of the whole.

In section 24 point out two complementary infinitives.

---

280. occāsus, -ūs, *m.* [**ob + cāsus**], falling down, setting; **sōlis occāsus,** sunset.

284. clēmentia, -ae, *f.* [**clēmēns**], forbearance, mercy.

287. super-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, *intr.*, be left over, survive, remain.

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [**mātūrus**], set about early, hasten.

289. ante-quam, *conj.*, before.

291. dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* and *intr.* [**dē+faciō**], fail, run out; withdraw, desert.

---

25. Laomedon and the Sea Monster

Lāomedōn quīdam illō tempore rēgnum Trojae obtinēbat; ad hunc Neptūnus et Apollō annō superiōre vēnerant et, quod Troja nōndum moenia habēbat, ad hoc opus auxilium obtulerant. Postquam tamen hōrum auxiliō moenia cōnfecta sunt, nōlēbat Lāomedōn praemium quod prōposuerat persolvere.

---

294. moenia, -ium, *n. pl.*, walls (*of a city*).

296. prō-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, set forth, relate; offer, propose.

per-solvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtum, *tr.*, pay, pay over.

Neptūnus igitur et Apollō, ob hanc causam īrātī, mōnstrum quoddam mīsērunt speciē horribilī, quod cotīdiē ē marī veniēbat et hominēs pecudēsque vorābat. Trojānī igitur, timōre perterritī, in urbe continēbantur, et pecora omnia ex agrīs intrā mūrōs compulerant. Lāomedōn, hīs rēbus commōtus, ōrāculum cōnsuluit; ā deō autem jussus est fīliam Hēsionem mōnstrō objicere.

---

301. continēbantur, *were confining themselves;* the passive voice is sometimes used in a reflexive sense, *i.e.*, it denotes an act done by the actor to or for himself; *sē continēbant* might have been used.

In section 25 point out an ablative of cause; an ablative of time; an ablative of description.

---

300. pecus, -udis, *f.*, a head of cattle, beast; *pl.*, flock, herd.

vorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, devour.

301. contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [**com-+teneō**], hold together; shut in, confine.

pecus, -oris, *n.*, cattle, herd, flock.

302. com-pellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.*, drive together, collect.

304. objiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr.* [**ob+jaciō**], throw before, throw to, offer, expose; set against, oppose.

---

26. The Rescue of Hesione

Lāomedōn, ubi hoc respōnsum renūntiātum est, magnum dolōrem percēpit. Sed tamen, quod cīvēs suōs tantō perīculō līberāre volēbat, ōrāculō pārēre cōnstituit et diem sacrificiō dīxit. Sed, sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum, Herculēs tempore opportūnissimō Trojam attigit; ipsō enim temporis pūnctō quō puella catēnīs vīncta ad lītus dēdūcēbātur ille nāvem appulit. Herculēs, ē nāvī ēgressus, dē rēbus quae gerēbantur certior factus est; tum, īrā commōtus, ad rēgem sē contulit

---

307. ōrāculō: dative with the special verb *pārēre.*

sacrificiō, *for the sacrifice,* dative.

309. ipsō . . . temporis pūnctō quō, *at the very moment when.*

312. certior factus est, *was informed;* literally, *was made more certain.*

---

305. re-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, bring back word, report, announce.

309. opportūnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ob+portus**], fit, opportune.

attingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum, *tr.* [**ad+tangō**], touch; arrive at.

pūnctum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* **pungō**], point; moment.

et auxilium suum obtulit. Rēx libenter ejus auxilium accēpit; deinde Herculēs mōnstrum interfēcit et puellam, quae jam omnem spem salūtis dēposuerat, incolumem ad patrem redūxit. Lāomedōn magnō cum gaudiō fīliam suam accēpit, et Herculī prō tantō beneficiō meritam grātiam rettulit.

In section 26 account for the case of *perīculō* 306; of *incolumem*, 315. Give the principal parts of *vinciō* and *vincō*.

---

27. Tenth Labor — The Oxen of Geryon

Post haec jussus est Herculēs ad īnsulam Erythīam īre bovēsque Gēryonis arcessere. Rēs erat summae difficultātis, quod bovēs ā gigante Eurytiōne et ā cane bicipite custōdiēbantur. Ipse autem Gēryōn speciem horribilem praebēbat; habēbat enim tria corpora inter sē conjūncta. Herculēs tamen, etsī intellegēbat perīculum magnum esse, negōtium suscēpit et, postquam per multās terrās iter fēcit, ad eam partem Libyae pervēnit quae Eurōpae proxima est. Ibi in utrāque parte fretī quod Eurōpam ā Libyā dīvidit columnās cōnstituit, quae posteā Herculis Columnae appellātae sunt.

---

322. inter sē, *together, to one another;* how literally?

323. perīculum magnum esse: what class of verbs take the infinitive with subject accusative?

325. in utrāque parte, *on both sides.*

327. Herculis Columnae: the Rock of Gibraltar and a hill on the opposite side of the Straits doubtless gave rise to this legend.

In section 27 account for the case of *difficultātis* 319; of *Eurōpae* 325; of *Columnae* 327.

---

319. arcessō, -cessere, -cessīvī, -cessītum, *tr.*, send for, summon.

320. gigās, -antis, *m.*, giant.

biceps, -cipitis, *adj.*, two-headed.

custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *tr.* [custōs], watch, guard.

323. intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *tr.* [inter + legō], perceive, understand, know.

326. uterque, utraque, utrumque, *pron.*, each (*of two*).

fretum, -ī, *n.*, a strait, channel.

columna, -ae, *f.*, column, pillar.

28. The Golden Ship

Dum hīc morātur, Herculēs magnum incommodum ex calōre sōlis accipiēbat. Tandem igitur, īrā commōtus, arcum suum intendit et sōlem sagittīs petiit. Sōl tamen, audāciam virī admīrātus, lintrem auream eī dedit. Herculēs hoc dōnum libentissimē accēpit; nūllam enim nāvem in hīs regiōnibus invenīre potuerat. Tum lintrem dēdūxit et, ventum nactus idōneum, post breve tempus ad īnsulam pervēnit. Postquam ex incolīs cognōvit dē locō ubi bovēs erant, eō statim profectus est et ā rēge Gēryone bovēs postulāvit. Quod tamen ille hōs trādere nōlēbat, Herculēs et rēgem ipsum et gigantem Eurytiōnem interfēcit.

---

328. Dum morātur: a *dum* clause of situation, as in Per. 63, which regularly takes a present indicative even if the principal verb is past.

331. admīrātus: to be translated as a present participle, a force which the past participles of certain deponent verbs often have.

---

328. moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr. and intr.* [**mora**], delay, linger; hinder.

in-commodum, -ī, *n.*, inconvenience, misfortune, loss.

329. calor, -ōris, *m.*, heat.

331. ad-mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.*, be astonished at, admire.

---

29. A Miraculous Hail-Storm

Tum Herculēs bovēs per Hispāniam et Liguriam compellere cōnstituit. Postquam igitur omnia parāta sunt, bovēs ex īnsulā ad continentem trānsportāvit. Ligurēs tamen, gēns bellicōsissima, dum ille per fīnēs eōrum iter facit, magnīs cōpiīs convēnērunt, atque eum longius prōgredī prohibēbant. Herculēs magnam difficultātem habēbat; barbarī enim in locīs

---

342. fīnēs: not *boundaries*.

magnīs cōpiīs, *with large forces;* ablative of accompaniment, App. 70, b.

343. eum . . . prōgredī prohibēbant, *tried to prevent him from proceeding.* The infinitive with subject accusative often depends on *prohibeō*. The imperfect tense here denotes an attempted action.

---

341. trāns-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, carry over, transport.

343. prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum, *tr.* [**prō + habeō**], check, stop, restrain; keep out, prohibit.

superiōribus cōnstiterant, et saxa tēlaque in eum conjiciēbant. Ille quidem paene omnem spem salūtis dēposuerat; sed tempore opportūnissimō Juppiter imbrem lapidum ingentium ē caelō dēmīsit. Hī magnā vī cecidērunt et magnum numerum Ligurum occīdērunt; ipse tamen Herculēs, ut in tālibus rēbus accidere cōnsuēvit, nihil incommodī cēpit.

---

346. quidem: this word often has a concessive force, *it is true, to be sure;* it is then followed in the next sentence by some adversative word, here *sed, but, nevertheless.*

349. in tālibus rēbus: *i.e.*, when favored with divine help.

350. cōnsuēvit: the force of the tenses of this verb is explained in the note on l. 32.

nihil incommodī, *no harm; incommodī* is a genitive of the whole.

In section 29 account for the tense of *facit* 342; for the case of *vī* 348.

---

347. imber, -bris, *m.*, rain, storm.

lapis, lapidis, *m.*, stone.

350. accidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, *intr.* **[ad + cadō],** fall upon; happen, come about.

---

30. Passage of the Alps

Postquam Ligurēs hōc modō superātī sunt, Herculēs quam celerrimē prōgressus est, et post paucōs diēs ad Alpēs pervēnit. Necesse erat hōs trānsīre, quod in Italiam bovēs dūcere volēbat; rēs tamen summae erat difficultātis. Hī enim montēs, quī Galliam ulteriōrem ab Italiā dīvidunt, nive perennī teguntur; quam ob causam neque frūmentum neque pābulum in hīs regiōnibus invenīrī potest. Herculēs igitur,

---

351. quam celerrimē, *as rapidly as possible; quam* is employed with a superlative to indicate the highest degree possible.

355. Galliam ulteriōrem: *i.e.*, Gaul north of the Alps; the valley of the Po in Italy was also inhabited at one time by a Gallic population and was known to the Romans as *Gallia citerior,* nearer Gaul.

356. quam ob causam, *for this reason;* for the position of the preposition see the note on *hōc in templō*, l. 73.

In section 30, what is the subject of *erat* 353?

---

353. necesse, *indecl. adj.*, necessary.

355. ulterior, -ius, *compar. adj.*, farther.

nix, nivis, *f.*, snow.

356. perennis, -e, *adj.* **[per + annus],** lasting through the year, perennial.

357. pābulum, -ī, *n.* [*compare* **pāscō**], food, pasturage, fodder.

antequam ascendere coepit, magnam cōpiam frūmentī et pābulī comparāvit, et bovēs onerāvit. Postquam in hīs rēbus trēs diēs cōnsūmpserat, quārtō diē profectus est et, contrā omnium opīniōnem, bovēs incolumēs in Italiam trādūxit.

---

359. com-parō, -parāre, -parāvī, -parātum, *tr.*, prepare.
onerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [onus, a burden], load, fill.
361. trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [trāns+dūcō], lead across.

---

31. Cacus Steals the Oxen

Post breve tempus ad flūmen Tiberim vēnit; illō tamen tempore nūlla erat urbs in eō locō. Rōma enim nōndum condita erat. Herculēs, itinere fessus, cōnstituit ibi paucōs diēs morārī atque sē ex labōribus recreāre. Haud procul ā valle ubi bovēs pāscēbantur antrum erat, in quō gigās quīdam, nōmine Cācus, tum habitābat. Hic speciem terribilem praebēbat, nōn modo quod ingentī magnitūdine corporis erat, sed quod ignem ex ōre expīrābat. Cācus autem dē adventū Herculis fāmam accēperat; noctū igitur vēnit et, dum Herculēs dormit, quattuor pulcherrimōrum boum abripuit. Hōs caudīs in antrum trāxit; hōc enim modō putāvit Herculem vestīgiīs dēceptum bovēs nōn inventūrum esse.

---

362. Tiberim: a few third declension nouns have *-im* as the ending of the accusative singular.

368. ingentī magnitūdine: ablative of description; what other case might be employed?

---

364. fessus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wearied, tired, exhausted.

365. re-creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, renew, restore, refresh.

366. pāscō, pāscere, pāvī, pāstum, *tr.*, supply with food, feed; *pass.*, graze, feed.

369. ōs, ōris, *n.*, mouth.

expīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [ex+spīrō, breathe], breathe out.

370. noctū, *adv.* [nox], at night, by night.

371. abripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tr.* [ab+rapiō], snatch away, steal.

372. cauda, -ae, *f.*, tail.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* (clean, prune); think, suppose.

373. dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [dē+capiō], beguile, deceive.

32. Hercules Discovers the Theft

Posterō diē, simul atque ē somnō excitātus est, Herculēs fūrtum animadvertit, et bovēs āmissōs undique quaerēbat. Hōs tamen nusquam reperīre poterat, nōn modo quod locī nātūram ignōrābat, sed quod vestīgiīs falsīs dēceptus est. Tandem, ubi magnam partem diēī frūstrā cōnsūmpsit, cum reliquīs bōbus prōgredī cōnstituit. At, dum proficīscī parat, ūnus ē bōbus quōs sēcum habuit mūgīre coepit. Extemplō iī quī in antrō inclūsī erant mūgītum reddidērunt; hōc modō Herculēs locum invēnit. Tum vehementer īrātus, ad spēluncam quam celerrimē sē contulit. At Cācus saxum ingēns dējēcerat et aditum spēluncae omnīnō obstrūxerat.

374. simul atque: the tense of the verb with this phrase was explained in the note on Per. 102.

380. ūnus ē bōbus: with cardinal numbers and with *quīdam* an ablative with *ex* or *dē* is more common than a genitive of the whole; the latter, however, sometimes occurs, as in l. 371.

383. quam celerrimē: to be translated as in l. 351.

375. fūrtum, -ī, *n.* [fūr, thief], theft.

376. nusquam, *adv.* **[ne+usquam],** nowhere.

377. falsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **fallō**], false, deceptive, misleading.

380. mūgiō, -īre, -īvī, —, *intr.*, low, bellow.

381. mūgītus, -ūs, *m.* **[mūgiō]**, lowing, bellowing.

382. spēlunca, -ae, *f.*, cave, cavern.

384. dējiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr.* **[dē+jaciō]**, throw down.

ob-struō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *tr.*, stop up, bar.

33. Recovery of the Oxen

Herculēs, quoniam nūllum alium introitum reperīre poterat, hoc saxum āmovēre cōnātus est; sed propter ejus magnitūdinem rēs erat difficillima. Diū labōrābat, neque quidquam efficere poterat. Tandem tamen magnō cōnātū saxum

387. neque, *but not;* occasionally *neque* is used as the equivalent of *sed nōn* instead of *et nōn.*

385. quoniam, *conj.* **[quom,** *for* **cum, +jam]**, since, inasmuch as.

introitus, -ūs, *m.* **[introeō,** go in], entrance.

386. ā-moveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.*, move away.

āmōvit et spēluncam patefēcit. Ibi āmissōs bovēs magnō cum gaudiō cōnspexit. Sed Cācum ipsum vix cernere potuit, quod spēlunca replēta erat fūmō quem ille mōre suō ēvomēbat. Herculēs, inūsitātā speciē turbātus, breve tempus haesitābat; mox tamen in spēluncam irrūpit et collum mōnstrī bracchiīs complexus est. Ille, etsī multum relūctātus est, nūllō modō sē līberāre potuit; et, quod nūlla facultās respīrandī dabātur, mox, quod necesse fuit, exanimātus est.

---

391. mōre suō, *according to his custom;* the ablative is employed to express the idea of "in accordance with."

392. breve tempus: accusative of duration of time.

396. quod (*a thing*), *which;* neuter, because referring to the fact in *exanimātus est.*

---

389. patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* [**pateō** + **faciō**], lay open, open, throw open.

390. cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētum, *tr.*, distinguish; discern, perceive.

391. fūmus, -ī, *m.*, smoke.

ēvomō, -vomere, -vomuī, -vomitum, *tr.*, vomit forth.

392. in-ūsitātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unusual, extraordinary.

393. haesitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [*freq. of* **haereō**], stick fast, remain fixed, hesitate.

---

34. Eleventh Labor — The Golden Apples of the Hesperides

Eurystheus, postquam bovēs Gēryonis accēpit, labōrem ūndecimum Herculī imposuit, graviōrem quam quōs suprā nārrāvimus. Jussit enim eum aurea pōma ex hortō Hesperidum auferre. Hesperidēs autem nymphae erant quaedam fōrmā praestantissimā, quae in terrā longinquā habitābant, et quibus aurea quaedam pōma ā Jūnōne commissa erant.

---

398. quam: supply *eī erant.*

400. quaedam: with *nymphae.*

---

398. ūndecimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ūndecim,** eleven], eleventh.

399. pōmum, -ī, *n.*, fruit, apple.

400. auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum, *tr.* [**ab** + **ferō**], carry away, carry off.

nympha, -ae, *f.*, nymph.

401. fōrma, -ae, *f.*, form, appearance; beauty.

prae-stāns, *gen.* **-stantis,** *adj.* [*pr. part. of* **praestō**], preëminent, distinguished, surpassing.

longinquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**longus**], remote, distant; lengthy, long.

Multī hominēs, aurī cupiditāte inductī, haec pōma auferre jam anteā cōnātī erant; rēs tamen difficillima erat. Nam hortus in quō pōma erant mūrō ingentī undique circumdatus est; praetereā dracō quīdam, quī centum capita habēbat, portam hortī dīligenter custōdiēbat. Opus igitur quod Eurystheus Herculī imperāverat erat summae difficultātis, nōn modo ob causās quās memorāvimus, sed quod Herculēs situm hortī omnīnō ignōrābat.

---

408. Herculī: dative with *imperāverat, had imposed upon Hercules.*

In section 34 point out a dative governed by a compound verb; an ablative of description; a genitive of description; an infinitive with subject accusative.

---

403. cupiditās, -ātis, *f.* [cupidus], eagerness, longing, desire.

in-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead in; move, induce.

405. circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, *tr.*, place around, surround.

406. dracō, -ōnis, *m.*, serpent, dragon.

409. memorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [memor, mindful], mention, recount, relate.

410. situs, -ūs, *m.*, site, location.

---

35. Atlas, Who Upheld the Heavens

Herculēs, quamquam quiētem vehementer cupiēbat, cōnstituit tamen Eurystheō pārēre; et simul ac jussa ejus accēpit, proficīscī mātūrāvit. Multōs mercātōrēs interrogāverat dē sēde Hesperidum; nihil tamen certum reperīre potuerat. Frūstrā per multās terrās iter fēcit, et multa perīcula subiit; tandem, postquam in hīs itineribus tōtum annum cōnsūmpsit, ad extrēmam partem orbis, quae proxima erat Ōceanō, per-

---

412. Eurystheō: dative with *pārēre.*

417. orbis: supply *terrārum;* the two words together mean *the world;* the ancients regarded the earth as a circular plane or disk.

---

412. jussum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* jubeō], order, command.

413. mercātor, -ōris, *m.* [mercor, to trade], trader, merchant.

inter-rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, ask, question.

415. sub-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr. and tr.*, go under; undergo, submit to; enter.

417. extrēmus, -a, -um, *adj.* [exterus, on the outside], outermost, farthest, most distant.

orbis, orbis, -ium, *m.*, ring, circle; **orbis terrārum,** the earth, the world.

vēnit. Hīc stābat vir quīdam, nōmine Atlās, ingentī magnitūdine corporis, quī caelum (ita trādunt) umerīs suīs sustinēbat, et in terram dēcidere prohibēbat. Herculēs tantum labōrem magnopere mīrātus, post paulō in colloquium cum Atlante vēnit et, postquam causam itineris exposuit, auxilium ejus petiit.

---

419. ita trādunt, *so legend has it, as the legend goes;* literally *so they hand down.*

umerīs: ablative of means, but to be translated *on his shoulders.*

caelum dēcidere: infinitive with subject accusative, object of *prohibēbat,* as in l. 343.

421. mīrātus: a past participle to be translated as a present, as explained in the note on l. 331.

In section 35 point out a dative governed by an adjective.

---

420. dēcidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, *intr.* [dē+cadō], fall down, fall off.

---

36. A Substitute

Atlās autem potuit Herculī maximē prōdesse; ille enim, quoniam ipse erat pater Hesperidum, situm hortī bene scīvit. Postquam igitur audīvit causam itineris Herculis, "Ipse," inquit, "ad hortum ībō; ego sī hortābor, fīliae certē pōma suā sponte trādent." Herculēs, ubi haec audīvit, magnopere gāvīsus est; cupiēbat enim rem sine vī fierī. Cōnstituit igitur oblātum auxilium accipere. Sed quod Atlās abitūrus erat, necesse erat aliquem caelum umerīs sustinēre. Hoc igitur negōtium Herculēs libenter suscēpit et, quamquam rēs erat

---

424. Herculī: dative with *prōdesse.* Why?

427. suā sponte, *of their own accord, without compulsion; sponte* is found almost exclusively in the ablative, expressing manner, with *meā, suā, tuā.*

---

424. prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfuī, *intr.,* be useful, benefit, profit, serve.

425. bene, *adv.* [bonus], well.

427. hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.,* urge, encourage, exhort.

certē, *adv.* [certus], assuredly, certainly.

428. (spōns) spontis, *f.* [*compare* **spondeō,** promise], *only abl. sing. in common use (generally with the possessives* **meā, tuā, suā**); of one's own accord, voluntarily.

summī labōris, tōtum pondus caelī continuōs complūrēs diēs sōlus sustinuit.

In section 36 point out an accusative of duration of time.

---

433. pondus, ponderis, *n.* [*compare* pendō], weight, a weight.
continuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [contineō], successive, continuous.
com-plūrēs, -plūra, *adj.*, several, a number of, many.

---

37. Return of Atlas

Atlās intereā abierat et ad hortum Hesperidum, quī pauca mīlia passuum aberat, sē quam celerrimē contulerat. Eō ubi vēnit, causam veniendī exposuit, et ā fīliābus suīs pōma vehementer petīvit. Illae diū haerēbant; nōlēbant enim hoc facere, quod ab ipsā Jūnōne, dē quā ante dictum est, hoc mūnus accēperant. Atlās tamen post multa verba iīs persuāsit, et pōma ad Herculem rettulit. Herculēs intereā, quī plūrēs diēs expectāverat, neque ūllam fāmam dē reditū Atlantis accēperat, hāc morā graviter commōtus est. Tandem quīntō diē Atlantem vīdit redeuntem, et mox magnō cum gaudiō pōma accēpit; tum, postquam grātiās prō tantō beneficiō ēgit, ad Graeciam proficīscī mātūrāvit.

---

435. pauca mīlia passuum, *a few miles.* The use of *mīlle* in the plural was explained in the note on l. 181.

437. fīliābus: if the dative and ablative plural of *fīlia* were written *fīliīs*, with what other word would it be confused in those cases?

In section 37 account for the case of *mīlia* 436; of *iīs* 440; of *diē* 444. What is the force of a superlative with *quam?*

---

438. haereō, -ēre, haesī, haesūrus, *intr.*, stick, cling; hesitate.
440. mūnus, mūneris, *n.*, service, duty; present, gift.
442. plūs, *gen.* **plūris** [*compar. of* multus], *subst.*, *n. sg.*, more; *pl.*, **plūrēs, plūra,** *adj.*, more, a greater number of.
444. quīntus, -a, -um, *adj.* [quīnque], fifth.

---

38. Twelfth Labor — Cerberus, the Three-Headed Dog

Postquam aurea pōma ad Eurystheum relāta sunt, ūnus modo relinquēbātur ē duodecim labōribus quōs Pȳthia Her-

---

448. quōs Pȳthia Herculī praecēperat, *which Pythia had enjoined upon Hercules;* the accusative and the dative are explained in App. 55, *a.*

culī praecēperat. Eurystheus autem, quod Herculem magnopere timēbat, sē ab eō in perpetuum līberāre volēbat. Jussit igitur eum canem Cerberum ex Orcō in lūcem trahere. Hoc opus omnium difficillimum erat; nēmō enim umquam ex Orcō redierat. Praetereā Cerberus iste mōnstrum erat horribilī speciē, quī tria capita serpentibus saevīs cīncta habēbat. Antequam tamen hunc labōrem nārrāmus, nōn aliēnum vidētur, quoniam dē Orcō mentiōnem fēcimus, pauca dē istā regiōne prōpōnere.

450. in perpetuum, *forever;* the neuter adjective is used as a noun.

455. aliēnum, *out of place.*

In section 38 account for the case of *labōribus* 448; could the genitive be used instead?

449. praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [prae, before, + capiō], enjoin upon, impose upon; teach.

450. perpetuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, continuous, constant, perpetual; *subst.*, *n. sg.*, in perpetuum, for all time, forever.

455. aliēnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [alius], another's; out of place; unfavorable.

456. mentiō, -ōnis, *f.*, mention.

39. Orcus or Hades, the Abode of the Dead

Dē Orcō, quī īdem Hādēs appellābātur, haec trāduntur. Ut quisque ē vītā discesserat, mānēs ejus ad Orcum, sēdem mortuōrum, ā deō Mercuriō dēdūcēbantur. Hujus regiōnis, quae sub terrā fuisse dīcitur, rēx erat Plūtō, cujus uxor erat Prōserpina, Jovis et Cereris fīlia. Mānēs igitur, ā Mercuriō dēductī, prīmum ad rīpam veniēbant Stygis flūminis, quō

458. īdem, *also,* a frequent meaning of the word.

459. Ut, *when.* In this sense *ut* takes an indicative.

discesserat: past perfect of repeated or habitual action; in like manner *dēdūcēbantur* is an imperfect of habitual action.

mānēs: a plural noun, but translated by a singular.

460. Mercuriō: one of the functions ascribed to the god Mercury was that of guide of souls into the lower world.

459. mānēs, -ium, *m. pl.*, a departed spirit, shade, ghost.

continētur rēgnum Plūtōnis. Hoc omnēs trānsīre necesse erat quī in Orcum veniēbant. Quoniam tamen in hōc flūmine nūllus pōns erat, mānēs trānsvehēbantur ā Charonte quōdam, quī cum parvā scaphā ad rīpam expectābat. Charōn prō hōc officiō mercēdem postulābat, neque volēbat quemquam sine hōc praemiō trānsvehere. Ob hanc causam mōs erat apud antīquōs nummum in ōre mortuī pōnere; eō modō, ut putābant, mortuus ad Stygem veniēns pretium trājectūs solvere poterat. Iī autem quī post mortem in terrā nōn sepultī erant Stygem trānsīre nōn potuērunt, sed in lītore per centum annōs errāre coāctī sunt; tum dēmum licuit Orcum intrāre.

464. omnēs trānsīre necesse erat, *all must cross.* The subject of *erat* is *omnēs trānsīre.*

465. in (*flūmine*), *over.*

466. Charonte: Charon was represented in literature and art as an old man of squalid appearance, but hale and vigorous.

469. mōs erat . . . pōnere, *it was the custom to place; pōnere* is the subject of *erat.*

470. mortuī, *of the dead person.*

474. errāre: dependent upon *coāctī sunt.*

475. intrāre: subject of *licuit.*

466. trāns-vehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.*, convey across, carry over.

467. scapha, -ae, *f.*, skiff, boat.

468. mercēs, -ēdis, *f.*, hire, pay, fee.

470. nummus, -ī, *m.*, a coin.

471. trājectus, -ūs, *m.* [trājiciō], crossing over, passage.

472. sepeliō, -īre, -īvī, -pultum, *tr.*, bury.

475. intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, enter.

40. The Realm of Pluto

Postquam mānēs Stygem hōc modō trānsierant, ad alterum veniēbant flūmen, quod Lēthē appellātum est. Ex hōc flūmine aquam bibere cōgēbantur. Quod ubi fēcerant, rēs

478. Quod ubi fēcerant, *and when they had done this.* The Latin relative pronoun often stands at the beginning of a sentence and refers to an antecedent in the preceding sentence. When thus used it is often followed by *ubi*, as in this instance, or by *cum.* In this use it is translated by a personal or a demonstrative pronoun.

omnēs in vītā gestās ē memoriā dēpōnēbant. Dēnique ad sēdem ipsam Plūtōnis veniēbant, cujus introitus ā cane Cerberō custōdiēbātur. Ibi Plūtō, nigrō vestītū indūtus, cum uxōre Prōserpinā in soliō sedēbat. Stābant etiam nōn procul ab eō locō tria alia solia, in quibus sedēbant Mīnōs, Rhadamanthus, et Aeacus, jūdicēs īnferōrum. Hī mortuīs jūs dīcēbant et praemia poenāsque cōnstituēbant. Bonī enim in Campōs Ēlysiōs, sēdem beātōrum, veniēbant; improbī autem in Tartarum mittēbantur, et multīs variīsque suppliciīs ibi excruciābantur.

---

482. Stābant, *there stood;* the English expletive "there" has no equivalent in Latin; its effect is often obtained by placing the Latin verb first in the sentence.

484. mortuīs jūs dīcēbant, *dispensed justice to the dead.*

486. Campōs Ēlysiōs: in early Greek literature the Elysian Fields were conceived of as lying in the far West, at the earth's extremity, or in the Islands of the Blest. At a later time they were represented as a part of the lower world.

---

479. memoria, -ae, *f.* [memor, mindful], memory, remembrance.

481. niger, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, black.

vestītus, -ūs, *m.* [vestiō, to clothe], clothing.

482. solium, -ī, *n.*, throne.

484. jūdex, -icis, *m.*, judge.

īnferī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* [īnferus, below, lower], those of the lower world, the dead, the shades.

jūs, jūris, *n.*, right, law, justice.

486. improbus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- + probus, honest], bad, wicked.

488. ex-cruciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, rack, torture.

---

41. Charon's Ferry

Herculēs postquam imperia Eurystheī accēpit, in Lacōniam ad Taenarum statim sē contulit; ibi enim spēlunca erat ingentī magnitūdine, per quam (ut trādēbātur) hominēs ad Orcum dēscendēbant. Eō ubi vēnit et ex incolīs situm spē-

---

491. ut trādēbātur: the clause has the same sense as *ita trādunt,* l. 419.

492. Eō, *to that place.*

---

489. imperium, -ī, *n.* [imperō], power, authority.

luncae cognōvit, sine morā dēscendere cōnstituit. Nec tamen sōlus hoc iter faciēbat. Mercurius enim et Minerva sē sociōs eī adjūnxerant. Ubi ad rīpam Stygis vēnit, Herculēs scapham Charontis cōnscendit. Quod tamen Herculēs vir erat ingentī magnitūdine corporis, Charōn solvere nōlēbat; arbitrābātur enim tantum pondus scapham suam in mediō flūmine mersūrum esse. Tandem tamen, minīs Herculis territus, Charōn scapham solvit et eum incolumem ad ulteriōrem rīpam perdūxit.

495. sociōs, *as companions.*

495. ad-jungō, -jungere, -jūnxī, -jūnctum, *tr.*, join to, attach.

499. minae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, threats.

42. The Twelve Labors Accomplished

Postquam flūmen Stygem tālī modō trānsiit, Herculēs in sēdem ipsīus Plūtōnis vēnit, et, postquam causam veniendī docuit, ab eō facultātem Cerberum auferendī petīvit. Plūtō, quī dē Hercule fāmam accēperat, eum benignē excēpit, et facultātem quam ille petēbat libenter dedit. Jussit tamen Herculem imperāta Eurystheī facere et posteā Cerberum in Orcum rūrsus redūcere. Herculēs haec pollicitus est, et Cerberum, quem nōn sine magnō perīculō manibus prehenderat, summō cum labōre ex Orcō in lūcem et ad urbem Eurystheī trāxit. Eō ubi vēnit, Eurystheus ex ātriō statim refūgit; tantus pavor animum ejus occupāverat. Postquam autem paulum sē ex timōre recēpit, multīs cum lacrimīs clāmitāvit sē velle mōnstrum sine morā in Orcum redūcī. Sīc, contrā omnium opīniōnem, duodecim illī labōrēs quōs Pȳthia praecēperat intrā duodecim annōs cōnfectī sunt. Itaque Her-

504. auferendī: a gerund with a direct object, *Cerberum;* App. 124, Note 1.

513. sē recēpit, *recovered.*

culēs, servitūte tandem līberātus, magnō cum gaudiō Thēbās rediit.

517. **Thēbās,** *to Thebes;* the name of a city without a preposition to express the place to which will be explained in later lessons.

---

43. Nessus, the Centaur

Post haec Herculēs multa alia praeclāra perfēcit, quae nunc perscrībere longum est. Tandem, jam aetāte prōvectus, Dēianīram, Oeneī fīliam, in mātrimōnium dūxit; post tamen trēs annōs puerum quendam, nōmine Eunomum, cāsū occīdit. Mōre antīquō necesse erat Herculem ob eam rem in exilium īre; itaque cum uxōre suā ē fīnibus ejus cīvitātis exīre mātūrāvit. Dum tamen iter faciunt, ad flūmen quoddam pervēnērunt in quō nūllus pōns erat, et dum quaerunt modum trānseundī, accurrit Centaurus quīdam, nōmine Nessus, quī auxilium viātōribus obtulit. Herculēs igitur uxōrem suam in tergum Nessī imposuit; tum ipse flūmen nandō trānsiit. At Nessus, paulum in aquam prōgressus, ad rīpam subitō revertit et Dēianīram auferre cōnābātur. Quod ubi animadvertit Herculēs, īrā graviter commōtus, arcum intendit et pectus Nessī sagittā trānsfīxit.

519. **quae:** object of *perscrībere.*

520. **longum est,** *it would take too long.*

523. **Mōre:** ablative expressing accordance, as in l. 391.

529. **nandō,** *by swimming,* ablative of the gerund expressing means and manner.

531. **Quod ubi:** the note on l. 478 should be consulted.

519. **prae-clārus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, very bright, brilliant; splendid, distinguished.

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**per+faciō**], accomplish, perform, complete.

520. **per-scrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum,** *tr.*, write in full, write out, describe fully.

prō-vehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.*, carry forward; *pass.*, ride forward; sail out; **aetāte prōvectus,** advanced in years.

523. **exilium, -ī,** *n.* [**exul**], exile.

528. **viātor, -ōris,** *m.* [**via**], traveler.

529. **nō, nāre, nāvī, —,** swim.

532. **pectus, pectoris,** *n.*, breast.

44. The Poisoned Robe

Nessus igitur, sagittā Herculis trānsfīxus, moriēns humī jacēbat; at nōlēns occāsiōnem Herculem ulcīscendī dīmittere, ita locūtus est. "Tū, Dēianīra, verba morientis audī: sī vīs amōrem marītī tuī cōnservāre, aliquid sanguinis hujus quī ē pectore meō effunditur sūme ac repōne; tum, sī umquam suspīciō in mentem tuam vēnerit, vestem marītī hōc sanguine īnficiēs." Haec locūtus Nessus animam efflāvit; Dēianīra autem, nihil malī suspicāta, imperāta fēcit. Post breve tempus Herculēs bellum contrā Eurytum rēgem Oechaliae suscēpit et, ubi rēgem ipsum cum fīliīs interfēcit, Iolēn, fīliam Eurytī, captīvam redūxit. Antequam tamen domum vēnit,

---

534. humī, *on the ground;* the use of this case, the locative, will be explained later.

535. Herculem ulcīscendī: the genitive of the gerund with a direct object, as in l. 504.

536. morientis, *of one who is dying;* a present participle (from *morior*) used as a noun.

537. aliquid sanguinis hujus, *some of this blood;* what kind of genitive?

540. īnficiēs, *you will dye;* the future indicative is sometimes employed both in Latin and in English as a substitute for the imperative.

541. nihil malī, *no harm.*

suspicāta, *suspecting;* past participle of a deponent verb with present force, like *mīrātus,* l. 421.

544. domum, *home;* the accusative of this noun is used without a preposition to express the place to which.

---

534. humī, *adv.* [*locative of* **humus,** ground], on the ground.

535. occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**ob+cadō**], opportunity, occasion, chance.

ulcīscor, -ī, ultus sum, *tr.*, take vengeance on, avenge.

537. amor, -ōris, *m.*, love.

cōn-servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, retain, preserve.

538. effundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *tr.* [**ex+fundō**], pour out; use up, waste.

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *tr.* [**sub+emō**], take, take up.

re-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, replace, restore; put away, keep, preserve.

umquam, *adv.*, ever.

suspīciō, -ōnis, *f.* [*compare* **suspiciō,** suspect], suspicion, distrust.

539. mēns, mentis, *f.*, the mind.

540. anima, -ae, *f.*, air, breath; life.

efflō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**ex+flō,** blow], breathe out.

541. suspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.* [*compare* **suspiciō**], suspect.

nāvem ad Cēnaeum prōmuntorium appulit. Ibi in terram ēgressus quod Jovī sacrificāre volēbat, āram cōnstituit. Dum tamen sacrificium parat, Licham comitem suum domum īre et vestem albam referre jussit; mōs enim erat apud antīquōs in sacrificandō vestem albam gerere. At Dēianīra, arbitrāta Herculem amōrem ergā Iolēn habēre, vestem, priusquam Lichae dedit, sanguine Nessī īnfēcit.

---

549. sacrificandō: ablative of the gerund governed by a preposition. **arbitrāta,** *thinking.*

---

545. prōmuntorium, -ī, *n.,* headland, promontory.

546. sacrificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [sacer+faciō], offer sacrifice, sacrifice.

547. comes, -itis, *m. and f.,* companion.

548. albus, -a, -um, *adj.,* white.

550. ergā, *prep. with acc.,* towards, for.

prius-quam, *conj.,* before.

---

45. The Death of Hercules

Herculēs, nihil malī suspicātus, vestem quam Lichās attulit statim induit; post tamen breve tempus dolōrem per omnia membra sēnsit, sed quod causam ejus reī ignōrābat magnopere mīrābātur. Dolōre paene exanimātus, vestem dētrahere cōnātus est. Illa tamen in corpore haesit, neque ūllō modō dīvellī potuit. Tum dēmum Herculēs, quasi furōre impulsus, in montem Oetam sē contulit et in rogum, quem summā celeritāte extrūxit, sē imposuit. Hoc ubi fēcit, voluit eōs quī circumstābant rogum quam celerrimē accendere. Omnēs diū recūsābant; tandem tamen pāstor quīdam, ad misericor-

---

557. dī-vellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, *tr.,* tear apart, tear away.

qua-si, *adv.,* as if.

impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [in+pellō], drive forward; impel, urge on.

558. rogus, -ī, *m.,* funeral pile, funeral pyre.

559. extruō, -uere, -ūxī, -ūctum, *tr.* [struō], pile, heap up; erect.

560. circum-stō, -stāre, -stetī, —, *intr.,* stand around, surround.

561. recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [re-+causa], refuse, decline.

pāstor, -ōris, *m.* [pāscō], shepherd.

misericordia, -ae, *f.* [misericors, compassionate], pity, compassion.

diam inductus, ignem subdidit. Tum, dum omnia fūmō obscūrantur, Herculēs, dēnsā nūbe vēlātus, ā Jove in Olympum abreptus est.

---

563. Herculēs . . . abreptus est: since Hercules was the son of Zeus it was not unnatural, in view of his marvelous exploits, for legend to represent him as deified and free from the death usual to mortals.

---

562. sub-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, put under, apply.
563. obscūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [obscūrus], darken, cover, hide.
vēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [vēlum, veil], cover, envelop, veil.



VIEW OF MODERN ROME

PART II — LESSONS

LESSON I

THE LOCATIVE: DECLENSION OF *DOMUS*

USE OF THE LOCATIVE

1. In addition to the cases which have been given, a few nouns have another case, called the Locative. This case denotes place where, just as the ablative with **in** does in other nouns and pronouns. Names of cities and towns and the common noun **domus,** which is given in this lesson, are the most important words which have a locative case.

FORM OF THE LOCATIVE

2. The locative of nouns of the first and second declensions in the singular number has the same form as the genitive singular. In the plural of nouns of these two declensions and in the singular and plural of other nouns it regularly has the same form as the ablative. The locative of **Rōma** is **Rōmae,** *at Rome,* or *in Rome,* the locative of **Athenae** is **Athēnīs,** *at Athens* or *in Athens.* The meaning of the rest of the sentence will make it possible to decide whether such a form as **Rōmae** is locative, genitive, or dative.

DECLENSION OF *DOMUS*

3. The noun **domus** is declined partly in the fourth declension and partly in the second:

	Sing.	*Plu.*
NOMINATIVE	domus	domūs
GENITIVE	domūs	domuum
DATIVE	domuī *or* domō	domibus
ACCUSATIVE	domum	domōs
ABLATIVE	domō *or* domū	domibus
LOCATIVE	domī	

a. Occasionally **domī** is used as a genitive. In the genitive plural **domōrum** is sometimes found, and the accusative plural is sometimes **domūs.** There are also a few other nouns which have some case forms of one declension and some of another.

4. VOCABULARY

Athēnae, -ārum, F. *pl.*, Athens

comprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum, seize, arrest

domus, -ūs (*see section* 3), F., home, house

Graecī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the Greeks

Laurentum, -ī, N., Laurentum, *an ancient town of Italy*

servitūs, -tūtis, F., slavery, servitude

Troja, -ae, F., Troy, *an ancient city of Asia Minor*

Trojānī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the Trojans

a. There are a few names of cities which have only plural forms. **Athēnae** belongs to this class. Its locative form is **Athēnīs.**

EXERCISES

5. 1. Cōnsul cum exercitū suō tum Laurentī erat. 2. Fīlius ōrātōris Athēnīs est, sed fīlia domī manet. 3. Patrēs nostrī ā Graecīs Trojae victī sunt, sed nōs Graecōs vincēmus. 4. Trojānī, quod servitūtem timēbant, domōs fortiter dēfendērunt. 5. Hī hominēs in urbe comprehēnsī sunt, quod eōs hostēs esse arbitrābāmur. 6. Trojānī et Graecī decem annōs in eīs locīs bellum gessērunt. 7. Nōmen Trojae saepe audīvimus, quod ibi bellum clārum gestum est. 8. Fēlīcior domī eram quam in hāc terrā.

6. 1. My father, who is now in Rome, will return soon. 2. Many wished to remain at home, because they feared wounds and death. 3. The consul's father had a residence at Laurentum. 4. There is a very famous temple at Athens, which I wish to see. 5. The king was among those who were killed at Troy.

LESSON II

SUMMARY OF PLACE CONSTRUCTIONS

PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES IN PLACE CONSTRUCTIONS

7. We have already seen prepositional phrases used to denote place to which, place from which, and place in which. A review of these constructions is here given.

(1) Place to which is regularly expressed by the accusative with **ad** or **in**.

> **Lēgātus** ***in Italiam*** **rediit,** *the lieutenant has returned to Italy.* **Caesar** ***ad urbem*** **profectus est,** *Caesar set out for the city.*

(2) Place from which is regularly expressed by the ablative with **ab, dē,** or **ex**.

> **Dictātor** ***ex urbe*** **ēgressus est,** *the dictator departed from the city.*

(3) Place where is regularly expressed by the ablative with **in**.

> **Cōnsul** ***in urbe*** **habitat,** *the consul lives in the city.*

PLACE CONSTRUCTIONS WITHOUT PREPOSITIONS

8. In expressions of place to which and place from which with names of cities and towns and the noun **domus** the accusative and ablative are used as in other nouns, but without prepositions. A summary of place constructions with these words[1] is as follows:

(1) Place to which is expressed by the accusative without a preposition.

> **Lēgātus** ***Rōmam*** **rediit,** *the lieutenant returned to Rome.*

(2) Place from which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

> **Dictātor** ***Rōmā*** **ēgressus est,** *the dictator departed from Rome.*

---

[1] Case forms of a few other nouns are occasionally used in place constructions without prepositions.

(3) Place where is expressed by the locative, which in nouns of the first and second declensions in the singular is identical with the genitive, and in most other words is identical with the ablative.

Cōnsul *Rōmae* habitat, *the consul lives in Rome.*

a. A few words, among which are **locus** and **pars,** sometimes omit the preposition in expressions of place where, especially if modified by an adjective.

***Hōc locō* nōn diū manēbimus,** *we shall not remain long in this place.*

9. **VOCABULARY**

atque, *conj.*, and, and also
crūdēlis, -e, cruel
enim, *conj.*, for
Latīnus, -ī, M., Latinus, *a legendary king in Italy*
Lāvīnia, -ae, F., Lavinia, *a daughter of Latinus*
mātrimōnium, -ī, N., marriage
proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, set out
sīve, *conj.*, whether, or if; **sīve . . . sīve,** either . . . or, whether . . . or

a. The conjunction **atque** is sometimes used to give prominence to the second of the two words or expressions connected, but frequently it does not differ materially in meaning from **et** or **-que.**

b. The position of **enim** is always after one or more words of its sentence, but it is translated as if it stood at the beginning.

EXERCISES

10. 1. Dux Trojānōrum atque duo ex amīcīs ejus ad urbem profectī sunt. 2. Posteā Latīnus, quī tum erat rēx in eā urbe, fīliam suam ducī Trojānōrum in mātrimōnium (*in marriage*) dedit. 3. Lāvīnia, fīlia rēgis, Laurentī nōn habitābat. 4. Obses Rōmā discessit et domum properat. 5. Domī semper mānsī, sed terrās externās vidēre volō. 6.

Hanc fābulam quam nārrās Rōmae audīvī. 7. Multī enim ibi eam nārrābant. 8. Sīve vincam sīve vincar, numquam Trojam redībō. 9. Puer nocte domō excessit, et nōndum rediit. 10. Illī barbarī crūdēlēs bellum gerere cum nostrīs sociīs cupiunt.

11. 1. My brother, who is now at home, will go to Athens this winter. 2. The Trojans and their allies did not set out for Laurentum. 3. After the battle the soldier returned home. 4. Many came into the town from the fields, because they feared the barbarians. 5. Lavinia was then at home with her mother. 6. I set out from home with the messenger whom the general had sent.



GATE OF MODERN ROME

LESSON III

CONJUGATION OF *NŌLŌ*

12. The verb **nōlō,** *be unwilling, not wish,* is a compound of **volō.**[1] Its principal parts are **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.** Like **volō,** it is irregular in the present indicative, the other tenses of the indicative being formed like those of a regular verb of the third conjugation.

PRESENT INDICATIVE

Singular	*Plural*
nōlō	nōlumus
nōn vīs	nōn vultis
nōn vult	nōlunt

IMPERATIVE

	Singular	*Plural*
Present	nōlī	nōlīte

INFINITIVES	PARTICIPLE
Present nōlle	*Present* nōlēns
Perfect nōluisse	

13. VOCABULARY

antīquus, -a, -um, ancient, of long ago

crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētum, increase, grow greater

Etrūscī, -ōrum, M. *pl.,* the Etrurians *or* Etruscans

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, winter, spend the winter

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, be unwilling, not wish

ops, opis, F., power; *pl.,* resources, influence.

quoniam, *conj.,* since

Rutulī, -ōrum, M. *pl.,* the Rutuli *or* Rutulians, *a nation of central Italy.*

[1] The element with which **volō** is combined is a negative prefix **ne,** replaced in some forms by **nōn.**



VESSELS FOUND IN POMPEII

EXERCISES

14. 1. Trojānī, quī in Italiam vēnerant, cum Rutulīs bellum gerere nōlēbant. 2. Lēgātus dīxit gentem suam pācem facere nōlle (App. **109**). 3. In urbe aestāte (App. **69**) manēre nōlumus. 4. Quoniam Gallī magnās cōpiās nōn habent, adventum nostrum expectāre nōlunt. 5. In illō monte quem vidēs erat urbs antīqua Etrūscōrum. 6. Quoniam opēs Trojānōrum crēscēbant, gentēs Italiae potentiam eōrum timēbant. 7. Exercitus Rōmānōrum in Britanniā hiemāre nōlēbat. 8. Bellō cōnfectō (App. **75**), hī mīlitēs domum proficīscentur, et magnum gaudium erit. 9. Pater hujus rēgis domicilium Rōmae habēbat, atque ibi saepe vīsus est. 10. Haec gēns ab hostibus domō expulsa erat, et in Galliā errābat.

15. 1. The Romans did not wish to destroy this beautiful city. 2. The resources of the enemy are increasing, and our allies are in danger. 3. We do not wish to spend the winter in this part of Gaul. 4. These men do not have money, because they are unwilling to work. 5. Since the king of the Rutulians wishes to wage war, we shall send an army into his country (**fīnēs**).

LESSON IV

DECLENSION OF *VETUS* AND *QUISQUAM*

THE ADJECTIVE *VETUS*

16. As we have seen, third declension adjectives of one ending, such as **fēlīx** and **potēns** (App. **7,** 3), are **i**- stems. But there is one third declension adjective of one ending which is a consonant stem. It is declined as follows:

vetus, *old*
Base **veter-**

Singular		*Plural*	
M. F.	*N.*	*M. F.*	*N.*
vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
veterī	veterī	veteribus	veteribus
veterem	vetus	veterēs	vetera
vetere	vetere	veteribus	veteribus

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN *QUISQUAM*

17. The indefinite pronoun **quisquam,** *any one, any one at all,* is declined as follows:

	M. F.	*N.*
Nom.	quisquam	quicquam
Gen.	cujusquam	cujusquam
Dat.	cuiquam	cuiquam
Acc.	quemquam	quicquam
Abl.	quōquam	quōquam

a. **Quisquam** is used chiefly in clauses which contain a negative or a comparative, or which are introduced by a word meaning *if*. When a plural is needed, it is supplied from the plural forms of **ūllus.**

18. VOCABULARY

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, win over, conciliate

impleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, fill

Latīnī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the Latins, *the inhabitants of Latium, in central Italy*

moenia, -ium, N. *pl.*, walls (*of a city*)

mortālis, -e, mortal

quisquam, quicquam, anyone, anything, anyone (*or* thing) at all

ultimus, -a, -um, last

vetus, *gen.* **veteris**, old

a. The noun **moenia** is declined like the plural of **animal** (App. **3**, 4).

b. The neuter form of **quisquam** is sometimes **quidquam** in the nominative and accusative, instead of **quicquam**.

EXERCISES

19. 1. In vetere templō erat statua pulchra, quam vidēre volēbam. 2. Illum veterem librum quem pater meus mihi dedit numquam lēgī. 3. Nūllum sonum audīvimus, neque quemquam vīdimus. 4. Rēx hostium sociōs nostrōs conciliāre cōnātus est. 5. Tum multitūdō fugientium (*fugitives*, App. **84**) omnēs viās implēvit. 6. Post hoc bellum Trojānī et Latīnī sociī erant, et dēnique ūnus populus ex duōbus factus est. 7. Sed dē patriā nostrā dictum est Ē plūribus Ūnum. 8. Tempus omnia opera mortālia dēlēbit. 9. Hoc ultimum opus ejus virī clārī magnam laudem habet. 10. Ex illō colle moenia urbis nostrae vidēre poteris.

20. 1. The old wall which is behind the temple is low. 2. The soldier has a new sword, but his shield is old. 3. We are unwilling to give money to the boy who has brought the letter. 4. I returned to Rome from Laurentum with the same man with whom I had gone out (**exeō**) from Rome. 5. I have not been at home for four days, nor have I seen anyone from that place.

LESSON V

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: CLAUSES OF RESULT

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

21. In addition to the indicative and the imperative moods, the verb has another mood, which is called the Subjunctive. The Latin subjunctive is sometimes used to express ideas which we express in English by the indicative, and hence is often translated exactly like the indicative. The first uses of the mood to be taken up are of this class.

There are only four tenses in the subjunctive. They are the present, imperfect, perfect, and past perfect.

THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

22. The verbs **portō** and **moneō** are conjugated as follows in the present subjunctive:

ACTIVE

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
portem	portēmus	moneam	moneāmus
portēs	portētis	moneās	moneātis
portet	portent	moneat	moneant

PASSIVE

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
porter	portēmur	monear	moneāmur
portēris	portēminī	moneāris	moneāminī
portētur	portentur	moneātur	moneantur

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN CLAUSES OF RESULT

23. A subordinate clause which expresses result has its verb in the subjunctive. **Mīles tam fortis est ut nūllum periculum timeat,** *the soldier is so brave that he fears no danger.*

24. VOCABULARY

abundō, -āre, -āvī, overflow
adolēscō, -ere, adolēvī, adultum, grow up, grow to maturity
aetās, -tātis, F., age
imperium, -ī, N., power, authority
impigrē, *adv.*, industriously, energetically
mātūrus, -a, -um, full grown, mature
tam, *adv.*, so
ut, *conj.*, that

EXERCISES

25. 1. Ille homō tam benignus est ut omnēs eum ament. 2. Exercitus noster nunc tantus est ut hostēs nōs timeant. 3. Stultitia ejus hominis est tanta ut nūllōs amīcōs habeat. 4. Hic mōns tam altus est ut ab urbe nostrā facile videātur. 5. Tum flūmen abundābat et magnum dētrīmentum ferēbat. 6. Illī juvenēs in montibus adolēscēbant, et corpora eōrum valida fīēbant. 7. Propter aetātem hic agricola nōn jam labōrāre potest, itaque in oppidum migrāre vult. 8. Quoniam fīlius rēgis nōndum mātūrus est, imperium eī nōn dabitur. 9. Puer tam impigrē labōrat ut ab omnibus laudētur.

26. 1. This picture is so beautiful that it is praised by all. 2. The river is so wide that we fear to cross. 3. The danger is so great that we do not dare go out from the city. 4. The man is so old that he does not work in the fields. 5. Your friend is not here, nor has any one seen him.

LESSON VI

THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE — CONTINUED

THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

27. In the third and fourth conjugations the sign of the present subjunctive is **ā**. This tense sign replaces the characteristic vowel in **-ō** verbs of the third conjugation. In **-iō**

verbs of the third conjugation and in all verbs of the fourth conjugation, the tense sign follows the -i of the stem.

28. The verbs **dūcō, capiō,** and **audiō** are conjugated as follows in the present subjunctive:

ACTIVE

Singular

dūcam	capiam	audiam
dūcās	capiās	audiās
dūcat	capiat	audiat

Plural

dūcāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus
dūcātis	capiātis	audiātis
dūcant	capiant	audiant

PASSIVE

Singular

dūcar	capiar	audiar
dūcāris	capiāris	audiāris
dūcātur	capiātur	audiātur

Plural

dūcāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
dūcāminī	capiāminī	audiāminī
dūcantur	capiantur	audiantur

29. VOCABULARY

auferō, -ferre, abstulī, ablātum, carry away, carry off
crūdēlitās, -tātis, F., cruelty
fluō, -ere, flūxī, flūxum, flow
honor, -ōris, M., honor
laus, laudis, F., praise, glory
nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, be born
Rōmulus, -ī, M., Romulus, *the founder of Rome*
turba, -ae, F., crowd, mob

EXERCISES

30. 1. Perīculum tantum est ut omnēs in hīs locīs tēla semper gerant. 2. Flūmen tam celeriter fluit ut sonus aquae

ex hōc locō audiātur. 3. Haec animālia tam fera sunt ut nōn facile capiantur. 4. Ille puer tam īrātus est ut saxa in (*at*) aliōs puerōs jaciat. 5. Nōmen Rōmulī in magnō honōre Rōmae erat. 6. Paucōs amīcōs in eā turbā vīdī. 7. Multī crūdēlitātem ejus hominis timēbant ā quō hae statuae ablātae sunt. 8. Multī laudem nōn habent in eō locō in quō nātī sunt. 9. Ille imperātor tam avārus est ut multī eum condemnent.

31. 1. So many have been killed in this war that all now desire peace. 2. The fear of the mob is so great that men are assembling from all parts of the city. 3. The Romans are so brave that they easily repulse the enemy. 4. The boy is so faithful that he never complains. 5. This famous poet was born in a small town, but he lived for many years in Rome.

LESSON VII

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF *SUM* AND *POSSUM*: NOUN CLAUSES OF FACT

THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF *SUM* AND *POSSUM*

32. The present subjunctive of the irregular verbs **sum** and **possum** is as follows:

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
sim	sīmus	possim	possīmus
sīs	sītis	possīs	possītis
sit	sint	possit	possint

NOUN CLAUSES OF FACT

33. The third person singular of **fīō** (App. **36**) is often translated *it results* (freely, *the result is*) or *it comes about* (imperfect, *it resulted, the result was*, or *it came about*, etc.). When so used these forms are regularly followed by a clause introduced by **ut,** with its verb in the subjunctive. The verb

accidit, *it happens* (imperfect *it happened,* etc.) is followed by a clause of the same kind. These clauses introduced by **ut** are not quite the same as those which we have seen in section **23.** They are really the subjects of the verbs of the principal clauses, and are called Noun[1] clauses of Fact.

a. Sometimes such clauses are used as objects instead of subjects. In this lesson, however, they are found only as subjects.

Fit ***ut*** **paucōs amīcōs** ***habeāmus,*** *the result is* (*it results*) *that we have few friends.*

Saepe accidit ***ut*** **frātrem tuum in eā urbe** ***videam,*** *it often happens that I see your brother in that city.*

34. VOCABULARY

accidō, -ere, accidī, happen

Albānus, -a, -um, Alban; **Mōns Albānus,** the Alban Mount, *a small mountain about fifteen miles from Rome*

ignāvus, -a, -um, cowardly

ita, *adv.*, so, to such a degree

mēnsa, -ae, F., table

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum, drive out, rout

sub, *prep. with acc. and abl.*, under

viātor, -ōris, M., traveler

a. To denote the place toward which or up to which motion is directed **sub** takes the accusative; to denote the place where something exists or occurs it regularly takes the ablative.

EXERCISES

35. 1. Accidit ut viātor nunc in vīcō sit. 2. Fit ut patriam dēfendere possīmus, et (eam) dēfendēmus. 3. Nostrī sociī ita fortiter pugnant ut hostēs nūllam spem victōriae habeant. 4. Equitēs tam ignāvī sunt ut impetum barbarōrum expectāre nōn audeant. 5. Accidit ut sine tēlīs sīmus.

[1] Or substantive clauses of fact.



TOMB OF THE EMPEROR HADRIAN, IN ROME

6. Fit ut viātōrēs flūmen trānsīre nōn possint. 7. Sub (*at the foot of*) monte Albānō nova urbs condita est. 8. Māter puerī cibum in mēnsā posuit, et nunc eum expectat. 9. Ille rēx frātrem suum pepulit et in locō ejus rēgnāvit.

36. 1. It happens that no one can see us (is able to see us). 2. The result is that the city is in great danger. 3. The traveler is so cowardly that he remains in the village. 4. This farmer works so energetically that he is often tired out. 5. You are so cowardly that you cannot be (are not able to be) a good soldier.

LESSON VIII

THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF REGULAR VERBS: THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

37. The imperfect subjunctive of all regular verbs has the tense sign **-rē**[1] before the personal endings. It is formed on the present stem.

ACTIVE

Singular

I.	II.	III.		IV.
portārem	monērem	dūcerem	caperem	audīrem
portārēs	monērēs	dūcerēs	caperēs	audīrēs
portāret	monēret	dūceret	caperet	audīret
		Plural		
portārēmus	monērēmus	dūcerēmus	caperēmus	audīrēmus
portārētis	monērētis	dūcerētis	caperētis	audīrētis
portārent	monērent	dūcerent	caperent	audīrent

PASSIVE

Singular

portārer	monērer	dūcerer	caperer	audīrer
portārēris	monērēris	dūcerēris	caperēris	audīrēris
portārētur	monērētur	dūcerētur	caperētur	audīrētur
		Plural		
portārēmur	monērēmur	dūcerēmur	caperēmur	audīrēmur
portārēminī	monērēminī	dūcerēminī	caperēminī	audīrēminī
portārentur	monērentur	dūcerentur	caperentur	audīrentur

a. The imperfect subjunctive may be formed by adding the personal endings to the present active infinitive, with the necessary changes in quantity. This statement applies to all irregular verbs as well as to regular verbs.

---

[1] As has been previously stated, a long vowel in a tense sign or stem ending becomes short before the personal endings -m, -t, -nt, -r, and -ntur.

THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

38. (1) When the verb in the principal clause of a complex sentence is present, future, or future perfect, the verb of the subordinate clause, if subjunctive, is regularly present (or perfect).[1]

(2) When the verb in the principal clause is imperfect, perfect, or past perfect, the subjunctive in the subordinate clause is regularly imperfect (or past perfect).[1]

a. If the main verb is a perfect which is equivalent to an English present perfect, the dependent subjunctive is sometimes present and sometimes imperfect.

b. A result clause sometimes has its verb in the perfect after a principal verb denoting past time.

39. VOCABULARY

Ascanius, -ī, M., Ascanius, *the legendary founder of Alba Longa*

cōnspectus, -ūs, M., sight

dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, surrender, give up

falsō, *adv.*, falsely

laetitia, -ae, F., joy, gladness

tenuis, -e, slight, thin; shallow

vēnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, hunt

vocō, -āre, āvī, -ātum, call

EXERCISES

40. 1. Ille cōnsul ita fortiter patriam dēfenderat ut omnēs cīvēs eum laudārent. 2. Ita fēlīcēs in eā urbe erāmus ut diū manērēmus. 3. Cōpiae hostium tantae erant ut castra nōn facile dēfenderentur. 4. Audīvimus hanc parvam urbem ab Ascaniō conditam esse. 5. Centuriō quī in cōnspectū imperātōris stābat falsō ab inimīcō accūsābātur. 6. Aqua ita tenuis erat ut piscēs ā rīpā vidērentur. 7. Puerī quī in silvā vēnābantur nunc domum redeunt, quod ā patre suō vocātī sunt. 8. Hostēs sē dēdidērunt, et magna laetitia in

[1] The forms and uses of the perfect and past perfect subjunctive will be given later.

patriā nostrā est. 9. Barbarī ita terrentur ut ex omnibus partibus fugiant.

41. 1. Our soldiers made an attack so fiercely that they quickly captured the enemy's camp. 2. The general was so brave that he was loved by all the soldiers. 3. The forest was so large that we did not easily find our way in it. 4. The Trojans were so few that they did not resist longer. 5. The joy of the traveler was so great that he at once called his friend. 6. The forest in which I often hunt is in sight of (from) the village.

LESSON IX

THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF *SUM* AND *POSSUM*: IMPERSONAL VERBS

THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF *SUM* AND *POSSUM*

42. The verbs **sum** and **possum** are conjugated as follows in the imperfect subjunctive:

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
essem	essēmus	possem	possēmus
essēs	essētis	possēs	possētis
esset	essent	posset	possent

a. As has been seen in the case of regular verbs, these imperfect subjunctives are formed by adding the personal endings to the present infinitive.

IMPERSONAL VERBS

43. There are a few Latin verbs which do not have a noun or pronoun as a subject. They have as subject an infinitive, or an expression consisting of an infinitive with its subject in the accusative. Such verbs are called Impersonal. Two of the most important impersonal verbs are **oportet,** *it is necessary* or *it is proper,* and **licet,** *it is permitted.*

USE OF *OPORTET*

44. With **oportet** the subject is regularly an infinitive with subject accusative.

Hominem manēre oportet, *it is necessary that the man remain,* or *it is necessary for the man to remain.* This expression may also be translated *the man must remain,* or *the man ought to remain.* The latter translations seem to us in English to indicate a personal subject, but we must remember that in Latin the construction differs from the construction of the English equivalent.

USE OF *LICET*

45. The verb **licet** takes an infinitive as subject. The dative is commonly used to denote the person who is permitted to do the act denoted by the infinitive.

Centuriōnī redīre licet, *it is permitted (to) the centurion to return,* or *the centurion is permitted to return.* As in the use of **oportet,** the English translation commonly employs a personal verb; but it must be remembered that the word for *centurion* as used in this sentence is not to be expressed in Latin by the nominative.

46. VOCABULARY

comes, comitis, M., companion, comrade
contemnō, -temnere, -tempsī, -temptum, scorn, despise
eques, equitis, M., horseman; *pl.* horsemen *or* cavalry
jūs, jūris, N., right, law
licet, licēre, licuit, it is permitted, it is allowed
oportet, oportēre, oportuit, it is necessary, it is proper, one must, one ought
rēmus, -ī, M., oar
turris, turris, -ium, F., tower

a. The accusative singular of **turris** is regularly **turrim** and the ablative is **turrī.** A few other i-stem nouns have the accusative in **-im** and the ablative in **-ī.**

EXERCISES

47. 1. Accidit[1] ut nāvis sine rēmīs esset. 2. Rīpae flūminis tam altae erant ut equitēs eās ascendere nōn possent. 3. Fīēbat ut illī hominēs jūs contemnerent. 4. Turris tanta erat ut eam ex mūrō vidēre possēmus. 5. Exercitum in hōc locō manēre nōn oportet. 6. Cūr in viā ambulāre nōn licet? 7. Imperātōrem castra et arma dēdere nōn oportet. 8. Tibi hunc librum auferre nōn licet. 9. Comitēs meī tam ignāvī erant ut nihil efficere possem. 10. Ea victōria erat tanta ut per tōtam urbem laetitia esset.

48. 1. Our companions were so brave that the enemy could not (were not able to) frighten them. 2. It happened that the horsemen were in the village. 3. I worked so energetically that I was soon tired out. 4. It is necessary that help be sent (help to be sent) at once. 5. The traveler ought to set out today.

LESSON X

DATIVE OF PURPOSE: DATIVE OF REFERENCE

THE DATIVE OF PURPOSE

49. A noun in the dative is sometimes used to denote the purpose or end which something serves or is intended to serve.

Hunc librum *dōnō* mīsī, *I sent this book as a gift* (lit. *for a gift*).

a. The dative of purpose is sometimes employed where the English usage would require a predicate nominative.

Haec fāma *auxiliō* erit, *this reputation will be a help.*

---

[1] The form **accidit** may be either present, *it happens*, or perfect, *it happened*. See the principal parts. The use of **esset** in the subordinate clause shows by the sequence of tenses that **accidit** is here perfect.

THE DATIVE OF REFERENCE

50. The dative is sometimes used to denote the person with reference to whom an act is said to be done or a situation to exist. This use is especially important in expressions which contain a dative of purpose.

Legiō *equitātuī* auxiliō missa est, *the legion was sent as aid* (lit. *for aid*) *to the cavalry.*

a. Sometimes the dative of reference refers to a thing instead of a person.

Cohors *castrīs* praesidiō relicta est, *the cohort was left as a guard to the camp.*

51. VOCABULARY

amnis, amnis, -ium, M., river
cēna, -ae, F., dinner
cōnscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, enroll
dextra, -ae, F., right hand
imprōvīsō, *adv.*, unexpectedly
lapis, lapidis, M., stone
pedes, peditis, M., foot soldier: *pl.*, infantry
subsidium, -ī, N., reënforcements

a. The noun **dextra** is merely the feminine form of the adjective **dexter, -tra, -trum,** used as a noun.

EXERCISES

52. 1. Hī flōrēs mihi dōnō missī sunt. 2. Caesar statim legiōnem subsidiō oppidānīs mīsit. 3. Cōnsilium (*advice*) tuum nōbīs semper auxiliō fuit. 4. Lēgātus ūnam legiōnem castrīs praesidiō relīquit. 5. Tum amnis tam lātus erat ut peditēs trānsīre nōn possent. 6. Ille Gallus dextram suam in proeliō āmīsit. 7. Cēna parāta est, sed accidit ut frāter meus invenīrī non possit. 8. Hōs puerōs lapidēs jacere nōn oportet. 9. Caesarī duās novās legiōnēs cōnscrībere licuit. 10. Barbarī ita imprōvīsō impetum fēcērunt ut perīculum nostrī exercitūs magnum esset.

53. 1. Labienus at once sent the infantry as aid (for aid) to the town. 2. Two legions were sent as aid to our allies whose towns were being burned. 3. We have come as reënforcements to you, because your nation ought not to be defeated. 4. The friendship of the Romans was (for) a great help to this leader. 5. The consul is permitted (it is permitted to the consul) to enroll another legion.

LESSON XI

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE: *CUM* CAUSAL CLAUSES

THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, ACTIVE VOICE

54. The perfect active subjunctive is formed on the perfect stem with the tense sign **-erī.**

	Singular		
laudāverim	monuerim	dūxerim	audīverim
laudāverīs	monuerīs	dūxerīs	audīverīs
laudaverit	monuerit	dūxerit	audīverit
	Plural		
laudāverīmus	monuerīmus	dūxerīmus	audīverīmus
laudāverītis	monuerītis	dūxerītis	audīverītis
laudāverint	monuerint	dūxerint	audīverint

a. The perfect subjunctive of **sum** is formed in like manner on the stem **fu-: fuerim, fuerīs,** etc.

THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, PASSIVE VOICE

55. The perfect passive subjunctive is made up of the past participle and the present subjunctive of **sum.**

portātus sim	monitus sim	ductus sim	audītus sim
portātus sīs	monitus sīs	ductus sīs	audītus sīs
etc.	*etc.*	*etc.*	*etc.*

CUM CAUSAL CLAUSES

56. A subordinate clause introduced by **cum** meaning *since* has its verb in the subjunctive.

Cum nūlla nāvis in cōnspectū ***sit*****, domum revertar,** *since there is no ship in sight, I shall return home.*

57. VOCABULARY

apud, *prep. with acc.*, among, with
cum, *conj.*, since, although, when
cursus, -ūs, M., course
flectō, -ere, flexī, flexum, turn, bend
minae, -ārum, F. *pl.*, threats
revertor, revertī, revertī, reversum, return
sinistra, -ae, F., left hand
videor, -ērī, vīsus sum, seem, appear

a. The verb **revertor** is commonly used as a deponent in the present, imperfect, and future tenses. In the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect it has active forms. Sometimes active forms are found in the present system.

b. The verb **videor,** meaning *seem,* is merely the passive form of **videō,** *see.* It will be possible to decide from the context whether a doubtful form should be translated *seem* or as a passive of **videō.**

EXERCISES

58. 1. Cum hunc puerum laudāverīs, amīcus fidēlis tuus semper erit. 2. Cum Helvētiī cursum suum flexerint, eōs diūtius sequī nōn possumus. 3. Cum nihil hīc efficere possīmus, domum revertēmur. 4. Cum auctōritās tua magna apud Gallōs sit, tē cum hāc epistulā in Galliam mittam. 5. Ille dux nōn mihi fortis vidētur. 6. Cum exercitus meus numquam victus sit, minās tuās nōn vereor. 7. Puer sinistrā epistulam tenet quam eī ā sorōre data est. 8. In hīs dolōribus amīcitia tua mihi magnō auxiliō est. 9. Gladius



TEMPLE IN ROME

quem frāter meus tibi dōnō dedit est gravis. 10. Factum est ut tē juvāre nōn possēmus.

59. 1. Since you have often praised this picture, I will give it to you. 2. Since no enemy has been seen today, we shall return to (into) the village. 3. Since the cavalry has not yet arrived, we cannot make an attack. 4. Since the traveler has turned his course toward (**ad**) the river, we shall soon see him. 5. Caesar left one legion as a guard (Section **49**) for the bridge. 6. The soldiers are so brave that they do not fear the threats of the enemy.

LESSON XII

THE PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE: *CUM* ADVERSATIVE CLAUSES

THE PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, ACTIVE VOICE

60. The past perfect subjunctive in the active voice is formed on the perfect stem with the tense sign **-issē.**

Singular

portāvissem	monuissem	dūxissem	audīvissem
portāvissēs	monuissēs	dūxissēs	audīvissēs
portāvisset	monuisset	dūxisset	audīvisset

Plural

portāvissēmus	monuissēmus	dūxissēmus	audīvissēmus
portāvissētis	monuissētis	dūxissētis	audīvissētis
portāvissent	monuissent	dūxissent	audīvissent

a. The past perfect subjunctive of **sum** is formed in like manner with the stem **fu-: fuissem, fuissēs,** etc.

THE PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, PASSIVE VOICE

61. The past perfect subjunctive in the passive voice is made up of the past participle and the imperfect subjunctive of **sum.**

portātus essem	monitus essem	ductus essem	audītus essem
portātus essēs	monitus essēs	ductus essēs	audītus essēs
etc.	*etc.*	*etc.*	*etc.*

CUM ADVERSATIVE CLAUSES

62. A subordinate clause introduced by **cum** meaning *although* has its verb in the subjunctive.

> **Cum ea urbs parva *esset*, tamen magnam glōriam habēbat,** *although that city was small, nevertheless it had great fame.*

a. The adverb **tamen** frequently stands in the principal clause with which an adversative clause is connected.

63. VOCABULARY

certus, -a, -um, certain
cēterī, -ae, -a, the other
ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of
ōrdō, ōrdinis, M., order, rank
potestās, -tātis, F., power
puerīlis, -e, childish, of a child, of children
retardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, keep back, check
vāgītus, -ūs, M., wailing, crying

a. The singular forms of **cēterī** are rare, and may be disregarded for the present.

b. The most important use of **ob** is in phrases containing a form of **causa** or **rēs.**

EXERCISES

64. 1. Cum puer saepe monitus esset, tamen impigrē nōn labōrābat. 2. Cum nūllus certus ōrdō esset, tamen quisque in suō locō hostibus (App. **51**) restitit. 3. Ob eam rem impetus hostium retardātus est, sed dēnique castra capta sunt. 4. Cum Gallī potestātem ejus rēgis semper timuissent, tamen eī fortiter restitērunt. 5. Cum cēterī pervēnissent, decem equitēs viam per silvam reperīre nōn poterant. 6. Cum (Section **56**) lībertātem semper laudāverītis, vōs patriam nunc dēfendere oportet. 7. In eō locō vāgītus puerīlis audītus est. 8. Verba tua mihi tum magnō auxiliō erant. 9. Cēterī domī manēre nōlunt.

65. 1. Although the Romans had not sent aid, the townspeople were trying to defend the town. 2. Although the attack had been checked, we were not safe. 3. Since you have received my letter, you know the cause of this delay. 4. Although I had never injured him (App. **51**), he was always my enemy. 5. Since you are a young man, you ought to defend your country.

LESSON XIII

SUBJUNCTIVE OF *FERŌ*: *CUM* DESCRIPTIVE CLAUSES OF SITUATION

THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF *FERŌ*

66. The subjunctive forms of the irregular verb **ferō** are as follows:

ACTIVE

PRESENT		IMPERFECT	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
feram	ferāmus	ferrem	ferrēmus
ferās	ferātis	ferrēs	ferrētis
ferat	ferant	ferret	ferrent
PERFECT		**PAST PERFECT**	
tulerim	tulerīmus	tulissem	tulissēmus
tulerīs	tulerītis	tulissēs	tulissētis
tulerit	tulerint	tulisset	tulissent

PASSIVE

PRESENT		IMPERFECT	
ferar	ferāmur	ferrer	ferrēmur
ferāris	ferāminī	ferrēris	ferrēminī
ferātur	ferantur	ferrētur	ferrentur
PERFECT		**PAST PERFECT**	
lātus sim	lātī sīmus	lātus essem	lātī essēmus
lātus sīs	lātī sītis	lātus essēs	lātī essētis
lātus sit	lātī sint	lātus esset	lātī essent

CUM DESCRIPTIVE CLAUSE OF SITUATION

67. The imperfect or past perfect subjunctive is often used in a clause introduced by **cum** meaning *when*. Such a clause describes the situation or makes known the time of the main act.

a. The meaning of the principal clause will usually make it easy to decide whether **cum** should be translated *since, although,* or *when.* If the tense of the subjunctive is present or perfect, **cum** will mean *since* or *although* (not *when*).

68. VOCABULARY

avus, -ī, M., grandfather
ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, rear, bring up
latrō, latrōnis, M., robber, brigand
lūdus, -ī, M., game
nepōs, nepōtis, M., grandson
pāstor, pāstōris, M., shepherd
pecus, pecudis, F., beast; *pl.,* flock, herd
spectāculum, -ī, N., spectacle

EXERCISES

69. 1. Cum pāstor pecudēs suās in montēs ageret, latrōnēs eum aggressī sunt. 2. Cum latrō praedam auferret, ā mīlitibus captus est. 3. Cum Rōmulus urbem suam condidisset, gentēs fīnitimās ad spectāculum lūdōrum invītāvit. 4. Cum Rōmulus et frāter ejus apud[1] pāstōrem ēducārentur, nēmō scīvit eōs esse nepōtēs rēgis. 5. Cum (Section **62**) fortis semper fuerīs,[2] nunc pugnāre nōn vīs. 6. Haec tēla tam gravia sunt ut ea ferre nōn possīmus. 7. Cum (Section **56**) multī latrōnēs in eīs locīs essent, pāstōrēs semper tēla ferēbant. 8. Propter hās injūriās dēnique barbarīs bellum intulimus.

70. 1. When the robber saw the shepherds, he fled. 2. When the city had been founded, Romulus gave a name to it. 3. When we were in Rome, we saw the king and queen. 4. Although Romulus and his brother were grandsons of the king, they were reared at the house of (**apud**) a shepherd. 5. It happened that the brother of Romulus had been captured by the robbers.

---

[1] *at the house of.*
[2] Perfect subjunctive of **sum.**

LESSON XIV

SUBJUNCTIVE OF *VOLŌ* AND *EŌ:* INDIRECT QUESTIONS

THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF *VOLŌ*

71. The irregular verb **volō** is conjugated as follows in the subjunctive mood:

PRESENT		IMPERFECT	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
velim	velīmus	vellem	vellēmus
velīs	velītis	vellēs	vellētis
velit	velint	vellet	vellent

PERFECT	PAST PERFECT
voluerim	voluissem
voluerīs	voluissēs
etc.	*etc.*

72. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF *EŌ*

PRESENT		IMPERFECT	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
eam	eāmus	īrem	īrēmus
eās	eātis	īrēs	īrētis
eat	eant	īret	īrent

PERFECT	PAST PERFECT
ierim (īverim)	īssem (īvissem)
ierīs (īverīs)	īssēs (īvissēs)
etc.	*etc.*

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

73. An indirect question is a question which is quoted with changed form.

He asked who the man was. (Direct, *Who is the man?*)

Indirect questions depend on words of *asking, knowing, perceiving*, and the like.

MOOD IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS

74. In Latin, an indirect question has its verb in the subjunctive.

Quaesīvī quis hoc ***fēcisset***, *I asked who had done this.*

75. VOCABULARY

forte, *adv.*, by chance
geminī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, twins
ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, not know, be unaware
Remus, -ī, M., Remus, *the brother of Romulus*
suspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, suspect
trānsiliō, -īre, -uī, jump over
uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two)
vultur, vulturis, M., vulture

a. When only two persons are referred to, *each* is translated by **uterque**; when more than two are thought of, by **quisque.**

EXERCISES

76. 1. Uxor pāstōris quaesīvit quī eī puerī essent. 2. Vir repperit cūr fīlius suus domō proficīscī vellet. 3. Latrōnēs ignōrābant quis hās cōpiās dūceret. 4. Cum (Section **56**) domī manēre velīs, ego tēcum (App. **136** *a*) manēbō. 5. Cum viātor per silvam īret, forte duōs vulturēs vīdit. 6. Lēgātus quaerit cūr explōrātōrēs flūmen trānseant. 7. Pāstor quī Rōmulum et Remum repperit suspicābātur eōs esse geminōs. 8. Uterque hōrum geminōrum nōmen suum novae urbī dare voluit. 9. Cum Rōmulus novam urbem aedificāret, Remus mūrum trānsiluit. 10. Cum lībertātem habēre velītis, vōs fortēs esse oportet.

77. 1. The lieutenant asked why the cohort had not been sent. 2. The shepherd did not know (**ignōrō**) who was the grandfather of these boys. 3. Remus asked why the robbers wished to lead him to (**ad**) the king. 4. Since you are going alone, take your sword. 5. When I was crossing the valley, I saw a fire on the hill.

LESSON XV

FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE: DATIVE OF AGENT

THE FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

78. In addition to the present active participle, the past passive participle, and the future active participle, which have been given, Latin has also a future passive participle. It is formed on the present stem, and ends in **-ndus, -nda, -ndum.**

I	II
portandus, -a, -um	**monendus, -a, -um**
III	IV
dūcendus, -a, -um	**audiendus, -a, -um**
capiendus, -a, -um	

a. This participle is often used with forms of the verb **sum** to denote an act which must be done or ought to be done.

Auxilium ***mittendum est,*** *help must be sent* (or *ought to be sent*).

THE DATIVE OF AGENT

79. With the future passive participle, the person by whom the act must be done or ought to be done is regularly denoted by the dative.

Epistula ***mihi*** **mittenda est,** *a letter ought to be sent by me.*

a. Expressions which contain a future passive participle are often best translated by changing the verb to the active voice. The dative of agent is then represented by the subject of the active verb.

Epistula ***mihi*** **mittenda est,** *a letter ought to be sent by me—I ought to send a letter.*

80. VOCABULARY

conditor, -ōris, M., founder
dīvitiae, -ārum, F. *pl.*, riches, wealth
labor, -ōris, M., labor, toil
nōtus, -a, -um, known
orīgō, -inis, F., origin
ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, show, point out
perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, terrify
tantopere, *adv.*, so greatly

EXERCISES

81. 1. Conditor urbis nostrae nōbīs laudandus est. 2. Cum dīvitiās habēre velīs, labor tibi nōn vītandus est. 3. Remus frātrī suō nōn interficiendus est. 4. Mīlitēs tantopere perterritī sunt ut multī domum redīre vellent. 5. Sed auxilium ā sociīs missum est, et hostēs victī sunt. 6. Orīgō illīus urbis clārae nōbīs nōn nōta est. 7. Lēgātus mīlitibus collem ostendit quī eīs capiendus erat. 8. Cum rēx ex urbe exīret, multōs comitēs sēcum (App. **136**, *a*) dūxit. 9. Nōn videō cūr hanc gentem semper tantopere laudāverīs. 10. Crūdēlēs enim (Section **9**, *b*) cīvēs ejus sunt, et rēx eōrum est tyrannus.

82. 1. The city ought to be defended by the citizens. 2. The robbers ought to be led to the king by the young man. 3. The weapons ought not to be left in camp by the soldiers. 4. This book ought to be read by boys and girls. 5. Many did not know why the barbarians wished to fight.



KEY FROM AN ANCIENT HOUSE

LESSON XVI

THE PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF *FĪŌ* AND *NŌLŌ:* INDIRECT DISCOURSE, COMPLETED

THE PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF *FĪŌ*

83. The irregular verb **fīō** is conjugated as follows in the subjunctive:

PRESENT		IMPERFECT	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
fīam	fīāmus	fierem	fierēmus
fīās	fīātis	fierēs	fierētis
fīat	fīant	fieret	fierent

PERFECT	PAST PERFECT
factus sim	factus essem
factus sīs	factus essēs
etc.	*etc.*

a. The present subjunctive is made like that of **capiō.**

THE PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF *NŌLŌ*

84. The irregular verb **nōlō** is conjugated as follows in the sunjunctive:

PRESENT		IMPERFECT	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
nōlim	nōlīmus	nōllem	nōllēmus
nōlīs	nōlītis	nōllēs	nōllētis
nōlit	nōlint	nōllet	nōllent

PERFECT	PAST PERFECT
nōluerim	nōluissem
nōluerīs	nōluissēs
etc.	*etc.*

a. The imperfect subjunctive, like that of regular verbs, is formed by adding the personal endings to the present infinitive.

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES AND COMMANDS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

85. We have already seen the use of the infinitive with its subject in the accusative in indirect discourse. But all the examples given represented simple sentences consisting of statements in direct discourse. The following rules apply to complex sentences and also to sentences expressing commands.

I. The verb of a principal clause expressing a statement is in the infinitive in indirect discourse, and its subject is in the accusative.

II. The verb of a subordinate clause in indirect discourse is in the subjunctive.

III. A verb expressing a command in indirect discourse is in the subjunctive.[1]

86. VOCABULARY

benignē, *adv.*, kindly
explōrātor, -ōris, M., scout
inde, *adv.*, thence, from that place
rēgius, -a, -um, royal, of the king
supplicium, -ī, N., punishment
terror, -ōris, M., terror, fright
Tiberis, -is, M., the Tiber, *a river of Italy*
tractō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, treat

EXERCISES

87. 1. Mīles dīxit barbarum magnō in terrōre esse quod supplicium timēret. 2. Cum cōpiae rēgiae pugnāre nōllent, tamen dux eōs impetum facere jussit. 3. Obsidēs tam benignē tractātī sunt ut domum redīre nōlint. 4. Explōrātor inde vidēre poterat quid in castrīs hostium fieret. 5. Cum perīculum sociōrum nostrōrum majus fiat, auxilium statim mittēmus. 6. Tiberis, quī nōn longē ab hōc locō abest, magnum flūmen est. 7. Ea urbs Rōmānīs nōn dēlenda est. 8. Pāstor crēdidit puerōs quōs invēnisset esse nepōtēs frātris

[1] No examples of commands in indirect discourse are given for the present, but this statement is included for the sake of a complete presentation of the subject.

rēgis. 9. Cum patriam dēfendere nōlīs, tē cīvem esse nōn oportet.

88. 1. The terror of the townspeople is so great that they are unwilling to go out from the town. 2. Although the attack was made fiercely, the legions did not fear. 3. Romulus said that he would give a name to the city which he had founded. 4. Since Ascanius was unwilling to remain longer in the city, the royal power was given to his mother. 5. The scout said that he had remained in the forest because he did not wish to be seen by the enemy.

LESSON XVII

PRESENT PASSIVE IMPERATIVE: IMPERSONAL USE OF CERTAIN VERBS IN THE PASSIVE

THE PRESENT PASSIVE IMPERATIVE

89. The present passive imperative of regular verbs of the four conjugations is as follows:

I

Sing. laudāre, be praised (*spoken to one person*)
Plur. laudāminī, be praised (*spoken to more than one*)

	II	III		IV
Sing.	monēre	dūcere	capere	audīre
Plur.	monēminī	dūciminī	capiminī	audīminī

THE PRESENT IMPERATIVES OF DEPONENTS

90. The present imperative of deponent verbs of the four conjugations is as follows:

I	II	III	IV
cōnāre	pollicēre	sequere	potīre
cōnāminī	pollicēminī	sequiminī	potīminī

a. The imperative of **ēgredior** is formed like that of **sequor.**

IMPERSONAL USE OF CERTAIN VERBS

91. Certain intransitive verbs are sometimes used impersonally in the passive.

Pugnātur, *it is being fought* (*a fight is going on*).

a. Such impersonal verbs are usually translated in the active, with whatever subject is implied by the general sense of the passage. Thus, **pugnātur** may be translated *they are fighting.* **Perventum est** may be translated *they arrived* or *they have arrived.* These impersonal uses generally refer to the acts of plural subjects.

b. An intransitive verb cannot be used in the passive with a personal subject.

92. VOCABULARY

adjuvō, -juvāre, -jūvī, -jūtum, help, assist
dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, decide
dīves, *gen.* **dīvitis,** rich, wealthy
praeter, *prep. with acc.*, except
regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum, rule
successus, -ūs, M., success
toga, -ae, F., toga, *a garment worn by the Romans*
Vesta, -ae, F., Vesta, *a goddess worshiped by the Romans*

EXERCISES

93. 1. Regere[1] ā mē et domī manē. 2. Iterum cōnāre, et successum habēbis. 3. Ducem, mīlitēs[2], sequiminī et castrīs[3] hostium potīminī. 4. Diū in hōc locō pugnātum est, sed dēnique Rōmānī hostēs reppulērunt. 5. Pater hujus puerī est dīves et magnam domum habet. 6. Explōrātor statim ad exercitum redīre dēcrēvit. 7. Nēmō praeter imperātōrem togam ejus modī habēbat. 8. Templum Vestae in eō locō

[1] Not an infinitive.
[2] See App. 80, note.
[3] See App. 79.

aedificātum est. 9. Cum mē adjuvāre anteā nōlueris cūr auxilium meum nunc postulās?

94. 1. Promise your help to my friend. 2. Use your swords, soldiers. 3. They fought (it was fought) long and fiercely in the streets of this town. 4. We have decided to help our allies at once. 5. No one except the centurion dared to go out from the camp. 6. Lavinia ruled the city which the Trojans had built.

LESSON XVIII

THE GERUNDIVE

95. The future passive participle of a transitive verb is often used in agreement with a noun or pronoun in phrases which are equivalent in meaning to a gerund with an object.[1]

> **Spēs urbis capiendae,** *hope of capturing the city.* The meaning is the same as **spēs urbem capiendī.**

The future passive participle when thus used is called the Gerundive. The gerundive may be used in either number and in any case, to agree with the noun or pronoun to which it belongs.

a. Since the gerund cannot stand as the object of a preposition and at the same time govern an object, gerundive phrases are frequently used with the forms of transitive verbs. The English translation of such phrases is the same as if the gerundive were a gerund having as its object the word with which the gerundive agrees.

---

[1] The gerundive construction was not a substitute for the gerund in the thought of the Romans, but was probably the usage from which the gerund was derived.

b. The case uses of the gerundive construction are in general the same as those of the gerund.

cupidus oppidī expugnandī, *desirous of storming the town.*
auxiliī ferendī causā, *for the purpose (sake) of bringing aid.*
ad eās rēs cōnficiendās, *for accomplishing these things* (or *to accomplish these things*).
dē auxiliō mittendō, *about (concerning) sending aid.*
lapidibus portandīs, *by carrying stones.*

96. The following distinctions between the gerund and gerundive are to be observed:

GERUND	GERUNDIVE
A noun	A participle
Active in meaning	Passive
Neuter gender	All genders
Used only in the singular	Both numbers

97. VOCABULARY

agnōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum, recognize
comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, compare, prepare
cōnfestim, *adv.*, at once, immediately
conjūnx, conjugis, M., F., wife, husband
maestus, -a, -um, sad, sorrowful
mulier, mulieris, F., woman
permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, permit; entrust
Sabīnī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the Sabines, *an ancient Italian people*

EXERCISES

98. 1. Haec fēmina spem fīliae suae videndae habet. 2. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās hominēs cōnfestim missī sunt. 3. Barbarī lapidibus jaciendīs multōs vulnerāvērunt. 4. Sabīnī pācis petendae causā lēgātōs mīsērunt. 5. Tum conjugēs

Rōmānōrum maestae erant, quod bellum inter Rōmānōs et Sabīnōs gerēbātur. 6. Ille juvenis sorōrem agnōvit, quam multōs annōs nōn vīderat. 7. Illa terra cum terrā nostrā nōn comparanda est[1]; itaque barbarī nostrōs agrōs occupāvērunt. 8. Tē adjuvāre volēbam, sed id non permissum est. 9. Proficīscere, puer, ut domum redeās.

99. 1. The cohort was left for the purpose of defending the bridge. 2. By throwing javelins the Romans drove back the enemy, who were trying to cross the river. 3. A leader has been chosen for accomplishing these things. 4. Soldiers, defend your wives and your children. 5. There were so many soldiers in the town that an attack was not made.

LESSON XIX

CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH *UT* AND *NĒ*

EXPRESSIONS OF PURPOSE IN ENGLISH

100. In the sentence *I went to see the fire* the infinitive *to see* tells the purpose of the act expressed by the verb *went.* The use of the infinitive to express purpose is very common in English. Sometimes we use the phrase *in order* before the infinitive in expressions of purpose. Thus, *I stayed in order to hear the music.* In this sentence the expression *in order to hear* denotes the purpose of the act which is expressed by the verb *stayed.*

a. Occasionally we use a subordinate clause introduced by *that* or *in order that* in expressions of purpose. Thus, we may say *I stayed that I might hear,* or *in order that I might hear, the music.* The clause *that I might hear,* or *in order that I might hear,* expresses the purpose of the act denoted by the main verb.

---

[1] See section 78.

EXPRESSIONS OF PURPOSE IN LATIN

101. In Latin, purpose may be expressed by a subordinate clause introduced by **ut,** with its verb in the subjunctive. The Latin infinitive is not used to express purpose. The sentence *I went to see the fire* is translated as if it read *I went that I might see the fire*; the sentence *I stayed in order to hear the music* is translated as if it read *I stayed that I might hear the music.*

> **Vēnī ut tē *vidērem,*** *I came to see you,* literally, *I came that I might see you.*

NEGATIVE EXPRESSIONS OF PURPOSE

102. Negative clauses of purpose are introduced by **nē** instead of **ut. Mīlitēs missī sunt *nē* urbs *caperētur,*** *soldiers were sent that the city might not be captured.*

> *a.* Negative clauses of result are introduced by **ut** and contain **nōn. Tam celeriter fūgit *ut nōn caperētur,*** *he fled so swiftly that he was not captured.*

103. VOCABULARY

aliquot, *indeclinable,* several
hospitium, -ī, N., hospitality
nē, *conj.*, that . . . not
parēns, parentis, M., F., parent
profugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, flee
rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptum, seize, carry off
violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, violate
virgō, -inis, F., young woman

EXERCISES

104. 1. Eae virginēs raptae sunt, ut Rōmānī conjugēs habērent. 2. Parentēs virginum profūgērunt, nē injūriam acciperent. 3. Rōmulus novam urbem mūnīvit, ut hostēs repellere posset. 4. Post aliquot diēs Sabīnī exercitum condūxērunt, ut cum Rōmānīs bellum gererent. 5. Patrēs nostrī mare trānsiērunt, ut in terrā līberā habitārent. 6. Sabīnī dīxērunt hospitium ā Rōmānīs violātum esse. 7. Multī vēnē-

runt novae urbis videndae causā. 8. Ad pācem petendam lēgātī dēlēctī sunt. 9. Ācriter ab hostibus pugnātur, sed spēs ā nostrīs nōn āmissa est.

105. 1. The Gauls collected an army to defend (that they might defend) their homes. 2. We fled that we might not be captured. 3. These men will cross the sea in order to find (that they may find) wealth. 4. We did not come into your city to receive injury. 5. The boys said they had defended themselves by throwing stones.

LESSON XX

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE: THE ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

106. Sometimes a relative pronoun is used instead of **ut** to introduce a purpose clause.

Puerum mittam ***quī*** **tē** ***adjuvet,*** *I will send a boy to help you,* literally, *who shall help you.*

a. The relative clause of purpose is found chiefly after **mittō** and its compounds, and after **relinquō** and a few other verbs.

THE ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

107. With a comparative, if **quam,** *than,* is omitted, the noun or pronoun denoting the person or thing with which comparison is made is put in the ablative.

Ille puer fortior ***frātre*** **est,** *that boy is braver than his brother.*

a. If **quam** is used, the word denoting the person or thing with which comparison is made stands in the same case as the thing compared. **Ille puer fortior** ***quam frāter*** **est,** *that boy is braver than his brother.*

108. VOCABULARY

arx, arcis, F., citadel
Neptūnus, -ī, M., Neptune, *god of the sea.*
orior, orīrī, ortus sum, rise
redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead back
repente, *adv.*, suddenly
secundus, -a, -um, favorable, successful
spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, observe, watch, look at
umquam, *adv.*, ever



MARBLE RELIEF IN ROMAN FORUM

EXERCISES

109. 1. Decem mīlitēs missī sunt quī arcem dēfenderent. 2. Repente tōta legiō ex castrīs missa est quae in Gallōs venientēs impetum faceret. 3. Hoc flūmen lātius est flūminibus in patriā nostrā. 4. Ex eō colle in quō templum Neptūnī stat proelium spectābāmus. 5. Ille rēx potentior erat omnibus rēgibus quī umquam anteā eam urbem rēxerant. 6. Post proelium secundum dux Rōmānōrum cōpiās suās in castra redūxit. 7. Cum sōl ortus esset, ex vīcō cum equīs profectī sumus, ut ad montēs īrēmus. 8. Temporibus antīquīs urbēs in collibus conditae sunt, nē ab hostibus caperentur. 9. Sitūs urbium nostrārum dēlēctī sunt in vallibus aut campīs.

110. 1. I have sent a boy to announce (who shall announce) your arrival. 2. We sent a lieutenant to observe the battle. 3. The enemy are not braver than our allies. 4. All who have ever seen this famous temple of Neptune say that it is beautiful. 5. The sun was rising when (**ubi**) we arrived at the river. 6. The townspeople fortified the citadel that the enemy might not dare make an attack.

LESSON XXI

THE SUPINE: DECLENSION OF *ISTE*

THE SUPINE

111. The supine is a form of the verb which has the case endings of a masculine noun of the fourth declension. It is found only in the accusative and ablative singular.

I	II	III		IV
portātum	monitum	ductum	captum	audītum
portātū	monitū	ductū	captū	audītū

a. The accusative of the supine may be used to express purpose in a clause in which the verb expresses motion.

Lēgātī pācem *petitum* vēnērunt, *the envoys came to ask peace.*

b. The ablative of the supine is used with a few adjectives as an ablative of respect. It is usually translated by the English present infinitive.

Optimum *factū*, *best to do* (*the best thing to do*).

THE DEMONSTRATIVE *ISTE*

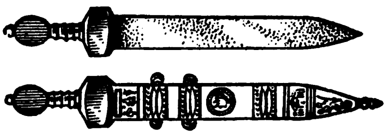
112. Besides **hic, ille,** and **is,** there is another demonstrative, **iste,** translated *that of yours*, or simply *that*. It is used less frequently than the others and commonly refers to something connected with the person addressed. It is declined exactly like **ille.**

Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
iste	ista	istud
istīus	istīus	istīus, *etc.*

a. **Iste** is sometimes used to express contempt.

113. VOCABULARY

afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātum, bring to, bring
ambō, -ae, -ō, both
dispār, *gen.* **disparis,** unequal
ingenium, -ī, N., intellect, ability
iste, ista, istud, that of yours, that
mīrābilis, -e, wonderful
nocturnus, -a, -um, nightly, at night, night (*as adjective*)
superbia, -ae, F., pride, haughtiness



ROMAN SWORD AND SCABBARD

EXERCISES

114. 1. Ista superbia tibi magnum dētrīmentum afferet. 2. Potentia istīus gentis crūdēlis nōn jam timētur. 3. Istud perīculum dē quō scrīpsistī nōn magnum vidētur. 4. Oppidānī impetum nocturnum in nostra castra fēcērunt. 5. Frāter meus in externās terrās dīvitiās petītum īre vult. 6. Ingenia fīliōrum tuōrum disparia sunt, sed ambō impigrē labōrant. 7. Agrī nostrī vāstātī sunt; itaque lēgātōs ad Caesarem questum mittimus. 8. Difficile dictū est quanta superbia istīus gentis fuerit (Section **73**). 9. Tum gaudium illōrum captīvōrum quī domum redierant mīrābile vīsū erat. 10. Patria huic virō est cārior vītā ipsā. 11. Gallus missus est quī epistulam ad castra portāret.

115. 1. We despise that army (of yours) which you are sending. 2. The centurion set out alone to ask help. 3. This is easy to say, but difficult to do. 4. Nothing is dearer to us than friends. 5. A night attack was made by the townspeople, who had concealed their arms in the houses (**tēcta**).

LESSON XXII

NOUN CLAUSES OF DESIRE

116. We have already seen (Section **33**) that the subjunctive is used in noun clauses of fact introduced by **ut** which are employed as subjects or objects of verbs.

There is another class of noun clauses which are slightly different from these. The difference in their form consists in the fact that when they are negative they are introduced by **nē** instead of **ut**, and they do not have **nōn.** When they do not contain a negative idea, they are introduced by **ut,** like the noun clauses of section **33.**

> **Lēgātus hortātur ut auxilium statim** ***mittātur,*** *the envoy urges that aid be sent at once.*
>
> **Amīcī nostrī hortābantur nē in urbe** ***manērēmus,*** *our friends urged that we should not remain in the city.*

a. Noun clauses of this class are often translated by the English infinitive with a subject accusative. The second sentence above might be translated, *Our friends urged us not to remain in the city.*

b. The verbs with which this construction is most frequently found are those meaning *persuade, urge, direct,* and some verbs meaning *command, wish,* and *decide.*

117. VOCABULARY

alloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, speak to, address

certāmen, certāminis, N., struggle, rivalry

extrā, *prep. with acc.,* outside of

hortor, -ārī, hortātus sum, urge

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, command

mūnītiō, -ōnis, F., fortification, intrenchment

plēbs, plēbis, F., the common people

prōditiō, -ōnis, F., treason, betrayal

EXERCISES

118. 1. Cōnsul hortātur ut major exercitus statim mittātur. 2. Lēgātus mīlitibus quī extrā mūnītiōnēs erant imperāvit nē in hostēs impetum facerent. 3. Ōrātor plēbī persuāsit ut ste homō propter prōditiōnem interficerētur. 4. Imperātor mīlitēs allocūtus est, et hortātus est nē hostēs timērent. 5. Inter hōs duōs centuriōnēs erat magnum certāmen, et difficile dictū erat uter esset fortior. 6. Cōnsulēs ad plēbem nūntium mīsit colloquium petītum. 7. Ūna cohors extrā oppidum missa est quae adventum equitum expectāret. 8. Centuriō nōbīs imperat nē extrā mūnītiōnēs eāmus.

119. 1. The general commanded the soldiers (*dative*) to remain (that they remain) in the town. 2. No one can persuade (is able to persuade) me to go (Section **116**) outside the fortifications. 3. I urge you not to fear (that you do not fear) the common people. 4. On account of your treason there was a great struggle in the city, and many lost their lives. 5. The leader addressed the townspeople and persuaded them not to surrender their arms.

LESSON XXIII

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF DESCRIPTION

120. All the relative clauses which we have seen thus far have had their verbs in the indicative, except relative clauses of purpose and relative clauses in indirect discourse.

There is, however, a rather important class of relative clauses which serve to tell what kind of person or thing is meant by the antecedent to which they refer. Such clauses have their verbs in the subjunctive.

> **Rōma erat cīvitās quae cīvēs suōs** ***dēfenderet***, *Rome was a state which defended its citizens.*

In this sentence the relative clause makes known, not

what state is meant, but what kind of state, and hence its verb is in the subjunctive.

a. In the sentence **Urbs quam Rōmulus** ***condidit*** **Rōma appellāta est,** *the city which Romulus founded was called Rome,* the relative clause does not tell what kind of city is meant, but merely what city, and hence its verb is in the indicative.

121. **VOCABULARY**

carcer, carceris, M., prison
casa, -ae, F., cottage
dolus, -ī, M., trick, treachery, deceit
effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, escape
nix, nivis, F., snow
perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, throw into confusion, throw into disorder
prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, restrain
recuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, regain, recover

EXERCISES

122. 1. Locum dēligēmus quī facile dēfendātur. 2. Hominem mīsistī quī ex nāve ēgredī nōn audēret. 3. Apud ducēs hostium tum erant multī quī dolōs amārent. 4. Servus ex carcere effūgit et lībertātem recuperāvit. 5. Tempestātēs secūtae sunt quae exercitūs ā pugnā prohibērent. 6. Est ūna via quā domō exīre possīmus. 7. Imperātor suōs hortātus est nē perturbārentur. 8. In hīs locīs nix alta interdum casās pāstōrum tegit. 9. Propter prōditiōnem, illī in carcere interfectī sunt.

123. 1. There were two roads by which we could cross the mountains. 2. The centurion chose a place which was easily defended. 3. There are many who do not love their country. 4. The two men who escaped from prison have not yet been captured. 5. The slave was killed when he attempted to regain his liberty.

LESSON XXIV

CLAUSES OF FEAR

124. With verbs and other expressions of fear a dependent clause with its verb in the subjunctive may be used to tell what one fears will happen. Such clauses are introduced by **nē** meaning *that* or by **ut** meaning *that . . . not.*

Hostēs verēbantur *nē* urbēs suae *dēlērentur*, *the enemy feared that their cities would be destroyed.*

Timēmus *ut* fortis *sis*, *We are afraid that you are not brave.*

a. The English future tense in a clause of fear is translated by the Latin present subjunctive.

I am afraid that he will not arrive today, **Timeō ut hodiē *perveniat*.**

b. With English expressions of fear the conjunction (*that*) is sometimes omitted. We may say *I am afraid he will not arrive today.* In Latin the conjunction (**nē** or **ut**) is always employed.

c. It must be remembered that with other subjunctive clauses **ut** means *that* and **nē** means *that . . . not.*

125. VOCABULARY

abeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, go away
colō, -ere, -uī, cultivate, till
factiō, -ōnis, F., faction, party
īra, -ae, F., anger
mīlitāris, -e, military
ōtium, -ī, N., peace, quiet
senex, senis, M., old man
voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtum, vow, promise solemnly

EXERCISES

126. 1. Senex timēbat nē fīlius suus vulnerārētur. 2. Verēmur nē bellum inter hās factiōnēs oriātur. 3. Agricola

verēbātur ut puer agrum bene coleret. 4. Multōs annōs in patriā nostrā erat ōtium. 5. Ille puer īram patris suī semper timet. 6. Propter illam victōriam cōnsul templum deīs vōvit. 7. Mīlitēs timēbant nē signa (*standards*) mīlitāria ā barbarīs caperentur. 8. Hostēs abiērunt, et urbs nostra nunc tūta est. 9. Homō quī bellum amet in patriā nostrā nōn facile reperītur.

127. 1. The old man was afraid that his son would go away. 2. The woman is afraid (that) military life will please her son (App. **51**). 3. The general vowed a temple to the gods, because he feared that his army would be defeated. 4. Our allies were afraid (that) we would not send aid that year. 5. No one who wishes to work will be sent home.

LESSON XXV

REVIEW OF PARTICIPLES

128. The Latin verb has four participles, the present active, the past passive, the future active, and the future passive. The four participles of **portō** are as follows:

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRESENT	portāns	———
PAST	———	portātus
FUTURE	portātūrus	portandus

a. Deponent verbs have the same number of participles as other verbs: **cōnāns, cōnātus, cōnātūrus, cōnandus.** The past participle of a deponent verb is usually, but not always, active in meaning. The sense of the sentence in which the past participle stands will make it possible to decide in which voice it is used.

THE COMPARATIVE WITH *TOO* OR *RATHER*

129. A comparative form is sometimes translated by the English positive with *too* or *rather*.

Erat mōns ***altior***, *there was a rather high mountain.*

130. VOCABULARY

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, perceive, observe

dēspondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, betroth, promise in marriage

foedus, foederis, N., treaty

indignātiō, -ōnis, F., indignation

lūmen, lūminis, N., light

tālis, -e, such

vērē, *adv.*, truly

EXERCISES

131. 1. Hostēs ab exercitū nostrō victī foedus facere volunt. 2. Viātōrēs montem ascendentēs magnum lūmen in valle subitō cōnspexērunt. 3. Dux Helvētiōrum fīliam suam illī rēgī dēspōnsūrus est. 4. Fīlius tuus inter tālēs hominēs nōn ēducandus est (Section **78,** *a*). 5. Tum magna indignātiō Rōmae (Section **1**) erat propter injūriās sociōrum. 6. Ingenium ejus juvenis vērē rēgium vidēbātur, itaque rēx creātus est. 7. Nūlla gēns quae foedera violet amīcōs et sociōs habēre potest. 8. Multī verēbantur nē nāvēs hostium Ōceanum trānsīrent. 9. Hostēs bellum in Galliā gerentēs multōs ē suīs āmīsērunt.

132. 1. The treaty made with that king is not just. 2. The soldier, standing on the tower, observed the fire. 3. Help should be sent (Section **79,** *a*) at once, because the army is in danger. 4. We are going to cross (App. **120**) the ocean next year with a friend. 5. The king is afraid (that) he will lose his power (**imperium**).

LESSON XXVI

THE VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES

EXPRESSIONS OF DESIRE OR WILL

133. In English one sometimes expresses the desire or will that an act should be done by the use of *let* with the verb expressing the act desired. Thus, *Let us defend our homes bravely.* Such expressions have the present subjunctive in Latin, and no separate word for *let* is used. The sentence given above will be translated **Domōs nostrās fortiter** ***dēfendāmus.***

Centuriō legiōnem ex castrīs ***ēdūcat,*** *let the centurion lead the legion out of camp.*

THE NEGATIVE WITH EXPRESSIONS OF DESIRE

134. The negative word used with the subjunctive in expressions of desire or will is **nē.**

Nē **diūtius** ***maneāmus,*** *let us not remain longer.*

135. VOCABULARY

dēmum, *adv.*, at last, at length, finally
dīvīnus, -a, -um, divine, of the gods
hūmānus, -a, -um, human
impiger, -gra, -grum, industrious, energetic
laetor, -ārī, laetātus sum, rejoice, be delighted
mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, hasten
portendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, indicate, foretell
totiēns, *adv.*, so many times, so often

EXERCISES

136. 1. Puerōs impigrōs in eum locum mittāmus. 2. Nē idem totiēns dīcāmus. 3. Hōs puerōs ita ēducēmus ut cīvēs

bonī sint. 4. Viātor lūmen in casā vīdit et statim iter mātūrāvit. 5. Illī barbarī omnia jūra hūmāna atque dīvīna violāvērunt. 6. Tum dēmum vīdimus eōs hostēs esse vērē barbarōs. 7. Illud signum portendit deōs urbem nostram dēfendere. 8. Magnopere laetātī sumus, cum mīlitēs nostrī domum rediissent. 9. Quaerō cūr pāstor querātur (Section 73). 10. Mātūrāns; mātūrātūrus; ēducandus est; ēducātus est.

137. 1. Let us cross the river with the other soldiers. 2. Let us work industriously today. 3. Let him not remain longer in the city. 4. The shepherd was delighted (*a form of* **laetor**) when he saw the light in his cottage. 5. This boy is industrious and pleases the farmer.

LESSON XXVII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN WISHES

THE OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

138. In older English, wishes were often introduced by *would that*, or *O that*, as in the sentence *Would that* (or *O that*) *I had never seen this place.* Such sentences take the subjunctive in Latin, and are commonly introduced by **utinam,** if the wish refers to present or past time. Thus, the sentence given above would be translated, **Utinam hunc locum numquam** ***vidissem.***

a. In modern English we should usually say *I wish I had never seen this place.* In some of the exercises of this book the old form of expression is used.

TENSE IN WISHES

139. The present subjunctive is used in wishes referring to future time, the imperfect subjunctive in wishes referring to

present time, and the past perfect subjunctive in wishes referring to past time.

(**Utinam**) **imperātor auxilium** ***mittat,*** *O that the general may send help.*

Utinam frāter meus mē nunc vidēre ***posset,*** *O that (I wish that) my brother could see me now.*

Utinam herī ***pervēnissēs,*** *would that (I wish that) you had arrived yesterday.*

a. The negative adverb with wishes is sometimes **nē** and sometimes **nōn.**

140. **VOCABULARY**

expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, set forth, explain
facinus, facinoris, N., crime
ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, beg, entreat, ask for
peregrīnus, -ī, M., foreigner
rēgia, -ae, F., palace
speciēs, -ēī, F., appearance
sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, sustain, withstand
vestibulum, -ī, N., entrance

EXERCISES

141. 1. Utinam rēgia ā fortiōribus mīlitibus dēfēnsa esset. 2. Utinam illī peregrīnī in patriā suā essent. 3. (Utinam) dux sapiēns sīs. 4. Ille homō propter facinora sua ex urbe expellendus est. 5. Rēx in vestibulō rēgiae ā duōbus pāstōribus interfectus est. 6. Speciēs hōrum hominum honesta est, sed nōn sunt cīvēs bonī. 7. Tum nūntius exposuit quid factum esset. 8. Utinam legiō impetum barbarōrum diūtius sustinuisset. 9. Auxilium Caesaris ōrēmus, quod hostēs magnīs cum cōpiīs appropinquant.

142. 1. Would that we had never seen this city. 2. I wish that (would that) I were crossing the sea with my friends. 3. May the fame of our country increase (*a form of* **crēscere**). 4. I wish (would that) we had a braver and wiser leader. 5. Although you are (Section **62**) a foreigner, you have all the rights of a citizen.

LESSON XXVIII

THE ANTICIPATORY SUBJUNCTIVE: DATIVE OF POSSESSION

THE ANTICIPATORY SUBJUNCTIVE

143. The subjunctive may be used in subordinate clauses to denote an act which is anticipated or expected.

Expectābam dum frāter ***redīret,*** *I was waiting until my brother should return* (or *for my brother to return*).

a. The Anticipatory Subjunctive is most frequently used after conjunctions meaning *until* or *before.*

THE DATIVE OF POSSESSION

144. The possessor of something may be denoted by a noun or pronoun in the dative case, with the word denoting the thing possessed in the nominative as the subject of a form of the verb meaning *to be.*

Puerō **duo frātrēs sunt,** *the boy has two brothers.*

145. VOCABULARY

administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, manage, direct
breviter, *adv.*, briefly
clāmor, -ōris, M., shouting, noise
dum, *conj.*, until
firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, strengthen
priusquam, *conj.*, before
superior, -ius, higher; previous, preceding
tumultus, -ūs, M., confusion, disturbance

EXERCISES

146. 1. Legiōnēs pervēnērunt priusquam oppidum caperētur. 2. Caesar expectāre nōn poterat dum reliquae nāvēs pervenīrent. 3. Gallī magnō cum (App. **139**) clāmōre et tumultū ex castrīs ēgressī sunt, priusquam cōpiae Rōmānae



JARS FOR STORING OIL AND GRAIN, ANCIENT OSTIA

impetum facerent. 4. Hīs mīlitibus bona arma sunt, et hostēs ē superiōre locō ab eīs pellentur. 5. Frāter rēgis rēs administrāvit, quod rēgī nūllus fīlius erat. 6. Utinam rēx novus opēs suās firmāvisset et omnēs inimīcōs suōs ex rēgnō expulisset. 7. Cum rēs breviter exposita esset, mīlitēs magnīs clāmōribus profectī sunt. 8. Frātrī tuō est equus pulcher, quem amīcus ex Britanniā mīsit. 9. Rēs Rōmānae ā duōbus cōnsulibus administrātae sunt.

147. 1. The boy has a sword (Section **144**), which was given him by his father. 2. We made a bridge before we crossed the river. 3. The Gauls waited until the first legion was in sight. 4. The Romans had many brave generals. 5. The boy has two brothers, but no sister.

LESSON XXIX

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES: FUTURE CONDITIONAL SENTENCES, MORE VIVID AND LESS VIVID

CONDITIONS AND CONCLUSIONS

148. A complex sentence in which the subordinate clause is introduced by *if* is called a Conditional Sentence. The subordinate clause of a sentence of this kind is called the Condition and the principal clause is called the Conclusion.

FUTURE MORE VIVID CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

149. A conditional sentence which refers to future time and which is translated with *shall* or *will* in the conclusion and with a present tense with future meaning in the condition is called a Future More Vivid conditional sentence. Thus, *I shall start tomorrow if the weather is pleasant.* In this sentence the verb *is* has future meaning.

a. Sometimes a future tense with *shall* is used in the condition. Thus, *If he shall prove efficient, he will be promoted.*

150. In Latin a future more vivid conditional sentence commonly has its verbs in the future indicative.

Sī impigrē *labōrābis*, praemium *accipiēs*, *if you work industriously you will receive a reward.*

a. Sometimes the future perfect is used instead of the future to indicate that the act will take place before another act or before some future time.

FUTURE LESS VIVID CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

151. A conditional sentence which refers to future time and which is translated with *should* or *would* in both the condition and the conclusion is called a Future Less Vivid conditional sentence. Thus, *If it should rain, no one would come.*

152. In Latin the verbs of a future less vivid conditional sentence are commonly in the present subjunctive.

Sī hostēs nōs *videant*, impetum *faciant*, *if the enemy should see us, they would make an attack.*

a. Occasionally the perfect subjunctive is used instead of the present to indicate that an act would take place before another act or before a particular time.

153. VOCABULARY

cēnsus, -ūs, M., census, enumeration
commūniter, *adv.*, commonly
cōnsēnsus, -ūs, M., agreement
excūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, excuse
īnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, establish, institute, arrange
nōbilis, -e, famous, well known
officium, -ī, N., duty
prīnceps, prīncipis, M., chief, prominent man

EXERCISES

154. 1. Sī in terram nostram veniēs, nōbilēs urbēs vidēbis. 2. Sī in terram nostram veniās, nōbilēs urbēs videās. 3. Sī cēnsus īnstituātur, numerus Rōmānōrum magnus esse reperiātur. 4. Sī cōnsul officium suum faciet, urbs ex perīculō servābitur. 5. Ex cōnsēnsū hārum gentium pāx est facta, et spērāmus eam pācem firmam futūram esse. 6. Tum decem hominēs rēs Rōmānās aliquot annōs commūniter administrāvērunt. 7. Prīncipēs Britanniae ad Caesarem vēnērunt, ut sē excūsārent. 8. Sī patriam dēfendētis, omnēs vōs laudābunt. 9. Sī illōs montēs ascendās, magnum lacum videās.

155. 1. If the centurion leaves (*future*) a legion in the town, the enemy will not make an attack. 2. If the Romans should leave two cohorts in the camp, the barbarians would not make an attack. 3. If I should find the book, I would not give it to you. 4. If my father sends the money, I shall set out at once.

LESSON XXX

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES CONTRARY TO FACT

MEANING OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES CONTRARY TO FACT

156. The form of the verbs in a conditional sentence sometimes shows that the condition is not true, and that the actual situation is not that which is referred to in the conclusion. Such a conditional sentence is said to be contrary to fact.

If the man had been honest, he would have paid his debts (implying that the man was not honest and that he did not pay his debts).

MOOD AND TENSE IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES CONTRARY TO FACT

157. In Latin, conditional sentences contrary to fact have their verbs in the imperfect subjunctive to denote present time, and in the past perfect subjunctive to denote past time.

Sī perīculum *vidērēs*, hīc nōn *manērēs*, *if you saw the danger, you would not remain here.*

Sī perīculum *vīdissēs*, hīc nōn *mānsissēs*, *if you had seen the danger, you would not have remained here.*

158. VOCABULARY

cōnfessiō, -ōnis, F., confession
crīmen, crīminis, N., charge
falsus, -a, -um, false
irrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, break in, rush into
occāsus, -ūs, M., falling down, setting; **sōlis occāsus,** sunset
paulātim, *adv.*, gradually
postrēmō, *adv.*, at last
praecō, praecōnis, M., herald

EXERCISES

159. 1. Sī hoc crīmen falsum esset, amīcī tuī tē dēfenderent. 2. Sī cōnfessiōnem ejus audīvissēs, eum nōn laudāvissēs. 3. Sī ante occāsum sōlis pervēnissēs, porta nōn clausa esset. 4. Sī praecō in locō altiōre stāret, facilius eum audīrēmus.

5. Sī pater ejus puerī vīveret, puer nōn in tālī locō labōrāret. 6. Postrēmō Gallī victī sunt, et legiōnēs in urbem irrūpērunt. 7. Prīncipēs hostium paulātim ex castrīs excessērunt, ut bellum renovārent. 8. Sī patriam tuam amārēs, eam nunc dēfenderēs. 9. Sī ante occāsum sōlis perveniās, porta nōn claudātur.

160. 1. If you were standing on that hill, you would see the town. 2. If the enemy had crossed the river, they would have captured the town. 3. If the soldiers had a better leader, they would fight more bravely. 4. If I had seen the signal, I should have returned. 5. If I should see the signal, I should return.

LESSON XXXI

NON-COMMITTAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES: ABLATIVE OF ROUTE

NON-COMMITTAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

161. A conditional sentence which does not imply that the condition is either true or false regularly has both verbs in the indicative.

> **Sī puerī in silvā *errant*, in perīculō *sunt*,** *if the boys are wandering in the forest, they are in danger.*
>
> **Sī pecūniam *mīsistī*, benignus *erās*,** *if you sent the money, you were kind.*

a. Sometimes an imperative or a volitive subjunctive is used in the conclusion instead of an indicative.

> **Sī pācem cupitis, arma *trādite*,** *if you desire peace, surrender your arms.*

Note.—The future more vivid conditional sentence is merely a non-committal conditional sentence referring to future time.

THE ABLATIVE OF ROUTE

162. The route by which one goes is sometimes denoted by a noun or pronoun in the ablative case without a preposition.

> **Eādem *viā* ībimus *quā* hostēs profectī sunt,** *we shall go by the same road by which the enemy set out.*

163. VOCABULARY

audācia, -ae, F., boldness
catēna, -ae, F., chain
cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -tum, consult
ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call out, call forth, summon
occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, kill
refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum, break down
spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, despoil, plunder
vīvus, -a, -um, alive

EXERCISES

164. 1. Sī barbarī cum omnibus cōpiīs appropinquant, perīculum nostrum est magnum. 2. Sī hostēs flūmen trānsiērunt, nostrī pontem nōn dēfendērunt. 3. Sī rēx senātum cōnsulit, perīculum timet. 4. Ille centuriō est vir magnā audāciā (App. **77**), quī numquam vīvus capiētur. 5. Captīvus ex catēnīs et carcere effugere cōnātus est, sed in fugā occīsus est. 6. Portae oppidī refrāctae sunt, et templa ab mīlitibus spoliāta sunt. 7. Tum prīncipēs ā Caesare ex oppidō ēvocātī sunt. 8. Hōc itinere profectī sumus, quod nūllum aliud iter habēbāmus. 9. Eōdem itinere redībō, sī poterō.

165. 1. If the barbarians are laying waste the fields, the cities are in danger. 2. If the townspeople have weapons, they are able to defend themselves. 3. We shall return by a shorter route. 4. The two armies did not cross the mountains by the same route. 5. If the enemy are collecting an army, they wish to wage war.

LESSON XXXII

THE FUTURE IMPERATIVE: VOCATIVE IN Ī

TENSE IN THE IMPERATIVE

166. English verbs have only the present tense of the imperative. Latin verbs have a future as well as a present imperative. The future imperative is not often used.

FORMS OF THE FUTURE IMPERATIVE

167. The future imperative is found in the second and third persons. Its forms in the four conjugations are as follows:

ACTIVE

			Singular		
2.	portātō	monētō	mittitō	capitō	audītō
3.	portātō	monētō	mittitō	capitō	audītō
			Plural		
2.	portātōte	monētōte	mittitōte	capitōte	audītōte
3.	portantō	monentō	mittuntō	capiuntō	audiuntō

PASSIVE

			Singular		
2.	portātor	monētor	mittitor	capitor	audītor
3.	portātor	monētor	mittitor	capitor	audītor
			Plural		
2.	(*Lacking*)	———	———	———	———
3.	portantor	monentor	mittuntor	capiuntor	audiuntor

a. The future imperative is used when there is a clear reference to future time indicated by an adverb or other expression of time. It is translated *you shall carry, he shall carry*, or *let him carry*, etc.

b. The verbs **meminī** and **sciō** regularly (and **habeō** occasionally) use the future imperative instead of the present.

THE VOCATIVE IN Ī

168. Proper nouns ending in **-ius** and also the common noun **fīlius** form the vocative by replacing **-ius** of the nominative by **-ī**. Thus **Cornēlius,** vocative **Cornēlī.**

169. VOCABULARY

carpentum, -ī, N., carriage
Cornēlius, -ī, M., Cornelius, *name of a man or boy*
gradus, -ūs, M., step
injūstus, -a, -um, unjust
intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, enter, go into
meminī, *infin.* **meminisse,** remember
sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum, sit
venia, -ae, F., pardon

a. The verb **meminī** is used only in the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses. The perfect is translated as a present, the past perfect is translated as an imperfect, and the future perfect is translated as a future. The infinitive **meminisse** is translated as a present infinitive.

EXERCISES

170. 1. Mementō amīcōs tuōs in perīculō esse. 2. Scītō mē frātrem tuum semper amāvisse. 3. Cūr, Cornēlī, hīc sōlus sedēs? 4. Nūntius gradūs celeriter ascendit et domum intrāvit. 5. Carpentum rēgīnae ante rēgiam stābat, et multī convēnerant ut rēgīnam vidērent. 6. Domum, mī (App. **19,** *a*) fīlī, redī et veniam ōrā. 7. Cum ille agricola injūstus sit, puer cum eō nōn manēbit. 8. Domum (Section **8,** 1), pater, rediī, ut veniam tuam peterem. 9. Captīvus in carcere sedēns miserrimus est.

171. 1. Remember that you have never seen this place before. 2. Be assured (know) that your country is defended by a brave army. 3. Why do you not stay at home, my son? 4. Cornelius, where is the book that I gave you? 5. All knew that you were unjust.

LESSON XXXIII

THE CONJUGATION OF *MĀLŌ*: ADJECTIVES DENOTING A PART

THE CONJUGATION OF *MĀLŌ*

172. The verb **mālō,** *prefer,* is a compound of **magis** and **volō.** Its principal parts are **mālō, mālle, māluī.** It is conjugated as follows:

PRESENT

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
mālō	mālumus	mālim	mālīmus
māvīs	māvultis	mālīs	mālītis
māvult	mālunt	mālit	mālint

IMPERFECT

mālēbam	mālēbāmus	māllem	māllēmus
mālēbās	mālēbātis	māllēs	māllētis
mālēbat	mālēbant	māllet	māllent

FUTURE

mālam	mālēmus
mālēs	mālētis
mālet	mālent

PERFECT

māluī, *etc.* — māluerim, *etc.*

PAST PERFECT

mālueram, *etc.* — māluissem, *etc.*

FUTURE PERFECT

māluerō, *etc.*

INFINITIVES

Pres. mālle — *Perfect* māluisse

a. This verb has no imperatives or participles.

ADJECTIVES DENOTING A PART

173. There are a few adjectives which tell what part of a thing is meant, instead of telling what kind. Among the most important are **summus, medius, extrēmus,** and **īmus.** Thus, **summus mōns,** *the highest part of the mountain, the mountain top.*

174. VOCABULARY

color, colōris, M., color
īmus, -a, -um, lowest part of, base of
mālō, mālle, māluī, prefer, choose
medius, -a, -um, middle, middle of
plānitiēs, -ēī, F., plain
summus, -a, -um, top of, highest part of
vestītus, -ūs, M., clothing

EXERCISES

175. 1. Lēgātus cum duōbus centuriōnibus in summō monte stābat. 2. Legiō in mediō colle (*half way up the hill*) īnstrūcta erat, ut adventum hostium expectāret. 3. Ille peregrīnus in patriam nōn redit, quod hīc habitāre māvult. 4. Cum pācem habēre semper māllēmus, tamen bellum gerere dēnique cōnstituimus. 5. Hic vir bonus esse mālēbat quam bonus vidērī. 6. Ducēs ex colōre vestītūs agnōscēbantur, et equitātus in eōs impetum fēcit. 7. Viātōrēs plānitiem trānsiērunt et ad īmum montem pervēnērunt. 8. Cūr in hīs locīs manēre māvīs ubi tot tempestātēs sunt? 9. Plānitiēs ab īmīs montibus ad flūmen patēbat.

176. 1. You know that I prefer to remain in the city in winter. 2. The top of the mountain can be seen (**cōnspiciō**) from this place. 3. You say that you prefer to be without companions. 4. The legion which had been enrolled in the province was drawn up half way up the hill (on the middle of the hill). 5. Although I preferred to remain at home, I set out to war with the other (**reliquī**) young men.

LESSON XXXIV

CLASSES OF PERFECT STEMS: NEGATIVE COMMANDS

CLASSES OF PERFECT STEMS

177. There are six different classes of perfect stems in regular verbs. They are as follows:

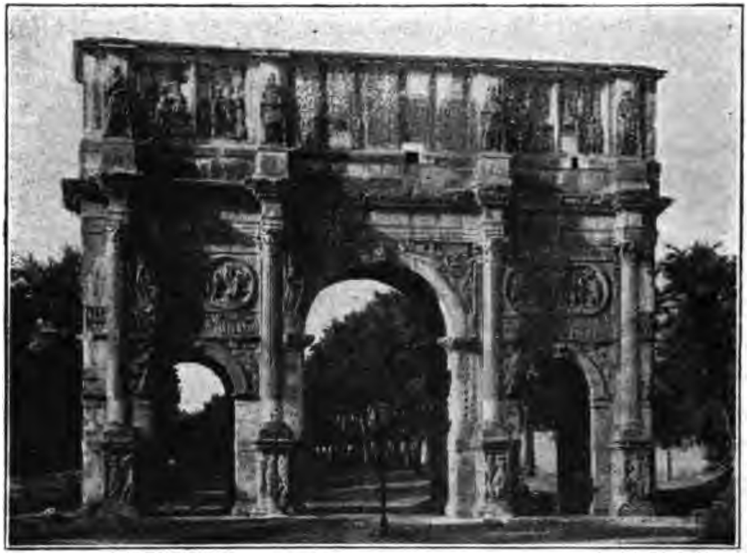
1. Perfects in **-vī**
   amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum
   compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētum
   petō, petere, petīvī, petītum
2. Perfects in **-uī**
   moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum
3. Perfects in **-sī** (cs and gs give **x**).
   maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum
   dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum
4. Reduplicated perfects
   dō, dare, dedī, datum
   pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum
5. Long vowel perfects
   veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum
   juvō, juvāre, jūvī, jūtum
6. Perfects with the stem unchanged, +**ī**.
   dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsum

a. Most verbs of the first conjugation form the perfect with **-vī**, but a few belong to other classes.

NEGATIVE COMMANDS

178. Negative commands (prohibitions) in the second person are frequently expressed by the imperative of **nōlō** (**nōlī, nōlīte**) with the infinitive of the verb denoting the act forbidden.

Nōlī hīc manēre, *do not remain here.*



ARCH OF CONSTANTINE

179. VOCABULARY

argentum, -ī, N., silver
inopīnāns, *gen.* **inopīnantis,** not expecting, unawares, off one's guard
obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, besiege
offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, offend
patior, patī, passus sum, permit, allow
speculātor, -ōris, M., scout
tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum, touch
vetō, -āre, vetuī, vetitum, forbid

a. The verb **vetō,** like **jubeō,** takes the infinitive and accusative.

EXERCISES

180. 1. Frātrem tuum, Cornēlī, offendistī, quī semper tē amāvit. 2. Caesar impetum in hostēs inopīnantēs fēcit et

eōs fugāvit. 3. Barbarī aurum et argentum rēgī dedērunt postquam in proeliō victī sunt. 4. Graecī illam urbem clāram decem annōs obsēdērunt et dēnique cēpērunt. 5. Rēx peregrīnum urbem intrāre vetuit, quod quīdam peregrīnī erant speculātōrēs. 6. Nōlī mē tangere, nisi mē offendere vīs. 7. Nōlīte patī illōs hominēs quī nōbīs bellum īnferre volunt per fīnēs vestrōs iter facere. 8. In eā terrā argentum inventum est, et spērāmus nōs aurum quoque inventūrōs esse. 9. Petīvimus ut Helvētiī nōs per fīnēs suōs īre paterentur.

181. 1. Do not wait until the lands (fields) of our allies are laid waste by the army of the enemy. 2. Do not praise the nation that made war on your own country. 3. I warned you, but you remained in the dangerous place. 4. We routed (**pellere**) the enemy and we killed many. 5. I have helped you, but I will not help you again.

LESSON XXXV

GENITIVE WITH CERTAIN VERBS: SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

THE GENITIVE WITH VERBS OF REMEMBERING AND FORGETTING

182. The verbs **meminī** and **reminīscor,** *remember,* and **oblīvīscor,** *forget,* frequently take a noun or pronoun in the genitive as object.

> **Numquam illīus *diēī* oblīvīscar,** *I shall never forget that day.*

a. If the object is a neuter pronoun or a neuter adjective used as a noun, it is always in the accusative.

> **Numquam *haec* oblīvīscar,** *I shall never forget these things.*

THE SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

183. Sometimes a subordinate clause which would otherwise have its verb in the indicative takes the subjunctive because it is closely dependent on a subjunctive or an infinitive.

> **Ita ācriter pugnāvērunt ut omnēs quī in pugnā** ***essent*** **vulnerārentur,** *they fought so fiercely that all who were in the battle were wounded.*

184. VOCABULARY

dissēnsiō, -ōnis, F., disagreement
interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, cut off
līberātor, -ōris, M., liberator
oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum, forget
palūs, -ūdis, F., swamp
reminīscor, reminīscī, remember
studium, -ī, N., zeal, enthusiasm, eagerness
suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, undertake

EXERCISES

185. 1. Omnēs cīvēs nostrī virtūtis eōrum fortium hominum semper reminīscentur. 2. Tum dissēnsiōnēs ortae sunt inter eōs quī līberātōrēs patriae appellātī sunt. 3. Rōmānī mōrum majōrum (*of their ancestors*) nōn oblītī sunt. 4. Hostēs id bellum magnō studiō suscēpērunt, sed nunc pācem volunt. 5. Omnibus itineribus interclūsīs, pars barbarōrum sē Rōmānīs dēdidit, et reliquī in palūdēs et silvās fūgērunt. 6. Signum datum est ut eī quī profectī essent statim redīrent. 7. Caesar scūtum cēpit et in prīmam aciem prōcessit. 8. Beneficiōrum tuōrum semper meminerō, et amīcus fidēlis tibi erō. 9. Gallī itinera interclūsērunt et castra obsidēre parāvērunt.

186. 1. The Romans remembered the victory of the Helvetians, with whom they had formerly waged war. 2. We cannot forget the wrongs of our allies, the Gauls. 3. The

Germans fled so swiftly that the legion which had crossed the river did not make an attack. 4. They came to the camp because they wished to beg for peace. 5. We shall find out who is in the town (Section **73**).



WALL PAINTING FROM POMPEII

THE ARGONAUTS

Jason, the leader of the expedition of the Argonauts, was the son of Aeson, king of Thessaly. Aeson had been deprived of this kingdom by his brother, Pelias, who also intended to kill Jason. Through the help of his friends Jason escaped. but the king was led to believe that he was dead.

Pelias was warned by an oracle to be on his guard against a man who should come to him wearing only one shoe, and when Jason, who had grown up, came into the city, having lost one of his shoes on the way, the king took fright. Thinking to be rid of this dangerous person, he ordered him to bring from Colchis the golden fleece which had been taken there by Phrixus. With a company of friends Jason set out in a ship called the Argo, which had been built by Argus, whence the name Argonauts was given the adventurers. After many adventures Jason obtained the golden fleece through the aid of Medea, daughter of the king of Colchis, who then fled from Colchis with the hero. When they had returned to Thessaly, Medea, who was famed for her power as a sorceress, brought about the death of Pelias by a trick, and as a result she and Jason were compelled to flee. They took refuge in Corinth, where Medea found a rival for the love of Jason in the person of the king's daughter. She caused the death of the unfortunate princess, and then sought revenge on Jason for his faithlessness by killing the children she had borne to him. After this she escaped by the aid of the sun-god. Jason met his death by being crushed by his boat, near which he was sitting, as it was propped up on the shore:

PART III

THE ARGONAUTS

1. The Wicked Uncle

Erant ōlim in Thessaliā duo frātrēs, quōrum alter Aesōn, alter Peliās appellātus est. Hōrum Aesōn prīmus rēgnum obtinuerat; at post paucōs annōs Peliās, rēgnī cupiditāte adductus, nōn modo frātrem suum expulit, sed etiam in animō habēbat Jāsonem, Aesonis fīlium, interficere. Quīdam tamen ex amīcīs Aesonis, ubi sententiam Peliae intellēxērunt, puerum ē tantō perīculō ēripere cōnstituērunt. Noctū igitur Jāsonem ex urbe abstulērunt, et, cum posterō diē ad rēgem rediissent, eī renūntiāvērunt puerum mortuum esse. Peliās, cum haec audīvisset, etsī rē vērā magnum gaudium percipiēbat, speciem tamen dolōris praebuit, et quae causa esset mortis quaesīvit. Illī tamen, cum bene intellegerent dolōrem ejus falsum esse, nesciō quam fābulam dē morte puerī fīnxērunt.

4, 5. in animō habēbat interficere, *had it in mind to kill; interficere* is the object of *habēbat.*

6. ex amīcīs: see note on Her. 380.

8. cum: in this section three uses of the subjunctive are introduced: with *cum* meaning *when,* here and in l. 10; with *cum* meaning *although* in l. 12; in an indirect question, *quae causa esset,* in l. 11.

13. nesciō quam fābulam, *some story or other;* literally, *I know not what story.* This combination of *nesciō* and the interrogative pronoun constitutes virtually an indefinite pronoun.

---

6. sententia, -ae, *f.* [sentiō], opinion, thought, purpose.

8. posterus, -a, -um, *adj.* [post], following, next.

13. ne-sciō, -īre, -īvī, —, *tr.*, not know, be ignorant.

14. fingō, fingere, finxī, fictum, *tr.*, form, fashion, make up.

2. A Careless Shoe-String

Post breve tempus Peliās, veritus nē rēgnum suum tantā vī et fraude occupātum āmitteret, amīcum quendam Delphōs mīsit quī ōrāculum cōnsuleret. Ille igitur quam celerrimē Delphōs sē contulit, et quam ob causam vēnisset dēmōnstrāvit. Respondit ōrāculum nūllum esse in praesentiā perīculum; monuit tamen Peliam ut, sī quis venīret calceum ūnum gerēns, eum cavēret. Post paucōs annōs accidit ut Peliās magnum sacrificium factūrus esset; nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīserat, et certum diem conveniendī dīxerat. Diē

---

15. veritus, *fearing;* past participle of a deponent verb with present force, like *mīrātus, suspicātus, arbitrātus.*

nē . . . āmitteret, *that he would lose;* a noun clause after a verb of fearing, App. 96.

16. Delphōs: accusative of a town name as the place to which.

17. quī . . . cōnsuleret: a relative clause of purpose, to be translated by an infinitive. What subordinate conjunctions also introduce clauses of purpose?

18. quam ob causam, *for what reason;* the subjunctive *vēnisset* can be explained by comparison with a similar clause in l. 11. For the position of the preposition see the note on Her. 73.

20. ut . . . cavēret: a noun clause, object of *monuit.*

sī quis, *if anyone; quis* here is itself an indefinite pronoun, to be distinguished from interrogative *quis;* it is found most frequently with *sī* and *nē.* Since this clause depends upon a subjunctive, *cavēret,* the verb *venīret* is itself made subjunctive by attract on.

21. gerēns, *wearing.*

ut . . . factūrus esset: a noun clause of fact, subject of *accidit, it happened that,* etc. The future active participle, here *factūrus,* with a past tense of *sum,* expresses a past intention, *was about to make.*

23. conveniendī, *for the people to assemble;* literally, *of assembling.*

dīxerat, *had appointed.*

---

15. nē, *conj.*, that . . . not, in order that . . . not; *after words of fear,* that; *as adv.*, not; **nē . . . quidem,** not even, not either.

16. fraus, fraudis, *f.*, deceit, deception, fraud.

19. re-spondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, *intr.*, reply, respond, answer.

praesentia, -ae, *f.* [**praesēns**], presence; the present; **in praesentiā,** at the moment, for the present.

20. quis, qua, quid, *indef. pron.*, anyone, anybody, anything; someone, somebody, something.

calceus, -ī, *m.*, shoe.

21. caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, *tr. and intr.*, beware of, beware.

cōnstitūtō magnus numerus hominum undique ex agrīs convēnit; inter aliōs vēnit Jāsōn, quī ā puerō apud Centaurum quendam vīxerat. Dum tamen iter facit, calceum alterum in trānseundō nesciō quō flūmine āmīsit.

---

26. alterum, *one.*

27. trānseundō, *in crossing;* ablative of the gerundive of *trānsīre,* App. 122.

---

3. The Golden Fleece

Jāsōn igitur, cum calceum āmissum nūllō modō recipere posset, alterō pede nūdō in rēgiam pervēnit. Quem cum vīdisset, Peliās subitō timōre affectus est; intellēxit enim hunc esse hominem quem ōrāculum dēmōnstrāvisset. Hoc igitur iniit cōnsilium. Rēx erat quīdam nōmine Aeētēs, quī rēgnum Colchidis illō tempore obtinēbat. Huic commissum erat vellus illud aureum quod Phrixus ōlim ibi relīquerat. Cōnstituit igitur Peliās Jāsonī negōtium dare ut hōc vellere potīrētur; cum enim rēs esset magnī perīculī, spērābat eum in itinere peritūrum esse. Jāsonem igitur ad sē arcessīvit,

---

28. cum: here and in l. 36 with causal force, hence the subjunctive.

29. alterō pede nūdō, *with one foot bare,* an ablative absolute.

Quem cum: translate as if *cum eum.*

31. dēmōnstrāvisset: subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse.

34. Phrixus: the story was that Phrixus, accompanied by his sister Helle, was forced to flee for his life from the intrigues of his stepmother Ino. The two were carried through the air on the back of a ram with a golden fleece sent by the god Hermes. Helle fell into the sea which was thereafter called the Hellespont. Phrixus arrived safely in Colchis, where he sacrificed the ram to Zeus and gave the fleece to king Aeetes. The king fastened the fleece to an oak tree in the grove of Ares.

35. ut . . . potīrētur: a noun clause of desire may depend upon a verb, as in l. 20, or be in apposition with a noun, here *negōtium;* translate, *the task of obtaining.*

vellere: with *potīrētur,* which, like *ūtor,* is one of the deponent verbs governing the ablative.

---

29. nūdus, -a, -um, *adj.,* naked, bare.

34. vellus, velleris, *n.,* fleece, pelt.

et quid fierī vellet dēmōnstrāvit. Jāsōn autem, etsī bene intellegēbat rem esse difficillimam, negōtium libenter suscēpit.

38. quid fierī vellet: an indirect question.

---

4. The Building of the Good Ship Argo

Cum tamen Colchis multōrum diērum iter ab eō locō abesset, nōluit Jāsōn sōlus proficīscī. Dīmīsit igitur nūntiōs in omnēs partēs quī causam itineris docērent et diem certum conveniendī dīcerent. Intereā postquam omnia quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvēs comportārī jussit, negōtium dedit Argō cuidam, quī summam scientiam rērum nauticārum habēbat, ut nāvem aedificāret. In hīs rēbus circiter decem diēs cōnsūmptī sunt. Argus enim, quī operī praeerat, tantam dīligentiam praebēbat ut nē nocturnum quidem tempus ad labōrem intermitteret. Ad multitūdinem hominum trānsportandam nāvis paulō erat lātior quam quae fierī solitae

40. Cum: as *cum* with the subjunctive may mean either *when*, *since*, or *although*, one must decide from the context which meaning is the right one.

iter: an accusative of extent, further defined by the genitive of measure, *multōrum diērum*.

44. ūsuī, *of service;* dative of purpose, App. 53.

armandās: gerundive with *ad* expressing purpose. Two more examples occur in this section.

negōtium . . . ut: the same combination was noted in l. 35.

47. operī: why dative?

48. ut . . . intermitteret: a clause of result, App. 93.

nē . . . quidem: this phrase encloses the word emphasized, here *nocturnum*.

50. quam quae: for *quam eae quae*.

---

44. com-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, carry together, bring together, collect.

45. nauticus, -a, -um, *adj.* **[nauta],** naval, nautical.

46. circiter, *adv.* **[circus],** about, nearly.

49. inter-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.*, suspend, interrupt; let pass; *pass.*, intervene.

erant, et ad vim tempestātum perferendam tōta ē rōbore facta est.

---

51. per-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.*, bear through; bear, endure, withstand; bring; carry (*a law*).
rōbur, rōboris, *n.*, oak.

---

5. The Anchor Is Weighed

Intereā ea diēs appetēbat quam Jāsōn per nūntiōs ēdīxerat, et ex omnibus regiōnibus Graeciae multī quōs aut reī novitās aut spēs glōriae movēbat undique conveniēbant. Trādunt autem in hōc numerō fuisse Herculem (dē quō ante multa perscrīpsimus), Orpheum, citharoedum praeclārissimum, Thēseum, Castorem et multōs aliōs quōrum nōmina nōtissima sunt. Ex hīs Jāsōn, quōs arbitrātus est ad omnia subeunda perīcula parātissimōs esse, eōs ad numerum quīnquāgintā dēlēgit et sociōs sibi adjūnxit. Tum, paucōs diēs commorātus, ut ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparāret, nāvem dēdūxit

---

53. diēs: here feminine. It is always masculine in the plural and frequently so in the singular.

55. Trādunt, *they say, it is commonly reported.*

57. Orpheum: a mythical musician and poet, son of the Muse Calliope, reputed to have been so skilled as to move rocks and trees by the power of his song, to charm wild beasts, and to stay rivers in their course.

Thēseum: a celebrated Athenian hero, whose adventures resemble the labors of Hercules. The best known adventure was the killing of the Minotaur in the Cretan Labyrinth.

58. Castorem: Castor was the son of Zeus and Leda and the brother of Pollux. The latter was famed as a boxer, Castor as a tamer of horses.

59. quōs: subject of *esse; eōs* is its antecedent. A relative clause in Latin often precedes the antecedent. English order requires that the antecedent be translated first.

62. ut . . . comparāret: a clause of purpose, App. 91.

---

54. novitās, -ātis, *f.* **[novus]**, newness, novelty.

57. citharoedus, -ī, *m.*, citharoedus, *one who plays on the cithara and sings at the same time.*

60. quīnquāgintā, *indecl. num.* **[quīnque]**, fifty.

61. com-moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.*, tarry, linger.

et, tempestātem ad nāvigandum idōneam nactus, magnō cum plausū omnium solvit.

---

63. tempestātem: not "tempest" or "storm."
nāvigandum: gerund or gerundive?

---

64. plausus, -ūs, *m.* [**plaudō,** to clap], clapping, applause.

---

6. A Fatal Mistake

Haud multō post Argonautae (ita enim appellātī sunt quī in istā nāvī vehēbantur) īnsulam quandam nōmine Cyzicum attigērunt et, ē nāvī ēgressī, ā rēge illīus regiōnis hospitiō exceptī sunt. Paucās hōrās ibi commorātī, ad sōlis occāsum rūrsus solvērunt. At, postquam pauca mīlia passuum prōgressī sunt, tanta tempestās subitō coörta est ut cursum tenēre nōn possent, et in eandem partem īnsulae unde nūper profectī erant magnō cum perīculō dējicerentur. Incolae tamen, cum nox esset obscūra, Argonautās nōn agnōscēbant, et, nāvem inimīcam vēnisse arbitrātī, arma rapuērunt et eōs ēgredī prohibēbant. Ācriter in lītore pugnātum est, et rēx

---

65. Argonautae: the word means *the sailors of the Argo;* we have Anglicized it as Argonauts.

66. nāvī: the ablative singular of *nāvis* is occasionally written *nāve,* but usually *nāvī.*

70. ut . . . nōn possent: a negative clause of result; what is the introductory word in a negative clause of purpose? In the second part of this sentence the result becomes positive, *et . . . dējicerentur, but were driven along.*

73. cum: is the meaning *when, since,* or *although?*

75. pugnātum est: certain intransitive verbs may be used impersonally in the passive, the subject of such a passive being suggested by the meaning of the verb itself; here, with *ācriter, a fierce battle was fought.* Compare Her. 280.

---

65. haud, *adv.,* not at all, by no means, not.

multō, *adv.* [*abl. of* **multum**], by much, much, by far, far.

66. vehō, -ere, vexī, vectum, *tr.,* bear, carry, bring.

71. nūper, *adv.,* newly, lately, recently.

73. obscūrus, -a, -um, *adj.,* dark, dim.

ipse, quī cum aliīs dēcucurrerat, ab Argonautīs occīsus est. Mox tamen, cum jam dīlūcēsceret, sēnsērunt incolae sē errāre, et arma abjēcērunt. Argonautae autem, cum vidērent rēgem occīsum esse, magnum dolōrem percēpērunt.

---

76. dē-currō, -currere, -cucurrī, *or* **-currī, -cursum,** *intr.*, run down; maneuver.

77. dī-lūcēscō, -lūcēscere, -lūxī, —, *intr.* [lūx], grow light, dawn.

78. abjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr.* [ab+jaciō], throw away, throw aside.

---

7. The Loss of Hylas

Postrīdiē ejus diēī Jāsōn, tempestātem satis idōneam esse arbitrātus (summa enim tranquillitās jam cōnsecūta erat), ancorās sustulit et, pauca mīlia passuum prōgressus, ante noctem Mȳsiam attigit. Ibi paucās hōrās in ancorīs expectāvit; ā nautīs enim cognōverat aquae cōpiam quam sēcum habērent jam dēficere; quam ob causam quīdam ex Argonautīs in terram ēgressī aquam quaerēbant. Hōrum in numerō erat Hylās quīdam, puer fōrmā praestantissimā; quī dum fontem quaerit, ā comitibus paulum sēcesserat. Nymphae autem quae fontem colēbant, cum juvenem vīdissent, eī persuādēre cōnātae sunt ut sēcum manēret; et cum ille negāret sē hoc factūrum esse, puerum vī abstulērunt.

---

80. ejus diēī: these words are, strictly speaking, unnecessary, since *postrīdiē* alone means *the next day*. The use of the full phrase is, however, quite common.

83. in ancorīs, *at anchor.*

84. cōpiam . . . dēficere: indirect discourse; why is *habērent* subjunctive?

87. quī: the relative at the head of an independent sentence, to be translated by a personal pronoun.

90. ut . . . manēret: a noun clause, object of *persuādēre,* App. 94; to be translated by an infinitive.

91. negāret: *negō* is the normal Latin for *say that not.*

---

80. postrīdiē, *adv.* [posterō diē], the next day.

88. fōns, fontis, *m.*, spring, fountain.

sē-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.*, go apart, retire, withdraw.

Comitēs ejus, postquam Hylam āmissum esse sēnsērunt, magnō dolōre affectī, diū frūstrā quaerēbant. Herculēs autem et Polyphēmus, quī vestīgia puerī longius secūtī erant, ubi tandem ad lītus rediērunt, Jāsonem solvisse cognōvērunt.

---

8. Dining Made Difficult

Post haec Argonautae ad Thrāciam cursum tenuērunt, et, postquam ad oppidum Salmydessum nāvem appulerant, in terram ēgressī sunt. Ibi, cum ab incolīs quaesīssent quis rēgnum ejus regiōnis obtinēret, certiōrēs factī sunt Phīneum quendam tum rēgem esse. Cognōvērunt etiam hunc caecum esse et dīrō quōdam suppliciō afficī, quod ōlim sē crūdēlissimum in fīliōs suōs praebuisset. Cujus suppliciī hoc erat genus. Missa erant ā Jove mōnstra quaedam, speciē horribilī, quae capita virginum, corpora volucrum habēbant. Hae volucrēs quae Harpyiae appellābantur, Phīneō summam molestiam afferēbant; quotiēns enim ille accubuerat, veniēbant et cibum appositum statim auferēbant. Quae cum ita essent, Phīneus famē paene mortuus est.

---

98. **quis . . . obtinēret**: the original form of the question would be *quis . . . obtinet?* Why the subjunctive?

99. **certiōrēs factī sunt**, *were informed;* the phrase is followed by indirect discourse. What is the literal translation?

106. **accubuerat**: the Roman custom of assuming a half reclining position at table is here attributed to a much earlier period.

107. **Quae cum ita essent**: a clause frequently employed by Latin authors; literally, *since these things were so;* better, *in consequence*, or *in view of these facts.*

108. **famē**: the ablative of this word has the ending of a fifth declension noun, although its other forms belong to the third declension.

---

100. caecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, blind.

104. volucris, -is, *f.* [volucer, flying], bird.

106. molestia, -ae, *f.* [molestus], vexation, annoyance.

accumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitum, *intr.* [ad+cumbō, recline], recline (*at table*).

107. appōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [ad+pōnō], place near; serve, set before.

108. famēs, -is, *f.*, hunger.

9. The Harpies Beaten

Rēs igitur in hōc locō erant, cum Argonautae nāvem appulērunt. Phīneus autem, simul atque audīvit eōs in suōs fīnēs ēgressōs esse, magnopere gāvīsus est. Sciēbat enim quantam opīniōnem virtūtis Argonautae habērent, nec dubitābat quīn sibi auxilium ferrent. Nūntium igitur ad nāvem mīsit quī Jāsonem sociōsque ad rēgiam vocāret. Eō cum vēnissent, Phīneus dēmōnstrāvit quantō in perīculō suae rēs essent, et prōmīsit sē magna praemia datūrum esse, sī illī remedium repperissent. Argonautae negōtium libenter suscēpērunt, et, ubi hōra vēnit, cum rēge accubuērunt; at simul ac cēna apposita est, Harpyiae cēnāculum intrāvērunt, et cibum auferre cōnābantur. Argonautae prīmum ēnsibus volucrēs petiērunt; cum tamen vidērent hoc nihil prōdesse, Zētus et Calais, quī ālīs īnstrūctī erant, in āera sē sublevāvērunt, ut dēsuper impetum facerent. Quod cum sēnsissent

---

109. cum . . . appulērunt: when *cum* introduces a new event in the narrative instead of describing a situation, it takes the perfect indicative.

112. quantam: this word may be either a relative or an interrogative; the subjunctive *habērent* shows the clause to be an indirect question.

opīniōnem: the word sometimes means *opinion,* but not here.

113. quīn . . . ferrent, *that they were coming to his rescue;* the use of *quīn* with the subjunctive is explained in App. 103.

117. repperissent: representing a future perfect indicative, second person, in direct discourse; translate with the auxiliary "would."

121. nihil: accusative of extent; with *prōdesse, availed nothing, had no effect.*

122. āera: for the case see note on Per. 33.

123. Quod cum: do not translate *which when.*

---

112. dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [**dubius**], doubt, hesitate.

113. quīn, *conj. and adv.* [**quī,** how, +**-ne**]; *as conj., after words of doubt,* that; *after words of hindering,* from; *as adv.,* **quīn etiam,** nay, nay even, nay in fact.

116. prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.,* send forth, promise.

117. remedium, -ī, *n.* [**re-,** *compare* **medeor,** heal], remedy, cure.

119. cēnāculum, -ī, *n.* [**cēna**], dining-room.

120. ēnsis, -is, *m.,* sword.

122. āla, -ae, *f.,* wing.

sub-levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.,* hold up, support; assist, help.

Harpyiae, reī novitāte perterritae, statim aufūgērunt, neque posteā umquam rediērunt.

---

124. aufugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, *intr.* **[ab+fugiō],** flee away, run away.

---

10. The Symplegades

Hōc factō, Phīneus, ut prō tantō beneficiō meritam grātiam referret, Jāsonī dēmōnstrāvit quā ratiōne Symplēgadēs vītāre posset. Symplēgadēs autem duae erant rūpēs ingentī magnitūdine, quae ā Jove positae erant eō cōnsiliō, nē quis ad Colchida pervenīret. Hae parvō intervāllō in marī natābant et, sī quid in medium spatium vēnerat, incrēdibilī celeritāte concurrēbant. Postquam igitur ā Phīneō doctus est quid faciendum esset Jāsōn, sublātīs ancorīs, nāvem solvit et, lēnī ventō prōvectus, mox ad Symplēgadēs appropinquāvit; tum in prōrā stāns columbam quam in manū tenēbat ēmīsit. Illa

---

126. Hōc factō: ablative absolute, to be translated by a clause with "when," App. 75.

129. eō cōnsiliō, *with this design* (*purpose*); explained by the clause which follows.

nē quis, *that no one;* the force and use of *quis* were explained in the note on *sī quis*, l. 20.

132. quid faciendum esset, *what had to be done.* For the use of the future passive participle see App. 121.

133. sublātīs ancorīs: ablative absolute; we say *weigh anchor.* When the perfect passive participle in an ablative absolute phrase, as here, denotes an act by the subject of the principal verb, it is usually best rendered in the active voice. Here are typical translations:

by a past active participle: *having weighed anchor*
by a coördinate verb: *weighed anchor and*
by a prepositional phrase: *after weighing anchor*
by a temporal clause: *when he had weighed anchor.*

---

127. ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*, reckoning, account; list, record; plan, course, manner; principle, reason.

130. natō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [*freq. of* **nō,** swim], swim, float.

133. lēnis, -e, *adj.*, mild, gentle.

135. prōra, -ae, *f.*, bow, prow.

columba, -ae, *f.*, dove, pigeon.

ē-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.*, send forth, release; utter.

rēctā viā per medium spatium volāvit et, priusquam rūpēs cōnflīxērunt, incolumis ēvāsit, caudā tantum āmissā. Tum rūpēs utrimque discessērunt; antequam tamen rūrsus concurrerent, Argonautae, bene intellegentēs omnem spem salūtis in celeritāte positam esse, summā vī rēmīs contendērunt, et nāvem incolumem perdūxērunt. Hōc factō, dīs grātiās libenter ēgērunt, quōrum auxiliō ē tantō perīculō ēreptī essent; bene enim sciēbant nōn sine auxiliō deōrum rem ita fēlīciter ēvēnisse.

---

136. rēctā viā, *straight;* how literally? The ablative is employed to denote the road or route.

138. antequam . . . concurrerent: heretofore *antequam* and *priusquam* have taken an indicative, signifying merely that one event occurred before another. In this passage is an example of the anticipatory use of the subjunctive with *antequam,* App. 97. The person anticipating may view the event in various ways. The Argonauts evidently wished to forestall the closing in of the movable cliffs, which we can indicate by translating *should rush together.*

142. ēreptī essent: the subjunctive is due to the informal indirect discourse, App. 106; that is, while no verb of saying is employed, one is implied in *grātiās ēgērunt: they thanked the gods, by whose help* (as they said), etc. At the same time the clause expresses the reason assigned for their prayer of thanks.

---

136. rēctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **regō**], straight, direct; upright.

137. cōn-flīgō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flīctum, *intr.*, dash *or* strike together.

138. utrimque, *adv.* [**uterque**], on both sides.

143. fēlīciter, *adv.* [**fēlīx**], happily, luckily.

---

11. A Heavy Task

Brevī intermissō spatiō, Argonautae ad flūmen Phāsim vēnērunt, quod in fīnibus Colchōrum erat. Ibi, cum nāvem appulissent et in terram ēgressī essent, statim ad rēgem Aeētem sē contulērunt, et ab eō postulāvērunt ut vellus aureum sibi trāderētur. Ille, cum audīvisset quam ob causam Argonautae vēnissent, īrā commōtus est, et diū negāvit

---

145. Brevī intermissō spatiō, *after a short time;* ablative absolute.

148. ut . . . trāderētur: a noun clause, object of *postulāvērunt.*

sē vellus trāditūrum esse. Tandem tamen, quod sciēbat Jāsonem nōn sine auxiliō deōrum hoc negōtium suscēpisse, mūtātā sententiā, prōmīsit sē vellus trāditūrum, sī Jāsōn labōrēs duōs difficillimōs prius perfēcisset; et, cum Jāsōn dīxisset sē ad omnia perīcula subeunda parātum esse, quid fierī vellet ostendit. Prīmum jungendī erant duo taurī speciē horribilī, quī flammās ex ōre ēdēbant; tum, hīs jūnctīs, ager quīdam arandus erat, et dentēs dracōnis serendī. Hīs audītīs, Jāsōn, etsī rem esse summī perīculī intellegēbat, tamen, nē hanc occāsiōnem reī bene gerendae āmitteret, negōtium suscēpit.

154. perfēcisset: for a future perfect indicative of direct discourse, as in l. 117.

156. jungendī erant: *had to be, must be, were to be* (*yoked*) illustrate possible renderings of the future passive participle with *sum.*

159. nē . . . āmitteret: *in order not to lose,* a negative clause of purpose.

160. reī bene gerendae, *of successfully accomplishing his purpose;* a gerundive construction, App. 123.

154. prius, *adv.* [*n. of* **prior**], before, first.

157. flamma, -ae, *f.*, flame.

158. serō, -ere, sēvī, satum, *tr.*, sow, plant.

12. The Magic Ointment

At Mēdēa, rēgis fīlia, Jāsonem adamāvit, et, ubi audīvit eum tantum perīculum subitūrum esse, rem aegrē ferēbat. Intellegēbat enim patrem suum hunc labōrem prōposuisse eō ipsō cōnsiliō, ut Jāsōn morerētur. Quae cum ita essent, Mēdēa (quae summam perītiam medicīnae habēbat) hoc cōn-

163. rem aegrē ferēbat, *was deeply grieved;* literally, *bore the thing with distress.*

165. ut . . . morerētur: a clause explaining *cōnsiliō,* as in l. 129.

162. ad-amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, fall in love with.

163. aegrē, *adv.* [**aeger**], painfully; with difficulty; with grief; with resentment.

166. perītia, -ae, *f.* [**perītus**], experience, knowledge.

medicīna, -ae, *f.* [**medeor,** heal], the healing art, medicine.

silium iniit. Mediā nocte īnsciente patre ex urbe ēvāsit; et, postquam in montēs fīnitimōs vēnit, herbās quāsdam carpsit; tum, sūcō expressō, unguentum parāvit, quod vī suā corpus aleret nervōsque cōnfirmāret. Hōc factō, Jāsonī unguentum dedit; praecēpit autem ut eō diē quō istī labōrēs cōnficiendī essent corpus suum et arma māne oblineret. Jāsōn, etsī paene omnibus magnitūdine et vīribus corporis praestābat (vīta enim omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiīs reī mīlitāris cōnstiterat), cēnsēbat tamen hoc cōnsilium nōn neglegendum esse.

---

167. **īnsciente patre,** *without her father's knowledge,* ablative absolute.

170. **aleret, cōnfirmāret:** employ the auxiliary "should" in translation; the clause is a relative clause of purpose.

171. **quō:** for *quō diē, when.*

cōnficiendī essent, *were to be performed;* the principle of subjunctive by attraction is explained in the note on *sī quis,* l. 20.

175 **cōnstiterat,** *had consisted;* from *cōnstō.*

---

167. **īn-sciēns,** *gen.* **-scientis,** *adj.,* unknowing, without knowledge, unaware.

168. **herba, -ae,** *f.,* herb; grass, turf.

carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptum, *tr.,* pluck.

169. **sūcus, -ī,** *m.,* juice, sap.

exprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.* [ex + premō], press out; wring out; elicit.

unguentum, -ī, *n.* [ungō, anoint], ointment.

170. **alō, alere, aluī, altum,** *tr.,* nourish, sustain.

nervus, -ī, *m.,* sinew, muscle, power, strength.

172. **māne,** *adv.,* in the morning, early in the morning.

ob-linō, -linere, -lēvī, -litum, *tr.,* daub, smear over.

174. **vēnātiō, -ōnis,** *f.* [vēnor], hunting, the chase.

175. **cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnsum,** *tr.,* estimate, think, believe.

neglegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *tr.* [nec + legō], disregard, neglect, slight.

---

13. Sowing the Dragon's Teeth

Ubi is diēs vēnit quem rēx ad arandum agrum ēdīxerat, Jāsōn, ortā lūce, cum sociīs ad locum cōnstitūtum sē contulit. Ibi stabulum ingēns repperit, in quō taurī inclūsī erant. Tum,

---

178. **ortā lūce,** *at daybreak.*

portīs apertīs, taurōs in lūcem trāxit, et summā cum difficultāte jugum imposuit. At Aeētēs, cum vidēret taurōs nihil contrā Jāsonem valēre, magnopere mīrātus est; nesciēbat enim fīliam suam auxilium eī dedisse. Tum Jāsōn, omnibus aspicientibus, agrum arāre coepit; quā in rē tantam dīligentiam praebuit ut ante merīdiem tōtum opus cōnfēcerit. Hōc factō, ad locum ubi rēx sedēbat adiit, et dentēs dracōnis postulāvit; quōs ubi accēpit, in agrum quem arāverat magnā cum dīligentiā sparsit. Hōrum autem dentium nātūra erat tālis ut in eō locō ubi sparsī essent virī armātī mīrō quōdam modō gignerentur.

---

181. nihil: accusative of extent, as in l. 121; with *valēre, had no power.*

184. quā in rē: the position of the preposition is like that of *ob* in l. 18.

tantam: this word (also *tālis* in l. 189) indicates clearly whether the *ut* clause following is one of purpose or of result.

185. cōnfēcerit: the perfect subjunctive where an imperfect would seem to be required by sequence of tenses, App. 135, 1.

---

181. jugum, -ī, *n.*, yoke.

182. valeō, -ēre, valuī, valitūrus, *intr.*, be strong, have power; be valid.

184. aspiciō, aspicere, aspexī, aspectum, *tr.* [**ad+speciō,** look], look at, behold, look on.

185. merīdiēs, -ēī, *m.* [**medius+diēs**], mid-day, noon; the south.

188. spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsum, *tr.*, strew, scatter, sprinkle.

190. gignō, -ere, genuī, genitus, *tr.*, give birth to; beget.

---

14. A Strange Crop

Nōndum tamen Jāsōn tōtum opus cōnfēcerat; imperāverat enim eī Aeētēs ut armātōs virōs quī ē dentibus gignerentur sōlus interficeret. Postquam omnēs dentēs in agrum sparsit, Jāsōn, lassitūdine exanimātus, quiētī sē trādidit, dum virī

---

192. ut . . . interficeret, *to kill;* a noun clause with its verb in the active when used as the object of a verb of commanding, persuading, or warning is usually to be translated by an infinitive.

193. sōlus, *without assistance.*

---

194. lassitūdō, -dinis, *f.* [**lassus,** weary], weariness.

istī gignerentur. Paucās hōrās dormiēbat; sub vesperum, tamen, ē somnō subitō excitātus, rem ita ēvēnisse ut praedictum erat cognōvit; nam in omnibus agrī partibus virī ingentī magnitūdine corporis, ēnsibus galeīsque armātī, mīrum in modum ē terrā oriēbantur. Hōc cognitō, Jāsōn cōnsilium quod dederat Mēdēa nōn omittendum esse putābat; saxum igitur ingēns (ita enim praecēperat Mēdēa) in mediōs virōs conjēcit. Illī undique ad locum concurrērunt, et cum quisque sibi id saxum (nesciō cūr) habēre vellet, magna contrōversia orta est. Mox, strictīs ēnsibus, inter sē pugnāre coepērunt, et, cum hōc modō plūrimī occīsī essent, reliquī vulneribus cōnfectī ā Jāsone nūllō negōtiō interfectī sunt.

---

195. gignerentur, *should be born;* an anticipatory subjunctive with *dum, until.* In l. 138 the event was one to be forestalled; here it is one to prepare for.

sub vesperum, *toward evening.*

196. ut: with the indicative this word means *as* or *when;* in the sense of *as*, it may be correlative with *ita* or *sīc*, as in this sentence.

198. mīrum in modum: a prepositional phrase equivalent to *mīrō modō.*

203. nesciō cūr, *for some reason or other;* in l. 13 occurred *nesciō quam fābulam.*

204. inter sē, *one another;* a phrase denoting reciprocal action, and of frequent occurrence.

---

196. ē-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.*, come out; result, turn out.

prae-dīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictum, *tr.*, foretell, predict.

200. omittō, omittere, omīsī, omissum, *tr.* [ob + mittō], let go; neglect.

203. contrōversia, -ae, *f.* [contrōversus, disputed], dispute, quarrel.

204. stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strictum, *tr.*, strip off; draw, unsheathe.

---

15. Flight of Medea

At rēx Aeētēs, ubi cognōvit Jāsonem labōrem prōpositum cōnfēcisse, īrā graviter commōtus est; intellegēbat enim id per dolum factum esse, nec dubitābat quīn Mēdēa auxilium

---

209. quīn . . . tulisset: *quīn* and the subjunctive after a verb of doubting, as in l. 113.

eī tulisset. Mēdēa autem, cum intellegeret sē in magnō fore perīculō, sī in rēgiā mānsisset, fugā salūtem petere cōnstituit. Omnibus igitur ad fugam parātīs, mediā nocte, īnsciente patre, cum frātre Absyrtō ēvāsit, et quam celerrimē ad locum ubi Argō subducta erat sē contulit. Eō cum vēnisset, ad pedēs Jāsonis sē prōjēcit, et multīs cum lacrimīs obsecrāvit eum nē in tantō discrīmine mulierem dēsereret quae eī tantum prōfuisset. Ille, quod memoriā tenēbat sē per ejus auxilium ē magnō perīculō ēvāsisse, libenter eam excēpit et, postquam causam veniendī audīvit, hortātus est nē patris īram timēret. Prōmīsit autem sē quam prīmum eam in nāve suā āvectūrum.

---

210. fore: a future infinitive, often employed instead of *futūrus esse.*

214. subducta: the size of ancient ships made it possible to "beach" them; for "launch" we have found *dēdūcō.*

216. nē, *not to.*

220. quam prīmum, *as soon as possible.* What is the force of a superlative with *quam?* Point out another example a few lines above.

---

214. sub-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead up, lead away; draw up, beach.

215. obsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**ob+sacrō,** make sacred], entreat, implore.

216. discrīmen, -inis, *n.* [**discernō,** separate], crisis, peril.

217. tantum, *adv.* [*acc. n. of* **tantus**], so greatly; this much, only.

221. ā-vehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.*, carry off, take away.

---

16. Seizure of the Fleece

Postrīdiē ejus diēī Jāsōn cum sociīs suīs, ortā lūce, nāvem dēdūxit et, tempestātem idōneam nactī, ad eum locum rēmīs contendērunt, quō in locō Mēdēa vellus cēlātum esse dēmōnstrāvit. Eō cum vēnissent, Jāsōn in terram ēgressus est et, sociīs ad mare relictīs quī praesidiō nāvī essent, ipse cum

---

224. quō in locō = *ubi.*

226. quī praesidiō nāvī essent, *to guard the ship;* the clause is one of purpose; *praesidiō* is a dative of purpose, *nāvī* a dative of reference, App. 53, 54.

Mēdēā in silvās viam cēpit. Pauca mīlia passuum per silvam prōgressus, vellus quod quaerēbat ex arbore suspēnsum vīdit. Id tamen auferre rēs erat summae difficultātis; nōn modo enim locus ipse ēgregiē et nātūrā et arte mūnītus erat, sed etiam dracō quīdam, speciē terribilī, arborem custōdiēbat. At Mēdēa, quae, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, artis medicae summam scientiam habuit, rāmum quem ex arbore proximā dēripuerat venēnō īnfēcit. Hōc factō, ad locum appropinquāvit, et dracōnem, quī faucibus apertīs adventum expectābat, venēnō sparsit; proinde, dum dracō somnō oppressus dormit, Jāsōn vellus aureum ex arbore dēripuit, et cum Mēdēā quam celerrimē pedem rettulit.

238. pedem rettulit: see *referō* in final vocabulary.

228. suspendō, -pendere, -pendī, -pēnsum, *tr.* **[sub+pendō],** hang up, suspend.

230. ēgregiē, *adv.* **[ēgregius],** excellently, unusually.

232. medicus, -a, -um, *adj.* **[medeor,** heal**],** of healing, medical.

233. rāmus, -ī, *m.*, branch, bough.

234. dēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tr.* **[dē+rapiō],** tear away, pull off.

236. pro-inde, *adv.*, therefore, accordingly.

opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.* **[ob+premō],** press down, weigh down, overwhelm; overpower.

17. Back to the Argo

Dum tamen ea geruntur, Argonautae, quī ad mare relictī erant, animō ānxiō reditum Jāsonis expectābant; bene enim intellegēbant id negōtium summī esse perīculī. Postquam igitur ad occāsum sōlis frūstrā expectāverant, dē ejus salūte dēspērāre coepērunt, nec dubitābant quīn aliquī cāsus accidisset. Quae cum ita essent, mātūrandum sibi cēnsuērunt, ut auxilium ducī ferrent; at, dum proficīscī parant, lūmen quoddam subitō cōnspiciunt, mīrum in modum inter silvās

244. mātūrandum (esse) sibi, ***that they ought to make haste;*** impersonal use of the passive of an intransitive verb; *sibi* is a dative of agent, App. 56.

240. ānxius, -a, -um, *adj.*, anxious.

refulgēns, et magnopere mīrātī quae causa esset ejus reī, ad locum concurrunt. Quō cum vēnissent, Jāsonī et Mēdēae advenientibus occurrērunt, et vellus aureum lūminis ejus causam esse cognōvērunt. Omnī timōre sublātō, magnō cum gaudiō ducem suum excēpērunt, et dīs grātiās libenter ēgērunt, quod rēs ita fēlīciter ēvēnisset.

---

248. Quō cum: translate as if *eō cum.*

251. dīs: the form regularly employed for the dative and ablative plural of *deus.*

252. quod . . . ēvēnisset: the indicative is used with *quod* causal unless the reason is regarded as a quotation. Here the causal clause contains the reason assigned in the Argonauts' prayer; compare l. 142.

---

247. re-fulgeō, -fulgēre, -fulsī, —, *intr.*, flash back, glitter.

248. Quō, *adv.* [quī], *interrog.*, whither? where? *relative*, to which place *or* point, whither; *indef.*, to any place, anywhere; *with compar.*, in order that.

249. ad-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.*, come to, come up, approach.

---

18. Pursued by the Angry Father

Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnēs sine morā nāvem rūrsus cōnscendērunt et, sublātīs ancorīs, prīmā vigiliā solvērunt; neque enim satis tūtum esse arbitrātī sunt, in eō locō manēre. At rēx Aeētēs, quī jam ante inimīcō in eōs fuerat animō, ubi cognōvit fīliam suam nōn modo ad Argonautās sē recēpisse, sed etiam ad vellus auferendum auxilium tulisse, hōc dolōre gravius exārsit. Nāvem longam quam celerrimē dēdūcī jussit

---

254. vigiliā: a method of reckoning time in the night, which was divided, from sunset to sunrise, into four equal "watches."

256. inimīcō in eōs fuerat animō, *had entertained hostile feelings toward them; animō* is a descriptive ablative in the predicate.

258. hōc dolōre: for *hujus reī dolōre, in resentment at this;* literally, *because of this resentment.*

259. nāvem longam, *a war ship.*

---

254. vigilia, -ae, *f.* [vigil, awake], a watching; a watch (*as a division of time*).

259. ex-ārdēscō, ārdēscere, -ārsī, -ārsum, *intr.*, blaze out; be inflamed, be enraged.

et, mīlitibus impositīs, fugientēs īnsecūtus est. Argonautae, quī bene sciēbant rem in discrīmine esse, summīs vīribus rēmīs contendēbant. Cum tamen nāvis quā vehēbantur ingentī esset magnitūdine, nōn eādem celeritāte quā Colchī, prōgredī poterant. Quae cum ita essent, ā Colchīs sequentibus paene captī sunt; neque enim longius intererat quam quō tēlum adjicī posset. At Mēdēa, cum vīdisset quō in locō rēs essent, paene omnī spē dēpositā, īnfandum hoc cōnsilium cēpit.

---

260. fugientēs: the present participle again as a noun, *fugitives.*

261. summīs vīribus rēmīs contendēbant, *plied* (literally *strove with*) *the oars with all their might; vīribus* is an ablative of manner, *rēmīs* of means.

262. quā, *in which;* an ablative of means.

265. neque enim, etc., *for the distance between them was not greater than a javelin's throw; quō . . . posset* is a clause of result, literally *greater than to which a javelin could be thrown.*

---

260. īn-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr. and intr.*, follow after, pursue, follow up.

265. inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *intr.*, be between, lie between; be present at, attend.

266. ad-jiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr.* [ad+jaciō], hurl to, hurl upon, throw.

267. īn-fandus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unspeakable, shocking.

---

19. A Fearful Expedient

Erat in nāve Argonautārum fīlius quīdam rēgis Aeētae, nōmine Absyrtus, quem, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, Mēdēa, ex urbe fugiēns, sēcum abdūxerat. Hunc puerum Mēdēa cōnstituit interficere eō cōnsiliō, ut, membrīs ejus in mare conjectīs, cursum Colchōrum impedīret; prō certō enim sciēbat Aeētem, cum membra fīliī vīdisset, nōn longius prōsecūtūrum esse; neque opīniō eam fefellit. Omnia enim ita

---

273. prō certō sciēbat, *she felt certain;* literally, *knew it for certain.*

275. neque opīniō eam fefellit, *and she was not mistaken;* literally, *the expectation did not deceive her.*

---

271. ab-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead away, bring away.

274. prō-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr.*, follow, follow after.

275. fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsum, *tr.*, deceive, cheat, elude.

ēvēnērunt ut Mēdēa spērāverat. Aeētēs, ubi prīmum membra vīdit, ad ea colligenda nāvem statuī jussit. Dum tamen ea geruntur, Argonautae, nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre, mox (quod necesse fuit) ē cōnspectū hostium remōtī sunt, neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Ēridanum pervēnērunt. At Aeētēs, nihil sibi prōfutūrum esse arbitrātus, sī longius prōgressus esset, animō dēmissō domum revertit, ut fīliī corpus ad sepultūram daret.

---

276. ubi prīmum: a phrase with the same meaning as *simul ac; cum prīmum* is more common.

278. nōn intermissō . . . labōre, *by uninterrupted labor at the oars,* ablative absolute.

279. quod: neuter, because reference is made to the following statement of fact.

280. prius: to be translated with *quam, before;* the two are often written as one word.

282. sī longius prōgressus esset: in form a condition, in thought the subject of *prōfutūrum esse, it would do him no good to go farther*

animō dēmissō, *dejected.*

---

277. colligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [com-+legō], collect

statuō, -ere, statuī, statūtum, *tr.* [status, a standing], cause to stand, stop; resolve, determine.

278. rēmigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [rēmex, rower], row, ply an oar.

279. re-moveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.*, move back; take away, remove.

282. dē-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.*, send down, let fall.

---

20. The Bargain with Pelias

Tandem post multa perīcula Jāsōn in eundem locum pervēnit unde ōlim profectus erat. Tum ē nāvī ēgressus, ad rēgem Peliam, quī rēgnum adhūc obtinēbat, statim sē contulit et, vellere aureō mōnstrātō, ab eō postulāvit ut rēgnum sibi trāderētur. Peliās enim pollicitus erat, sī Jāsōn vellus rettulisset, sē rēgnum eī trāditūrum. Postquam Jāsōn quid fierī vellet ostendit, Peliās prīmum nihil respondit, sed diū

---

289. rettulisset, *should bring back.* In direct discourse the future perfect indicative, *rettuleris,* would be used.

in eādem trīstitiā tacitus permānsit; tandem ita locūtus est: "Vidēs mē aetāte jam esse cōnfectum, neque dubium est quīn diēs suprēmus mihi adsit. Liceat igitur mihi, dum vīvam, hoc rēgnum obtinēre; tum, postquam ego ē vītā discesserō, tū in meum locum veniēs." Hāc ōrātiōne adductus, Jāsōn respondit sē id factūrum quod ille rogāsset.

---

293. mihi (adsit): a dative of reference, *for me;* best translated here by a possessive, *my last day.*

adsit: like *nōn dubitō*, the phrase *nōn dubium est* takes *quīn* and the subjunctive.

Liceat: the subjunctive expresses an entreaty, *allow me,* etc.; literally, *may it be permitted me;* App. 89.

294. vīvam: future indicative with *dum* meaning *as long as.*

ego, tū: the personal pronouns are here employed for emphasis and contrast.

---

291. trīstitia, -ae, *f.* [**trīstis**], dejection, sadness.

tacitus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **taceō**], silent, still.

per-maneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *intr.*, remain, continue.

292. dubius, -a, -um, *adj.*, doubtful, uncertain.

293. suprēmus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*superl. of* **superus**], highest; last.

ad-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *intr.*, be at hand, be near.

---

21. A Magical Transformation

Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Mēdēa rem aegrē tulit et rēgnī cupiditāte adducta cōnstituit mortem rēgī per dolum īnferre. Hōc cōnstitūtō, ad fīliās rēgis vēnit atque ita locūta est: "Vidētis patrem vestrum aetāte jam esse cōnfectum, neque ad labōrem rēgnandī perferendum satis valēre. Vultisne eum rūrsus juvenem fierī?" Tum fīliae rēgis ita respondērunt: "Num hoc fierī potest? Quis enim umquam ē sene juvenis

---

297. rem aegrē tulit: a combination commented on in connection with l. 163.

298. mortem rēgī īnferre, *to cause the death of the king.* What is the literal translation? *Rēgī* is a dative with the compound verb *īnferre.*

301. Vultisne: the enclitic *-ne* serves as sign of a direct question, without indicating whether a positive or a negative answer is expected.

303. Num: this particle indicates that "no" is the expected answer, *this can not be done, can it?*

factus est?" At Mēdēa respondit, "Scītis mē artis medicae summam habēre scientiam. Nunc igitur vōbīs dēmōnstrābō quō modō haec rēs fierī possit." Hīs dictīs, cum arietem aetāte jam cōnfectum interfēcisset, membra ejus in vāse aēneō posuit et, igne suppositō, in aquam herbās quāsdam īnfūdit. Tum, dum aqua effervēsceret, carmen magicum cantābat. Post breve tempus ariēs ē vāse exiluit et, vīribus refectīs, per agrōs currēbat.

---

309. effervēsceret: anticipatory subjunctive with *dum, until*, as in l. 195.

---

305. vōs, *gen.* **vestrum** *or* **vestrī,** *pers. pron., pl. of* **tū,** you.

306. ariēs, -etis, *m.*, ram.

307. vās, vāsis, *n.*, vessel, utensil.

308. suppōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [sub+pōnō], put under.

309. īn-fundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *tr.*, pour into, pour upon.

effervēscō, -fervēscere, -ferbuī, —, [ex+fervēscō, boil], boil up, boil.

carmen, -inis, *n.*, a song; charm, incantation.

310. cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [*freq. of* **canō**], sing.

exiliō, -īre, -uī, —, *intr.* [ex+saliō], leap, spring forth.

---

22. A Dangerous Experiment

Dum fīliae rēgis hoc mīrāculum stupentēs intuentur, Mēdēa ita locūta est: "Vidētis quantum valeat ars medica. Vōs igitur, sī vultis patrem vestrum in adulēscentiam redūcere, id quod fēcī ipsae faciētis. Vōs patris membra in vās conjicite; ego herbās magicās praebēbō." Fīliae rēgis cōnsilium quod dederat Mēdēa nōn omittendum putāvērunt. Patrem igitur Peliam necāvērunt, et membra ejus in vās aēneum conjēcērunt; nihil enim dubitābant quīn hoc maximē

---

314. Vōs, *you* (*also*). In 315 and 316 *vōs* and *ego* are in contrast.

319. nihil: *not at all;* accusative of extent, a stronger negative than *nōn*.

---

312. mīrāculum, -ī, *n.* [mīror], marvel, miracle.

stupeō, -ēre, stupuī, —, *intr.*, be astounded, amazed, aghast.

in-tueor, -tuērī, -tuitus sum, *tr.*, look upon, gaze at; protect.

314. adulēscentia, -ae, *f.* [adulēscēns], youth.

eī prōfutūrum esset. At rēs omnīnō aliter ēvēnit ac spērāverant; Mēdēa enim nōn eāsdem herbās dedit, quibus ipsa ūsa erat. Itaque, postquam diū frūstrā expectāvērunt, patrem suum rē vērā mortuum esse intellēxērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs, Mēdēa spērābat sē cum conjuge suō rēgnum acceptūram esse. At cīvēs, cum intellegerent quō modō Peliās periisset, tantum scelus aegrē tulērunt; itaque, Jāsone et Mēdēā ē rēgnō expulsīs, Acastum rēgem creāvērunt.

320. prōfutūrum esset, *would benefit;* a simple form of the subjunctive dependent upon a verb of doubting would not express futurity; Latin therefore resorts to the future active participle with the subjunctive of *sum.*

ac: after *aliter* and similar words *ac* is translated *than.*

323. rē vērā, *really, in truth.*

324. sē . . . acceptūram esse: the infinitive with subject accusative is used after *spērō* as after verbs of thinking, knowing, etc.

326. aegrē tulērunt: *were incensed at.*

320. aliter, *adv.* [alius], otherwise.

23. A Fatal Gift

Post haec Jāsōn et Mēdēa, ē Thessaliā expulsī, ad urbem Corinthum vēnērunt, cujus urbis Creōn quīdam rēgnum tum obtinēbat. Erat autem Creontī fīlia ūna, nōmine Glaucē; quam cum vīdisset, Jāsōn cōnstituit Mēdēam uxōrem suam repudiāre eō cōnsiliō, ut Glaucēn in mātrimōnium dūceret. At Mēdēa, ubi intellēxit quae ille in animō habēret, īrā graviter commōta, jūre jūrandō cōnfirmāvit sē tantam injūriam ultūram. Hoc igitur cōnsilium cēpit. Vestem parāvit summā arte contextam et variīs colōribus tīnctam. Hanc

330. Erat Creontī fīlia ūna = *Creōn fīliam ūnam habēbat; Creontī* is a dative of possession, App. 52.

332. Glaucēn: accusative; see note on *Danaē*, Per. 6.

335. Vestem: like the robe of Nessus in the story of Hercules.

334. jūs jūrandum, jūris jūrandī, *n.*, an oath.

336. con-texō, -texere, -texuī, -textum, *tr.*, weave.

tingō, -ere, tīnxī, tīnctum, *tr.*, dip, dye.

dīrō quōdam īnfēcit venēnō, cujus vīs tālis erat ut, sī quis eam vestem induisset, corpus ejus quasi igne ūrerētur. Hōc factō, vestem Glaucae mīsit. Illa autem, nihil malī suspicāns, dōnum libenter accēpit, et vestem novam (mōre fēminārum) statim induit.

338. induisset: the clause *sī quis . . . induisset* depends upon a subjunctive, *ūrerētur;* by what principle is *induisset* made subjunctive?

338. ūrō, -ere, ussī, ustum, *tr.*, burn.

---

24. Flight of Medea, and Death of Jason

Vix vestem induerat Glaucē, cum dolōrem gravem per omnia membra sēnsit, et post paulum dīrō cruciātū affecta ē vītā excessit. Hīs rēbus gestīs, Mēdēa, furōre atque āmentiā impulsa, fīliōs suōs necāvit. Tum magnum sibi fore perīculum arbitrāta sī in Thessaliā manēret, ex eā regiōne fugere cōnstituit. Hōc cōnstitūtō, Sōlem ōrāvit ut in tantō perīculō auxilium sibi praebēret. Sōl autem, hīs precibus commōtus, currum mīsit, cui dracōnēs, ālīs īnstrūctī, jūnctī erant. Mēdēa nōn omittendam tantam occāsiōnem arbitrāta currum cōnscendit, itaque per āera vecta incolumis ad urbem Athēnās pervēnit. Jāsōn autem post breve tempus mīrō modō occīsus est. Ille enim (sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum) sub umbrā nāvis suae, quae in lītus subducta erat, ōlim dormiēbat. At nāvis, quae adhūc ērēcta steterat, in eam partem ubi Jāsōn jacēbat subitō dēlāpsa virum īnfēlīcem oppressit.

342. cum . . . sēnsit: the same use of *cum, when,* noted in connection with l. 109.

351. itaque: the two parts of the word are here to be translated separately, *and so.* What is the usual meaning?

344. āmentia, -ae, *f.* [**āmēns,** out of one's mind], madness.

348. prex, precis, *f.* (*usually pl.*), prayer, entreaty.

349. currus, -ūs, *m.*, chariot.

353. umbra, -ae, *f.*, shadow.

356. dē-lābor, -lābī, -lāpsus sum, *intr.*, fall down, slip down.

STORIES FROM ROMAN HISTORY

The city of Rome was believed by the Romans to have been founded by Romulus, who was the grandson of the king of Alba Longa, a town situated in the Alban Hills, not far from Rome. According to legend Romulus was the descendant of Aeneas, who had fled from Troy to Italy when Troy was captured by the Greeks.

Following Romulus six other kings ruled over Rome, the last of whom was driven from his throne and compelled to go into exile. A republican form of government was then established which continued nearly to the beginning of the Christian era.

The stories of Romulus and the other heroes of Rome's early history are so involved with legend and myth that they have but little historical value. But because of the large place which they hold in the literature and art of the Romans they are scarcely less significant than the more truthful narrative of later times.

The stories of the republican period and probably of the greater part of the period of the kings, as here given, deal with historical facts. Since the civilization of today is so closely bound up with that of the Romans, these stories of Rome may be said to have a direct connection with the life of the great nations of the present time, our own nation included.

The narrative is not given in the exact form in which it has come down to us in the works of the Roman writers, but the incidents are told substantially as they are found in their works.

STORIES FROM ROMAN HISTORY

1. Aeneas Settles in Italy

Ōlim in Asiā erat urbs antīqua, quae Troja appellāta est. Eam urbem Graecī decem annōs obsēdērunt tandemque cēpērunt. Priamō rēge fīliīsque ejus interfectīs, urbem dēlēvērunt. Sed Aenēās, quī inter clārissimōs dēfēnsōrēs urbis fuerat, cum paucīs comitibus ex urbe effūgit; cum profugōs ex omnibus partibus coēgisset, in Italiam migrāre cōnstituit.

Post septem annōs vēnit in eam partem Italiae ubi erat urbs Laurentum. Ibi cum Trojānī praedam ex agrīs agerent, Latīnus rēx Aborīginēsque, quī tum ea loca tenēbant, agrōs dēfendere parāvērunt. Sed Latīnus, postquam in colloquiō orīginem multitūdinis ducisque cognōvit, pācem cum Aenēā fēcit atque posteā eī Lāvīniam fīliam in mātrimōnium dedit. Trojānī urbem condidērunt, quam Aenēās ab nōmine uxōris Lāvīnium appellāvit.

Deinde Turnus, rēx Rutulōrum, cui Lāvīnia ante adventum Aenēae dēspōnsa erat, bellō Latīnum Trojānōsque aggressus est. Victī sunt Rutulī, sed victōrēs ducem Latīnum āmīsērunt. Inde Turnus auxilium petiit ab Etrūscīs, quī tōtam

---

4. Aenēās: a Greek noun adapted to the Latin first declension; nom. *Aenēās*, gen. and dat. *Aenēae*, acc. *Aenēān* or *Aenēam*, abl. *Aenēā*.

5. cum, *when;* with the subjunctive in a descriptive clause of situation, App. 102.

8. praedam: since booty consisted largely of cattle, *agō, drive,* is an appropriate verb; in English, "collect," "carry off," are the usual terms.

16. bellō, *in war,* ablative of means.

18. Etrūscīs: the Etruscans were a people whose origin is unknown. They were not of the same racial stock as the Romans and other peoples of Italy. They attained a high degree of civilization and exercised a marked influence on Roman civilization.

---

4. dēfēnsor, -ōris, *m.* [dēfendō], defender.

5. profugus, -ī, *m.* [profugiō], fugitive, refugee.

Italiam fāmā nōminis suī implēverant; illī metuentēs novam urbem multitūdine opibusque crēscentem laetī auxilium tulērunt. Aenēās in tantō discrīmine, ut Aborīginēs Trōjānōsque sub eōdem jūre atque nōmine habēret, Latīnōs utramque gentem appellāvit. Cum adversus Etrūscōs sē moenibus dēfendere posset, tamen in aciem cōpiās ēdūxit. Etrūscī victī sunt; victōrēs tamen ducem ut anteā āmīsērunt; post pugnam enim Aenēam reperīre nōn potuērunt; multī igitur eum ad deōs trānsīsse crēdidērunt.

---

20. multitūdine, opibus: ablatives of respect.

laetī: to be translated by an adverb; an adjective is frequently employed in Latin where English requires an adverb.

21. ut . . . habēret: a clause of purpose, App. 91.

22. Latīnōs utramque gentem appellāvit, *called both nations Latini;* two accusatives with the active of a verb of naming; likewise in l. 13.

23. Cum: that the conjunction is adversative, *although*, is shown by *tamen, nevertheless*, in the principal clause.

24. dēfendere posset, *could have defended.*

27. trānsīsse: since Aeneas was by legend the son of the goddess Venus, it was not unnatural to represent his disappearance as a "translation" to the ranks of the gods.

---

23. adversus, *prep. with acc.*, opposed to, against.

---

2. Founding of Alba Longa

Lāvīnia inde rēgnāvit, quoad Ascanius, Aenēae fīlius, adolēvit. Tum ille propter abundantem Lāvīnī multitūdinem mātrī urbem relīquit; ipse novam aliam urbem sub Albānō monte condidit, quae Alba Longa appellāta est. Multī rēgēs post Ascanium imperium Albānum gessērunt. Quīdam ex

---

3. sub: with an ablative the meaning is *under*, or *at the foot of.*

Albānō monte: this mountain in historical times was the site of a temple of Jupiter Latiaris, *i.e.*, Jupiter as the god of the towns belonging to the Latin League.

---

1. quo-ad, *adv. and conj.*, until, as long as.

hīs, cui nōmen Proca erat, duōs fīliōs, Numitōrem atque Amūlium, habuit. Numitōrī, quī major erat, rēgnum relīquit. Pulsō tamen frātre, Amūlius rēgnāvit. Fīlium frātris necāvit; fīliam Rhēam Silviam per speciem honōris sacerdōtem Vestae lēgit.

6. cui nōmen Proca erat, *whose name was Proca; cui* is a dative of possession, App. 52.

7. major, *older;* a frequent meaning, the full expression being *major nātū,* (literally) *greater by birth.*

9. sacerdōtem: a second accusative after *lēgit,* which belongs to the list of verbs of "naming," "choosing," etc.; one accusative denotes the person named or chosen, the other what he is named or the office to which he is chosen.

10. Vestae: goddess of the hearth of each home, but also worshiped by the state. In the Roman Forum stood the small round temple which was the seat of the state cult. Here was kept burning a never-dying fire tended by the Vestal Virgins, who during their service of thirty years were not allowed to marry.

7. major, majus, *adj.* [*compar. of* **magnus**], larger, greater; **major nātū,** older; *subst.*, **majōrēs, -um,** *m. pl.*, ancestors.

9. sacerdōs, -ōtis, *m. and f.* [**sacer**], priest, priestess.

3. Romulus and Remus

Ex hāc fīliā nātī sunt duo fīliī, Rōmulus et Remus. Pater eōrum, ut fāma est, Mārs deus erat. Sed nec deī nec hominēs mātrem et puerōs ā crūdēlitāte rēgiā dēfendērunt. Sacerdōs in custōdiam data est; puerōs rēx in Tiberim injicī jussit. Forte Tiberis abundāverat, neque eī quī puerōs ferēbant adīre ad altam aquam poterant. Itaque puerōs in alveō posuērunt atque in tenuī aquā relīquērunt. Sed alveus

2. ut fāma est, *according to tradition;* literally, *as the report is.*

4. Tiberim: what common noun has the accusative in *-im?*

5. neque: the common word for *and not;* the negative should be taken with *poterant.*

7. relīquērunt: supply *eōs* as object.

4. custōdia, -ae, *f.* [**custōs**], watch, custody, guard.

7. alveus, -ī, *m.*, trough.

in siccō sēdit. Deinde lupa sitiēns — sīc enim est trāditum — ex montibus quī circā sunt ad puerōrum vāgītum cursum flexit. Faustulus, pāstor rēgius, eam invēnit puerōs nūtrientem. Ab eō atque Lārentiā uxōre puerī ēducātī sunt. Cum prīmum adolēvērunt, vēnārī coepērunt et in latrōnēs praedā onustōs impetūs facere pāstōribusque praedam dīvidere.

Dum quoddam lūdicrum celebrātur, latrōnēs īrātī ob praedam āmissam impetum in Rōmulum et Remum fēcērunt; captum Remum rēgī Amūliō trādidērunt. Puerōs praedam ex agrīs Numitōris ēgisse incūsābant. Sīc ad supplicium Numitōrī Remus dēditur.

Ab initiō Faustulus crēdiderat puerōs jussū rēgis expositōs

---

8. in siccō sēdit, *drifted ashore;* literally, *settled on dry ground.*

sīc enim est trāditum: translate in the same manner as *ut fāma est,* l. 2.

10. nūtrientem: a verb of "finding" often takes a participle as a second accusative.

11. ēducātī sunt: although we derive "educate" from this verb, it should regularly be translated *rear, bring up.* What is the difference between *ēducō* and *ēdūcō?*

Cum prīmum, *as soon as;* as we have seen, *cum* in this combination regularly takes the indicative, like *simul atque, postquam, ubi.*

13. pāstōribus: dative of indirect object, although we say "among" with the verbs "divide," "distribute."

14. Dum . . . celebrātur: for the present indicative with *dum* see note on Per. 46; the verb should be translated by a past tense.

15. āmissam: the past passive participle in a prepositional phrase is sometimes best translated by an English noun, here *loss of.*

17. incūsābant, *brought as an accusation,* with dependent indirect discourse, *puerōs . . . ēgisse;* better, *accused the boys of,* etc.

19. expositōs: equivalent to a relative clause, *who had been abandoned.*

---

8. siccus, -a, -um, *adj.,* dry; *subst.,* **siccum, -ī,** *n.,* dry land.

lupa, -ae, *f.,* a she-wolf.

sitiēns, *gen.* **-entis,** *adj.* [*pr. part. of* **sitiō,** to thirst], thirsty.

9. circā, *adv. and prep. with acc.,* around, round about.

10. nūtriō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *tr.,* nourish, nurse.

13. onustus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**onus,** a burden], loaded, burdened.

14. celebrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**celeber**], throng; celebrate.

17. incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**in+causa**], accuse, complain of.

19. (**jussus, -ūs,** *m.*), *only in the abl.,* **jussū,** by order, command, decree.

apud sē ēducārī. Tum perīculō Remī mōtus rem Rōmulō aperit. Forte Numitor quoque audīverat frātrēs geminōs esse; tum comparāns et aetātem eōrum et nōbilem animum Remī nepōtem agnōvit. Rōmulus cum manū pāstōrum in rēgem Amūlium impetum facit; Remus aliā parātā manū adjuvat. Ita rēx interfectus est. Imperium Albānum Numitōrī avō ab juvenibus restitūtum est. Deinde Rōmulus et Remus in iīs locīs ubi expositī ubique ēducātī erant urbem condere cōnstituērunt.

---

20. apud sē, *at his house, in his home; apud* is frequently used in the sense here indicated with a pronoun or a person's name.

---

22. comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**compar,** like], compare.

26. restituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, *tr.* [**re-+statuō,** station], restore.

---

4. Founding of Rome

Uterque juvenis nōmen novae urbī dare eamque regere cupiēbat. Sed quod geminī erant, nec rēs aetāte dēcernī poterat, auguriīs ūsī sunt. Ā Remō prius vīsī sunt sex vulturēs. Rōmulō posteā duodecim sēsē ostendērunt. Uterque ab amīcīs rēx appellātus est atque rēgnum postulābat. Cum īrātī arma rapuissent, in pugnā Remus cecidit. Ex aliā fāmā Remus illūdēns frātrem novōs mūrōs urbis trānsiluit, inde interfectus est ab īrātō Rōmulō, quī haec verba quoque addidit: "Sīc deinde pereat quīcumque alius trān-

---

3. ūsī sunt, *resorted to;* notice the case of the object.

6. Ex, *according to.*

7. illūdēns, *in mockery of.*

9. Sīc pereat, *so perish;* optative subjunctive, App. 90.

---

3. augurium, -ī, *n.* [**augur,** augur], augury, divination.

7. illūdō, -lūdere, -lūsī, -lūsum, *tr.* [**in+lūdō,** play], make sport of, ridicule.

9. quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *indef. pron.,* whoever, whatever, everyone who, everything that.

siliet moenia mea." Ita sōlus potītus est imperiō Rōmulus; conditam urbem ā suō nōmine Rōmam appellāvit.

Palātium prīmum, in quō ipse erat ēducātus, mūnīvit. Vocātā ad concilium multitūdine, jūra dedit. Īnsignia quoque imperiī, sellam curūlem togamque praetextam, et duodecim līctōrēs sūmpsit. Asȳlum aperuit in monte Capitōlīnō, quō multī ex fīnitimīs populīs profūgērunt. Creāvit etiam centum senātōrēs, quī honōris causā patrēs appellātī sunt.

---

10. imperiō: the same case use as *auguriīs*, l. 3.

11. conditam: a past participle equivalent to a relative clause, as in 3, 19.

12. Palātium: the Palatine Hill was doubtless the location of the earliest settlement made on the site of Rome. Its isolated position and considerable area made it the natural situation for a fortified town dominating the surrounding hills.

13. jūra dedit, *gave them laws.*

14. sellam curūlem: an ivory stool without back, with curved legs, and with a seat of plaited leather straps.

togam praetextam: the toga of the Roman citizen was white. Boys and curule magistrates wore a toga with a scarlet border.

15. līctōrēs: the lictors were attendants upon the Roman kings, later upon certain magistrates of the republic. They accompanied the official in public, clearing the way, and exacting due obeisance from passers-by. As symbols of the king's power to scourge and to put to death, the lictors carried the *fascēs*, a bundle of rods with an ax enclosed. The magistrates of the republic, however, were obliged to remove the ax within the city and to lower the rods before the popular assembly.

Asȳlum in monte Capitōlīnō: the Capitoline was the smallest of the hills of Rome. It had two peaks. On the northern was the citadel, on the southern the Capitolium, or temple of Jupiter. The saddle between the two peaks was the site of the *asȳlum, place of refuge.*

16. quō: an adverb.

17. honōris causā, *as a mark of distinction;* remember that *causa* and *grātia* in the ablative with the meaning *for the sake of* stand after the accompanying genitive.

---

14. sella, -ae, *f.* [sedeō], chair, seat.

curūlis, -e, *adj.*, curule.

praetextus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **praetexō,** to border], bordered; **toga praetexta,** *the toga of a Roman magistrate, which was edged with scarlet.*

15. asȳlum, -ī, *n.*, a place of refuge; asylum.

5. The Sabine Women

Jam rēs Rōmāna firma et fīnitimīs cīvitātibus bellō pār erat. Sed Rōmānī neque uxōrēs neque cum fīnitimīs jūs cōnūbiī habēbant. Tum Rōmulus quōsdam ex patribus lēgātōs in vīcīnās gentēs mīsit quī societātem cōnūbiumque novō populō peterent. Nusquam benignē lēgātī audītī sunt; nam fīnitimī nōn sōlum Rōmānōs spernēbant, sed etiam tantam in mediō crēscentem urbem metuēbant. Itaque īrātī Rōmānī vī ūtī statuērunt.

Ad eam rem Rōmulus, lūdīs parātīs, fīnitimōs ad spectāculum invītāvit. Multī convēnērunt, ut et lūdōs spectārent et novam urbem vidērent. Sabīnōrum omnis multitūdō cum līberīs ac conjugibus vēnit. Ubi spectāculī tempus vēnit omnēsque intentī in lūdōs erant, tum, signō datō, Rōmānī rapere virginēs coepērunt. Parentēs virginum profūgērunt clāmantēs Rōmānōs hospitium violāvisse. Nec raptae virginēs aut spem dē sē meliōrem aut indignātiōnem minōrem habēbant.

Sed ipse Rōmulus circumībat ostendēbatque id patrum

---

1. **rēs Rōmāna:** virtually equivalent to *rēs pūblica Rōmāna.*

cīvitātibus: dative depending on *pār;* give the list of adjectives governing the dative.

bellō: ablative of respect. What English preposition is regularly used in translating this ablative?

4. **quī . . . peterent,** *to ask for;* a relative clause of purpose, App. 91.

13. **in lūdōs,** *on the games.*

---

1. **pār, paris,** *adj.*, equal, like.

3. **cōnūbium, -ī,** *n.* [**com-+nūbō**], marriage.

4. **vīcīnus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**vīcus**], neighboring.

societās, -ātis, *f.* [**socius**], association, alliance.

6. **sōlum,** *adv.* [sōlus], only, merely, alone.

spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētum, *tr.*, despise, scorn, spurn.

13. **intentus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [*p. part. of* **intendō**], attentive, intent.

16. **melior, -ius,** *adj.* [*compar. of* **bonus**], better.

minor, minus, *adj.* [*compar. of* **parvus**], less, smaller; **minor nātū,** younger.

18. **circum-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum,** *tr. and intr.*, go around, go from one to another.

superbiā factum esse. "Quamquam vī captae estis," inquit, "omnia jūra Rōmānōrum habēbitis."

Jam multō minus perturbātī animī raptārum erant. At parentēs eārum cīvitātēs fīnitimās, ad quās ejus injūriae pars pertinēbat, ad arma concitābant. Hae cīvitātēs omnēs ā Rōmulō victae sunt. Novissimum bellum ab Sabīnīs ortum est, quod multō maximum fuit. Sabīnī arcem Rōmānam in monte Capitōlīnō dolō cēpērunt. Rōmānī posterō diē arcem reciperāre cōnātī sunt. Ubi Hostius Hostīlius, dux exercitūs Rōmānī, cecidit, cōnfestim aciēs Rōmāna pulsa est. At Rōmulus templum vōvit Jovī Statōrī ōrāvitque auxilium. Tum crēdēns precēs suās audītās esse "hinc," inquit, "Rōmānī, Juppiter optimus maximus nōs resistere ac renovāre pugnam jubet." Restitērunt Rōmānī tamquam caelestī vōce jussī.

Tum Sabīnae mulierēs ausae sunt sē inter tēla volantia īnferre, ut pācem ā patribus virīsque implōrārent. Ducēs eā rē mōtī nōn modo pācem sed etiam cīvitātem ūnam ex

---

19. superbiā: ablative of cause.

Quamquam: this conjunction takes an indicative. What mood is used with *cum* meaning *although?*

21. raptārum: the past passive participle is frequently employed as a noun, here *of the captured women.*

29. templum: this temple lay outside the Palatine city. It was probably situated somewhere near the spot where the Arch of Titus now stands.

31. optimus maximus: a set phrase applied to Jupiter; English inserts "and" between the adjectives in translation.

resistere: here in the less frequent meaning *make a stand.*

32. Restitērunt: emphatic by its position as first word in the sentence; the emphasis is reproduced in English by translating, *the Romans did make a stand.*

34. sē īnferre, *rush in.*

---

23. pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, —, *intr.* [per+teneō], stretch out, extend; relate, pertain.

con-citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.,* rouse, incite.

32. caelestis, -e, *adj.* [caelum], from heaven, celestial.

vōx, vōcis, *f.,* voice, cry, utterance, word.

duābus faciunt; rēgnum quoque cōnsociant atque Rōmam faciunt sēdem imperiī. Multitūdō ita aucta novō nōmine Quirītēs appellāta est ex Curibus, quae urbs caput Sabīnōrum erat. Deinde Rōmulus, populō in cūriās trīgintā dīvīsō, nōmina mulierum raptārum cūriīs dedit.

Post aliquot annōs Tatius ab Laurentibus interfectus est. Rōmulus posteā sōlus rēgnāvit. Annīs sequentibus bella secunda cum Fidēnātibus Veientibusque, populīs Etrūscīs, gesta sunt.

Dum Rōmulus quōdam tempore exercitum in campō Mārtiō recēnset, tempestās subitō coōrta eum nimbō operuit. Patrēs quī proximī steterant dīxērunt rēgem sublīmem rap-

---

37. faciunt: for the historical present consult the note on Per. 64.

39. quae urbs: we say *a city which*, putting city in apposition with the name. Latin writers avoided putting an appositive directly before a relative, preferring to include it in the relative clause.

41. cūriīs: this division by "wards" continued through the republic as the basis of a curiate assembly of the people which was convened for certain purposes.

42. ab Laurentibus: Tatius was killed in revenge for ill treatment inflicted by certain of his relatives upon envoys from Laurentum.

44. secunda: derived from *sequor, follow;* from one point of view that which "follows" is "second"; from another, that which "follows" or "goes with you" is "favorable," "successful." Which meaning is appropriate here?

46. campō Mārtiō: the northern part of the Campus Martius was devoted to athletic purposes, the southern part was a place of meeting for public assemblies.

47. recēnset: why is the present tense used? What English tense should be employed in translation?

48. sublīmem: predicate adjective after *raptum esse;* translate, *had been carried away on high.*

---

37. cōn-sociō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, associate, unite.

40. cūria, -ae, *f.* [**cūria,** *a division of the Roman people*], ward; senate-house.

trīgintā, *indecl. numeral,* thirty.

47. re-cēnseō, -cēnsēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsum, *tr.*, number, reckon; review.

nimbus, -ī, *m.*, rain-storm; thunder-cloud.

operiō, -īre, operuī, opertum, *tr.*, cover, cover over, conceal.

48. sublīmis, -e, *adj.*, uplifted, high; up, aloft.

tum esse. Deinde ūniversī clāmant: "Salvē, deus deō nāte." Rōmulus dīcitur posteā cuidam cīvī sē ostendisse et eum hīs verbīs allocūtus esse: "Nūntiā Rōmānīs deōs velle meam Rōmam caput orbis terrārum esse; proinde rēs mīlitāris colenda est; nam nūllae opēs hūmānae armīs Rōmānīs resistere possunt." Posteā nōmen Quirīnus Rōmulō additum est. Rēgnāvit septem et trīgintā annōs.

49. Salvē, etc., *hail to thee, thou god, son of a god.*

51. meam Rōmam . . . esse: an infinitive with subject accusative is frequently used as an object of *volō.*

53. colenda est: the use of the future passive participle with *sum* is explained in App. 121.

49. ūniversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ūnus+versus], all together, all.

salveō, -ēre, —, —, *intr.*, be well; **salvē,** *imper.* (*in greetings*), hail to you.

6. Numa Pompilius

Certāmen inde dē rēgnō inter factiōnēs ortum est. Sabīnī rēgem suae factiōnis creārī cupiēbant. Rōmānī veterēs peregrīnum rēgem recūsābant. Interrēgnō secūtō, senātus imperium gessit. Deinde plēbs clāmāre coepit multōs dominōs prō ūnō factōs esse. Optimum igitur vīsum est sine morā rēgem creāre.

Habitābat eō tempore Curibus Numa Pompilius, vir jūstissimus perītusque omnis dīvīnī atque hūmānī jūris. Rēg-

2. rēgem . . . creārī: object of *cupiēbant,* like *Rōmam . . . esse,* object of *velle* in 5, 52.

3. interrēgnō: this word was employed originally of the time intervening between the death of one king and the accession of another; it continued in use in the republic with reference to those periods in which the state was without consuls.

7. Curibus, *at Cures;* a locative, App. 81.

8. jūris: an objective genitive with *perītus;* we say *skilled in* or *familiar with.*

3. inter-rēgnum, -ī, *n.*, interregnum.

7. jūstus, -a, -um, *adj.* [jūs], just, upright.

8. perītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, experienced, skilled.

num eī omnium cōnsēnsū dēlātum est. Is urbem novam, quae ā Rōmulō armīs condita erat, jūre lēgibusque firmāvit. Arcum portīs īnstrūctum fēcit, quī arcus Jānī appellātus est; apertus bellī index erat, clausus pācis. Per omne rēgnum Numae clausus fuit. Pāx cum cīvitātibus fīnitimīs societāte ac foederibus facta est.

Rēx inde ad mōrēs populī cultumque deōrum animum convertit. Ut populī fidem conciliāret, simulāvit sē cum deā Ēgeriā congressūs habēre et monitū ejus sacra īnstituere sacerdōtēsque legere. Annum ad cursum lūnae in duodecim mēnsēs dīscrīpsit. Quōsdam diēs nefāstōs fēcit, per quōs diēs comitia nōn habēbantur. Virginēs Vestālēs lēgit, quās caerimōniīs quibusdam sānctās fēcit.

Multa etiam alia ā rēge īnstitūta sunt, rītūs, caerimōniae, sacerdōtia. Multitūdō hīs rēbus ā vī et armīs conversa rēgis

---

11. īnstrūctum, *provided with.*

12. apertus, *when open; arcus* is to be understood.

13. societāte, foederibus: ablatives of means.

17. monitū: an ablative expressing accordance.

18. ad cursum lūnae, *according to,* etc.; this old lunar year of 355 days stood as the official year until Julius Caesar reformed the calendar in 46 B.C. See note on 26, 93.

20. Virginēs Vestālēs: see the note on 2, 10.

---

9. dē-ferō, -ferre, dētulī, dēlātum, *tr.*, carry away, carry down.

12. index, -dicis, *m. and f.*, informer, witness; index, sign.

15. cultus, -ūs, *m.* **[colō],** cultivation, culture; civilization, refinement.

16. fidēs, -eī, *f.*, faith, confidence; faithfulness; pledge.

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* **[similis],** make like; pretend.

17. congressus, -ūs, *m.* **[congredior],** meeting, conference.

monitus, -ūs, *m.* **[moneō],** admonition, advice.

19. dī-scrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *tr.*, distribute, divide.

nefāstus, -a, -um, *adj.* **[nefās,** wrong, crime**],** unhallowed; **diēs nefāstus,** a day not open to the transaction of state business.

20. comitium, -ī, *n.* **[com-+eō],** a place of assembly; the Comitium, *a meeting place adjoining the old Roman Forum;* **comitia, -ōrum,** *pl.*, public assembly, election.

caerimōnia, -ae, *f.*, ceremony, rite.

21. sānctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **sanciō**], sacred, holy, inviolate.

22. rītus, -ūs, *m.*, rite, ceremony.

23. sacerdōtium, -ī, *n.* **[sacerdōs],** priesthood.

mōrēs imitābātur. Fīnitimī populī cīvitātem Rōmānam tōtam in cultum deōrum versam violāre nōlēbant. Ita duo deinceps rēgēs, Rōmulus bellō, Numa pāce, cīvitātem auxērunt. Numa annōs trēs et quadrāgintā rēgnāvit.

---

25. tōtam, *wholly;* an adjective where English would employ an adverb; compare *laetī* in 1, 20.

---

24. imitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.*, imitate, copy after.

26. deinceps, *adv.*, in succession.

---

7. Tullus Hostilius

Numā mortuō, interrēgnum ut anteā secūtum est. Inde Tullus Hostīlius, nepōs Hostīliī quī Rōmulō rēgnante pugnāns adversus Sabīnōs ceciderat, rēx creātus est. Hic ferōcior etiam quam Rōmulus fuit. Quod cīvitās torpēre ōtiō vidēbātur, causās undique bellī quaerēbat. Bellum cum Albānīs prīmum ortum est. Albānī priōrēs magnō exercitū in agrum Rōmānum impetum fēcērunt. Ibi Cluilius, Albānus rēx, moritur. Albānī dictātōrem Mettium Fufetium creant. Ubi is ab Tullō colloquium petiit, rēx Rōmānus nōn recūsāvit. Mettius sīc locūtus est: "Uterque populus sē bellum gerere propter injūriās dīcit. Rē vērā cupīdō imperiī duōs cognātōs vīcīnōsque populōs ad arma concitat. Sed potius metuere dēbēmus Etrūscōs, quī, cum dēfessī cōn-

---

2. Rōmulō rēgnante, *in the reign of Romulus*, ablative absolute.

6. magnō exercitū: ablative of accompaniment without a preposition in a military expression.

8. dictātōrem: in the time of the republic the Romans also occasionally replaced their consuls by a dictator in order better to conduct a war. The dictatorship amounted to a temporary restoration of the kingship. Here the Albans are represented as employing the dictatorship to fill in an interregnum.

11. Rē vērā, *in reality, in truth.*

---

4. torpeō, -ēre, —, —, *intr.*, be inactive, languish.

6. prior, prius, *compar. adj.*, former, previous; first.

11. cupīdō, -inis, *f.* **[cupidus]**, passion, greed.

12. cognātus, -a, -um, *adj.* **[com- + (g)nāscor]**, related.

13. potius, *adv.* [*compar. of* **potis,** able], rather, preferably.

fectīque erimus, simul victōrem ac victum aggredientur. Certāmen igitur dē imperiō paucōrum proeliō potius decernāmus." Tullus cōnsilium probāvit, quamquam magnam spem victōriae habēbat.

Forte in utrōque exercitū erant trigeminī frātrēs, nec aetāte nec vīribus disparēs, Horātiī et Cūriātiī. Hī Albānī erant, illī Rōmānī. Trigeminī ad hanc pugnam dēlēctī arma capiunt et in medium inter duās aciēs prōcēdunt. Duo exercitūs, ērēctī ānxiīque, in spectāculum animōs intendunt. Signō datō, ternī juvenēs concurrunt.

Prīmō congressū duo Rōmānī interfectī sunt et trēs Albānī vulnerātī. Eum quī integer fuit trēs Cūriātiī circumsistere cōnātī sunt. Cum jam Rōmānus paulum fūgisset, respexit atque vīdit trēs Cūriātiōs magnīs intervāllīs sequentēs. Subitō cōnstitit et in proximum Cūriātium impetum facit; dum exercitus Albānus Cūriātiōs obsecrant ut frātrī auxilium ferant, Horātius eum interfēcit; deinde victor secundum frātrem petit. Tum magnō clāmōre Rōmānī adjuvant mīlitem suum et ille cōnficere proelium properat. Priusquam cōnsecūtus est tertius, Horātius alterum Cūriā-

---

15. dēcernāmus: an instance of the subjunctive in an independent use, App. 89. The proposal was that the people whose champions should be victorious should rule the other people.

18. trigeminī frātrēs, *three brothers who were triplets.*

23. ternī: a distributive numeral, employed because two groups of three each are involved.

25. vulnerātī: *est* or *sunt* is often omitted in the perfect passive; here *sunt* is readily supplied from the preceding verb.

29. ut . . . ferant: a noun clause, object of *obsecrant*, App. 94.

---

18. trigeminus, -a, -um, *adj.* [trēs+ geminus, born together], born three at a birth; *subst.*, **trigeminī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, triplets.

21. medium, -ī, *n.* [*n. of* **medius**], the middle, the intervening space.

23. ternī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [ter], three each.

25. integer, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, untouched, unhurt; fresh, vigorous.

circum-sistō, -sistere, -stetī, —, *tr.*, surround.

27. re-spiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr. and intr.* [re-+speciō, look], look back; have regard for.

33. tertius, -a, -um, *adj.* [ter], third.

tium cōnficit. Jamque singulī supererant, sed nec spē nec vīribus pārēs; alter integer et ferōx superiōribus victōriīs erat; alter dēfessus vulnere, animō frāctus, in certāmen vēnit. Nec illud proelium fuit. Cūriātium vix sustinentem arma Horātius caedit et jacentem spoliat.

Ad sepultūram inde suōrum Rōmānī atque Albānī nēquāquam paribus animīs vertuntur, alterī victōrēs alterī victī. Exercitūs domōs abductī sunt. Horātiī soror, quae ūnī ex Cūriātiīs dēspōnsa erat, cognōvit inter spolia paludāmentum spōnsī, quod ipsa cōnfēcerat. Solvit crīnēs et multīs cum lacrimīs spōnsum mortuum appellat. Frāter, īrātus propter maerōrem sorōris in victōriā suā tantōque pūblicō gaudiō, gladiō eam interfēcit. Rēs ad populum relāta est. Hominēs vehementer mōtī sunt in eō jūdiciō, Pūbliō Horātiō patre clāmante fīliam jūre caesam esse. Sed magis admīrātiōne virtūtis quam jūre causae juvenem absolvērunt.

---

40. vertuntur, *turn;* the passive voice in a reflexive sense, as explained in the note on Her. 301.

alterī . . . alterī: *alter . . . alter* mean *the one (person) . . . the other;* the plural is here employed to mean *the one people . . . the other.*

41. domōs: the plural of this noun may be used like the singular *domum* to denote the place to which without a preposition.

43. Solvit crīnēs: a common sign of mourning in antiquity.

44. appellat: here in the less usual sense of *call upon.*

47. Pūbliō Horātiō . . . clāmante: ablative absolute, expressing an additional reason for the excitement of the people.

48. jūre: ablative of accordance.

admīrātiōne, jūre: ablatives of cause.

---

34. singulī, -ae, -a, *adj.*, one at a time; *distrib.*, one on a side.

36. frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum, *tr.*, break; weaken, dishearten.

39. nē-quāquam, *adv.*, by no means, not at all.

42. spolium, -ī, *n.*, skin; booty, spoil.

palūdāmentum, -ī, *n.*, military cloak.

43. spōnsus, -ī, *m.* [*p. part. of* **spondeō,** promise], betrothed, lover.

crīnis, crīnis, -ium, *m.*, hair.

45. maeror, -ōris, *m.* [**maereō,** be sad], mourning, sorrow.

pūblicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**populus**], of the people *or* state, public.

47. jūdicium, -ī, *n.* [**jūdex**], judgment; trial; court.

48. magis, *compar. adv.*, more, rather.

admīrātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**admīror**], admiration, surprise.

49. ab-solvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtum, *tr.*, set free; acquit.

Populus Albānus īrā ārdēbat, quod Mettius tribus mīlitibus fortūnam pūblicam commīserat. Is igitur prāvō cōnsiliō cīvium animōs reconciliāre cōnātus est. Nam pollicitus est adjuvāre Fidēnātēs Veientēsque, quī bellum adversus Rōmānōs parābant. Bellō inceptō, Mettius, quī in aciē contrā Fidēnātēs positus erat, ad collēs proximōs sine certāmine Albānōs abdūxit. Tullus, simulāns sē id jussisse, clārā vōce clāmāvit Mettium exercitum Fidēnātium ā tergō oppugnātūrum esse. Fidēnātēs, quī Latīnē sciēbant, hanc vōcem audīvērunt et fūgērunt. Veientēs quoque pulsī sunt. Proeliō factō, rēx Mettium interficī propter prōditiōnem jussit. Populō omnī Albānō Rōmam trāductō, cīvitās plēbī data est et prīncipēs Albānōrum in patrēs lēctī sunt.

Posteā pestilentia gravis in urbem incidit, quā rēx quoque affectus est. Hāc calamitāte frāctus sacrīs posteā animum dedit. Postrēmō, quia sacrum quoddam nōn rītē fēcerat — ita fāma est — Tullus fulmine percussus cum domō cōnflagrāvit. Rēgnāvit annōs duōs et trīgintā.

---

58. Latīnē sciēbant, *understood Latin;* our idiom leads us to expect a noun instead of the adverb *Latīnē.*

59. Proeliō factō, *at the conclusion of the battle.*

61. Populō . . . Rōmam trāductō: the transfer and incorporation of a related people within the Roman state occured more than once.

64. sacrīs, *to religious observances.*

---

51. prāvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, crooked; bad, dishonest.

52. re-conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, win back, recover; reconcile.

58. Latīnē, *adv.* [Latīnus], in Latin.

63. pestilentia, -ae, *f.* [pestilēns, pestilential], plague, pestilence.

65. quia, *conj.*, because.

66. fulmen, -inis, *n.*, lightning-flash, thunderbolt.

cōn-flagrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, be on fire, be consumed.

---

8. Ancus Marcius

Ancus Mārcius, nepōs Numae Pompiliī, quārtus rēx creātus est. Ut Numa in pāce religiōnēs īnstituerat, sīc Ancus caeri-

---

2. Ut . . . sīc, *just as . . . so.*

---

2. religiō, -ōnis, *f.*, scruple, religion; religious observance.

mōniās īnstituit, quibus bella posteā indicta sunt. Sacerdōtēs, quibus id negōtium mandātum est, fētiālēs appellāvit. Bellīs cum urbibus Latīnōrum gestīs, cīvēs Rōmam trādūxit. Jāniculum, quī collis trāns Tiberim est, cum urbe ponte subliciō conjūnxit. Carcer, quī etiam nunc extat, sub

---

7. **Carcer:** a small stone structure with a vaulted roof. Beneath it is a dungeon where criminals were sometimes executed. The *Carcer* is now a church.

---

3. **in-dīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictum,** *tr.*, proclaim, declare, appoint.

4. **mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** *tr.* **[manus+dō]**, consign, intrust.

fētiālis, -e, *adj.*, diplomatic, fetial; *subst.*, **fētiālis, -is,** *m.*, a fetial priest.

7. **sublicius, -a, -um,** *adj.* **[sublica,** pile, stake], of piles, resting on piles.

extō, -āre, —, —, *intr.* **[ex+stō],** stand forth; be extant, exist.



RUINS OF OSTIA

monte Capitōlīnō aedificātus est. Imperium usque ad mare prōlātum est, et in ōre Tiberis Ōstia urbs condita.

Ancō rēgnante, vir quīdam, nōmine Lucumō, habitābat Tarquiniīs, quae urbs Etrūsca erat. Pater ejus erat Dēmarātus, profugus Corinthius. Lucumō in mātrimōnium Tanaquīlem, mulierem nōbilem, dūxerat. Etrūscī spernēbant Lucumōnem, exulis fīlium. Tanaquil, quae ferre indignitātem nōn poterat, cōnsilium migrandī Rōmam cēpit. Facile conjugī persuādet. Dum iter faciunt, aquila dīcitur pilleum ab capite Lucumōnis abstulisse et rūrsus reposuisse. Laeta Tanquil accēpit id augurium potentiae futūrae. Etrūscī enim caelestium prōdigiōrum perītī erant.

Postquam Rōmam vēnērunt, Lucumō nōmen L. Tarquinium Prīscum sibi sūmpsit. Ibi paulātim īnsignis factus est dīvitiīs aliīsque rēbus. Postrēmō in amīcitiam rēgis receptus tūtor līberōrum rēgis testāmentō īnstitūtus est. Ancus annōs quattuor et vīgintī rēgnāvit.

---

9. **Ōstia:** extensive remains of this city, as it was later, have been unearthed in modern times.

11. **Tarquiniīs:** what is the locative form of the names of cities which are used in the plural? of those which are used in the singular, in the first and second declensions?

15. **Rōmam:** *migrō* as a verb of motion is followed by an accusative of the place to which. Why no preposition?

18. **id augurium,** *this as a token.*

19. **prōdigiōrum:** objective genitive with *perītī*, as in 6, 8.

---

9. **prō-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum,** *tr.*, bring forth, carry forward, extend, defer.

14. **exul, -ulis,** *m.*, an exile.

indignitās, -ātis, *f.* [**indignus**], indignity, outrage.

16. **pilleus, -ī,** *m.*, a cap.

18. **futūrus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [*fut. part. of* **sum**], yet to be, to come, future.

19. **prōdigium, -ī,** *n.*, omen, portent, prodigy.

21. **īnsignis, -e,** *adj.* [**in+signum**], noted, eminent, distinguished, conspicuous.

23. **tūtor, -ōris,** *m.* [**tueor**], defender; guardian.

testāmentum, -ī, *n.* [**testor,** call to witness], a (last) will.

24. **vīgintī,** *indecl. num.*, twenty.

9. Tarquinius Priscus

Jam fīliī Ancī prope adultī erant. Sed Tarquinius ipse rēx creārī cupiēbat. Is prīmus palam rēgnum petiit, memorāns officia prīvāta ac pūblica et benignitātem in omnēs. Magnō cōnsēnsū populus Rōmānus eum rēgnāre jussit.

Tarquinius Latīnīs bellō victīs lūdōs magnificōs fēcit. Tum prīmum locus circō, quī Maximus dīcitur, dēsignātus est. Lūdī sollemnēs mānsērunt, Rōmānī aut magnī appellātī.

Magna quoque opera ā rēge incepta sunt, ut populus nōn quiētior in pāce quam in bellō esset. Mūrō lapideō urbem cingere parāvit, et loca circā forum aliāsque convallēs cloācīs siccāvit. Fundāmenta aedis Jovis in Capitōliō jēcit.

Eō fere tempore in rēgiā prōdigium mīrābile fuit. Caput

---

2. prīmus petiit, *was the first to canvass for.* What is the literal translation?

6. circō: dative of purpose with *dēsignātus est.* The Circus Maximus lay between the Palatine and Aventine hills.

7. Rōmānī aut magnī: the "Roman games" were celebrated in September each year.

8. nōn quiētior, *quite as busy;* the clause *ut . . . esset* is one of purpose, *nōn* going closely with *quiētior.*

11. jēcit, *laid.*

---

1. prope, *adv. and prep. with acc.; as adv.*, near, nearly, almost, about; *as prep.*, near, near to.

adultus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **adolēscō**], grown up, mature.

2. palam, *adv.*, openly, publicly, plainly.

3. prīvātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **prīvō**], private, personal; *subst.*, **prīvātus, -ī,** *m.*, a private citizen.

benignitās, -ātis, *f.* [**benignus**], kindness.

5. magnificus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**magnus** + **faciō**], splendid, fine, magnificent.

6. circus, -ī, *m.*, a circle; a circus.

dē-signō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, mark out, mean, intend.

7. sollemnis, -e, *adj.*, established, fixed, regular; solemn.

9. quiētus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **quiēscō,** keep quiet], quiet, peaceful, free from labor.

10. forum, -ī, *n.*, an open space; market-place; *especially*, **Forum Rōmānum,** the Roman Forum.

convallis, -vallis, -ium, *f.*, valley.

cloāca, -ae, *f.*, sewer.

11. siccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**siccus**], dry, drain.

fundāmentum, -ī, *n.* [**fundō,** found], foundation.

aedēs, aedis, -ium, *f. sg.*, temple sanctuary; *pl.*, dwelling, house.

puerī dormientis, cui Servius Tullius fuit nōmen, multōrum in cōnspectū ārsit. Servī, quī aquam ad restinguendam flammam ferēbant, ab rēgīnā retentī sunt. Mox cum puer ē somnō excitātus esset, flamma abiit. Tum, abductō in sēcrētum virō, Tanaquil "vidēsne tū hunc puerum," inquit, "quem tam humilī cultū ēducāmus? Lūmen profectō portendit eum aliquandō nōbīs praesidiō futūrum esse. Proinde artibus līberālibus ērudiendus est." Ingenium juvenis vērē rēgium erat. Tarquinius igitur eī fīliam suam dēspondit.

Etsī Ancī fīliī duo anteā īrātī fuerant quod peregrīnus Rōmae rēgnābat, tum major erat indignātiō, quoniam servō jam rēgnum patēre vidēbātur. Rēgem igitur interficere rēgnumque occupāre cōnstituērunt. Ex pāstōribus duo ferōcissimī ad facinus dēlēctī in vestibulō rēgiae speciē rixae in sē omnēs appāritōrēs rēgiōs convertērunt. Inde vocātī ad rēgem dīcere in vicem jussī sunt. Ūnus rem expōnit. Dum

---

13. cui: dative of possession, as in 2, 6.

14. ad restinguendam flammam: a gerundive construction, App. 123.

17. virō: *vir* is frequently used to mean *husband.*

18. cultū, *manner of life, station.*

19. nōbīs praesidiō futūrum esse, *will be a support to us;* dative of reference and dative of purpose.

20. ērudiendus est, *must be educated;* what is the meaning of *ēducō?*

22. Etsī: like *quamquam* takes the indicative. What other conjunction, meaning "although," takes the subjunctive?

23. servō: dative after *patēre.*

26. in sē . . . convertērunt, *attracted (to themselves) the attention of.*

28. rem, *the (pretended) quarrel.*

---

14. restinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxī, -stīnctum, *tr.*, put out, quench.

16. sēcrētus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **sēcernō,** to separate], secret; *subst.*, **sēcrētum, -ī,** *n.*, secret; privacy.

18. profectō, *adv.* [**prō+factō**], actually, in fact, assuredly, certainly.

19. aliquandō, *adv.*, at some time or other, once.

20. līberālis, -e, *adj.* [līber], befitting a freeman; honorable, liberal.

26. rixa, -ae, *f.*, quarrel, dispute.

27. appāritor, -ōris, *m.*, servant.

28. vicis, *f. gen.* (*no nom.*), change; **in vicem,** in turn.

intentus in eum sē rēx tōtus āvertit, alter ēlātam secūrim in caput rēgis dējēcit; relictō in vulnere tēlō, ambō forās fugiunt. Tarquinium moribundum appāritōrēs excipiunt; illōs fugientēs līctōrēs comprehendunt. Magnus sequitur populī tumultus, inter quem Tanaquil claudī rēgiam jubet. Serviō inde celeriter ad sē vocātō, auxilium ōrāvit. "Tuum est rēgnum," inquit, "Servī, sī vir es, nōn eōrum quī aliēnīs manibus pessimum facinus fēcērunt. Ērige tē deōsque ducēs sequere, quī dīvīnā flammā hoc caput clārum futūrum esse portendērunt. Nōlī perturbārī quod peregrīnus es. Etiam nōs peregrīnī rēgnāvimus. Sī propter subitam rem cōnsilia fingere nōn potes, mea tamen cōnsilia sequere." Cum jam clāmor multitūdinis vix sustinērī posset, Tanaquil ex superiōre parte rēgiae populum ita allocūta est: "Cum vulnus rēgis grave sit, jam tamen ad sē redit; brevī tempore rēgem ipsum vidēbitis. Interim vult Servium Tullium rem pūblicam administrāre." Itaque Servius per aliquot diēs, cum Tarquinius jam mortuus esset, suās opēs firmāvit. Tum

---

29. ēlātam: Latin frequently employs a past passive participle in agreement with an object where we use coördinate verbs, *raised his ax and brought it down.*

34. Tuum: emphatic and balanced by the possessive genitive ***eōrum***, which is likewise used predicatively, *to you belongs . . . , not to those.*

36. ducēs: an appositive; we may translate, *the guidance of the gods.*

37. sequere: imperative. Review the imperative of deponent verbs.

38. Nōlī perturbārī: negative commands in Latin are explained in App. 115.

42. Cum: what word in the principal clause determines the meaning of *cum?* What meaning for *cum* in l. 45 is required by the context?

---

29. ā-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr.*, turn away, avert.

efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, *tr.* [ex + ferō], carry forth, remove; lift up, raise.

secūris, -is, *f.*, axe.

30. forās, *adv.* [*compare* **foris**], out of doors, out.

31. moribundus, -a, -um, *adj.*, [morior], dying.

36. pessimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*superl of* **malus**], worst.

39. subitus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sudden, unexpected.

44. interim, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime.

dēmum mors rēgis nūntiāta est. Servius, praesidiō firmō mūnītus, prīmus injussū populī voluntāte patrum rēgnāvit.

48. prīmus: to be translated as in l. 2.
injussū, voluntāte: ablatives of accordance.



FRAGMENT OF THE WALL OF SERVIUS TULLIUS

10. Servius Tullius

Servius prīmum cēnsum īnstituit et populum in classēs prō opibus dīscrīpsit. Ex cēnsū posteā officia bellī pācisque tribūta sunt. Ad multitūdinem crēscentem duo collēs,

1. prīmum: an adverb.
2. Ex, *in accordance with, on the basis of.*

1. classis, classis, -ium, *f.*, class, fleet.

3. tribuō, -ere, tribuī, tribūtum, *tr.* [tribus, tribe], assign, bestow.

Quirīnālis Vīminālisque, ad urbem additī sunt. Imperium quoque hōc cōnsiliō auctum est. Fānum erat nōbile Diānae Ephesiae, quod commūniter ā cīvitātibus Asiae factum esse dīcēbātur. Servius inter prīncipēs Latīnōrum, eō cōnsēnsū cīvitātum Asiāticārum vehementer laudātō, tandem populīs Latīnīs persuāsit ut Rōmae cum populō Rōmānō fānum Diānae facerent. Ea erat cōnfessiō caput rērum Rōmam esse, dē quō totiēns certātum erat.

Lūcius Tarquinius, Prīscī fīlius, interdum querēbātur quod Servius injussū populī rēgnāreī. Servius igitur prius agrum captum ex hostibus virītim dvtīsit; hōc modō voluntātem plēbis conciliāvit. Populus deinde maximō cōnsēnsū eum rēgnāre jussit.

Rēx duās fīliās Lūciō atque Arruntī Tarquiniīs, Prīscī fīliīs, in mātrimōnium dederat. Mōrēs hōrum disparēs erant. Nam Arrūns Tarquinius mītis erat, L. Tarquinius ferōx et cupidus rēgnī. Duae Tulliae item disparēs erant. Forte Arrūns ferōcem Tulliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat. Similitūdō celeriter L. Tarquinium et ferōcem Tulliam contrahit.

---

5. **hōc,** *the following.*

9. **ut . . . facerent:** a noun clause, object of *persuāsit;* to be translated by an infinitive.

10. **caput . . . Rōmam esse,** *that Rome,* etc.; indirect discourse after *erat cōnfessiō.*

11. **certātum erat,** *there had been a contest;* impersonal passive, see on Arg. 75.

12. **quod . . . rēgnāret:** for *quod* causal with the subjunctive see App. 106, *a.*

15. **Populus . . . eum rēgnāre jussit:** their action merely ratified the authority which he already held.

21. **Similitūdō:** *likeness* (of character).

---

5. **fānum, -ī,** *n.*, shrine, temple.

11. **certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** *intr.* [*freq. of* **cernō**], contend, strive.

14. **virītim,** *adv.* [**vir**], man by man, to each man.

19. **mītis, -e,** *adj.*, mild, gentle, kind.

20. **item,** *adv.*, likewise, also.

21. **similitūdō, -inis,** *f.* [**similis**], likeness, resemblance.

22. **con-trahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum,** *tr.*, draw *or* bring together.

Cum prope continuīs caedibus domōs vacuās fēcissent, junguntur nūptiīs. Paulātim inde mulier conjugem ad caedem Serviī excitat. Itaque Tarquinius prius omnibus rēbus cīvēs et maximē patrēs conciliāvit. Postrēmō, ubi jam tempus agendī vīsum est, stīpātus armātīs in forum irrūpit. Inde in rēgiā sēde prō cūriā sedēns patrēs in cūriam per praecōnem ad rēgem Tarquinium vocārī jussit. Ibi incūsābat rēgem, quod rēgnum muliebrī dōnō occupāvisset; querēbātur item dē cōnsiliīs populāribus, dē agrō plēbī dīvīsō, dē cēnsū īnstitūtō. Dum loquitur, Servius intervēnit et ā vestibulō cūriae magnā vōce "quid tibi vīs," inquit, "Tarquinī? Quā audāciā tū, mē vīvō, vocāre patrēs aut in sēde meā cōnsīdere ausus es?" Tarquinius ferōciter respondit sē sēdem patris suī tenēre, sē rēgnī hērēdem esse. Tum medium arripit Servium, ēlātumque ē cūriā per gradūs dējicit; inde in cūriam redit. Appāritōrēs rēgis fugiunt. Rēx ipse ā servīs

---

23. prope continuīs, *almost without an interval between.*

27. agendī, *for action.*

armātīs: a participle as a noun; see vocabulary.

30. quod . . . occupāvisset: the subjunctive as in l. 12.

33. quid tibi vīs, *what do you mean?* How, literally? From what does *vīs* come?

34. mē vīvō, *while I am alive;* ablative absolute.

36. rēgnī hērēdem: the kingship had been elective; here was an attempt to create a dynasty.

medium, *around the waist.*

37. ēlātum: in agreement with *eum,* to be supplied; a past participle for a coördinate verb, as in 9, 29; translate, *carried him out and hurled.*

per, *down;* in l. 41 it means *over.*

---

24. nūptiae, -ārum, *f. pl.* [nūbō], marriage, wedding.

27. stīpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.,* pack, crowd; attend, accompany.

30. muliebris, -e, *adj.* [mulier], of a woman.

32. inter-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, intr., come upon, come in.

35. cōn-sīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum, *intr.,* sit down, take one's seat.

ferōciter, *adv.* [ferōx], courageously, fiercely, arrogantly.

36. hērēs, -ēdis, *m. and f.,* heir, heiress.

arripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tr.* [ad+rapiō], grasp, seize.

Tarquiniī interficitur. Tullia carpentō in forum invecta conjugem ēvocāvit rēgemque prīma appellāvit. Dum domum redit, dīctur patrem in viā jacentem invēnisse et per corpus carpentum ēgisse. Hic locus posteā vīcus scelerātus vocātus est. Servius Tullius rēgnāvit annōs quattuor et quadrāgintā.

39. in-vehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.*, carry in; *pass.*, be carried, ride.

42. scelerātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [scelus], wicked, criminal.

---

11. Tarquinius Superbus

Inde L. Tarquinius rēgnāre coepit, cui propter facta cognōmen Superbus datum est. Prīncipēs patrum, quī Servium dīlēxerant, interfēcit. Suum corpus armātīs circumsaepsit. Jūdicia capitālium rērum sine cōnsiliīs per sē sōlus exercēbat. Ita poterat occīdere, in exilium agere, bonīs spoliāre omnēs quōs cupiēbat. Etsī rēgēs superiōrēs senātum dē omnibus rēbus cōnsulere solitī erant, Tarquinius domesticīs cōnsiliīs rem pūblicam administrāvit. Bellum, pācem, foedera, societātēs per sē ipse fēcit. Latīnōrum gentem sibi maximē conciliābat. Octāviō Mamiliō Tusculānō — is longē nōbilissimus Latīnōrum erat — fīliam in mātrimōnium dat.

Cum jam magna Tarquiniī auctōritās inter Latīnōrum

4. Jūdicia capitālium rērum, *trials in capital cases.*

cōnsiliīs: these were boards from among the senators which assisted the king with advice in the administration of the courts.

5. bonīs: ablative of separation.

7. domesticīs cōnsiliīs: *i.e.*, Tarquin was the first king to rely for advice solely upon personal friends.

1. cognōmen, -inis, *n.* [com-+(g) nōmen], cognomen, surname.

2. superbus, -a, -um, *adj.*, haughty, proud; *subst.*, **Superbus, -ī,** *m.*, the Proud, *an epithet applied to the second King Tarquin as a cognomen.*

3. dīligō, -ligere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *tr.* [dis-+legō], single out; esteem, love.

circum-saepiō, -saepīre, -saepsī, -saeptum, *tr.*, hedge around, encircle.

4. capitālis, -e, *adj.* [caput], of the head; of the life, capital.

7. domesticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [domus], of the house; private, personal.

prīncipēs esset, concilium in certam diem convocāvit. Conveniunt frequentēs prīmā lūce. Ipse Tarquinius diem quidem servāvit, sed paulō ante sōlis occāsum vēnit. Turnus Herdonius Arīcīnus ferōciter absentem Tarquinium accūsāverat. Dīxit Tarquinium patientiam Latīnōrum temptāre et affectāre imperium in eōs. Rēx, hōc cognitō, quia prō imperiō palam Turnum interficere nōn poterat, cōnfestim statuit falsō crīmine eum opprimere. Proximā igitur nocte auctōre Tarquiniō quīdam Arīcīnī, Turnō inimīcī, in dēversōrium ejus magnum numerum gladiōrum clam intulērunt.

Tarquinius paulō ante lūcem ad sē prīncipēs Latīnōrum vocāvit certiōrēsque dē gladiīs cēlātīs fēcit: "Cognōvī," inquit, "Turnum cupere Latīnōrum sōlum imperium tenēre, et jam necem omnium parāre." Dūxit deinde eōs ad dēversōrium. Ubi gladiī ex omnibus locīs dēversōriī prōlātī sunt, manifesta vīsa est rēs, Turnusque in catēnās conjectus est. Cōnfestim concilium Latīnōrum convocātur. Ibi magna indignātiō oritur, gladiīs in mediō positīs. Itaque Turnus, indictā causā, in aquam Ferentīnam mersus est.

Rēx, auctōritāte inter Latīnōs ita auctā, cum eīs renovāvit foedus quod ā Tullō rēge anteā factum erat. Latīnī nōn repugnāvērunt, quamquam in eō foedere rēs Rōmāna

14. **quidem:** with concessive force, *it is true*, as explained in the note on Her. 346.

20. **auctōre Tarquiniō,** *at the instigation of Tarquinius.*

21. **Turnō:** dative with *inimīcī*, but to be translated as if genitive.

24. **certiōrēs fēcit,** *informed;* how, literally?

31. **indictā causā,** *without a trial;* literally, *his case unpleaded,* ablative absolute.

14. **frequēns, -entis,** *adj.*, crowded, in large numbers.

17. **patientia, -ae,** *f.* [**patiēns**], patience, endurance.

affectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq. of* **afficiō**], strive after, aim at.

20. **auctor, -ōris,** *m.* [**augeō**], promoter, instigator.

21. **dēversōrium, -ī,** *n.* [**dēversor,** turn aside, lodge], inn, lodging-place.

26. **nex, necis,** *f.*, death, murder.

28. **manifestus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, clear, evident, manifest.

31. **in-dictus, -a, -um,** *adj.* (not said), not pleaded, unheard.

34. **re-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** *intr.*, fight back, resist, oppose.

superior erat. Mors enim Turnī docēbat potentiam Tarquiniī ac perīculum eōrum quī resistēbant.

Tarquinius, quamquam injūstus in pāce rēx fuit, ducem bellī tamen nōn prāvum sē praebuit. Is prīmus cum Volscīs bellum gessit, et magnam praedam cēpit. In aliō bellō, cum Gabiōs, vīcīnam urbem, vī capere nōn posset, fraude ac dolō aggressus est. Sextus enim, fīlius Tarquiniī, quī minimus ex tribus erat, trānsiit Gabiōs, crūdēlitātem intolerābilem patris vehementer querēns atque adjuvāre Gabīnōs adversus eum pollicēns. Benignē ā Gabīnīs exceptus in cōnsilia pūblica adhibētur, et dēnique dux legitur. Proelia parva inter Rōmam Gabiōsque facta sunt, quibus Gabīnī superiōrēs erant. Gabīnī Sex. Tarquinium dōnō deōrum sibi missum esse ducem crēdidērunt. Inde Sextus ūnum ex suīs Rōmam mīsit, quī mandāta patris peteret. Rēx nihil vōce respondit, sed tamquam rem dēlīberāns in hortum aedium trānsiit, sequente nūntiō fīliī; ibi inambulāns tacitus summa papāverum capita baculō dējēcit. Nūntius, dēfessus interrogandō expectandōque respōnsum, redit Gabiōs remque mīram refert. Sextus intellēxit quid pater fierī vellet. Prīncipēs igitur

---

41. aggressus est: *eam* (*urbem*) is to be supplied as object.
minimus, *youngest;* what does *major* mean with reference to age?
47. dōnō, *by gift.*
48. ex suīs, *of his followers.*
49. quī . . . peteret: a relative clause of purpose.
52. interrogandō: the ablative of the gerund may be employed to express cause; observe that *expectandō* has a direct object, *respōnsum.*
54. quid pater fierī vellet: for the indirect question consult App. 104.

---

41. minimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*superl. of* **parvus**], least, smallest, very small; youngest.

42. intolerābilis, *adj.*, intolerable, unbearable.

45. adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.* [**ad** + **habeō**], apply; summon, admit, employ.

49. mandātum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* **mandō**], injunction, command.

50. tamquam, *adv.*, as if, just as if.

dē-līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, ponder, meditate.

51. in-ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, walk up and down.

papāver, -eris, *n.*, a poppy.

52. baculum, -ī, *n.*, staff.

cīvitātis variīs crīminibus necāvit. Rēs Gabīna ita spoliāta cōnsiliō auxiliōque rēgī Rōmānō sine certāmine gravī trāditur.

Gabiīs receptīs, Tarquinius ad negōtia urbāna animum convertit. Prīmum templum in monte Tarpeiō aedificāre tōtumque montem Jovī dēdicāre cōnstituit. Hoc templum pater jam anteā vōverat. Ad hoc opus fabrīs Etrūscīs et operāriīs ex plēbe Rōmānō ūsus est. Plēbs etiam ad alia opera trāducta forōs in circō fēcit cloācamque maximam sub terram ēgit, quam etiam nunc vidēmus. Multī quoque ex plēbe colōnī Signiam Circeiōsque missī sunt quī praesidia urbī essent.

Dum haec aguntur, portentum terribile vīsum est: anguis ex columnā ligneā ēlāpsus terrōrem fugamque in rēgiā fēcit atque ipsīus rēgis pectus ānxiīs cūrīs implēvit. Itaque Tarquinius fīliōs, Titum et Arruntem, Delphōs ad clārissimum in terrīs ōrāculum mittere statuit. Comes eīs additus est L. Jūnius Brūtus, ex Tarquiniā, sorōre rēgis, nātus. Cognōmen ejus hōc modō parātum erat: rēx eōs prīncipēs cīvitātis quōs timēbat interficere solēbat, in quibus frātrem Brūtī interfēcit. Hic, ut crūdēlitātem rēgis vītāret, cōnsultō stultitiam imitātus bona sua rēgem spoliāre passus est neque

---

55. Rēs: =*rēs pūblica.*

62. trāducta, *transferred.*

64. colōnī, *as colonists.*

quī . . . essent: a relative clause of purpose.

70. ōrāculum: see note on Per. 54.

74. Hic, *the latter.*

---

57. urbānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [urbs], of a city, urban; *subst.*, **urbānī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, inhabitants of a city.

61. operārius, -ī, *m.* [opera], laborer, workman.

62. forus, -ī, *m.*, gangway; a row of seats in the theater *or* circus, seats.

64. colōnus, -ī, *m.* [colō], farmer; settler, colonist.

66. portentum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* **portendō**], omen, portent.

anguis, anguis, -ium, *m. and f.*, serpent, snake.

67. ē-lābor, -lābī, -lāpsus sum, *intr.*, glide out, glide away, escape.

74. cōnsultō, *adv.* [*abl. of* **cōnsultum**], intentionally.

cognōmen Brūtī recusāvit. Is tum igitur ab Tarquiniīs ductus est Delphōs, lūdibrium vērius quam comes. Tulit tamen dōnum Apollinī aureum baculum inclūsum in baculō corneō, tamquam effigiem ingeniī suī.

Postquam juvenēs Delphōs vēnērunt patrisque mandāta cōnfēcērunt, statuērunt quaerere ex ōrāculō ad quem eōrum rēgnum esset ventūrum. Vōx reddita est: "Imperium summum Rōmae habebit quī vestrum prīmus, Ō juvenēs, mātrem ōsculābitur." Tarquiniī, Brūtum contemnentēs, ipsī inter sē iūs mātris ōsculandae Rōmae sortī permittunt. Brūtus, quī aliō modō ōrāculum interpretātus erat, cecidit terramque ōsculātus est, scīlicet quod ea commūnis māter est omnium mortālium. Rediērunt inde juvenēs Rōmam.

---

76. Brūtī: the word is properly an adjective, *dull*, then as a noun *the dullard*. With *nōmen*, *urbs*, and the like, an explanatory genitive is sometimes used instead of an appositive.

81. ad quem eōrum, etc.: an indirect question; *eōrum*, like *vestrum* in l. 83, is a genitive of the whole.

82. esset ventūrum, *was destined to come*. The direct question would have a future indicative: *ad quem nostrum rēgnum veniet?* The future indicative in a question of fact is regularly represented in an indirect question by the future active participle with the subjunctive of the verb *sum*.

85. mātris ōsculandae: a gerundive construction, App. 123.

Rōmae: a locative.

---

77. lūdibrium, -ī, *n.* [*compare* **lūdus**], object of ridicule, mockery.

79. corneus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**cornum**, cornel-cherry], of cornel-wood.

effigiēs, *acc.* **-em**, *f.*, semblance, effigy.

84. ōsculor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.* [**ōsculum**], to kiss.

85. sors, sortis, *f.*, lot, casting of lots.

86. interpretor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.* [**interpres**], explain, interpret.

87. scīlicet, *adv.* [**scīre + licet**], of course, no doubt, doubtless.

---

12. Banishment of Tarquinius Superbus

Paulō post Rōmānī, quī jam dūdum superbiam Tarquiniī rēgis atque fīliōrum aegrē ferēbant, ita scelere quōdam Sex.

---

1. jam dūdum . . . aegrē ferēbant, *had long resented;* the use of tenses with *jam dūdum* is explained in the note on Per. 24.

Tarquiniī concitātī sunt ut rēgiam familiam in exilium pellere statuerent. Tum prīmum vērum ingenium Brūtī apertum est. Eō enim duce populus jūrāvit sē nec Tarquinium nec alium quemquam rēgnāre Rōmae passūrum esse. Brūtus inde in castra profectus est, ubi exercitus Rōmānus Ardeam, caput Rutulōrum, obsidēbat. Tulliam rēgīnam domō profugientem omnēs virī mulierēsque execrātī sunt.

Ubi nūntiī hārum rērum in castra perlātī sunt, rēx Rōmam perrēxit. Brūtus adventum rēgis sēnsit flexitque viam. Ita eōdem ferē tempore dīversīs itineribus Brūtus Ardeam, Tarquinius Rōmam vēnērunt. Hic portās clausās invēnit; Brūtum līberātōrem urbis laeta castra accēpērunt exāctīque sunt līberī rēgis; duo patrem secūtī exulēs Caere, quae urbs Etrūsca erat; Sextus Tarquinius Gabiōs, tamquam in suum rēgnum, profectus ab ultōribus veterum injūriārum quās ipse intulerat interfectus est.

L. Tarquinius Superbus rēgnāvit annōs quīnque et vīgintī. Rēgnum Rōmae annōs ducentōs quadrāgintā dūrāverat. Duo cōnsulēs inde creātī sunt, L. Jūnius Brūtus et L. Tarquinius Collātīnus.

---

3. ut . . . statuerent: a clause of result, App. 93.

8. domō: why no preposition?

13. Hic: to be translated as in 11, 74.

15. quae: the antecedent of *quae, Caere,* is neuter; but the relative is made to agree in gender with a predicate noun instead of with the antecedent, a common usage.

---

3. familia, -ae, *f.* **[famulus,** servant], household establishment, slaves in a household; family.

5. jūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [jūs], swear, take oath.

9. execror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.* [ex+ sacrō], doom, curse.

11. pergō, -ere, perrēxī, perrēctum, *intr.* [per+regō], go on, proceed.

12. ferē, *adv.*, about, nearly; in general, usually.

dīversus, -versa, -versum, *adj.*, turned different ways, opposite.

14. exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [ex + agō], drive out, expel; exact; spend.

17. ultor, -ōris, *m.* [ulcīscor], avenger.

20. ducentī, -ae, -a, *num. adj.* [duo +centum], two hundred.

dūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [dūrus], harden; last, endure.

13. Horatius Cocles

Tarquinius, ut rēgnum reciperāret, ad Lartem Porsenam, Clūsīnum rēgem, fūgit. Eī persuāsit nē rēgem Etrūscae gentis rēgnō prīvārī paterētur. Porsena Rōmam īnfestō exercitū vēnit. Magnus terror senātum occupāvit; adeō firma rēs Clūsīna tum erat magnumque Porsenae nōmen.

Cum hostēs adessent, omnēs in urbem ex agrīs veniunt urbemque ipsam mūniunt praesidiīs. Alia loca mūrīs, alia Tiberī objectō vidēbantur tūta. Pōns sublicius tamen iter paene hostibus dedit, nī ūnus vir fuisset, Horātius Coclēs, quī forte ad pontem positus erat. Clūsīnī repentīnō impetū Jāniculum cēpērunt atque inde vēlōciter ad flūmen dēcurrēbant. Coclēs, cum suōs fugere vīdisset, ōrāvit eōs ut manērent et pontem rescinderent: sē impetum hostium, quantum ūnus

---

Horātius Coclēs: Macaulay has celebrated this exploit in one of his Lays of Ancient Rome.

2. nē . . . paterētur, *not to permit;* object of *persuāsit.*

rēgem . . . prīvārī: like *jubeō, patior* takes an infinitive with subject accusative.

3. rēgnō: ablative of separation.

4. rēs Clūsīna = rēs pūblica Clūsīna, *the state of Clusium.*

7. Alia, alia: how are correlative forms of *alius* translated?

8. Tiberī objectō: ablative absolute; but like *mūrīs* it expresses the cause or means; translate, *because of the interposition of the Tiber,* or *with the Tiber as a defense.*

Pōns sublicius: this bridge was preserved for centuries, restored doubtless from time to time.

9. nī . . . fuisset Horātius Coclēs, *had it not been for one man, Horatius Cocles;* a condition contrary to fact, App. 114; the proper conclusion is only implied, *paene dedit* (*atque dedisset*), *almost afforded* (*and would have afforded*).

12. suōs fugere vīdisset, *had seen his men fleeing.* How do you account for the case of *suōs* and the mood of *fugere?*

13. sē . . . exceptūrum esse: dependent on a verb of saying implied in the preceding sentence.

quantum, *so far as.*

---

3. prīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**prīvus,** private], deprive, rob.

4. ad-eō, *adv.,* to such a degree, so.

9. nī, *conj.,* if not, unless.

10. repentīnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**repēns,** sudden], sudden, unexpected.

11. vēlōciter, *adv.* [**vēlōx**], swiftly.

13. re-scindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum, *tr.,* cut down, break down.

posset id facere, exceptūrum esse. Prōcessit inde in prīmum aditum pontis ipsāque audāciā turbāvit hostēs.

Duōs tamen cum eō pudor tenuit, Sp. Larcium ac T. Herminium, ambōs clārōs genere factīsque. Cum hīs prīmam pugnam paulisper sustinuit. Deinde eōs, parvā parte pontis relictā, cēdere in tūtum jussit. Pudor inde commōvit Etrūscōs, et, clāmōre sublātō, undique in ūnum hostem tēla conjiciunt. Dēnique, ponte paene rescissō, Coclēs armātus in Tiberim dēsiluit incolumisque ad suōs trānāvit. Grāta ergā tantam virtūtem cīvitās fuit; statua ejus in comitiō posita est, et agrī quantum ūnō diē circumarāvit datum.

---

14. posset: subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. **prīmum aditum** = *the farther end.*

17. genere, factīs: ablatives of respect.

prīmam: an adjective denoting a part, App. 85.

19. in tūtum, *to safety;* the adjective is used as a noun.

24. agrī: genitive of the whole with *quantum, as much land as.*

---

15. turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [turba], disturb, confound, throw into confusion.

16. pudor, -ōris, *m.*, shame, sense of honor.

18. paulisper, *adv.* [paulum, little+per], a little while, a short time.

19. cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, *intr.*, withdraw, retire, yield.

22. dēsiliō, -īre, -uī, —, *intr.* [dē+saliō, leap], leap down.

trānō, -nāre, -nāvī, —, *tr. and intr.* [trāns+nō, swim], swim across.

24. circum-arō, -āre, -āvī, *tr.*, plow around.

---

14. Secession of the Plebs

Prīmīs temporibus reī pūblicae līberae, magna dissēnsiō orta est inter patrēs et plēbem propter aes aliēnum, quō paene tōta plēbs premēbantur. Crēditōrī enim licēbat dēbi-

---

1. līberae: the phrase *rēs pūblica* means *state* or *commonwealth* and implies nothing as to form of government. ***Rēs pūblica lībera*** **means** *republic,* or *free commonwealth.*

2. aes aliēnum, "another's money" is a striking way of denoting debt.

---

2. aliēnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [alius], another's; out of place; unfavorable; **aes aliēnum,** debt.

3. premō, -ere, pressī, pressum, *tr.*, press; burden, weigh down.

crēditor, -ōris, *m.* [**crēdō**], creditor.

dēbitor, -ōris, *m.* [**dēbeō**], debtor.

tōrem etiam in servitūtem dūcere. Praetereā jūs reddēbātur ā cōnsulibus, quī magistrātus tantum patribus patēbat. Cum jam plēbs auxilium ā cōnsulibus postulārent, Latīnī equitēs nūntiāvērunt Volscōs ad urbem oppugnandam venīre. Plēbs exultābant gaudiō, atque inter sē hortābantur nē nōmina darent. At ūnus ē cōnsulibus, plēbe convocātā, pollicitus est jūdicia intermittere quoad mīlitēs in castrīs essent; bellō cōnfectō, senātum plēbī cōnsultūrum esse. Eō modō plēbī persuāsit ut nōmina darent. Volscī aliīque populī fīnitimī victī sunt.

Posteā tamen jūs dē crēditīs pecūniīs crūdēliter, ut anteā, dictum est. Tandem plēbs, cum exercitus, aliō bellō coörtō, in armīs esset, dēspērātō cōnsulum senātūsque auxiliō, in Sacrum montem sēcessērunt. Hic mōns trāns Aniēnem flūmen est, tria ab urbe mīlia passuum. Patrēs arbitrātī nūl-

---

4. **jūs reddēbātur,** *justice was administered.*

5. **quī magistrātus . . . patēbat,** *an office which was open only to patricians.* Of the two classes in Roman society, patricians and plebeians, the former at this time occupied a position of great advantage. In the change from monarchy to free government the patricians had secured for themselves alone the privilege of office-holding, although the plebeians possessed the right to vote. Only after a contest of two centuries or more did the plebeians gain equal political and social rights with the patricians.

6. **postulārent:** a collective noun (here *plēbs*) may take a singular verb, or, if the individuals of the group are thought of, the plural may be used, as here.

8. **inter sē,** *one another.*

nē nōmina darent, *not to enlist.*

10. **quoad,** *so long as.* The subjunctive *essent* is due to the indirect discourse implied in *pollicitus est,* App. 106.

11. **plēbī:** *cōnsulō* meaning *consult the interest of* takes a dative; when meaning *consult, ask the advice of,* it takes an accusative.

14. **jūs . . . dictum est:** with the same meaning as *jūs reddēbātur,* l. 4.

crēditīs, *loaned.*

18. **arbitrātī:** it should not be forgotten that the past participles of some deponent verbs are to be rendered as present.

---

5. **magistrātus, -ūs,** *m.* [magister], magistracy, office; magistrate.

14. **crūdēliter,** *adv.* [crūdēlis], cruelty.

17. **sacer, -cra, -crum,** *adj.,* sacred; *subst.* **sacra, -ōrum,** *n. pl.,* sacred rites, religious customs; **Mōns Sacer,** a hill near Rome.

lam spem nisi in concordiā cīvium reliquam esse, ad plēbem mīsērunt Menēnium Agrippam, ispum plēbeium et plēbī cārum.

19. concordia, -ae, *f.* **[concors, harmonious], concord, harmony.**

20. plēbeius, -a, -um, *adj.* **[plēbs], of the common people, plebeian.**

---

15. Menenius Agrippa

Menēnius hoc nārrāsse fertur: "Ōlim reliquae partēs corporis hūmānī indignābantur quod suā cūrā, suō labōre ac ministeriō ventrī omnia quaererentur, venter in mediō quiētus datīs voluptātibus fruerētur; conjūrāvērunt inde nē manūs ad ōs cibum ferrent, nēve ōs datum cibum acciperet, nēve dentēs cōnficerent. Sed dum ventrem famē domāre volunt, ipsa membra tōtumque corpus paene periērunt. Inde sēnsērunt ventris quoque ministerium haud iners esse." Ostendit deinde dissēnsiōnem inter partēs corporis similem esse īrae plēbis in patrēs et ita flexit mentēs hominum.

Concordiā reconciliātā, plēbī permissum est suōs magistrā-

---

1. fertur, *is said,* a frequent meaning.

2. quod: whose reason was this? Why the subjunctives *quaererentur* and *fruerētur?*

4. nē . . . ferrent: the noun clause gives the substance of the oath, *that the hands should not,* etc.

5. nēve: *nēve,* composed of *nē* and the enclitic *-ve, or,* is the negative conjunction regularly employed between subjunctives, *neque* between indicatives.

6. cōnficerent, *masticate.*

10. in, *toward.*

11. suōs magistrātūs, *as magistrates of their own.*

---

2. indignor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.,* be indignant, be offended.

3. ministerium, -ī, *n.* [**minister,** servant], office, service, labor.

venter, -tris, *m.,* belly.

4. voluptās, -ātis, *f.,* pleasure.

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, *intr.* (*takes ablative*), enjoy, have the benefit of.

con-jūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.,* swear together, form a conspiracy, conspire.

5. nēve, *conj.,* and that not, and not.

6. domō, -āre, domuī, domitum, *tr.,* subdue, master.

8. iners, -ertis, *adj.* **[in-+ars],** idle, inert, indolent.

tūs creāre tribūnōs plēbeiōs, quī auxilium plēbī adversus cōnsulēs ferrent.

12. quī . . . ferrent: what kind of clause? Observe the mood. The tribunes at first possessed merely the power to nullify the act of a patrician magistrate in a particular case. In time the authority and prestige of the tribunate were so increased as to render it the most powerful magistracy in the state.

12. tribūnus, -ī, *m.* [**tribus,** tribe], tribune, *title of a Roman official.*

---

16. Lucius Quinctius Cincinnatus

Posteā, dum tribūnī imperium cōnsulāre lēgibus dēfīnīre cōnantur, L. Quīnctius Cincinnātus cōnsul factus est. Ut magistrātum iniit, reprehendit et senātum et plēbem, quod eīdem tribūnī etiam atque etiam creātī cīvitātem turbārent. Senātus igitur dēcrēvit magistrātūs continuārī contrā rem pūblicam esse. Plēbs tamen eōsdem, quōs anteā, tribūnōs creāvērunt. Patrēs quoque, nē quid cēderent plēbī, Lūcium Quīnctium cōnsulem fēcērunt. At is "minimē mīrum est," inquit, "sī nihil auctōritātis, patrēs cōnscrīptī, habētis apud plēbem. Vōs eam minuitis, quī in continuandīs magistrātibus plēbem imitāminī. Ego mē contrā senātūs cōnsultum

1. dēfīnīre: the laws had not hitherto been put into written form. To reduce them to writing would somewhat diminish the advantage enjoyed by the patrician magistrates who dispensed justice.

2. Ut: here in a temporal sense, *when.*

5. magistrātūs continuārī: infinitive with subject accusative used together as subject of *esse;* the English idiom is, *for magistrates to be reëlected.*

rem pūblicam, *the general interest, public policy.* What does the phrase usually mean?

7. nē quid cēderent plēbī, *not to yield anything to the plebeians, i.e., not to be outdone by the plebeians;* a clause of purpose.

10. quī imitāminī, *by imitating.* How, literally?

1. cōnsulāris, -e, *adj.* [**cōnsul**], of a consul, consular.

dē-fīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *tr.,* limit, define.

3. re-prehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum, *tr.,* hold back, seize; censure, rebuke.

5. continuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**continuus**], make continuous, hold without an interval.

10. minuō, -ere, minuī, minūtum, *tr.,* diminish, weaken, impair.

11. cōnsultum, -ī, *n.* [**cōnsulō**], decree.

cōnsulem reficī nōn patiar." Alius igitur cōnsul factus est.

Post paucōs annōs Aequī exercitum Rōmānum mūnītiōnibus clausum obsidēbant. Cum hoc Rōmam nūntiātum esset, L. Quīnctius cōnsēnsū omnium dictātor dictus est. Lēgātī ā senātū missī eum invēnērunt trāns Tiberim agrum quattuor jūgerum colentem atque in opus intentum. Rogāvērunt ut togātus mandāta senātūs audīret. Quīnctius admīrātus jubet uxōrem togam properē ē tuguriō prōferre. Cum, abstersō sūdōre, togā vēlātus prōcessisset, dictātōrem eum lēgātī salūtant atque in urbem vocant; quī terror sit in exercitū expōnunt.

Quīnctius exercitum obsessum celeriter līberāvit et hostēs sub jugum mīsit. Triumphāns urbem iniit sextōque decimō diē dictātūram in sex mēnsēs acceptam dēposuit.

---

14. Rōmam: accusative of the place to which, since *nūntiātum esset* implies motion.

18. admīrātus: with present force, like *arbitrātī*, 14, 18.

21. quī: interrogative adjective; why the subjunctive *sit?*

23. sub jugum: the "yoke" consisted of two spears set upright in the ground with a cross-spear high enough to let the conquered troops pass under.

Triumphāns, *in triumph*. In case of an important victory the Roman senate might grant the successful general the privilege of entering the city in triumphal procession. The general rode in a special triumphal car drawn by four white horses. The procession moved through the Forum up to the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline Hill, where sacrifice was made to the god.

24. in sex mēnsēs: as explained before in the note on 7, 8, the dictatorship was virtually a restoration of the kingship, but only, as indicated here, for the limited period of six months.

---

17. jūgerum, -ī, *gen. pl.* **jūgerum,** *n.*, an acre, a juger (*about two-thirds of an English acre.*)

18. togātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [toga], clad in the toga.

19. properē, *adv.* [properus, speedy], hastily, speedily.

tugurium, -ī, *n.*, hut, cottage.

abstergeō, -tergēre, -tersī, -tersum, *tr.*, wipe off *or* away.

20. sūdor, -ōris, *m.*, perspiration.

salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [salūs], greet, hail.

23. triumphō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [triumphus], celebrate a triumph, triumph.

sextus decimus, -a, -um, *adj.* (*both parts declined*), sixteenth.

24. dictātūra, -ae, *f.* [dictātor], dictatorship.

17. THE GALLIC INVASION

Ōlim lēgātī ab Clūsīnīs Rōmam vēnērunt auxilium petentēs adversus Senonēs, gentem Gallicam. Tum Rōmānī mīsērunt lēgātōs quī monērent Gallōs nē amīcōs populī Rōmānī oppugnārent. Proeliō tamen commissō, lēgātī Rōmānī contrā jūs gentium arma cēpērunt auxiliumque Clūsīnīs tulērunt. Gallī posteā ā senātū Rōmānō postulāvērunt ut prō jūre gentium ita violātō lēgātī Rōmānī dēderentur. Hōc negātō, exercitus Gallicus Rōmam profectus est.

Rōmānī, quī nihil ad tantum perīculum idōneum parāverant, apud flūmen Alliam superātī sunt. Diem quō hoc proelium factum est Rōmānī posteā Alliēnsem appellāvērunt. Magna pars exercitūs incolumis Veiōs perfūgit. Cēterī Rōmam petiērunt et nē clausīs quidem portīs urbis in arcem Capitōliumque cum conjugibus et līberīs sē contulērunt.

Gallī ingressī urbem nēminī parcunt, dīripiunt incenduntque tēcta. Post aliquot diēs, tēstūdine factā, impetum in arcem fēcērunt. At Rōmānī mediō ferē colle restitērunt,

---

3. nē . . . oppugnārent, *not to attack;* a noun clause, object of *monērent.*

5. jūs gentium: the ancient equivalent of our "international law."

6. prō, *in return for, in satisfaction of.*

11. Alliēnsem: this day was always regarded as one of ill omen, on which no official assemblies of the people were held.

13. nē clausīs quidem, *without even closing;* remember that the words *nē . . . quidem* enclose the emphatic word.

15. nēminī: give the list of "special" verbs that govern the dative.

16. testūdine: a formation with shields in close array in front and overhead.

17. mediō ferē colle, *about the middle of the hill; mediō* is an adjective denoting a part, like *prīmam,* 13, 17.

---

12. per-fugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, *intr.*, flee for refuge, flee.

13. quidem, *adv.*, certainly, in fact; to be sure, it is true; **nē . . . quidem,** not even, not either.

15. parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsūrus, *intr.* (*takes dative*), spare, treat with forbearance.

dīripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tr.* [dis-+rapiō], plunder.

16. tēstūdō, -dinis, *f.* [**tēsta,** shell, hard covering], tortoise; covered column (*a military term*).

atque inde ex locō superiōre, impetū factō, Gallōs pepulērunt. Obsidiō inde ā Gallīs parāta est. Pars exercitūs Gallicī dīmissa est ad frūmentum cōnferendum ex agrīs populōrum fīnitimōrum. Hōs fortūna ipsa dūxit Ardeam, ubi Camillus, imperātor clārissimus, in exiliō vīvēbat. Ardeātēs eō duce castra Gallōrum nocte oppugnant et solūtōs somnō trucīdant. Veiīs interim nōn animī sōlum in diēs sed etiam vīrēs crēscēbant. Nam praeter Rōmānōs, quī ex pugnā Alliēnsī eō perfūgerant, voluntāriī ex Latiō conveniēbant. Hī jam cōnstituērunt Rōmam hostibus līberāre. Omnibus placuit Camillum arcessī, sed anteā senātum cōnsulī. Ad eam rem Pontius Cominius, audāx juvenis, sublevātus cortice secundō Tiberī ad urbem dēfertur. Senātū probante, Camillus dictātor dictus est.

---

20. ad . . . cōnferendum: a gerundive construction, App. 123.

21. Ardeam, *to Ardea.*

Camillus: he had previously taken the Etruscan city of Veii after a long siege, but had subsequently been exiled on the charge of having unfairly divided the spoils of that place.

23. solūtōs somnō, *while sleeping;* how, literally?

24. Veiīs: a locative.

animī: plural; compare English "their spirits."

in diēs, *day by day.*

27. placuit: the subject is the infinitive clause *Camillum arcessī.*

28. cōnsulī: passive infinitive; the meaning was explained in the note on 14, 11.

29. cortice: a float made of bark.

secundō Tiberī, *down the Tiber;* literally, *the Tiber being favorable,* ablative absolute; in like manner *adversō flūmine* means *up stream.*

31. dictus est = *creātus est.*

---

19. obsidiō, -ōnis, *f.* [ob+sedeō], siege, blockade.

20. dī-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.*, send out, send forth; dismiss.

23. trucīdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, slaughter, massacre.

26. voluntārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [voluntās], voluntary; *subst.*, **voluntāriī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, volunteers.

28. arcessō, -cessere, -cessīvī, -cessītum, *tr.*, send for, summon.

29. audāx, -ācis, *adj.* [audeō], daring, bold.

cortex, -icis, *m. and f.*, bark.

Interim arx Rōmae Capitōliumque in ingentī perīculō fuit. Nocte enim Gallī, praemissō mīlite quī viam temptāret, tantō silentiō in summum ēvāsērunt ut nōn sōlum custōdēs fallerent, sed nē canēs quidem excitārent. Ānserēs nōn fefellērunt, quī avēs Jūnōnis sacrae erant. Nam M. Mānlius, vir bellō ēgregius, clangōre eōrum ālārumque crepitū excitātus dējēcit Gallum quī jam in summō cōnstiterat. Jamque aliī Rōmānī tēlīs saxīsque hostēs prōpellunt, tōtaque aciēs Gallōrum praeceps dēfertur.

Sed famēs jam utrumque exercitum urgēbat, Gallōs pestilentia etiam. Diem ex diē Rōmānī frūstrā auxilium ab dictātōre expectābant. Postrēmō mīlle pondō aurī cum Gallīs pactī sunt ut obsidiōnem relinquerent. Huic reī per sē turpissimae indignitās addita est; nam pondera ab Gallīs allāta sunt inīqua. Rōmānīs recūsantibus gladius ā Brennō, rēge

---

32. fuit: the verb often agrees in number with the nearest part of a compound subject.

33. temptāret, *try, reconnoiter.*

34. ēvāsērunt, *made their way up.*

ut nōn fallerent: App. 93.

42. Diem ex diē, *day after day.*

43. mīlle pondō aurī: a peculiar phrase, meaning *a thousand pounds of gold.* Translate, *they bargained with the Gauls for a thousand pounds of gold that they should abandon the siege.*

44. pactī sunt: from *pacīscor.*

per sē, *of itself;* to be taken closely with *turpissimae.*

45. pondera, *weights; i.e.,* for the scales.

---

34. silentium, -ī, *n.* [**sileō,** be still], silence.

custōs, -ōdis, *m. and f.*, guard, guardian, keeper.

35. ānser, -eris, *m.*, goose.

37. ēgregius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ē+grex,** flock], distinguished, eminent.

clangor, -ōris, *m.*, noise.

39. prō-pellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.*, drive forward; drive off, repel, rout.

40. praeceps, -cipitis, *adj.* [**prae,** before, **+caput**], headforemost, headlong.

41. urgeō, -ēre, ursī, —, *tr.*, press, press hard, beset, urge.

43. pondō, *adv.* [*compare* **pondus**], by weight, in weight.

44. pacīscor, pacīscī, pactus sum, *intr.*, bargain, agree.

46. inīquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-+ aequus**], uneven; unfair, unjust.

Gallōrum, ponderī additus est cum hīs verbīs, "vae victīs." Sed priusquam rēs perfecta est, dictātor pervēnit auferrīque aurum dē mediō et Gallōs summovērī jussit. Cum illī dīcerent sē pactōs esse, negat eam pactiōnem valēre, quae, postquam ipse dictātor creātus esset, injussū suō facta esset; tum dēnūntiat Gallīs ut sē ad proelium parent.

Gallī et in urbe et alterō proeliō viā Gabīnā superātī sunt. Dictātor triumphāns in urbem rediit; Rōmulus ac parēns patriae conditōrque alter urbis appellābātur. Deinde servātam in bellō patriam iterum in pāce servāvit. Cum enim tribūnī plēbem agitārent ut relictīs ruīnīs Veiōs migrārent, Camillus ōrātiōne ācrī cīvibus persuāsit ut Rōmam restituerent. Centuriō quoque populum mōvit vōce opportūnē ēmissā, quī cum cohortibus forum trānsiēns clāmāvit: "Signum statue, signifer; hīc manēbimus optimē." Quā vōce audītā, et senātus ē cūriā ēgressus ōmen accipere sē conclāmāvit, et plēbs circumfūsa probāvērunt.

---

47. **vae victīs,** *woe to the vanquished.*

51. **creātus esset, facta esset:** subjunctives in subordinate clauses in indirect discourse.

53. **viā Gabīnā,** *on the road to Gabii.*

54. **Rōmulus:** predicate nominative.

55. **servātam:** to be translated by a relative clause.

57. **plēbem agitārent ut . . . migrārent,** *were instigating the people to migrate; migrārent* takes a subject supplied from *plēbem;* how is the plural verb to be accounted for?

59. **Centuriō . . . mōvit:** this incident illustrates the very common tendency of the Romans to find omens in chance utterances.

62. **et . . . et,** *both . . . and.*

---

47. **vae,** *interj.,* woe!

49. **summoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum,** *tr.* [sub + moveō], drive away, remove.

50. **pactiō, -ōnis,** *f.* [paciscor], agreement, bargain.

52. **dē-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** *tr.,* announce, proclaim; give warning.

57. **agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** *tr.* [*freq. of* **agō**], drive; impel, instigate.

ruīna, -ae, *f.* [ruō, fall in ruins], ruin, downfall; *pl.,* ruins.

59. **opportūnē,** *adv.* [opportūnus], fitly, opportunely.

61. **signifer, -ī,** *m.* [signum + ferō], standard-bearer.

optimē, *superl. adv.* [optimus], best.

62. **ōmen, -inis,** *n.,* omen.

63. **con-clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** *tr. and intr.,* cry out together, cry out loudly, exclaim.

circum-fundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *tr.,* pour around.

18. Gaius Fabricius

Rōmānī ā Pyrrhō, rēge Ēpīrī, proeliō superātī lēgātōs Tarentum ad eum dē redimendīs captīvīs mīsērunt. Inter lēgātōs Rōmānōs erat C. Fabricius, vir bonus et bellō ēgregius, sed admodum pauper. Pyrrhus, quī cum Rōmānīs pācem facere volēbat, lēgātīs magna dōna obtulit, sī Rōmānīs pācem suādērent. Quamquam haec omnia sprēta sunt, rēx tamen captīvōs dīcitur sine pretiō Rōmam mīsisse.

Pyrrhus Fabriciī virtūtem admīrātus illī sēcrētō quārtam etiam rēgnī suī partem obtulit sī patriam dēsereret sēcumque vīveret; cui Fabricius ita respondit: "Sī mē virum bonum jūdicās, cūr mē vīs corrumpere? sīn vērō malum, cūr meam amīcitiam cupis?" Annō interjectō, omnī spē pācis inter Pyrrhum et Rōmānōs conciliandae ablātā, Fabricius cōnsul factus contrā eum missus est. Cumque vīcīna castra ipse et rēx habērent, medicus rēgis nocte ad Fabricium vēnit eīque

---

1. **Pyrrhō:** Pyrrhus came into Italy at the invitation of the people of Tarentum as their ally in war with the Romans. In a more general way he stood as the champion of the Greek cities of southern Italy against Roman aggression.

5. **sī . . . suādērent,** *if they would urge peace upon the Romans;* the subjunctive is due to the informal indirect discourse, *Pyrrhus said that he would make large presents, if,* etc.

12. **pācis . . . conciliandae:** genitive of the gerundive construction.

---

2. **redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum,** *tr.* [red-+emō], buy back, ransom, buy up.

4. **ad-modum,** *adv.*, fully, very, quite.

pauper, -eris, *adj.*, poor, of small means.

6. **suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum,** *tr. and intr.* [*compare* **suāvis**], advise, recommend, urge.

7. **pretium, -ī,** *n.*, price, value; reward, recompense.

8. **sēcrētō,** *adv.* [**sēcrētus**], separately, secretly, in private.

11. **jūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** *tr.* [**jūdex**], judge, decide.

corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.* [**com-+rumpō,** burst], ruin; corrupt.

sīn, *conj.* [**sī+ne**], but if.

vērō, *adv.* [**vērus**], in fact, certainly; but in fact, however.

12. **interjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum,** *tr.* [**inter+jaciō**], throw between, interpose.

15. **medicus, -ī,** *m.* [**medicus,** medical], physician, surgeon.

pollicitus est, sī praemium sibi prōposuisset, sē Pyrrhum venēnō necātūrum. Hunc Fabricius vīnctum ad Pyrrhum remīsit atque eum certiōrem fēcit quae medicus pollicitus esset. Tum rēx admīrātus eum dīxisse fertur: "Ille est Fabricius, quī difficilius ab honestāte quam sōl ā suō cursū potest āvertī."

Fabricius cum apud Pyrrhum rēgem lēgātus esset, cum Cīneā, lēgātō Pyrrhī, sermōnem contulit. Hic dīxit quendam philosophum esse Athēnīs, quī dīceret omnia quae facerēmus ad voluptātem esse referenda. Tum Fabricium exclāmāsse ferunt: "Utinam id hostibus nostrīs persuādeāmus, quō facilius vincī possint, cum sē voluptātibus dederint!" Nihil magis ab ejus vītā aliēnum erat quam voluptās et lūxus. Tōta ejus suppellex argentea ex salīnō ūnō cōnstābat et ex

---

16. **sē . . . necātūrum esse**: a verb of "promising" may take either a future infinitive with subject accusative, as here, or simply a present infinitive without subject.

18. **quae medicus pollicitus esset,** *what the physician had promised;* indirect question depending on *certiōrem fēcit.*

19. **fertur,** *is said,* the same meaning as in 15, 1; in l. 26 occurs the active *ferunt, they say.*

23. **Cīneā**: for the declension of this Greek word see the note on *Aenēās,* 1, 4. Cineas was famed for his powers of persuasion and was Pyrrhus' favorite adviser. The king was reported to have said that he had taken more cities through the eloquence of Cineas than by force of arms.

sermōnem contulit, *engaged in conversation.*

Hic, *the latter.*

25. **ad voluptātem,** *to the standard of pleasure.*

26. **Utinam id hostibus nostrīs persuādeāmus,** *would that we might persuade our enemies of this;* the accusative *id* replaces an infinitive clause, *id vērum esse.* The optative subjunctive *persuādeāmus* and the clause of purpose following are explained in App. 90 and 92.

28. **ab . . . vītā**: with *aliēnum;* we say "foreign to."

---

18. **re-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum,** *tr.*, send back; relax, discontinue.

20. **difficiliter,** *adv.* [difficilis], with difficulty.

honestās, -ātis, *f.* [honor], honesty, honor.

24. **philosophus, -ī,** *m.*, philosopher.

28. **lūxus, -ūs,** *m.*, luxury, splendor.

29. **suppellex, -lectilis,** *f.*, domestic utensils, furniture.

argenteus, -a, -um, *adj.* [argentum], of silver.

salīnum, -ī, *n.* [sāl], salt-cellar.

patellā ad ūsum sacrōrum, quae corneō pediculō sustinēbātur. Cēnābat ad focum rādīcēs et herbās, cum lēgātī Samnītium ad eum vēnērunt māgnamque eī pecūniam obtulērunt; quibus sīc respondit: "Quamdiū cupiditātibus imperāre poterō, nihil mihi deerit; vōs autem pecūniam eīs quī eam cupiunt dōnāte."

Fabricius omnem vītam in glōriōsā paupertāte exēgit, adeōque inops dēcessit ut unde dōs fīliārum darētur nōn relinqueret. Senātus patris sibi partēs sūmpsit et, datīs ex aerāriō dōtibus, fīliās collocāvit.

---

31. cum . . . vēnērunt: this use of *cum* with a perfect indicative is explained in the note on Arg. 109.

33. nihil mihi deerit, *I shall lack nothing;* the dative with ***dēsum*** is similar to the dative of possession with ***sum***.

36. unde, *the means from which;* the idea of possibility is involved in the subjunctive ***darētur***, ***could be furnished***.

---

30. patella, -ae, *f.* [*dim. of* **patina**, pan], a small pan, a small dish.

corneus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**cornū**], of horn.

pediculus, -ī, *m.* [**pēs**], a little foot, a small base.

31. cēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr. and tr.* [**cēna**], dine, dine upon.

focus, -ī, *m.*, fireplace, hearth.

rādīx, -dīcis, *f.*, root, radish; lower part, foot, base (*of a mountain*).

33. quam-diū, *adv.*, as long as.

34. dē-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *intr.*, be wanting, be lacking.

35. glōriōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**glōria**], glorious, famous, renowned.

paupertās, -ātis, *f.* [**pauper**], small means, poverty.

36. inops, -opis, *adj.* [**in-+ops**], poor, destitute.

dē-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.*, withdraw, depart; die.

dōs, dōtis, *f.*, dowry.

38. aerārium, -ī, *n.* [**aes**], treasury.

collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**com-+locō**, place], station, arrange; give in marriage.

---

19. Marcus Atilius Regulus

Cum prīmō Punicō bellō Rōmānī contrā Carthāginiēnsēs dē imperiō Siciliae contenderent, M. Atīlius Rēgulus, cōnsul Rōmānus, nāvālī pugnā classem Pūnicam superāvit. Proeliō factō, Hannō, dux Carthāginiēnsis, ad eum vēnit simulāns sē

---

3. nāvālis, -e, *adj.* [**nāvis**], of ships, nautical, naval.

velle dē pāce agere, rē vērā ut tempus extraheret, dum novae cōpiae ex Āfricā advenīrent. Mīlitēs Rōmānī clāmāre coepērunt Rēgulum idem facere oportēre quod Carthāginiēnsēs paucīs ante annīs in cōnsule quōdam fēcissent. Is enim tamquam in colloquium per fraudem vocātus ā Poenīs comprehēnsus erat et in catēnās conjectus. Jam Hannō timēre incipiēbat, sed perīculum respōnsō callidō reppulit. "Sī hoc fēceritis", inquit, "nihilō eritis Poenīs meliōrēs." Cōnsul tacēre jussit eōs quī pār parī referrī volēbant, et conveniēns gravitātī Rōmānae respōnsum dedit: "Istō tē metū, Hannō, fidēs Rōmāna līberat." Dē pāce, quia Poenus ex animō nōn agēbat et cōnsul bellum gerere quam pācem facere mālēbat, nōn convēnit.

Deinde Rēgulus et collēga, L. Mānlius Vulsō, in Āfricam prīmī Rōmānōrum ducum trānsiērunt. Ibi, multīs castellīs expugnātīs magnāque praedā captā, Tūnētem occupāvērunt, quae urbs decem tantum mīlibus passuum ā Carthāgine aberat. Vulsō in Italiam cum parte mīlitum rediit, collēgā ad agrōs vāstandōs relictō. Dum Rēgulus ita hiemem in

---

5. **rē vērā,** *in fact, in reality,* as in 7, 11.

6. **advenīrent:** anticipatory subjunctive with *dum, until,* App. 97.

7. **oportēre:** the infinitive is due to the indirect discourse; its subject is another infinitive with subject accusative, *Rēgulum . . . facere.*

8. **in,** *in the case of.*

9. **Poenīs:** *Poenī* and *Carthāginiēnsēs* are used of the same people, the former referring to their Phoenician origin, the latter derived from the name of their chief city.

13. **pār parī,** *like for like, as good as they sent.*

15. **ex animō,** *sincerely;* literally, *from his heart.*

17. **nōn convēnit,** *no agreement was reached; convēnit* is used impersonally.

21. **mīlibus:** ablative of degree or measure of difference; what part of speech is the plural of *mīlle?*

---

11. **callidus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [calleō, be callous, be skilled], shrewd, adroit.

12. **nihilum, -ī,** *n.* [ne + hilum, a shred], nothing; *esp. in the abl. with a compar., e. g.* **nihilō minus,** none the less.

13. **conveniēns,** *gen.,* **-entis,** *adj.* [*pr. part. of* conveniō], agreeing, appropriate.

14. **gravitās, -ātis,** *f.* [gravis], heaviness; importance; dignity.

18. **collēga, -ae,** *m.,* colleague.

Āfricā agit, vīlicus in agellō septem jūgerum, quem Rēgulus cōnsul habēbat, mortuus est; occāsiōnem nactus mercennārius, ablātō rūsticō īnstrūmentō, aufūgit. Ita perīculum erat nē, dēsertō agrō, alimenta uxōrī Rēgulī ac līberīs deessent. Dīcitur litterīs ā cōnsulibus petīsse ut sibi successor mitterētur. At senātus agrum colī pūblicē et alimenta conjugī ejus ac līberīs praebērī rēsque quās āmīserat redimī jussit.

Īnsequentī annō Rēgulus, arbitrātus Carthāginiēnsēs jam sē dēdere parātōs esse, ad colloquium eōs invītāvit. Laetī vēnērunt, ut dē pāce agerent. Sed cum postulāta Rēgulī audīvissent, cōnstituērunt condiciōnēs tam dūrās recūsāre bellumque renovāre.

Eō ferē tempore Lacedaemonius quīdam, nōmine Xanthippus, reī mīlitāris perītissimus, Carthāginem cum conductīs vēnit. Carthāginiēnsibus celeriter persuāsit ut sē ducem facerent. Quō factō fortūna mūtāta est. Nam nōn sōlum

---

26. nē . . . deessent: the noun clause is used with *perīculum erat* exactly as with a verb of fearing, App. 96, *b*; observe that *nē* is to be translated *that*.

27. uxōrī: a dative with *dēsum*, like *mihi*, 18, 34.

37. reī: objective genitive with *perītissimus*.

---

24. vīlicus, -ī, *m.* **[vīlla]**, steward, bailiff.

agellus, -ī, *m.* [*dim. of* **ager**], a little field.

25. mercennārius, -a, -um, *adj.* **[mercēs]**, hired, paid; *subst.*, **mercennārius, -ī,** *m.*, hired servant.

26. rūsticus, -a, -um, *adj.* **[rūs]**, of the country, rustic.

īnstrūmentum, -ī, *n.*, implement, tool; *as collective in the sing.*, implements, tools.

27. alimenta, -ōrum, *n. pl.* **[alō]**, food, provisions; support.

28. littera, -ae, *f.*, a letter (*of the alphabet*); *pl.*, a letter, an epistle; literature.

successor, -ōris, *m.* **[succēdō]**, successor.

29. pūblicē, *adv.* **[pūblicus]**, in the name of the state, at public expense.

31. īn-sequēns, *gen.* **-sequentis,** *adj.* [*pr. part. of* **īnsequor**], following, next.

33. postulātum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* **postulō**], a demand, request.

34. condiciō, -ōnis, *f.* **[condīcō,** agree], agreement; terms, conditions.

dūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hard, harsh, severe.

37. conductī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* [*p. part. of* **condūcō**], mercenary soldiers, mercenaries.

exercitum Rōmānum vīcērunt sed etiam Rēgulum imperātōrem cēpērunt.

Paucīs post annīs, cum iterum dē pāce agere cōnstituissent, Rēgulum cum lēgātīs Rōmam mīsērunt quī Rōmānīs pācem suādēret et dē commūtandīs captīvīs ageret; jūre jūrandō autem adstrictus est ut, nisi dē captīvīs impetrāret, redīret ipse Carthāginem. Is, cum Rōmam vēnisset, ēgit aliter ac Poenī mandāverant. Nam senātuī suāsit nē pāx cum Poenīs fieret; illōs enim frāctōs tot cāsibus spem nūllam habēre; reddī captīvōs negāvit esse ūtile; adulēscentēs esse et bonōs ducēs, sē jam cōnfectum senectūte; dīxit etiam malum exemplum futūrum esse, sī captīvī Rōmānī redimerentur. Senātus eō auctōre pācem recūsāvit Poenōsque captīvōs retinuit. Rēgulus ut captīvus conjugem parvōsque nātōs ā sē rēmōvit Carthāginemque rediit. Ibi crūdēlissimīs suppliciīs necātus esse dīcitur.

---

42. Paucīs post annīs: an ablative of degree of difference with *post;* we have also had *post paucōs annōs.*

43. Rōmānīs . . . suādēret: translated in the note on 18, 5.

44. jūre jūrandō . . . adstrictus est ut . . . redīret, *bound himself by an oath to return;* because of the implied indirect discourse (he said he would return), the subordinate clause, *nisi . . . impetrāret,* has the subjunctive.

46. ac, *than,* a meaning explained in the note on Arg. 320.

48. illōs . . . habēre: dependent on a verb of "saying" implied in the preceding sentence.

49. reddī captīvōs: for the infinitive clause as subject of *esse,* see the note on 16, 5. Why is *ūtile* neuter?

52. eō auctōre, *by his advice,* ablative absolute.

53. ut captīvus, *as a prisoner;* and so not the equal of free Romans.

54. ā sē remōvit, *shunned.*

---

44. com-mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.,* change, exchange.

45. ad-stringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictum, *tr.,* bind to, bind.

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [in+patrō, perform], gain, gain one's request.

49. ūtilis, -e, *adj.* [ūtor], useful, expedient.

50. senectūs, -ūtis, *f.* [senex], old age.

exemplum, -ī, *n.,* example, precedent.

53. retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [re-+teneō], restrain, retain.

20. Hannibal

Carthāginiēnsēs post prīmum Pūnicum bellum imperium opēsque in Hispāniā dīligenter auxērunt. Dux hujus operis Hamilcar erat, quī imperātor prīmō bellō fuerat atque indignābātur quod Carthāgō eō bellō Siciliam Sardiniamque āmīserat.

Hannibal, ejus fīlius, annōs novem nātus patre incitante jūrāvit sē semper hostem futūrum esse populī Rōmānī. Posteā in Hispāniam missus est. Tam similis patrī ōre vultūque erat ut mīlitēs Hamilcarem juvenem redditum sibi esse crēderent. Ingenium autem erat ad rēs dīversissimās, pārendum atque imperandum, aptum. Nōn minus Hasdrubalī, imperātōrī, quī interfectō Hamilcare eī successor fuit in Hispāniā, quam exercituī cārus erat. Neque Hasdrubal alium quemquam mīlitibus praeficere mālēbat, neque mīlitēs aliō duce plūs cōnfīdēbant aut audēbant. Plūrimum audāciae ad perīcula capessenda, plūrimum cōnsiliī inter ipsa perīcula praebēbat. Nūllō labōre aut corpus fatīgārī aut animus

6. **annōs novem nātus,** *at the age of nine;* how, literally?

patre incitante, *at the instigation of his father,* ablative absolute.

8. **patrī:** dative with *similis,* which sometimes takes the genitive.

10. **pārendum, imperandum:** accusative of the gerund in apposition with *rēs.*

12. **eī successor,** *successor to him.* Hasdrubal was a brother-in-law of Hannibal.

13. **alium quemquam,** *any other.*

14. **mīlitibus:** dative with the compound *praeficere,* of which *quemquam* is the direct object.

aliō duce, *under another leader,* ablative absolute.

15. **plūs cōnfīdēbant aut audēbant,** *displayed more confidence or daring.* **Plūrimum audāciae,** *the utmost boldness;* substantive use of the adjective with dependent genitive of the whole.

6. **in-citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** *tr.* [citō, rouse], rouse, incite, instigate.

8. **vultus, -ūs,** *m.,* face, features, expression.

11. **aptus, -a, -um,** *adj.,* fit, adapted.

15. **plūs,** *adv.* [*n. acc. of* plūs], more.

16. **capessō, -ere, —, —,** *tr.* [**capiō**], seize (eagerly), undertake, undergo.

17. **fatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** *tr.,* weary, tire, fatigue.

vincī poterat. Calōris ac frīgoris patientia erat pār. Cibī modus pōtiōnisque dēsīderiō nātūrālī, nōn voluptāte, fīnītus est; tempora vigiliārum somnīque nec diē nec nocte discrīmināta sunt; id quod gerendīs rēbus supererat quiētī datum est; ea neque mollī strātō neque silentiō arcessīta est; multī saepe eum mīlitārī sagulō opertum humī jacentem inter custōdiās statiōnēsque mīlitum cōnspexērunt. Vestītus nihil inter aequālēs excellēns; arma atque equī cōnspiciēbantur. Equitum peditumque īdem longē prīmus erat; prīnceps in proelium ībat, ultimus commissō proeliō excēdēbat.

Hasdrubale interfectō, Hannibal, nātus annōs vīgintī septem imperātor creātus, cōnstituit Rōmānōs vincere, ut Carthāginem in prīstinam auctōritātem restitueret. Prīmum obsidiōne urbem Saguntīnōrum cēpit, quī sociī Hispāniēnsēs Rōmānōrum erant. Deinde per montēs Pȳrēnaeōs atque Alpēs iter difficile in Italiam fēcit. Ibi Rōmānōs exercitūs superāvit ad Tīcīnum flūmen, ad Trebiam, ad Trasumennum lacum, in Āpuliā ad Cannās. In Āpūliam vēnerat eō cōn-

---

21. id quod . . . supererat, *what time was left from active duties; gerendīs rēbus* is a dative of the gerundive construction. the dative being frequently used after *supersum.*

23. humī, *on the ground;* a locative.

24. nihil, *not at all;* for the case see the note on Arg. 319.

26. īdem, *alike;* in agreement with the subject of *erat.*

---

18. frīgus, frīgoris, *n.*, cold, coldness.

19. pōtiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**pōtō,** to drink], a drink, drink.

dēsīderium, -ī, *n.* [**dēsīderō,** long for], desire, longing.

nātūrālis, -e, *adj.* [**nātūra**], of nature, natural.

fīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *tr.* [**fīnis**], limit, determine, fix.

20. discrīminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**discrīmen**], divide, distinguish.

22. mollis, -e, *adj.*, soft.

strātum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* **sternō,** spread out], bed-covering, coverlet.

23. sagulum, -ī, *n.* [*dim. of* **sagum,** mantle], a military cloak.

24. statiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**stō**], station, post; *pl.* sentries, outposts.

25. aequālis, -e, *adj.*, equal; *subst.*, **aequālis, -is,** *m.*, one of the same age.

excellēns, *gen.* **-entis,** *adj.* [*pr. part. of* **excellō,** excel], prominent, distinguished.

siliō, ut spē lībertātis sociōs Rōmānōrum sollicitāret. Quīdam ex sociīs amīcitiam Hannibalis secūtī sunt, sed multī in fidē Rōmānōrum mānsērunt. Cum optimī ducēs Rōmānī adversus Hannibalem mitterentur, numquam tamen eum dēvincere potuērunt. Sēdecim annōs in Italiā neque victor neque victus mānsit.

---

36. ut . . . sollicitāret: a clause explaining *cōnsiliō*.

37. amīcitiam Hannibalis secūtī sunt, *made friends with Hannibal.*

---

36. sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, disturb, tempt, incite.

40. dē-vincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victum, *tr.*, conquer completely.

sēdecim, *indecl. num.* [**sex+decem**], sixteen.

---

21. Quintus Fabius Maximus

Initiō secundī Pūnicī bellī Rōmānī lēgātōs Carthāginem mīsērunt quī reperīrent num pūblicō cōnsiliō Hannibal Saguntum oppugnāsset. Rē diū atque frūstrā in senātū Carthāginiēnsī dēlīberātā, tandem ūnus ex Carthāginiēnsibus clāmāvit: "Omittite Saguntī mentiōnem facere, et quod fertis aliquandō dīcite." Tum Q. Fabius Maximus, lēgātiōnis Rōmānae prīnceps, sinū ex togā factō, "hīc," inquit, "vōbīs bellum et pācem portāmus; utrum placet, sūmite." Carthāginiēnsēs haud minus ferōciter eum jussērunt dare utrum vellet. Et cum is iterum sinū effūsō bellum sē dare dīxisset, Carthāginiēnsēs respondērunt: "Bellum accipimus et quibus animīs accipimus īsdem gerēmus."

---

2. num: this word may introduce indirect questions as well as direct; with indirect questions it should be translated *whether.*

pūblicō cōnsiliō, *with the sanction of the government.*

8. utrum, *whichever;* literally, *which of the two.*

11. quibus animīs . . . īsdem: here, as often in Latin, the antecedent *animīs* is placed in the relative clause, with a demonstrative standing after; it is best to translate as if we had *īsdem animīs gerēmus quibus accipimus.*

---

6. lēgātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**lēgō,** appoint as deputy], embassy, legation.

Postquam Rōmānī clādem ad Trasumennum lacum accēpērunt, Fabius dictātor creātus est, et M. Minucius Rūfus magister equitum. Cōnsilium erat Fabiī nūllō locō cum hoste dēcertāre, sed fīnēs Rōmānōrum sociōrumque intuērī et levibus proeliīs mīlitum fortitūdinem augēre. Hannibal hōc cōnsiliō turbātus dictātōrem invidiā onerāre cōnstituit. Itaque cum ager Fabiī eī mōnstrātus esset, omnibus agrīs circā vāstātīs, ūnī agrō dictātōris pepercit. At Fabius, missō Rōmam Quīntō fīliō, agrum vēndidit pecūniāque redāctā captīvōs Rōmānōs redēmit.

Ratiō Fabiāna bellī gerendī, propter quam Fabiō cognōmen Cūnctātor datum est, Rōmānīs grāta nōn erat. Cum Minucius, absente dictātōre, aliquantum victōriae forte adeptus esset, lēx lāta est ut jūs magistrī equitum et dictātōris aequārētur. Injūriam tamen Fabius aequō animō tulit, satis fīdēns haudquāquam cum imperiī jūre artem imperandī aequātam esse. Legiōnēs inter dictātōrem et magistrum dīvīsae sunt. Dēnique Minucius, temere proeliō commissō, ā Fabiō servātus est. Tum sub imperium dictātōris rediit

---

20. ūnī, *alone;* a not infrequent meaning of *ūnus.*

21. pecūniā redāctā, *with the money realized,* ablative absolute.

25. aliquantum victōriae, *somewhat of a victory.*

26. ut . . . aequārētur: a noun clause defining *lēx.*

27. aequō animō, *with composure.* **satis fīdēns,** *quite convinced.*

31. ā Fabiō: to be taken with *servātus est.*

---

13. clādēs, clādis, -ium, *f.*, disaster, misfortune; defeat.

16. dē-certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, fight it out, fight a decisive battle.

17. fortitūdō, -dinis, *f.* [fortis], fortitude, bravery.

18. invidia, -ae, *f.* [invidus, envious], envy, jealousy.

21. vēndō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**vēnum,** sale, +**dō**], sell.

redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [red-+**agō**], force back; bring under, reduce; collect.

24. cūnctātor, -ōris, *m.* [cūnctor], a delayer; *as a proper noun, bestowed informally as a cognomen on Q. Fabius Maximus.*

25. aliquantum, -ī, *n.* [aliquantus, some], something.

adipīscor, adipīscī, adeptus sum, *tr.* [ad+apīscor, reach], attain, obtain, win.

26. aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [aequus], make equal, equalize.

28. fīdō, -ere, fīsus sum, *intr.*, trust, rely upon.

30. temere, *adv.*, rashly, heedlessly.

legiōnēsque restituit et Fabium patrem appellāvit. Rōmae, ut est perlāta fāma ejus reī, omnēs Maximum laudibus ad caelum ferēbant.

Multīs post annīs, aliīs rēbus interim gestīs, Fabius mortuus est. Quamquam alius dux prōmptior ad proelium Hannibalem dēnique dēvīcit, certum tamen est Fabium rem Rōmānam cōnsiliō cūnctandī restituisse.

---

32. ut, *when.*

33. laudibus ferēbant, *extolled.*

37. rem Rōmānam, *Roman fortunes.*

---

36. prōmptus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **prōmō,** bring forth], ready, prompt.

38. cūnctor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.*, delay, hesitate.

---

22. Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus

P. Cornēlius Scīpiō fīlius erat cōnsulis quī exercituī Rōmānō in proeliō ad Tīcīnum flūmen praefuerat. Fāma est patrem, cum in eō proeliō vulnerātus ab hostibus circumvenīrētur, ā fīliō septendecim nātō annōs servātum esse.

Post pugnam Cannēnsem quattuor mīlia mīlitum Rōmānōrum Canusium perfūgērunt. Cum ibi tribūnī mīlitum quattuor essent, omnium tamen cōnsēnsū ad duōs tribūnōs, P. Scīpiōnem et Ap. Claudium, summa imperiī dēlāta est. Eīs nūntiātum est nōbilēs juvenēs quōsdam dē dēserendā Ītaliā cōnsultāre. Scīpiō sequentibus paucīs vēnit in dēversōrium

---

1. exercituī: dative with the compound verb *praefuerat.*

2. Fāma est, *there is a story;* governing indirect discourse, *patrem . . . servātum esse.*

6. Cum: of the three possible meanings, *when, since, although,* which one suits the context?

---

4. septendecim, *indecl. num.* [**septem+decem**], seventeen.

8. summa, -ae, *f.* [**summus**], chief place, supremacy; sum, total.

10. cōnsultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [*freq. of* **cōnsulō**], consult, deliberate.

ubi conjūrātī erant, strictōque gladiō eōs coēgit jūrāre sē numquam rem pūblicam dēsertūrōs esse.

Posteā cum aedīlitātem peteret, tribūnī plēbis resistēbant, quod nōndum ad petendum lēgitima aetās esset. Tum Scīpiō "sī mē," inquit, "omnēs Quirītēs aedīlem facere volunt, satis annōrum habeō." Aedīlis magnō favōre populī nūllō tribūnō resistente creātus est.

Quattuor post annīs pater Scīpiōnis et patruus, quī bellum in Hispāniā gesserant, intrā diēs trīgintā cecidērunt. Comitiīs ēdictīs ad imperātōrem creandum omnēs seniōrēs imperium Hispāniēnse accipere nōlēbant; tum subitō P. Cornēlius Scīpiō, quattuor et vīgintī annōs nātus, professus est sē petere et in superiōre locō unde cōnspicī posset, cōnstitit. Deinde ad ūnum omnēs P. Scīpiōnī imperium esse in Hispāniā jussērunt. Posteā tamen cīvēs ob aetātem imperātōris novī dubitāre incipiēbant num rēctē fēcissent. Scīpiō, hōc animadversō, cōntiōnem habuit et tam graviter disseruit ut animōs rūrsus excitāret omnēsque certā spē implēret.

---

14. quod . . . esset: what difference is there between the indicative and the subjunctive with *quod* causal?

petendum: *petō* is the technical term for "seek office," "be a candidate."

23. unde cōnspicī posset: a clause of purpose introduced by a relative adverb.

24. P. Scīpiōnī imperium esse, *that P. Scipio should have the command; Scīpiōnī* is a dative of possession.

26. num: see note on 21, 2.

---

11. conjūrātī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* [*pf. part. of* **conjūrō,** conspire], conspirators.

13. aedīlitās, -ātis, *f.* [**aedīlis**], the office of an aedile, aedileship.

14. lēgitimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**lēx**], fixed by law, legal.

15. aedīlis, aedīlis, -ium, *m.*, aedile, *title of a Roman magistrate.*

16. favor, -ōris, *m.* [**faveō**], favor, good-will.

18. patruus, -ī, *m.* [**pater**], a father's brother, uncle.

20. senior, *gen.* **-ōris,** *adj.* [*compar. of* **senex**], older; *subst., m. pl.,* the older men, the elders.

22. profiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum, *tr.* [**pro+fateor,** confess], declare publicly, profess, avow.

26. rēctē, *adv.* [**rēctus**], straight; right, properly.

27. cōntiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*compare* **com-** *and* **veniō**], a public assembly; a speech.

dis-serō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum, *intr.* [**serō,** join], discourse, argue.

Quīnque annōs in Hispāniā bellum adversus Carthāginiēnsēs continuō cursū victōriārum gessit. Exercitūs hostium ex Hispāniā expulit et amīcitiās gentium Hispāniēnsium sibi conciliāvit. Multa nārrantur dē Scīpiōnis mānsuētūdine in miserōs et dē comitāte in hostēs ac barbarōs. Virginem Hispānam captam Carthāgine Novā, quae Allucīō, prīncipī Celtibērōrum, dēspōnsa erat, spōnsō trādidit. Magnum quoque aurī pondus, quod virginis parentēs ad redimendam fīliam attulērunt, spōnsō dedit. Allucius, ut beneficium remūnerārētur, domum profectus ad Scīpiōnem cum dēlēctīs mīlle et quadringentīs equitibus revertit. Massīvam adulēscentem, captīvum Āfrum, restituit avunculō Masinissae, Numidārum rēgī, quī cum equitātū subsidiō Carthāginiēnsibus vēnerat.

Scīpiō, receptā Hispāniā, glōriam cōnficiendī bellī spectāre coepit. Cōnstituit prius conciliāre rēgēs Āfrōs, Syphācem et Masinissam, quī sociī Carthāginiēnsium erant. Syphāx colloquium cum duce Rōmānō postulāvit. Scīpiō ab Carthāgine Novā profectus forte invectus est in rēgium portum eō ipsō tempore quō Hasdrubal, dux Carthāginiēnsis, quī Hispāniā pulsus erat. Rōmānus et Carthāginiēnsis, quamquam hostēs erant, ā Syphāce in hospitium invītātī eōdem lectō accubuē-

---

31. amīcitiās: translate by the singular. The plural is employed because several nations are involved.

33. in, *to, towards.*

41. subsidiō Carthāginiēnsibus: datives of purpose and reference, App. 53, 54.

50. in hospitium, *to be his guests.*

---

32. mānsuētūdō, -inis, *f.* [**mānsuētus,** mild], mildness, gentleness, clemency.

33. comitās, -ātis, *f.* [**cōmis,** courteous], courteousness, affability.

38. re-mūneror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.*, repay, reward.

39. quadringentī, -ae, -a, *num. adj.* [**quattuor+centum**], four hundred.

40. avunculus, -ī, *m.* [**avus**], a (maternal) uncle.

43. recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**re-+capiō**], take back, regain; accept, receive; **sē recipere,** to recover oneself, to withdraw, to retreat.

50. lectus, -ī, *m.*, couch, bed.

runt. Tanta autem inerat comitās Scīpiōnī ut Hasdrubal nōn minus quam Syphāx Rōmānum admīrārētur. Scīpiō cum Syphāce foedere factō Novam Carthāginem rediit.

Posteā iter longum per Hispāniam fēcit, ut cum Masinissā quoque colloquerētur, quem comitāte atque majestāte facile conciliāvit. Numida grātiās ēgit quod Scīpiō frātris fīlium remīsisset dīxitque sē velle in fidē atque amīcitiā populī Rōmānī esse; Rōmānōs, sī Scīpiōnem ducem in Āfricam mitterent, brevī tempore Carthāginem captūrōs esse. Scīpiō, fidē datā acceptāque, in castra rediit atque mox Rōmam profectus est.

Cum ibi cōnsul ingentī favōre factus esset, Sicilia eī prōvincia dēcrēta est permissumque ut in Āfricam trānsīret. Dum in Siciliā bellum parat, Rōmam ab inimīcīs ejus nūntiātum est imperātōrem exercitumque Syrācūsārum amoenitāte licentiāque corrumpī. Lēgātīs ā senātū Syrācūsās ad haec cognōscenda missīs, Scīpiō mīlitēs in terrā dēcurrentēs, classem in portū simulācrum nāvālis pugnae ēdentem, armāmentāria, horrea, bellī alium apparātum ostendit; tantaque admīrātiō lēgātōs cēpit ut satis crēderent aut illō duce atque

---

57. in fidē atque amīcitiā, *under the friendly protection,* a loose sort of alliance between the Roman government and less civilized peoples.

63. permissum (est), *permission was given;* the noun clause *ut . . . trānsīret* is subject of *permissum est.*

64. Rōmam: accusative of the place to which. What suggests the idea of motion?

67. dēcurrentēs, *drilling, maneuvering.*

70. satis crēderent, *were quite convinced.*

---

51. īn-sum, -esse, -fuī, *intr.*, be in, be upon.

55. colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, *intr.* [com-+loquor], converse, confer.

majestās, -ātis, *f.* [major], dignity, majesty.

65. amoenitās, -ātis, *f.* [amoenus, charming], pleasantness, charm.

66. licentia, -ae, *f.* [licēns, free], freedom, license; boldness.

68. simulācrum, -ī, *n.* [simulō], likeness, semblance.

armāmentārium, -ī, *n.* [arma], arsenal, armory.

69. horreum, -ī, *n.*, storehouse, granary.

apparātus, -ūs, *m.* [apparō, prepare], apparatus, equipment.

exercitū vincī Carthāginiēnsēs aut nūllō aliō posse. Senātus igitur cēnsuit ut Scīpiō quam prīmum in Āfricam trānsīret.

Scīpiōnī in Āfricam advenientī Masinissa sē conjūnxit cum parvā manū equitum. Syphāx, quī ā Rōmānīs ad Poenōs dēfēcerat, captus est Rōmamque missus. Dēnique Carthāginiēnsēs, salūte dēspērātā ob multās victōriās Scīpiōnis, Hannibalem ex Italiā revocāvērunt.

Frendēns gemēnsque ac vix ā lacrimīs temperāns dīcitur lēgātōrum verba audīsse. Respexit saepe Italiae lītora, sē accūsāns quod nōn victōrem exercitum statim ab Cannēnsī pugnā Rōmam dūxisset. Zamam vēnit, quae urbs quīnque diērum iter ab Carthāgine abest. Inde praemissī speculātōrēs exceptī sunt ab custōdibus Rōmānīs et ad Scīpiōnem dēductī. Ille autem jussit eōs per castra circumdūcī et ad Hannibalem dīmīsit.

Deinde, quaerente colloquium Hannibale, diēs locusque cōnstituitur. Itaque congressī sunt duo maximī suae aetātis ducēs. Paulisper tacuērunt admīrātiōne mūtuā dēfīxī. Cum vērō dē condiciōnibus pācis inter eōs nōn convēnisset, ad suōs sē recēpērunt renūntiantēs armīs dēcernendum esse. Commissō deinde proeliō Hannibal victus cum paucīs equitibus fūgit.

Pāx Carthāginiēnsibus data est eīs condiciōnibus quae

72. quam prīmum, *as soon as possible.*

89. convēnisset: impersonal, as in 19, 17.

90. dēcernendum esse, *the matter must be decided;* impersonal passive.

93. eīs . . . quae . . . facerent, *such terms as made; quae . . . facerent* is a clause of result introduced by a relative pronoun.

77. re-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, call back, recall.

78. (frendō, -ere), *only in pr. part., intr.*, gnash the teeth.

gemō, -ere, gemuī, —, *intr.*, groan, lament.

temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [tempus], restrain, abstain from, refrain from.

79. lītus, lītoris, *n.*, seashore, beach.

84. circum-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead around.

87. con-gredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *intr.* [com-+gradior, step], come together, meet.

88. mūtuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [mūtō], mutual.

dē-figo, -figere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *tr.*, fasten down; strike motionless, stupefy.

Rōmānōs suae partis orbis terrārum dominōs facerent. Pāce terrā marīque partā, Scīpiō exercitū in nāvēs impositō Rōmam profectus est. Per Italiam laetam pāce nōn minus quam victōriā iter fēcit. Nōn urbēs modo ad habendōs honōrēs effūsae sunt, sed agrestium etiam turba viās obsidēbat. Triumphō omnium clārissimō urbem est invectus cognōmenque Āfricānum sibi sūmpsit.

---

95. terrā marīque, *by land and sea;* locative ablatives.

98. effūsae sunt: translate in the active voice, *poured out.*

---

95. pariō, -ere, peperī, partum, *tr.*, bring forth, give birth to, produce.

98. agrestis, -e, *adj.* [**ager**], of the country; *subst.* **agrestis, agrestis, -ium,** *m.*, a countryman, a peasant.

99. triumphus, -ī, *m.*, a triumphal procession, triumph.

---

23. Gaius Marius

C. Marius humilī locō nātus, prīma stīpendia in Hispāniā duce Scīpiōne fēcit. Imprīmīs Scīpiōnī ob ēgregiam virtūtem cārus erat; Scīpiō enim dīxit, sī quid sibi accidisset, rem pūblicam nūllum alium successōrem Mariō meliōrem inventūram esse. Quā laude excitātus Marius spīritūs dignōs rēbus quās posteā gessit concēpit.

Posteā lēgātus fuit Q. Metellī, quī bellum in Numidiā contrā Jugurtham rēgem gerēbat. Rōmam missus Metellum apud populum incūsāvit, quod bellum dūceret; sī sē cōn-

---

1. locō: the ablative of *locus* in the sense of *station* needs no preposition. **prīma stīpendia fēcit,** *saw his first service.*

2. Scīpiōnī: the younger Scipio, the destroyer of Carthage.

6. rēbus: the ablative is regularly governed by *dignus* and its opposite *indignus.*

9. sī sē, etc.: dependent on a verb of "saying" implied in *incūsāvit;* with *captūrum esse, sē* is to be supplied as subject.

---

2. imprīmīs, *adv.* [**in**+*abl. pl. of* **prīmus**], especially, chiefly.

5. spīritus, -ūs, *m.* [**spīrō,** breathe], breath; spirit, pride, ambition, arrogance.

dignus, -a, -um, *adj.*, worthy.

6. concipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**com-**+**capiō**], take hold of; conceive.

sulem fēcissent, brevī tempore aut vīvum aut mortuum Jugurtham captūrum esse. Itaque cōnsul creātus in Numidiam rediit atque superāvit Bocchum, rēgem Gaetulōrum, ad quem Jugurtha profūgerat. Deinde Sulla, quaestor Mariī, persuāsit Bocchō ut Jugurtham trāderet.

Marius iterum cōnsul creātus in Galliam profectus est, ubi vīcit Teutonēs, gentem Germānicam, quī cum Cimbrīs novās sēdēs quaerēbant. Cum Teutonī vallem flūmenque medium tenērent, mīlitēsque Rōmānī, quibus aquae nūlla cōpia erat, aquam flāgitārent, Marius "virī," inquit, "estis; ēn, illīc aquam habētis." Mīlitēs ita concitātī tam ācriter pugnāvērunt ut ducenta mīlia hostium caederentur et nōnāgintā caperentur.

Īnsequentī annō cum Marius contrā Cimbrōs in Italiā castra habēret, illī lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt quī agrōs sibi et

---

18. quibus . . . erat = *quī . . . habēbant;* what kind of dative is *quibus?*

---

13. quaestor, -ōris, *m.* [*for* **quaesītor,** *compare* **quaerō**], quaestor, *a Roman magistrate connected with state finances.*

19. flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.,* demand urgently, demand.

ēn, *interj.,* behold! see!

illīc, *adv.* [**ille**], there, yonder.

21. nōnāgintā, *indecl. num.,* ninety.



ROMAN AQUEDUCT

frātribus postulārent; Teutonum enim clādem ignōrābant. Cum quaereret Marius quōs illī frātrēs dīcerent, Teutonēs nōmināvērunt; tum rīdēns Marius "omittite," inquit, "frātrēs; tenent hī acceptam ā nōbīs terram atque in perpetuum tenēbunt." Proeliō commissō, Cimbrī caesī sunt. In ipsā pugnā Marius duās cohortēs Camertium, quī mīrā virtūte vim Cimbrōrum sustinēbant, contrā lēgem cīvitāte dōnāvit. Dē quā rē posteā reprehēnsus sē excūsāvit, quod inter armōrum strepitum verba jūris cīvīlis exaudīre nōn potuisset.

Marius, quī semper factiōnem populārem in rē pūblicā secūtus erat, cum senēsceret, invidēre coepit Sullae, quī dux nōbilium erat. Itaque, cum Sulla in cōnsulātū bellō Mithridāticō praefectus esset, tribūnus quīdam lēge imperium Sullae abrogāvit Mariōque bellum dētulit. Quā rē commōtus Sulla, quī ex Italiā nōndum excesserat, Rōmam cum exercitū rediit et urbe occupātā tribūnum interfēcit Mariumque fugāvit. Marius aliquamdiū in palūde latuit; paulō post repertus, injectō in collum lōrō, Minturnās raptus est et in

---

26. quōs . . . dīcerent, *whom they meant by "brothers."*

31. contrā lēgem: Roman citizenship was normally the gift of the senate.

32. sē excūsāvit, quod, *offered as an excuse, that,* etc. There is no verb of "saying" here, yet we have the subjunctive in *potuisset.* Why?

34. in rē pūblicā, *in politics.*

36. Sulla, bellō: what would be the cases of these words if the compound verb, *praefectus esset,* were in the active voice?

42. injectō . . . lōrō, *with a rope,* etc., ablative absolute.

---

27. nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* **[nōmen],** call by name, mention.

31. dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* **[dōnum],** present, bestow.

33. strepitus, -ūs, *m.* **[strepō,** make a noise], noise, uproar, confusion.

ex-audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *tr.*, hear clearly, hear.

34. populāris, -e, *adj.* **[populus],** of the people, democratic, popular.

35. senēscō, -ere, senuī, —, *intr.* [*compare* **senex**], grow old.

in-videō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, *intr.*, envy, be jealous of.

36. cōnsulātus, -ūs, *m.* **[cōnsul],** consulship.

38. ab-rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, annul; take away (*an office*).

41. aliquamdiū, *adv.*, for a while.

lateō, -ēre, latuī, —, *intr.*, lie hid, be hidden.

42. lōrum, -ī, *n.*, thong, strap.

custōdiam conjectus. Missus est ad eum occīdendum servus pūblicus, nātiōne Cimber, quem Marius vultūs auctōritāte dēterruit. Cum enim hominem ad sē strictō gladiō venientem vīdisset, "tūne, homō," inquit, "C. Marium audēbis occīdere?" Quō audītō ille perturbātus gladium abjēcit atque fūgit, Marium sē nōn posse occīdere clāmitāns. Marius deinde ab iīs quī prius eum occīdere voluerant ē carcere ēmissus est.

Acceptā nāviculā in Āfricam trānsiit et in agrum Carthāginiēnsem pervēnit. Ibi cum in locīs sōlitāriīs sedēret, vēnit ad eum līctor Sextiliī praetōris, quī tum Āfricam obtinēbat. Ab hōc, quem numquam laesisset, Marius hūmānitātis aliquod officium expectābat; at līctor dēcēdere eum prōvinciā jussit, nisi in sē animadvertī vellet; torvēque intuentem et vōcem nūllam ēmittentem Marium rogāvit tandem, ecquid renūntiārī praetōrī vellet? Marius "nūntiā," inquit, "tē vīdisse Gaium Marium in Carthāginis ruīnīs sedentem."

---

44. nātiōne: ablative of respect.

46. tūne: *-ne* is the enclitic particle employed as sign of a question.

54. quem . . . laesisset, *since he had never injured him;* a relative clause may express a reason or cause and take a subjunctive, the relative pronoun being equivalent to *cum* causal and a demonstrative pronoun, here *cum eum.*

56. nisi in sē animadvertī vellet, *unless he wanted himself punished; animadvertō* is a compound of *animum* and *advertō, turn attention to,* which easily comes to mean *punish;* here the passive infinitive is used impersonally. Even when active, *animadvertō* in the sense of *punish* takes *in* with the accusative.

57. ecquid, *whether anything,* introducing an indirect question.

---

44. nātiō, -ōnis, *f.* **[nāscor]**, race, nation, people.

45. dē-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, frighten away, deter.

51. nāvicula, -ae, *f.* [*dim. of* **nāvis**], boat, skiff.

52. sōlitārius, -a, -um, *adj.* **[sōlus]**, lonely, solitary.

53. praetor, -ōris, *m.* [*for* **praeitor,** *from* **praeeō,** go before], (a leader); praetor, *title of a Roman magistrate charged with judicial duties.*

54. laedō, laedere, laesī, laesum, *tr.*, injure, offend.

hūmānitās, -ātis, *f.* **[hūmānus]**, culture; kindness.

56. torvē, *adv.* **[torvus, stern]**, sternly, fiercely.

57. ecquis, ecquid, *pron., interrog.*, anyone? anything? whether anyone, whether anything.

Cum Sulla ad bellum Mithridāticum profectus esset, Marius revocātus ā Cinnā in Italiam rediit, calamitāte incēnsus magis quam frāctus. Cum exercitū Rōmam ingressus eam caedibus et rapīnīs vāstāvit; omnēs adversae factiōnis nōbilēs variīs suppliciōrum generibus affēcit. Quīnque diēs continuōs totidemque noctēs illa licentia scelerum omnium dūrāvit. Tandem Marius, senectūte et labōribus cōnfectus in morbum incidit et ingentī omnium laetitiā mortuus est. Cujus virī sī comparentur cum virtūtibus vitia, haud facile sit dictū utrum bellō melior an pāce perniciōsior fuerit.

Marius dūrior ad hūmānitātis studia erat et līberālium artium contemptor. Cum aedem Honōris dē manubiīs hostium vōvisset, sprētā peregrīnōrum marmorum nōbilitāte artificumque Graecōrum arte, eam vulgārī lapide per artificem Rōmānum aedificārī jussit. Graecās litterās contempsit quod doctōribus suīs parum ad virtūtem prōfuissent.

---

61. Cinnā: a leader of the anti-aristocratic faction.

67. sī . . . comparentur: a future less vivid condition, App. 113.

68. dictū: ablative of the supine.

utrum . . . an, *whether . . . or,* introducing a double indirect question; *utrum* is in origin the neuter of *uter, which of two things.*

74. litterās: the singular of this word means *a letter of the alphabet;* the plural, *a letter, i.e., an epistle,* or *literature;* here, the latter.

75. doctōribus . . . parum . . . prōfuisset, *had been of too little profit to its teachers.*

---

63. rapīna, -ae, *f.* **[rapiō],** robbery, plunder, rapine.

65. totidem, *indecl. adj.* **[tot],** just as many, the same number of.

66. morbus, -ī, *m.,* sickness, disease.

68. vitium, -ī, *n.,* fault, vice.

utrum, *adv.* [*neut. of* **uter**], whether, *used in double indirect questions.*

69. an, *conj.,* or, *used in double questions.*

perniciōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* **[perniciēs],** destructive, ruinous.

71. contemptor, -ōris, *m.* **[contemnō],** despiser, scorner.

manubiae, -ārum, *f. pl.,* booty, prize-money.

72. marmor, -oris, *n.,* marble.

nōbilitās, -ātis, *f.* **[nōbilis],** high birth; *collect.,* the nobility, the nobles.

73. artifex, -icis, *m.,* artificer, artisan.

vulgāris, -e, *adj.* **[vulgus],** ordinary, common.

75. doctor, -ōris, *m.* **[doceō],** teacher.

24. Lucius Cornelius Sulla

L. Cornēlius Sulla, quī bellō Jugurthīnō quaestor Mariī cōnsulis fuit, usque ad quaestūram vītam lūxuriōsam ēgerat. Marius molestē tulisse trāditur, quod sibi gravissimum bellum gerentī quaestor voluptātī dēditus sorte obvēnisset. Ejusdem virtūs tamen, postquam in Āfricam vēnit, ēnituit. Bellō Cimbricō lēgātus cōnsulis fuit et bonam operam ēdidit. Cōnsul ipse deinde factus, pulsō in exilium Mariō, adversus Mithridātem profectus est. Mithridātēs enim, Ponticus rēx, vir bellō ācerrimus, virtūte ēgregiā, odiō in Rōmānōs nōn īnferior Hannibale fuit. Effēcerat igitur ut omnēs in Asiā cīvēs Rōmānī eādem diē atque hōrā interficerentur. Ac prīmō Sulla illīus praefectōs duōbus proeliīs in Graeciā superāvit; deinde in Asiā Mithridātem ipsum fūdit; oppressisset quoque nisi in Italiam ad bellum cīvīle adversus factiōnem populārem

---

3. **molestē tulisse:** *molestē ferō* has nearly the same meaning as *aegrē ferō, be vexed, annoyed, grieved,* etc.

sibi: dative with *obvēnisset.*

4. **sorte:** the quaestors cast lots to determine the posts to which they should be assigned in the city or provinces.

6. **bonam operam ēdidit,** *did good service.*

Cōnsul ipse factus, etc.: as told in the story of Marius, l. 34 ff.

9. **odiō:** ablative of respect.

10. **Hannibale:** ablative of comparison.

ut omnēs . . . interficerentur: a noun clause of fact, object of *effēcerat, had caused all Roman citizens to be put to death.*

13. **oppressisset, . . . nisi . . . māluisset:** conclusion and condition contrary to fact, App. 114.

---

2. **quaestūra, -ae,** *f.* [quaestor], the office of quaestor, quaestorship.

lūxuriōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [lūxuria, luxury], luxurious, voluptuous.

3. **molestē,** *adv.* [molestus], with difficulty, with vexation; **molestē ferre,** to be annoyed.

4. **ob-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum,** *intr.*, come to, befall; fall to the lot of.

5. **ē-niteō, -nitēre, -nituī, —,** *intr.*, shine forth, gleam; be displayed.

9. **odium, -ī,** *n.* [ōdī], hatred.

īnferior, -ius, *compar. adj.*, lower; inferior.

10. **efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,** *tr.* [ex + faciō], accomplish, bring about, cause.

13. **fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum,** *tr.*, pour, pour out; rout, defeat.

redīre properāns quālemcumque pācem facere māluisset. Mithridātem tamen pecūniā multāvit; Asiā aliīsque prōvinciīs quās occupāverat dēcēdere paternīsque fīnibus contentum esse coēgit.

Sulla propter mōtūs urbānōs cum victōre exercitū Rōmam properāvit; eōs quī Mariō favēbant omnēs superāvit. Nihil autem eā victōriā fuit crūdēlius. Sulla, urbem ingressus et dictātor creātus, vel in eōs quī sē sponte dēdiderant jussit animadvertī. Quattuor mīlia dēditōrum inermium cīvium in circō interficī jussit. Quis autem illōs potest ēnumerāre quōs in urbe passim quisquis voluit occīdit? Dēnique admonuit eum Fūfidius quīdam vīvere aliquōs dēbēre, ut essent quibus imperāret. Novō et inaudītō exemplō tabulam prōscrīptiōnis prōposuit, quā nōmina eōrum quī occīdendī essent continēbantur; cumque omnium orta esset indignātiō, postrīdiē plūra etiam nōmina adjēcit. Ingēns caesōrum fuit multitū-

---

16. pecūniā multāvit, *exacted an indemnity from.*

22. vel: this word alone means *even,* while *vel . . . vel* mean *either . . . or.*
in eōs animadvertī: for the translation consult the note on 23, 56.

25. quisquis voluit occīdit, *any one killed who wanted to.*

26. ut essent quibus imperāret, *in order that there might be people to rule;* an idea of possibility is involved in the subjunctive *imperāret, whom he could rule.*

27. tabulam prōscrīptiōnis, *a proscription list.*

28. quī occīdendī essent: subjunctive in implied indirect discourse; with *eōrum, such as were to be killed,* App. 99.

---

15. quāliscumque, quālecumque, *indef. pron.*, of any kind whatever.

16. multō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [multa, a fine], punish, fine.

17. paternus, -a, -um, *adj.* [pater], of a father, paternal.

19. mōtus, -ūs, *m.* [moveō], movement; disturbance, tumult.

23. inermis, -e, *adj.* [in-+arma], unarmed, defenseless.

24. ē-numerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, reckon up, recount.

25. passim, *adv.* [pandō], scattered, here and there, in every direction.

quisquis, quicquid, *indef. pron.*, whoever, whatever, everyone who, everything that.

ad-moneō, -monēre, -monuī, -monitum, *tr.*, remind, admonish.

27. in-audītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unheard of, unusual.

tabula, -ae, *f.*, board, plank; tablet, list, record.

prōscrīptiō, -ōnis, *f.* [prōscrībō], proscription, outlawry.

dō. Nec sōlum in eōs saevīvit quī armīs contrā sē dīmicāverant, sed etiam quiētōs cīvēs propter pecūniae māgnitūdinem prōscrīptōrum numerō adjēcit. Cīvis quīdam innoxius, cui fundus in agrō Albānō erat, legēns prōscrīptōrum nōmina sē quoque vīdit adscrīptum. "Vae," inquit, "miserō mihi! mē fundus Albānus persequitur." Neque longē prōgressus ā quōdam quī eum āgnōverat interfectus est.

Sulla, oppressīs inimīcōrum partibus, Fēlīcem sē ēdictō appellāvit; cumque ejus uxor geminōs eōdem partū ēdidisset, puerum Faustum puellamque Faustam nōminārī voluit. Sed paucīs post annīs repente contrā omnium expectātiōnem dictātūram dēposuit. Dīmissīs līctōribus, diū in forō cum amīcīs deambulāvit. Stupēbat populus eum prīvātum vidēns, cujus potestās modo tam metuenda fuerat. Quamquam jam prīvātus erat, nōn sōlum salūs, sed etiam dignitās manēbat, quī tot cīvēs occīderat. Ūnus adulēscēns fuit quī audēret querī et Sullam redeuntem usque ad forēs domūs execrārī. Atque ille, cujus īram potentissimī virī maximaeque cīvitātēs nec effugere nec plācāre potuerant, ūnīus adulēscentulī con-

---

35. Vae miserō mihi, *woe to me, unhappy man!* Compare *vae victīs,* 17, 47.

46. quī audēret: a relative clause of description.

---

31. saeviō, -īre, -iī, -ītum, *intr.* [**saevus,** savage], be furious, rage.

33. prō-scrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *tr.*, publish; outlaw, proscribe.

in-noxius, -a, -um, *adj.*, harmless, innocent.

34. fundus, -ī, *m.*, farm, estate.

35. ad-scrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *tr.*, write in addition, add.

36. per-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr.*, follow after, pursue.

38. ēdictum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* **ēdīcō**], edict.

39. partus, -ūs, *m.* [**pariō**], a bearing, birth.

41. expectātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**expectō**], awaiting, expectation.

43. de-ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, walk, stroll.

45. dignitās, -ātis, *f.* [**dignus**], worth; authority, prestige.

47. foris, -is, *f.*, door; *frequently pl.* (*with reference to the two leaves of a double door*).

49. plācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, soothe, appease, placate.

adulēscentulus, -ī, *m.* [*dim. of* **adulēscēns**], a very young man.

contumēlia, -ae, *f.*, insult, abuse.

tumēliās aequō animō tulit, id tantum in līmine jam dīcēns: "Hic adulēscēns efficiet nē quis posthāc tāle imperium dēpōnat."

Sulla in vīllā voluptātibus dēditus reliquam vītam ēgit. Ibi morbō correptus mortuus est, vir ingentis animī, cupidus voluptātum, sed glōriae cupidior; litterīs Graecīs atque Latīnīs ērudītus fuit et virōrum litterātōrum adeō amāns ut dīligentiam etiam malī cujusdam poētae aliquō praemiō dignam exīstimāret; nam cum ille epigramma in Sullam fēcisset eīque mīsisset, Sulla statim praemium eī darī jussit, sed eā lēge, nē quid posteā scrīberet. Ante victōriam laudandus erat, sed in iīs quae secūta sunt numquam satis reprehēnsus; urbem enim et Italiam cīvīlis sanguinis flūminibus inundāvit. Nōn sōlum in vīvōs saeviit, sed nē mortuīs quidem pepercit. Nam Gaiī Mariī, cujus aliquandō quaestor fuerat, ērutōs cinerēs in flūmen prōjēcit. Quā crūdēlitāte factōrum ēgregiōrum glōriam corrūpit.

---

50. aequō animō, *with composure.*

tantum, *only;* literally, *so much (and no more).*

51. efficiet nē quis . . . dēpōnat: literally, *will cause that no one,* etc.; better, *will prevent anyone from laying down,* etc.

56. adeō, *to such a degree;* a synonym for *ita.*

57. praemiō: the ablative with *dignam,* as in 23, 6.

58. in Sullam, *in Sulla's honor.*

60. eā lēge, *on this condition;* explained by the appositive noun clause, *nē quid . . . scrīberet.*

laudandus, *deserving of praise.*

63. mortuīs: account for the dative.

64. cujus: with *quaestor.*

65. ērutōs: past passive participle to be translated by a coördinate verb, *unearthed and threw into the river.*

---

50. līmen, -inis, *n.*, threshold, door.

51. post-hāc, *adv.*, hereafter, in the future.

56. litterātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**littera**], of letters, learned, educated.

58. ex-īstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**ex+aestimō,** estimate], estimate; judge, think.

epigramma, -atis, *n.*, epigram.

63. in-undō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, overflow, inundate.

65. ē-ruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, *tr.*, dig out, cast forth.

cinis, cineris, *m.*, ashes.

25. Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus

Gnaeus Pompeius bellō cīvīlī annōs vīgintī trēs nātus partēs Sullae secūtus est brevīque tempore sē ducem perītum praebuit. Imprīmīs mīlitibus cārus erat, quod nūllum labōrem vītābat atque cum omnibus saltū, cursū, lūctandō certābat. Coāctīs reliquiīs ejus exercitūs cui pater praefuerat ad Sullam ex Asiā advenientem contendit, et in itinere trēs hostium exercitūs aut superāvit aut sibi adjūnxit. Sulla imperātōrem eum salūtāvit semperque maximō honōre habuit.

Posteā Pompeius Siciliam reciperāvit atque Carbōnem, Sullae inimīcum, quī eam īnsulam occupāverat, ad supplicium dūcī jussit. Multō clēmentior fuit in Sthenium, prīncipem cīvitātis cujusdam quae sibi adversāta erat. Cum enim dē omnibus cīvibus supplicium sūmere cōnstituisset, Sthenius clāmāvit inīquum esse ob ūnīus culpam in omnēs animadvertere. Interrogantī Pompeiō quis ille ūnus esset, Sthenius respondit: "Ego, quī cīvibus ut resisterent persūasī." Hāc audācī vōce mōtus Pompeius omnibus et Stheniō ipsī pepercit.

Paulō post cum Numidiam intrā diēs quadrāgintā dēvīcisset, ā Sullā jussus est exercitum dīmittere atque cum ūnā legiōne successōrem expectāre. Quamquam aegrē id ferēbat,

---

2. partēs, *party, faction.*

8. habuit, *held, treated.*

9. Carbōnem: like Cinna, 23, 61, a political leader prominent in the troubled period of Marius and Sulla.

12. sibi: as to the case of *sibi*, observe that *adversor* is a verb of resisting.

13. dē . . . sūmere: as if punishment were something "taken from" the victim; the English idiom is *inflict upon.*

15. ille ūnus, *that one person of whom he spoke.*

---

4. saltus, -ūs, *m.* [saliō, leap], leaping, a leap.

lūctor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.*, wrestle, contend, struggle.

5. reliquiae, -ārum, *f. pl.* [*compare* relinquō], remains, remnants.

11. clēmēns, -entis, *adj.*, merciful.

12. adversor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.* [adversus] (*takes dative*), resist, oppose.

pāruit tamen et Rōmam rediit. Eī advenientī incrēdibilis hominum multitūdō obviam iit; Sulla quoque laetus eum excēpit et Magnī cognōmine salūtāvit. Nihilō minus Pompeiō triumphum petentī restitit; neque vērō Pompeius eā rē ā prōpositō dēterritus est aususque dīcere plūrēs adōrāre sōlem orientem quam occidentem; quae vōx significābat Sullae potentiam minuī, Pompeiī crēscere. Eā vōce audītā Sulla audāciā adulēscentis percussus "Triumphet! Triumphet! Triumphet!" clāmāvit.

Dum in Hispāniā mīlitat adversus Sertōrium, quī Sullae adversābātur, in proeliō quōdam maximum perīculum subiit; cum enim mīles ingentī corporis magnitūdine impetum in eum fēcisset, Pompeius ejus manum abscīdit; sed multīs in eum concurrentibus vulnus in femore accēpit et ā suīs fugientibus dēsertus in hostium potestāte erat. At praeter spem ēvāsit; barbarī enim equum ejus aurō phalerīsque

22. Eī: *obviam īre, go to meet,* takes a dative somewhat in the manner of verbs compounded with *ob*.

24. Magnī: an explanatory genitive instead of an appositive, as in 11, 76.

26. prōpositō, *purpose;* a past participle as a noun; how is the meaning "purpose" developed from the literal meaning of the verb *prōpōnō?*

28. Pompeiī: *potentiam* is understood; we may say *that of Pompeius.* Latin, however, does not use a demonstrative pronoun with a genitive in dependence upon it.

29. Triumphet: a volitive subjunctive, App. 89.

31. Sertōrium: a follower of Marius. Afterwards as governor of Spain he set up a government of his own and for a number of years maintained his independence of Rome.

23. ob-viam, *adv.*, in the way, to meet.

26. prōpositum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* prōpōnō], plan, intention, purpose.

ad-ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, worship.

27. orior, orīrī, ortus sum, *intr.*, rise, arise; break out; **oriēns, -entis,** *pres. part. as adj.*, rising.

occidō, -cidere, -cidī, *intr.* [ob+cadō], fall, set (*referring to the sun*); **occidēns, -entis,** *pres. part. as adj.*, setting.

significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [signum+faciō], point out; signify.

31. mīlitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [mīles], serve as a soldier, wage war.

35. femur, femoris, *n.*, thigh.

37. phalerae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, decorations of metal (*for the breast*).

eximiīs īnstrūctum cēperant. Dum dē praedā inter sē certant, Pompeius effūgit.

Paucīs post annīs imperium extraōrdinārium Pompeiō dēlātum est, ut opprimeret praedōnēs, quī omnia maria īnfesta reddēbant et quāsdam etiam Italiae urbēs dīripuerant. Hoc bellum tantā celeritāte cōnfēcit ut intrā quadrāgintā diēs omnēs praedōnēs aut interficerentur aut sē dēderent.

Statim in Asiam magnō exercitū missus est contrā Mithridātem, Ponticum rēgem, quōcum Rōmānī aliquot annōs contendēbant. Rēx diū castrīs sē continuit neque pugnandī facultātem dedit.. Cum autem frūmentum dēficere coepisset, fugere cōnātus est. At Pompeius secūtus hostem tertiā nocte in saltū quōdam intercēpit lūnāque adjuvante fūdit. Nam cum Rōmānī lūnam ā tergō habērent, hostēs longīs umbrīs corporum Rōmānōrum dēceptī in umbrās tēla conjēcērunt. Victus Mithridātēs in Pontum profūgit. Posteā dēspērātīs fortūnīs venēnō vītam fīnīre frūstrā cōnātus est; adversus enim venēna multīs anteā medicāmentīs corpus firmāverat. Impetrāvit inde ā mīlite Gallō ut sē gladiō interficeret.

Cum Tigrānēs, rēx Armeniae, celeriter sē dēdidisset atque ad genua victōris prōcubuisset, Pompeius eum benignīs

---

46. **aliquot annōs:** this phrase, like *jam diū* and *jam dūdum*, is used with an imperfect where we employ a past perfect; with *contendēbant*, *had been contending for some years*. See note on Per. 24.

47. **castrīs,** *in camp;* with *contineō*, a camp is regarded merely as the means of confinement; hence no preposition is used.

50. **lūnā adjuvante,** *by the favoring light of the moon.*

51. **ā tergō,** *at their back.*

56. **Impetrāvit . . . ā,** *prevailed upon;* the verb has for object the noun clause *ut . . . interficeret*.

---

38. **eximius, -a, -um,** *adj.*, unusual, distinguished.

40. **extra-ōrdinārius, -a, -um,** *adj.*, extraordinary, uncommon.

41. **praedō, -ōnis,** *m.* [praeda], pirate.

50. **saltus, -ūs,** *m.*, ravine, mountain pass, mountain valley.

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [inter+capiō], intercept.

55. **medicāmentum, -ī,** *n.* [medeor, heal], drug, antidote.

58. **genū, -ūs,** *n.*, knee.

prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitum, *intr.* [prō-+cumbō, recline], fall forwards, fall prostrate.

verbīs allocūtus est et diadēma, quod abjēcerat, capitī repōnere jussit. Inde Rōmānōrum prīmus Jūdaeōs vīcit Hierosolymaque, caput gentis, cēpit sānctissimamque partem templī jūre victōris ingressus est.

Regressus in Italiam triumphum ex Asiā ēgit, cum anteā ex Āfricā et ex Hispāniā triumphāvisset. Triumphus illūstrior fuit grātiorque populō, quod Pompeius nōn armātus, sīcut Sulla, ad Rōmam subigendam, sed dīmissō exercitū redīsset.

Posteā, ortā inter Pompeium et Caesarem gravī dissēnsiōne, quod hic superiōrem, ille parem ferre nōn poterat, bellum cīvīle exārsit. Caesar īnfestō exercitū in Italiam vēnit. Pompeius, relictā urbe ac deinde Italiā ipsā, Thessaliam petīvit et cum eō cōnsulēs senātūsque magna pars; quem īnsecūtus Caesar apud Pharsālum aciē fūdit. Victus Pompeius ad Ptolemaeum, Aegyptī rēgem, cui tūtor ā senātū datus erat, profūgit; ille Pompeium interficī jussit. Ita Pompeius sub oculīs uxōris et līberōrum interfectus est,

---

63. triumphum ēgit = *triumphāvit*. **ex**, *over;* literally, *from*. The country over which the victory is won is thought of as the source from which the triumph is derived.

cum . . . triumphāvisset: a descriptive *cum* clause where English would employ a participle, *having already celebrated a triumph*.

68. dissēnsiōne: Pompeius, Caesar, and Marcus Crassus had in the year 60 B.C. formed a political combination known as The First Triumvirate. Caesar spent the years 58-50 B.C. in the subjugation of Gaul. The great military reputation won thereby, coupled with the widespread belief that he was planning the overthrow of the home government, aroused Pompeius's jealousy and distrust. The break in friendship between the two men was rendered easier through the death of Crassus and of Julia, Caesar's daughter and the wife of Pompeius.

---

59. diadēma, -atis, *n.*, diadem.

63. regredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *intr.* [**re-+gradior,** step], go back, return.

64. illūstris, -e, *adj.*, bright; distinguished, illustrious.

66. sīc-ut, *adv.*, just as, as.

subigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [**sub +agō**], drive under, reduce, subdue.

76. oculus, -ī, *m.*, eye.

caput praecīsum, truncus in Nīlum conjectus. Deinde caput ad Caesarem dēlātum est, quī eō vīsō lacrimās nōn continuit.

Is fuit Pompeiī vītae exitus post trēs cōnsulātūs et totidem triumphōs.

---

77. **praecīsum, conjectus:** *est* is to be supplied.

---

77. **praecīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum,** *tr.* [**prae,** in front, +**caedō**], cut off.

truncus, -ī, *m.*, trunk (*of a tree*); trunk, body.

79. **exitus, -ūs,** *m.* [**exeō**], outcome, end, close.

---

26. Gaius Julius Caesar

C. Jūlius Caesar, nōbilissimā Jūliōrum familiā nātus, agēns annum sextum et decimum patrem āmīsit. Ā puerō vidētur populārem factiōnem in rē pūblicā secūtus esse, eō magis quod Marius Jūliam, Caesaris amitam, in mātrimōnium dūxisset. Ipse Cornēliam dūxit uxōrem, fīliam Cinnae, quī Sullae inimīcissimus erat. Cum Sulla victor Caesarem, sīcut multōs aliōs, jussisset uxōrem repudiāre, ille recūsāvit. Bonīs deinde spoliātus cum etiam ad necem quaererētur, mūtātā veste nocte urbe ēlāpsus est. Quamquam tum quārtānae morbō labōrābat, prope per singulās noctēs latebrās commūtāre cōgēbātur et dēnique ā Sullae lībertō comprehēnsus est. Eī vix, datā pecūniā, persuāsit ut sē dīmitteret. Postrēmō

---

1. **agēns annum,** etc., *in his sixteenth year.* Caesar was born 100 B.C.
3. **in rē pūblicā:** with the same meaning as in 23, 34.
4. **dūxisset:** the subjunctive is due to the indirect discourse implied in *vidētur.*
7. **aliōs:** *i.e.*, men of the "popular" or "radical" faction.
9. **morbō:** ablative of cause; *morbō* is explained by the genitive *quārtānae.*
12. **datā pecūniā,** *by a bribe.*

---

1. **familia, -ae,** *f.* [**famulus,** servant], household, establishment, slaves in a household; family.
4. **amita, -ae,** *f.*, a (paternal) aunt.
9. **quārtānus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [**quārtus**], occurring every fourth day, quartan; *subst.*, **quārtāna, -ae,** *f.* (*supply* **febris,** fever), quartan ague.
10. **latebrae, -ārum,** *f. pl.* [**lateō**], hiding-place.

per propinquōs et affīnēs suōs veniam impetrāvit. Satis tamen cōnstat Sullam monuisse eōs quī adulēscentī veniam petēbant eum aliquandō nōbilium partibus exitiō futūrum esse; nam Caesarī multōs Mariōs inesse.

Stīpendia prīma in Asiā fēcit, ubi in expugnātiōne Mytilēnārum corōnā cīvicā dōnātus est. Mortuō Sullā, Rhodum sēcēdere statuit, ut per ōtium Apollōniō Molōnī, tum clārissimō dīcendī magistrō, operam daret. Hūc dum trānsit, ā praedōnibus captus est mānsitque apud eōs prope quadrāgintā diēs. Per omne autem illud spatium ita sē gessit ut praedōnibus pariter terrōrī venerātiōnīque esset. Redēmptus inde ab amīcīs classem contrāxit captōsque praedōnēs cruce affēcit, quod supplicium saepe inter jocum minātus erat.

Quaestōrī ulterior Hispānia obvēnit. Dum pauperem vīcum Alpīnum trānsit, comitēs per jocum inter sē dis-

---

13. Satis cōnstat, *it is well known.*

15. exitiō: a dative of purpose, to be translated as if a predicate nominative.

16. Caesarī . . . inesse, *in Caesar there was many a Marius; Caesarī* is a dative with the compound *inesse.*

18. corōnā cīvicā: the civic wreath was bestowed upon one who had saved the life of a fellow-countryman in battle.

20. dīcendī, *of oratory.*

23. terrōrī: the same dative as *exitiō,* l. 15.

26. Quaestōrī . . . obvēnit, *fell to his lot as quaestor.* A quaestor, whose duties were connected with state finances, was assigned to the staff of each provincial governor. Spain was divided into two provinces, Hispania citerior and Hispania ulterior.

---

13. propinquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [prope], near; *subst.*, **propinquī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, relatives, kinsmen.

affīnis, -e, *adj.* [ad+fīnis], related by marriage; *subst.*, **affīnis, affīnis, -ium,** *m. and f.*, a relative by marriage.

15. exitium, -ī, *n.*, destruction, ruin.

17. expugnātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [expugnō], a taking by storm, capture.

18. corōna, -ae, *f.*, garland, wreath, crown.

cīvicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cīvis], of citizens; civic.

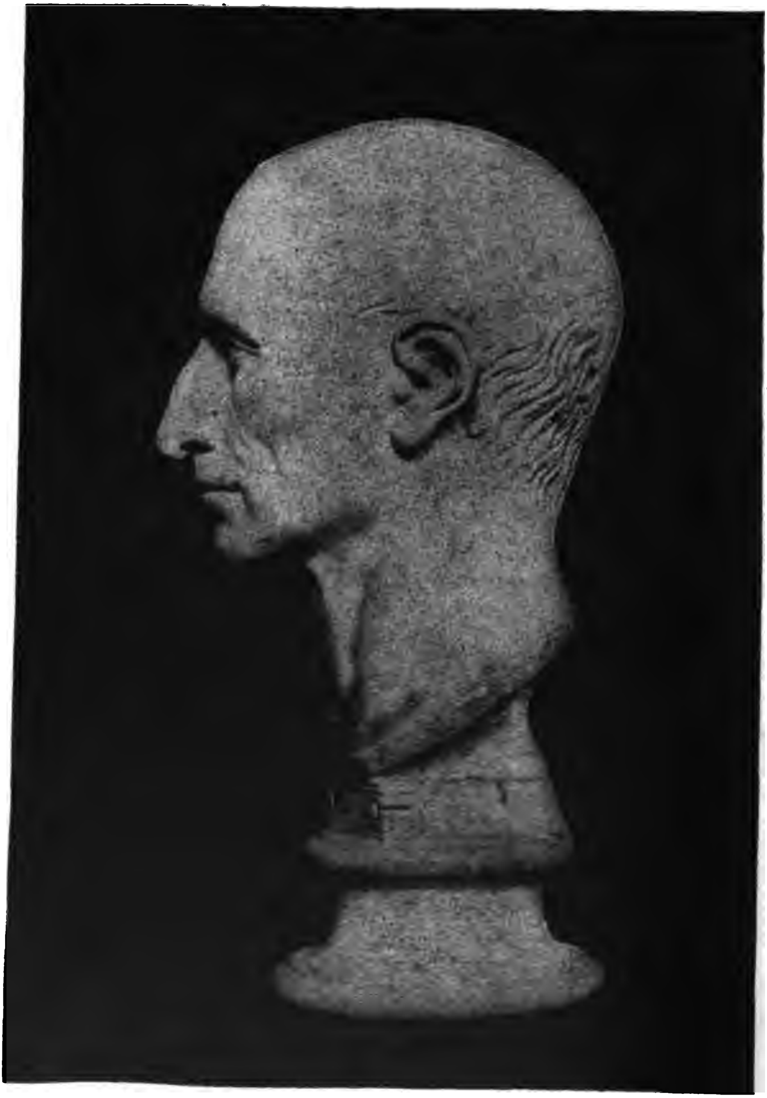
19. sē-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.*, go apart, retire, withdraw.

23. pariter, *adv.* [pār], equally, in like manner, as much.

venerātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [veneror, reverence], deep respect, reverence, veneration.

24. crux, crucis, *f.*, gallows, cross.

25. jocus, -ī, *m.*, jest, joke.



CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

putābant, num illīc etiam esset ambitiōnī locus; tum Caesar sēriō dīxit sē mālle ibi prīmum esse quam Rōmae secundum. Dominātiōnis cupidus ā prīmā aetāte fuisse exīstimātur; dictus autem est semper hōs versūs Eurīpidis, Graecī poētae, in ōre habuisse:

"Nam sī violandum est jūs, rēgnandī grātiā
Violandum est, aliīs rēbus pietātem colās."

Aedīlis praeter comitium ac forum etiam Capitōlium ōrnāvit porticibus. Vēnātiōnēs autem lūdōsque apparātissimōs et cum collēgā M. Bibulō et sēparātim ēdidit. Hīs rēbus patrimōnium effūdit tantumque aes aliēnum cōnflāvit ut ipse dīceret sibi opus esse mīlliēs sēstertium, ut habēret nihil.

---

30. **ā prīmā aetāte**: compare *ā puerō*, l. 2.

33. **grātiā**: has the same meaning as *causā*, *for the sake of*, and is accompanied by a genitive, which always precedes.

34. **aliīs rēbus**, *in other circumstances.*

colās: a volitive subjunctive in a direct command.

35. **Aedīlis**, *as aedile.* The Roman aediles had supervision of police regulations, of certain public games, of markets, and of the maintenance of streets and public buildings.

39. **sibi opus esse mīlliēs sēstertium**, *that he needed a hundred million sesterces;* with *opus* the thing needed may be expressed by an ablative, or, as here, it may be the subject of *est*, *opus* then being used in the predicate; in either case the dative is used of the person who needs the thing named.

sēstertium: a genitive plural; *centēna mīlia* is to be understood; with *mīliēs* the full phrase means literally, *a thousand times a hundred thousand sesterces.*

---

28. **ambitiō, -ōnis,** *f.* **[ambiō,** go around], ambition.

29. **sēriō,** *adv.* **[sērius,** serious], seriously, in earnest.

30. **dominātiō, -ōnis,** *f.* **[dominor]**, rule, supremacy.

31. **versus, -ūs,** *m.* **[vertō]**, line; verse.

34. **pietās, -ātis,** *f.* **[pius,** pious], devotion, piety.

36. **porticus, -ūs,** *f.* **[porta]**, colonnade, portico.

apparātus, -a, -um; *adj.* **[apparō,** prepare], prepared, splendid.

37. **sēparātim,** *adv.* **[sēparātus,** separate], separately, severally.

patrimōnium, -ī, *n.* **[pater]**, paternal estate, patrimony.

38. **cōn-flō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** *tr.*, blow together, kindle; **aes aliēnum cōnflāre,** to contract a debt.

39. **mīlliēs,** *adv.* **[mīlle]**, a thousand times.

sēstertius, -ī, *gen. pl.*, **sēstertium,** sesterce, *a small silver coin worth four and one-tenth cents.*

Posteā societātem cum Gnaeō Pompeiō et Mārcō Crassō jūnxit, nē quid agerētur in rē pūblicā, quod displicēret ūllī ex tribus. Cōnsul deinde creātus cum M. Bibulō prīmus omnium cōnsulum īnstituit ut diurna ācta et senātūs et populī perscrīberentur atque ēderentur. Aliquot lēgēs prō Pompeiō et Crassō sociīs pertulit, praecipuēque effēcit ut ipse prōvinciam Galliam obtinēret. Bibulus, cum frūstrā lēgibus obstitisset, per reliquum annī tempus domō abditus cūriā abstinuit. Nōnnūllī igitur, cum tabulās signārent, per jocum addidērunt nōn Caesare et Bibulō, sed Jūliō et Caesare cōnsulibus.

Caesar, cōnsulātū perāctō, novem annīs Galliam in potestātem populī Rōmānī redēgit. Germānōs quoque aggressus est atque prīmus imperātōrum Rōmānōrum in Britanniam

---

40. societātem: the triumvirate, described in the note on 25, 68.

41. ūllī: adjective used as pronoun, with *ex tribus* dependent, *any of the three.*

43. diurna: from this word the English word "journal" is indirectly derived.

44. ēderentur, *be published.* Despite the lack of printing, copies of a document were multiplied at a comparatively small cost, owing to the use of slaves as copyists. The reference here, however, is merely to the act of posting as a bulletin, from which anyone might have copies made.

47. domō: with *abdō* the ablative with or without *in* may be used of the place where.

49. Caesare et Bibulō cōnsulibus, *in the consulship of Caesar and Bibulus;* an ablative absolute, the form of expression regularly employed in designating the Roman year. Caesar and Bibulus were consuls in the year 59 B.C.

---

41. displiceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *intr.* [dis-+placeō], displease.

43. diurnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*compare* diēs], of the day, daily.

āctum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* agō], deed, transaction.

47. ob-sistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, *intr.*, resist, oppose.

ab-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, put away, hide, conceal.

48. abstineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, —, *intr.* [abs+teneō], keep *or* remain away.

nōn-nūllus, -a, -um, *adj.*, some, several.

signō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [signum], affix a seal to, seal.

51. per-agō, -agere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* (drive through); finish, complete.

trānsiit. Ipse commentāriōs rērum gestārum cōnfēcit, quibus aliōs ūtī in scrībendā historiā voluit. Sed, ut ait Cicerō, "sānōs quidem hominēs ā scrībendō dēterruit; nihil est enim in historiā pūrā et illūstrī brevitāte dulcius."

Cum intereā Crassus apud Parthōs interfectus esset, et mortua Jūlia, Caesaris fīlia, quae nūpta Pompeiō generī socerīque concordiam tenēbat, statim aemulātiō ērūpit. Jam prīdem Pompeiō suspectae Caesaris opēs erant, et Caesarī Pompeiāna dignitās gravis. Dēnique Caesar, ut sē tuerētur,

---

54. quibus aliōs ūtī . . . voluit: *i.e.*, Caesar did not regard his commentaries as finished history, but merely as material from which historians might draw.

55. ait: for the forms of the defective verb *aiō*, see App. 37 (1).

57. pūrā et illūstrī brevitāte, *an unembellished and luminous brevity;* ablative of comparison.

58. apud Parthōs: Crassus, who was envious of the military reputation of Caesar and Pompeius, conducted an expedition against the Parthians, but was defeated and killed by them in 53 B.C.

59. generī socerīque, *between the father-in-law and the son-in-law.* What is it literally?

60. Jam prīdem . . . erant: the use of tenses with *jam prīdem* is the same as with *jam dūdum,* explained in the note on Per. 24.

61. Pompeiō, Caesarī: these words are datives of reference after *suspectae* and *gravis.*

---

54. commentārius, -ī, *m.*, notebook, memorandum; *pl.*, memoirs, records.

55. historia, -ae, *f.*, narrative, history.

aiō, *defective verb*, say, affirm.

56. sānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sound, healthy; sane, sensible.

57. pūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, clean, pure; unadorned.

brevitās, -ātis, *f.* **[brevis]**, shortness, brevity.

dulcis, -e, *adj.*, sweet, agreeable.

59. nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptum, *intr.*, cover, veil; *of a bride*, veil oneself, marry, be married.

gener, -erī, *m.*, son-in-law.

60. socer, -erī, *m.*, father-in-law.

aemulātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, **[aemulor,** to rival], rivalry.

ē-rumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *intr.*, break out, burst forth.

61. prīdem, *adv.*, long ago.

suspectus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **suspiciō,** suspect], mistrusted, suspected.

62. tueor, -ērī, tūtus sum, *tr.*, gaze upon; watch over, protect.

postulāvit ut ex lēge ante lātā sibi absentī alterum cōnsulātum petere licēret. Hoc inimīcī, Pompeiō probante, negāvērunt atque jussērunt Caesarem ante certam diem exercitum prōvinciamque trādere.

Injūriā incēnsus ad Rubicōnem flūmen, quī prōvinciae fīnis erat, cum exercitū prōcessit. Ibi paulum morātus, ut fāma fert, "etiam nunc," inquit, "regredī possumus; quod sī hoc flūmen trānsierimus, omnia armīs agenda erunt." Postrēmō exclāmāvit: "Jacta est ālea." Tum, exercitū flūmen trāductō bellōque cīvīlī inceptō, Brundisium profectus est, quō Pompeius cum magnā parte senātūs profūgerat. Pompeium trānsīre in Ēpīrum prohibēre frūstrā cōnātus iter in Hispāniam fēcit, ubi validissimās Pompeiī cōpiās vīcit.

Deinde in Ēpīrum profectus Pompeium Pharsālicō proeliō superāvit et fugientem ad Aegyptum persecūtus est. Ptolemaeum rēgem, quī Pompeium interficī jusserat īnsidiāsque Caesarī tendēbat, vīcit atque rēgnum Cleopātrae frātrīque minōrī permīsit. Pharnacem, Mithridātis fīlium, quī occāsi-

---

63. ex lēge ante lātā, *in accordance with a law previously enacted.* This was a law of the year 52 B.C., by which Caesar was to be allowed to be a candidate for a second consulship without coming to Rome or surrendering his provinces and army. These he hoped also to hold, in the event of his election, until the time to enter upon office. In this way he would step directly from a provincial office to office in Rome and so avoid a period of private life, in which his opponents might prosecute him on trumped-up charges and perhaps send him into exile. Their refusal to abide by this law resulted in civil war and the overthrow of the republic. The crossing of the Rubicon, l. 67 ff., occurred in January, 49 B.C.

70. agenda erunt, *will have to be decided.*

71. flūmen: a transitive verb compounded with *trāns* may take an accusative governed by the preposition in the compound; in the active, this passage would read, *exercitum flūmen trādūxit.*

73. quō: adverb.

Pompeium trānsīre: object of *prohibēre, to prevent Pompeius from crossing.*

80. occāsiōne temporum, *the favorable opportunity.*

---

71. ālea, -ae, *f.*, a game with dice; a die.

78. īnsidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, snare; ambuscade, ambush; plot.

79. tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentum, *tr.*, stretch, aim, direct.

ōne temporum ad rebellandum ūtēbātur, tam citō fūdit ut celeritātem victōriae posteā tribus verbīs significāret, "vēnī, vīdī, vīcī." Deinde Scīpiōnem et Jubam, Numidiae rēgem, quī reliquiās Pompeiānārum partium in Āfricā coēgerat, dēvīcit. Postrēmō Pompeiī fīliōs in Hispāniā superāvit; quod proelium tam ācre tamque dubium fuit ut Caesar equō dēscenderet cōnsistēnsque ante suōs cēdentēs fortūnam increpāret, quod sē in eum exitum servāsset, dēnūntiāretque mīlitibus vestīgiō sē nōn recessūrum. Verēcundiā magis quam virtūte aciēs restitūta est. Rōmam inde rediit, ubi quater triumphāvit.

Bellīs cīvīlibus cōnfectīs conversus jam ad administrandam rem pūblicam fāstōs corrēxit annumque ad cursum sōlis accommodāvit. Senātum supplēvit, comitiīsque cum populō dīvīsīs sibi sūmpsit jūs nōminandae dīmidiae partis candidātōrum. Eōs quī lēge Pompeiī dē ambitū damnātī erant

---

87. suōs cēdentēs, *his men who were giving way.*

93. fāstōs corrēxit, etc.: the Roman year prior to Caesar's reform of the calendar consisted of 355 days. The discrepancy between this number and the true solar year was made up by inserting extra days every other year. For a decade, however, this intercalation, as it was called, had been almost entirely neglected. Caesar corrected the calendar, *fāstōs*, by inserting three extra months in the year 46 B.C., and further decreed that the year henceforth should count 365 days, with one day added to February every fourth year.

96. ambitū: the word means literally *a going around* (to ask for votes); since money would often be used, the word came to mean *bribery*.

---

81. citō, *adv.* [**citus,** swift], quickly, speedily.

87. in-crepō, -crepāre, -crepuī, -crepitum, *tr.*, resound; upbraid.

89. re-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.*, retire, withdraw.

verēcundia, -ae, *f.* [*compare* **vereor**], shame, sense of shame.

91. quater, *adv.* [**quattuor**], four times.

93. fāstī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, calendar.

corrigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *tr.* [**com-+regō**], correct, reform.

94. accommodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**ad+commodō,** lend], fit to, adapt.

suppleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *tr.* [**sub+pleō,** fill], fill up, fill out; recruit.

95. dīmidius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**dis-+medius**], half.

candidātus, -ī, *m.* [**candidus,** white], candidate.

96. ambitus, -ūs, *m.* [**ambiō,** go around], canvassing for votes, bribery.

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**damnum,** loss], condemn, convict.

restituit atque admīsit ad honōrēs etiam prōscrīptōrum līberōs. Sānxit nē eī quī pecuāriam facerent minus tertiā parte pūberum ingenuōrum inter pāstōrēs habērent. Omnīs medicīnam Rōmae professōs et līberālium artium doctōrēs cīvitāte dōnāvit. Jūs labōriōsissimē ac sevērissimē dīxit. Dē repetundīs damnātōs etiam ē senātū mōvit. Peregrīnārum mercium portōria īnstituit. Lēgem praecipuē sūmptuāriam exercuit, dispositīs circā macellum custōdibus quī obsōnia vetita retinērent.

Dē ōrnandā īnstruendāque urbe multa cōgitābat, imprīmīs ingēns Mārtis templum extruere theātrumque summae magnitūdinis sub Tarpeiō monte. Habēbat in animō etiam haec: jūs cīvīle ad certum modum redigere atque ex ingentī cōpiā

---

97. honōrēs, *political offices.*

98. pecuāriam facerent, *engaged in stock raising.*

tertiā parte: ablative of comparison after *minus.* The conversion of farming land into ranches with slaves as cattle-herders had long been a serious evil, inasmuch as slaves displaced the free farmers of old.

102. Dē repetundīs, *for extortion;* with especial reference to provincial governors, who often oppressed their subjects; the full phrase is *dē pecūniīs repetundīs* and means literally *concerning the recovery of money.*

103. Lēgem sūmptuāriam: a law regulating the amount that might be spent upon the table.

---

97. ad-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.*, send to, let go; admit.

98. sanciō, -īre, sānxī, sānctum, *tr.*, make sacred; decree, enact.

pecuārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [pecū, cattle], of cattle; *subst.*, **pecuāria, -ae,** *f.* (**rēs,** understood), cattle-breeding.

99. pūbēs, *gen.* **-eris,** *adj.*, grown up, adult; *subst.*, **pūberēs, -um,** *m. pl.*, adults, men.

ingenuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, free-born.

101. labōriōsē, *adv.* [labōriōsus, toilsome], laboriously.

sevērē, *adv.* [sevērus, serious], seriously, severely, strictly.

102. re-petō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītum, *tr.*, demand back; **rēs repetere,** to demand reparation.

103. merx, mercis, *f.*, goods, merchandise.

portōrium, -ī, *n.* [**portus**], tax, duty, toll.

sūmptuārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [sūmptus], sumptuary.

104. dis-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, place here and there, distribute.

macellum, -ī, *n.*, a meat-market.

105. obsōnium, -ī, *n.*, victuals, viands.

106. cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+agitō], ponder; plan.

107. theātrum, -ī, *n.*, theater.

lēgum optima quaeque in paucissimōs librōs cōnferre; bibliothēcās Graecās Latīnāsque quās maximās posset īnstituere; siccāre Pomptīnās palūdēs; ēmittere Fūcinum lacum; viam mūnīre ā marī Superō per Appennīnī dorsum ad Tiberim; perfodere Isthmum Corinthium; Dācōs, quī sē in Pontum et Thrāciam effūderant, coërcēre; mox Parthīs īnferre bellum per Armeniam.

Eum talia agentem et meditantem mors praevēnit. Dictātor enim in perpetuum creātus agere īnsolentius coepit: senātum ad sē venientem sedēns excēpit et quendam ut assurgeret monentem īrātō vultū respexit. Cum Antōnius, comes Caesaris in omnibus bellīs et tum cōnsulātūs collēga, capitī ejus in sellā aureā sedentis prō rōstrīs diadēma, īnsigne rēgium, imposuisset, id ita ab eō est repulsum ut nōn offēnsus vidērētur. Quārē amplius sexāgintā virī, Cassiō et

---

110. optima quaeque, *all the best things;* when masculine or feminine, *quisque* with a superlative is usually singular; *e.g.*, *optimus quisque, all the best men.*

112. Pomptīnās palūdēs: a marshy region on the western coast of Italy, about forty miles south of Rome.

113. marī Superō: the *upper sea* was the Adriatic; *mare īnferum* was the Etruscan sea, that part of the Mediterranean to the west of Italy.

119. ut assurgeret: a noun clause, object of *monentem.*

124. amplius sexāgintā virī: *amplius, minus,* and *plūs* may either have an ablative of comparison, as *minus* in l, 98, or may be used as equivalent to *amplius quam, minus quam, plūs quam,* and so have no effect on the case, as here.

---

110. bibliothēca, -ae, *f.*, library.

113. dorsum, -ī, *n.*, back; ridge.

114. perfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, *tr.*, dig through; transfix.

isthmus, -ī, *m.*, an isthmus; the Isthmus of Corinth.

115. coërceō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitum, *tr.* [com-+arceō, enclose], restrain, curb.

117. meditor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr. and tr.*, reflect; meditate, plan.

prae-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr. and tr.*, come before, precede; anticipate.

118. īnsolenter, *adv.* [īnsolēns, insolent], haughtily, insolently.

120. assurgō, -surgere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum, *intr.* [ad+surgō, rise], rise up.

124. amplē, *adv.* [amplus, ample], abundantly, liberally; *compar.*, **amplius,** more.

sexāgintā, *indecl. num.*, sixty.

Brūtō ducibus, in eum conjūrāvērunt atque cōnstituērunt eum Īdibus Mārtiīs in senātū interficere.

Quamquam prōdigia eum dēterrēbant, et harūspex Spūrinna monēbat ut cavēret perīculum, quod nōn ultrā Mārtiās Īdūs prōferrētur, statuit tamen eō diē senātum habēre. Dum cūriam intrat, Spūrinnam irrīsit, quod sine ūllā suā noxā Īdūs Mārtiae adessent. "Vēnērunt quidem," inquit Spūrinna, "sed nōn praeteriērunt." Caesarem assīdentem conjūrātī speciē officiī circumstetērunt; ūnus deinde quasi aliquid rogātūrus propius accessit et, cum Caesar renueret, ab utrōque humerō togam apprehendit. Dum Caesar clāmat "ista quidem vīs est," Casca eum adversum vulnerat paulum īnfrā jugulum. Caesar Cascae bracchium arreptum graphiō trājēcit cōnātusque prōsilīre aliō vulnere tardātus est. Deinde ut animadvertit undique sē strictīs pūgiōnibus petī, togā caput

---

126. Īdibus: the Ides were the 15th of March, May, July, October, the 13th of the other months.

128. quod: a relative pronoun.

129. prōferrētur: why subjunctive? Observe that its clause is part of the warning.

134. rogātūrus: the future participle expressing intention.

ab: occasionally, as here, to be translated *on* or *at*.

136. adversum, *in front,* an adjective in agreement with (*eum*) *clāmantem.*

---

126. Īdūs, Īduum, *f. pl.*, the Ides, *the middle of the month.*

127. harūspex, -icis, *m.*, soothsayer.

130. noxa, -ae, *f.* [noceō], harm, injury.

132. praetereō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *tr. and intr.*, go by, go past, pass; **praeteritus, -a, -um,** *p. part. as adj.*, gone by, past.

assīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, —, *intr.* [ad+sīdō, sit], take a seat, sit down.

134. re-nuō, -nuere, -nuī, —, *intr.*, shake the head, refuse.

135. apprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum, *tr.* [ad+prehendō], take hold of, seize.

136. īnfrā, *prep. with acc.*, below, underneath.

137. jugulum, -ī, *n.* [jugum], throat, neck.

graphium, -ī, *n.*, stylus, pen.

138. prōsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, —, *intr.* [prō+saliō, leap], leap forward, spring up.

tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [tardus, slow], hinder, retard.

139. pūgiō, -ōnis, *m.*, dagger, poniard.

obvolvit et tribus et vīgintī plāgīs cōnfossus est. Cum Mārcum Brūtum, quem fīliī locō habēbat, in sē irruentem vīdisset, dīxisse fertur: "Tū quoque, mī fīlī!"

Percussōrum autem nēmō ferē trienniō amplius supervīxit. Damnātī omnēs variīs cāsibus periērunt, pars naufragiō, pārs proeliō; nōnnūllī sēmet interfēcērunt eōdem illō pūgiōne, quō Caesarem cōnfōderant.

Quō rārior in rēgibus et prīncipibus virīs moderātiō, hōc laudanda magis est. Caesar vīctōriā cīvīlī clēmentissimē ūsus est; cum enim scrīnia dēprehendisset epistulārum ad Pompeium missārum ab iīs quī vidēbantur aut in dīversīs aut in neutrīs fuisse partibus, legere nōluit, sed combussit, nē forte in multōs gravius cōnsulendī locum darent. Cicerō hanc laudem eximiam Caesarī tribuit, quod nihil oblīvīscī solēret nisi injūriās.

---

141. fīliī locō, *as a son;* literally *in the place of a son.*

143. trienniō: for the case with *amplius* see the note on l. 124.

147. Quō, hōc: ablatives of degree of difference with *rārior* and *laudanda magis;* they correspond to English "the . . . the" with comparatives, *the more rare . . . the more deserving of praise.*

152. gravius cōnsulendī locum, *occasion for harsher measures* (than he desired).

153. quod . . . solēret: *quod, that* (conjunction), sometimes introduces a substantive clause, here explanatory to *laudem.* Why the subjunctive *solēret?* It is of course part of what Cicero said.

---

140. ob-volvō, -volvere, -volvī, -volūtum, *tr.*, wrap round, enfold.

plāga, -ae, *f.*, blow, wound.

cōnfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, *tr.*, stab, pierce.

141. irruō, -ruere, -ruī, —, *intr.*, rush in, rush upon.

143. percussor, -ōris, *m.* [percutiō], assassin.

triennium, -ī, *n.* [trēs+annus], a period of three years, three years' time.

super-vīvō, -vīvere, -vīxī, —, *intr.*, outlive, survive.

144. naufragium, -ī, *n.* [*compare* nāvis *and* frangō], shipwreck.

145. -met, *an enclitic suffix,* self, own.

147. rārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, rare, scarce.

moderātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [moderor, to control], moderation, self-control.

148. clēmenter, *adv.* [clēmēns], mercifully.

149. scrīnium, -ī, *n.*, book-box, letter-case.

dē-prehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum, *tr.*, seize upon; discover.

151. combūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.* [com-+ūrō], burn up, consume.

Fuisse trāditur excelsā statūrā, ōre paulō lēniōre, nigrīs vegetīsque oculīs, capite calvō; quam dēfōrmitātem, quod saepe obtrectātōrum jocīs obnoxia erat, aegrē ferēbat. Ideō ex omnibus honōribus sibi ā senātū populōque dēcrētīs nōn alium aut recēpit aut ūsūrpāvit libentius quam jūs laureae perpetuō gestandae. Vīnī parcissimum eum fuisse nē inimīcī quidem negāvērunt. Verbum Catōnis est, ūnum ex omnibus Caesarem ad ēvertendam rem pūblicam sōbrium accessisse. Armōrum et equitandī perītissimus, labōris ūltrā fidem patiēns; in agmine nōnnumquam equō, saepius pedibus anteībat, capite dētēctō, seu sōl, seu imber erat. Longissi-

---

155. ōre paulō lēniōre, *with a rather kindly expression.*

158. dēcrētīs: a participle, with *honōribus.*

159. laureae: the victor's laurel crown served partly to hide Caesar's baldness.

164. fidem, *belief.*

in agmine, *on the march.*

equō, *on horseback.*

---

155. excelsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* excellō], lofty, tall; distinguished.

statūra, -ae, *f.* [status, a standing], height, stature.

lēnis, -e, *adj.*, mild, gentle.

156. vegetus, -a, -um, *adj.*, lively, animated.

calvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bald.

dēfōrmitās, -ātis, *f.* [dēfōrmis, misshapen], deformity, disfigurement, unsightliness.

157. obtrectātor, -ōris, *m.* [obtrectō, disparage], traducer, disparager.

ob-noxius, -a, -um, *adj.*, liable, exposed.

ideō, *adv.*, for that reason, therefore.

158. dē-cernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, *tr.*, decide, decree.

159. ūsūrpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, make use of, use.

laurea, -ae, *f.*, laurel-tree; laurel wreath.

160. perpetuō, *adv.* [perpetuus], continually.

gestō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq. of* gerō], bear, carry, wear.

parcus, -a, -um, *adj.* [parcō], sparing, frugal.

162. ē-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr.*, overturn, overthrow.

sōbrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [sē-+ēbrius, drunk], sober.

163. equitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [eques], ride.

164. patiēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of* patior], enduring, tolerant, patient.

agmen, -inis, *n.* [agō], a marching army, a column.

nōn-numquam, *adv.*, sometimes, a few times.

165. ante-eō, -īre, -iī, *or* **-īvī,** *intr.*, go before *or* ahead.

dētēctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **dētegō,** uncover], uncovered, bare.

mās viās incrēdibilī celeritāte cōnficiēbat, ut persaepe nūntiōs dē sē praevenīret; neque eum morābantur flūmina, quae vel nandō vel innīxus īnflātīs ūtribus trānsībat.

---

168. nandō: gerund, ablative of means.

---

166. per-saepe, *adv.*, very often.

168. in-nītor, -nītī, -nīxum, *intr.*, lean upon, support oneself by.

īn-flō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, blow into, inflate.

ūter, ūtris, *m.*, a vessel of skin, leather bottle.

---

27. Marcus Tullius Cicero

Mārcus Tullius Cicerō, equestrī genere, Arpīnī, quod est Volscōrum oppidum, nātus est. Nōndum adultus ā patre Rōmam missus est, ut celeberrimōrum magistrōrum scholīs interesset atque eās artēs disceret, quibus aetās puerīlis ad hūmānitātem solet īnfōrmārī; quod magnō successū magnāque admīrātiōne et praeceptōrum et cēterōrum discipulōrum fēcit; cum enim fāma dē Cicerōnis ingeniō et doctrīnā ad aliōs perlāta esset, multī repertī esse dīcuntur quī ejus videndī et audiendī grātiā scholās adīrent.

Cum nūllā rē magis ad summōs in rē pūblicā honōrēs viam mūnīrī posse intellegeret quam arte dīcendī et ēloquentiā, tōtō animō in ejus studium incubuit; in quō quidem ita ver-

---

2. nātus est: in 106 B.C.

5. quod, *and this;* referring to the purpose in the sentence preceding.

8. quī . . . adīrent: a relative clause of description.

9. grātiā: what case do *grātiā* and *causā* meaning *for the sake of* take, and what is their position?

11. mūnīrī: *mūnīre* with *viam* as object means *construct;* this passage may be translated freely, *entrance into public life was made possible.*

---

1. equester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* **[eques],** of a horseman, equestrian, cavalry (*as adj.*).

5. īn-fōrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, shape, mold; instruct, educate.

6. praeceptor, -ōris, *m.* **[praecipiō],** teacher, instructor.

discipulus, -ī, *m.* **[discō],** learner, pupil.

7. doctrīna, -ae, *f.* **[doceō],** teaching, learning, erudition.

12. incumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitum, *intr.* lean upon; bend to, apply oneself to.

versor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.* [*dep. and freq. of* **vertō**], occupy oneself, engage, conduct oneself.



MARCUS TULLIUS CICERO

sātus est ut nōn sōlum eōs quī in forō et jūdiciīs causās dīcerent studiōsē sectārētur, sed prīvātim quoque dīligentissimē sē exercēret. Prīmum ēloquentiam et lībertātem adversus Sullānōs ostendit. Erat enim Rōscius quīdam, dē parricīdiō accūsātus, quem ob potentiam Chrȳsogonī, Sullae lībertī, quī in ejus adversāriīs erat, nēmō alius dēfendere audēbat; Cicerō tamen tantā ēloquentiae vī eum dēfendit ut jam tum in arte dīcendī nēmō eī pār esse vidērētur. Posteā Athēnās studiōrum grātiā petiit, ubi Antiochum philosophum studiōsē audīvit. Inde ēloquentiae causā Rhodum sē contulit, ubi Molōnem, Graecum rhētorem tum disertissimum, magistrum habuit. Quī cum Cicerōnem dīcentem audīvisset, flēvisse dīcitur, quod per hunc Graecia ēloquentiae laude prīvārētur.

Rōmam reversus quaestor Siciliam habuit. Nūllīus vērō quaestūra aut grātior aut clārior fuit; cum enim magna tum esset annōnae difficultās, initiō molestus erat Siculīs, quōs cōgeret frūmenta in urbem mittere; posteā vērō, dīligentiam

---

13. in forō: *i.e.*, in political discussions.

14. sectārētur: attendance upon the law courts and upon political debates was a common method of studying law and the art of public speaking in Cicero's time.

20. jam tum, *even then;* Cicero was only 26 years old.

26. prīvārētur: account for the subjunctive.

27. Siciliam habuit: *i.e.*, as a province; see note on 26, 26.

29. initiō, *at first.*

quōs cōgeret, *since he forced them;* a relative clause of reason or cause, as explained in the note on 23, 54.

---

14. studiōsē, *adv.* [studiōsus], eagerly, devotedly.

sector, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.* [*freq. of* sequor], follow after, attend.

prīvātim, *adv.* [prīvātus], in a private capacity, privately.

17. parricīdium, -ī, *n.* [*compare* pater *and* caedō], parricide, murder of a father.

18. adversārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [adversor], opposed, hostile; *subst.*, **adversārius, -ī,** *m.*, an opponent, adversary.

23. rhētor, -oris, *m.*, a teacher of oratory, rhetorician.

disertus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*from p. part. of* disserō], fluent, eloquent.

25. fleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *intr.*, weep, cry.

29. annōna, -ae, *f.* [annus], the year's produce; supplies, provisions.

et jūstitiam et comitātem ejus expertī, honōrēs quaestōrī suō majōrēs quam ūllī umquam praetōrī dētulērunt. Ē Siciliā reversus Rōmam in causīs dīcendīs ita flōruit ut inter omnēs causārum patrōnōs et esset et habērētur prīnceps. Cōnsul deinde factus L. Sergiī Catilīnae conjūrātiōnem ēgregiā virtūte, cōnstantiā, cūrā compressit. Catilīna reī familiāris, quam profūderat, inopiā et dominandī cupiditāte incēnsus erat indignātusque quod in petītiōne cōnsulātūs repulsam passus esset; conjūrātiōne igitur factā senātum interemere, cōnsulēs trucīdāre, urbem incendere, dīripere aerārium cōnstituerat. Cicerō autem in senātū, praesente Catilīnā, vehementem ōrātiōnem habuit et cōnsilia ejus patefēcit; tum ille, incendium suum ruīnā sē restīnctūrum

---

34. habērētur, *was regarded.*

35. Catilīnae: Catiline was of an aristocratic family, but of a depraved character. He was ambitious to gain political power, and succeeded in attaching to himself the discontented and unprincipled of all classes. Cicero through a sort of secret service of friends and political associates kept informed of his plans and finally aroused the senate to the adoption of energetic measures.

42. habuit, *delivered.*

43. ruīnā: an allusion to the practice of demolishing houses in order to prevent the spread of a fire.

---

31. experior, -perīrī, -pertus sum, *tr.*, prove, test.

33. flōreō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.* **[flōs],** blossom; flourish, be eminent.

34. patrōnus, -ī, *m.* **[pater],** protector, patron; defender, advocate.

35. conjūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.* **[conjūrō],** conspiracy.

37. familiāris, -e, *adj.* **[familia],** of a household; **rēs familiāris,** private property, estate; *subst.* **familiāris, -is,** *m.*, a friend, an intimate acquaintance.

pro-fundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsūm, *tr.*, pour out; spend freely, squander.

inopia, -ae, *f.* **[inops],** want, lack; poverty.

dominor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.*, rule.

38. petītiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*compare* **petō**], (a seeking), candidacy, canvass.

39. repulsa, -ae, *f.* [*p. part. of* **repellō**], repulse, defeat.

40. interimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, *tr.* **[inter+emō,** take out], destroy, slay, kill.

41. praesēns, *gen.* **-entis,** *adj.* [*pr. part. of* **praesum**], at hand, present, in person.

43. incendium, -ī, *n.* **[incendō],** fire, conflagration.

esse minitāns, Rōmā profūgit et ad exercitum, quem parāverat, profectus est signa illātūrus urbī. Sed sociī ejus, quī in urbe remānserant, comprehēnsī in carcere necātī sunt.

Neque eō magis ab inceptō Catilīna dēstitit, sed īnfestīs signīs Rōmam petēns exercitū Antōniī, Cicerōnis collēgae, opprimitur. Quam ātrōciter dīmicātum sit exitus docuit: nemō hostium bellō superfuit; nam quem locum quisque in pugnandō cēperat, eum mortuus tegēbat. Catilīna longē ā suīs inter hostium cadāvera repertus est — pulcherrima mors, sī prō patriā sīc concidisset! Senātus populusque Rōmānus Cicerōnem patrem patriae appellāvit.

Paucīs post annīs Cicerōnī diem dīxit Clōdius, tribūnus plēbis, quod cīvēs Rōmānōs indictā causā necāvisset. Senātus maestus, tamquam in pūblicō lūctū, veste mūtātā, prō eō dēprecābātur. Cicerō, cum posset armīs salūtem suam dēfendere, māluit ex urbe cēdere quam suā causā caedem fierī.

---

44. **Rōmā**: ablative of the place from which, App. 65.

45. **signa**: with *illātūrus;* literally *intending to advance the standards, i.e., to attack.*

46. **carcere**: the prison said to have been built by Ancus Marcius; compare 8, 7 and note.

47. **eō magis,** *the more; eō* is an ablative of degree of difference.

49. **Quam ātrōciter dīmicātum sit,** *how desperate the decisive battle was; dīmicātum sit* is an impersonal passive. Why the subjunctive?

50. **quem . . . locum, eum**: in English order this should be, *eum locum quem.*

53. **sī . . . concidisset**: but he did not so fall; what sort of condition?

55. **diem dīxit**: a legal expression, literally, *appointed a day* (for appearance in court), equivalent to *preferred a charge.* The accomplices of Catiline who were strangled in prison had no trial, but were put to death by the order of the consul at the advice of the senate.

57. **veste mūtātā,** *having put on mourning.*

59. **suā causā**: the genitive with *causā, for the sake of,* may be replaced by a possessive adjective.

---

44. **minitor, -ārī, -ātus sum,** *tr.* [*freq. of* **minor,** threaten], threaten, menace.

46. **re-maneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum,** *intr.*, remain.

47. **inceptum, -ī,** *n.* [*p. part. of* **incipiō**], beginning; attempt, undertaking.

49. **ātrōciter,** *adv.* [**ātrōx,** savage], fiercely.

53. **concidō, -cidere, -cidī, —,** *intr.* [**com-**+**cadō**], fall, be slain.

57. **lūctus, -ūs,** *m.* [**lugeō,** mourn], sorrow, mourning, affliction.

Proficīscentem omnēs bonī flentēs prōsecūtī sunt. Deinde Clōdius ēdictum prōposuit, ut Mārcō Tulliō ignī et aquā interdīcerētur; illīus domum et vīllās incendit. Sed vīs illa nōn diūturna fuit; mox enim tōtus ferē populus Rōmānus ingentī dēsīderiō Cicerōnis reditum flāgitāre coepit, et māximō omnium ōrdinum studiō Cicerō in patriam revocātus est. Nihil per tōtam vītam Cicerōnī itinere, quō in patriam rediit, accidit jūcundius. Obviam eī redeuntī ūniversī iērunt; domus ejus pūblicā pecūniā restitūta est.

Gravissimae inimīcitiae illā tempestāte inter Caesarem et Pompeium ortae sunt, ut rēs nisi bellō compōnī nōn posse vidērētur. Cicerō quidem summō studiō ēnītēbātur ut eōs inter sē reconciliāret et ā bellī cīvīlis calamitātibus dēterrēret; sed cum neutrum ad pācem ineundam movēre posset, Pompeium secūtus est. Tamen ā Caesare victōre veniam accēpit. Cum Caesar occīsus esset, Octāviānō, Caesaris hērēdī, fāvit Antōniōque adversātus est, atque effēcit ut ille ā senātū hostis jūdicārētur.

---

61. ignī et aquā: ablatives of separation with *interdīcerētur;* literally, *should be interdicted* (*the use of*) *fire and water;* since fire and water are absolute necessities of life, the phrase is equivalent to *should go into exile.* The name of the person so interdicted is put in the dative, here *Mārcō Tulliō; interdīcerētur* is an impersonal passive.

66. itinere: ablative of comparison with *jūcundius.*

67. eī: the dative with *obviam iērunt,* as in 25, 22, explained in the note there.

75. Octāviānō: Octavianus was a grandnephew of Julius Caesar. He is best known under his later title Augustus, first Roman emperor.

76. Antōniō . . . adversātus est: Marcus Antonius after Caesar's death endeavored to seize the power which Caesar had held. Cicero showed favor to Octavian, in the hope, however, that the free republic might be restored. The course of events brought him into sharp conflict with Antonius.

---

62. inter-dīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictum, *tr.*, forbid, interdict.

63. diūturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [diū], lasting, long.

69. inimīcitia, -ae, *f.* [inimīcus], enmity, hostility.

70. com-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, place together; compose, settle.

71. ē-nītor, -nītī, -nīxus *or* **-nīsus sum,** *intr.*, struggle out; struggle, strive.

Sed Antōnius, initā cum Octāviānō societāte, Cicerōnem jam diū sibi inimīcum prōscrīpsit. Quā rē audītā, Cicerō trānsversīs itineribus in vīllam, quae ā marī nōn longē aberat, fūgit indeque nāvem cōnscendit, in Macedoniam trānsitūrus. Cum aliquotiēns in altum prōvectus ventīs adversīs relātus esset, neque jactātiōnem maris patī posset, taedium tandem eum et fugae et vītae cēpit; aliquandō regressus ad vīllam "moriar," inquit, "in patriā saepe servātā." Adventantibus percussōribus, servī parātī ad dīmicandum erant; sed ipse eōs dēpōnere lectīcam et quiētōs patī quod sors inīqua cōgeret jussit. Prōminentī ex lectīcā et immōtam cervīcem praebentī caput praecīsum est. Manūs quoque praecīsae sunt; caput relātum est ad Antōnium jussūque ejus inter duās manūs in rōstrīs positum.

Quamdiū rēs pūblica lībera stābat, Cicerō in eam cūrās cōgitātiōnēsque ferē omnēs suās cōnferēbat et plūs operae pōnēbat in agendō quam in scrībendō. Cum autem omnia potestāte ūnīus C. Jūliī Caesaris tenērentur, nōn sē angōri-

---

80. vīllam: this was situated not far from the little city of Formiae, on the Gulf of Gaeta. Cicero possessed several country houses, of which this was probably his favorite.

82. trānsitūrus: the participle has the same force as *illātūrus*, l. 45.

87. ipse = Cicero: subject of *jussit*.

88. Prōminentī, praebentī: supply *eī;* the dative of reference (App. 54) is not infrequently employed where we should expect a possessive genitive; here, *e.g.* (*Cicerōnis*) *prōminentis . . . et cervīcem praebentis caput praecīsum est.* Translate with a clause, *when he leaned out . . . his head was cut off.*

93. plūs operae pōnēbat in agendō, *he devoted more attention to action.*

---

80. trānsversus, -a, -um, *adj.*, lying across, cross (*as an adjective*).

82. aliquotiēns, *adv.* [**aliquot**], several times.

83. jactātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**jactō**], tossing, motion.

84. taedium, -ī, *n.* [**taedet,** it wearies], weariness, loathing.

86. adventō, -ventāre, —, —, *intr.* [*intens. of* **adveniō**], advance, approach.

87. lectīca, -ae, *f.* [**lectus**], a litter, sedan.

88. prōmineō, -minēre, -minuī, *intr.*, stand out; project, lean out.

immōtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-+mōtus**], unmoved, unaffected.

89. cervīx, -īcis, *f.*, neck, throat.

93. cōgitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**cōgitō**], reflection, meditation.

95. angor, -ōris, *m.*, anguish, torment; *pl.* melancholy.

bus dēdidit nec indignīs homine doctō voluptātibus. Vītāns cōnspectum forī urbisque rūra peragrābat abdēbatque sē, quantum licēbat, et sōlus erat. Cum animus autem nihil agere nōn posset, sē ad philosophiam referre cōnstituit atque ita honestissimē molestiās dēpōnere. Huic studiō Cicerō adulēscēns multum temporis tribuerat, et jam senex omnem cūram ad scrībendum convertit. Volēbat quoque etiam ōtiōsus aliquid cīvibus prōdesse eōsque doctiōrēs et sapientiōrēs facere. Eō modō plūra brevī tempore ēversā rēpūblicā scrīpsit, quam multīs annīs eā stante scrīpserat. Sīc pāruit virōrum sapientium praeceptō, quī docent hominēs nōn sōlum ex malīs ēligere minima oportēre, sed etiam excerpere ex hīs ipsīs, sī quid īnsit bonī.

Multa extant facētē ab eō dicta. Cum Lentulum, generum suum, exiguae statūrae hominem, vīdisset longō gladiō accīnctum, "quis," inquit, "generum meum ad gladium alligāvit?" — Mātrōna quaedam jūniōrem sē quam erat simu-

---

98. nihil agere nōn posset: the two negatives are to be taken closely with the two verbs (not a case of two negatives making an affirmative), *was unable to be idle.*

103. aliquid prōdesse, *to benefit, to be of some use; aliquid* is an accusative of extent.

106. hominēs . . . ēligere: an infinitive clause, subject of *oportēre,* App. 109.

108. sī quid īnsit bonī, *whatever good there is in them.*

---

96. in-dignus, -a, -um, *adj.,* unworthy, undeserving.

97. rūs, rūris, *n.,* the country; *pl.,* the fields, the country.

peragrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [per+ager], wander through, traverse.

99. philosophia, -ae, *f.,* philosophy.

100. honestē, *adv.* [honestus], honorably, properly.

103. ōtiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ōtium], at leisure, unoccupied.

106. praeceptum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* praecipiō], maxim, precept, order.

107. ēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [ē+legō], choose, select.

excerpō, -cerpere, -cerpsī, -cerptum, *tr.* [carpō], pick out, select.

109. facētē, *adv.* [facētus, witty], wittily, humorously.

110. exiguus, -a, -um, *adj.,* scanty, small.

111. accingō, -cingere, -cīnxī -cīnctum, *tr.* [ad+cingō], gird to, gird.

112. mātrōna, -ae, *f.* [māter], married woman, wife, matron.

jūnior, *adj.* [*compar. of* **juvenis**], younger.

lāns dictitābat sē trīgintā tantum annōs habēre; cui Cicerō "vērum est," inquit, "nam hoc vīgintī annōs audiō." — Caesar, alterō cōnsule mortuō diē Decembris ultimā, Canīnium cōnsulem hōrā septimā in reliquam diēī partem renūntiāverat; quem cum plērīque īrent salūtātum dē mōre, "festīnēmus," inquit Cicerō, "priusquam abeat magistrātū." Dē eōdem Canīniō scrīpsit Cicerō: "Fuit mīrā vigilantiā Canīnius, quī tōtō suō cōnsulātū somnum nōn vīderit."

---

115. **alterō cōnsule,** *one of the consuls;* the consuls went out of office the last day of December.

117. **salūtātum:** the accusative of the supine expressing purpose, App. 125.

118. **abeat:** what name is given to the subjunctive with words meaning *before, until?*

120. **quī . . . vīderit:** a relative clause of cause or reason; another occurred in l, 29.

---

113. **dictitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** *tr. and intr.* [*intens. of* dictō, dictate], say often, maintain.

116. **septimus, -a, -um,** *adj.* [septem], seventh.

117. **plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque,** *adj*, a very great part, very many, the greater part of, most of.

118. **festīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** *intr.* [festīnus, hasty], hasten.

119. **vigilantia, -ae,** *f.* [vigilāns, watchful], watchfulness, vigilance.

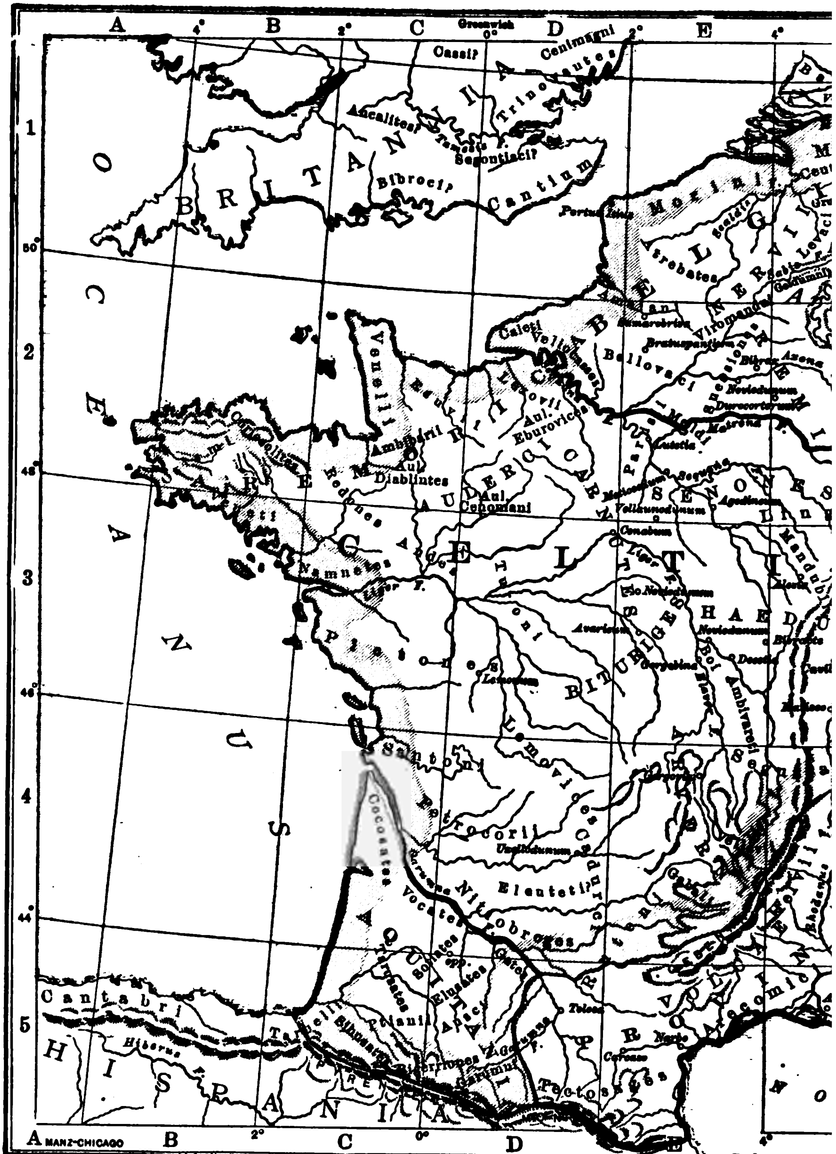
GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

Gaius Julius Caesar, the conqueror of Gaul, was born at Rome in the year 100 (some authorities give 102), B.C. He held the office of quaestor in 68, aedile in 65, praetor in 62, and consul in 59. At the end of his consulship he was made governor of Gaul for a period of five years, his term of office being afterward extended for five years longer.

About the time of his arrival in Gaul, the Helvetians, a warlike tribe of the Gauls occupying a region roughly corresponding to modern Switzerland, began a migration from their homes with the intention of settling in a more desirable location. As a result of their attempt to cross territory which was under Roman protection Caesar made war upon them and thoroughly defeated them. Following this he came into conflict with the German king Ariovistus, who with his people had taken possession of a part of Gaul. He inflicted a crushing defeat upon the Germans and drove them back across the Rhine. This was the beginning of a series of campaigns which lasted through the greater part of nine years, and which resulted in the whole of Gaul being brought under Roman control.

During Caesar's absence from Rome his political enemies succeeded in organizing strongly the opposition to him, and his return to Rome was followed by civil war, in which his enemies were defeated. Caesar was made dictator for life, and the foundation for the Roman imperial government was laid. But a conspiracy was formed against him and he was assassinated in the year 44 B.C.

He wrote a history of his campaigns in Gaul in seven Books. The first, which is here given (with some changes), describes the campaign against the Helvetians and the Germans under Ariovistus.



A
B
C
D
E
Greenwich
1
2
3
4
5
50°
48°
46°
44°
OCEANUS
BRITANNIA
Cassi?
Cenimagni
Trinovantes
Ancalites?
Tamesis F.
Segontiaci?
Bibroci?
Cantium
Portus Itius
Morini
BELGAE
Atrebates
Ambiani
Samarobriva
Viromandui
Bratuspantium
Suessiones
Bibrax
Axona
Noviodunum
Durocortorum
Matrona F.
Caleti
Velliocasses
Bellovaci
Parisii
Lutetia
Meldi
Venelli
Esuvii
Lexovii
Aul. Eburovices
Ambibarii
Aul. Diablintes
Aul. Cenomani
AULERCI
ARMORICAE
Curiosolites
Veneti
Redones
Namnetes
Andes
Liger F.
CELTAE
Turoni
Carnutes
SENONES
Metiosedum
Agedincum
Vellaunodunum
Cenabum
Lingones
Mandubii
Alesia
Avaricum
Gorgobina
BITURIGES
HAEDUI
Bibracte
Decetia
Boii
Ambivareti
Pictones
Lemonum
Lemovices
Santoni
Cocosates
Petrocorii
Uxellodunum
Cadurci
Eleuteti
Nitiobroges
Vocates
Garumna F.
AQUITANI
Sotiates
Elusates
Ausci
Tarusates
Tarbelli
Sibuzates
Bigerriones
Garumni
Tolosa
PROVINCIA
Narbo
Tectosages
Volcae Arecomici
Gabali
Helvii
Cantabri
HISPANIA
Hiberus F.
MANZ-CHICAGO


GAUL
in CAESAR'S time
Taken with some changes from
H. Meusel.
Roman miles
Sugambri
Eburones
Segni
Caerosi
Mediomatrici
Leuci
Sequani
Helvetii
Tulingi
Harudes
Sedusii
Marcomanni
Hercynia Silva
Danuvius
Vesontio
Genava
Octodurus
Vienna
Mediolanium
Verona
Aquileia
Cremona
Placentia
Padus
Ocelum
Genua
Ravenna
Ancona
Pisae
Florentia
Massilia
Arelate
Salluvii
ILLYRICUM
HADRIATICUM MARE
ROMA
ITALIA
GALLIA CISALPINA

PART IV

CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

BOOK I

Geography and Peoples of Gaul

1. Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs; ūnam partem incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garunna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important, proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī

---

1. **est dīvīsa,** *is divided;* an instance of the perfect participle to be taken as a predicate adjective with *est.*

omnis, *as a whole;* including the three parts mentioned immediately after.

2. **quī** = *iī quī, those who.* **ipsōrum,** *their own.*

linguā: ablative of means.

3. **nostrā:** supply *linguā.* **linguā:** ablative of respect; also *īnstitūtīs* and *lēgibus.*

4. **inter sē,** *from one another.*

Gallōs: object of *dīvidit.* Latin order may often be retained by translating an active verb by a passive; the object then becomes subject.

5. **dīvidit:** singular, because the two rivers are conceived of as constituting one boundary.

7. **prōvinciae:** Rome's province of Transalpine Gaul (in southern France) is meant. It had been brought under Roman authority and organized about sixty years before Caesar's invasion of northern Gaul.

minimē: with *saepe.*

8. **effēminandōs:** the gerundive in a prepositional phrase; translate *ad . . . pertinent, tend to break down character.*

9. **Germānīs:** dative with *proximī.*

trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallī obtinent, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garunnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur; pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentriōnēs et orientem sōlem. Aquītānia ā Garunnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispaniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

The Conspiracy of Orgetorix

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus conjūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et cīvibus persuāsit ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent: "Perfacile est," inquit, cum virtūte omnibus praestēmus, tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī." Id hōc facilius iīs persuāsit, quod

13. suīs fīnibus: ablative of separation. **eōrum** = *Germānōrum.*

14. Eōrum: we should expect the name of the country, *Galliae,* rather than a pronoun referring to the people.

Gallī: those who in the Gallic language were called Celts; see l. 3.

16. ab, *on the side of.*

18. Galliae: central, or Celtic, Gaul is meant, as described in ll. 14-17.

21. est ad, *is next to.*

2. M. Messālā M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, *in the consulship of,* etc.; ablative absolute. The year was 61 B.C.

4. ut . . . exīrent: a noun clause, object of *persuāsit,* to be translated by an infinitive.

5. est: the subject of this verb is the infinitive *potīrī.*

6. Id iīs persuāsit, *he persuaded them to this.* Here the object of *persuāsit* is the pronoun *Id;* in l. 4 it was a clause.

hōc facilius, *the more easily; hōc* is ablative of degree of difference, and at the same time ablative of cause in anticipation of the causal clause, *quod . . . continentur.*

undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit, alterā ex parte monte Jūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs, tertiā ex parte lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Itaque et minus lātē vagābantur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre poterant; quā dē causā hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

The Helvetians Prepare to Migrate

3. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōnstituērunt ea quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent comparāre, jūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coëmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfirmant. Orgetorīx dux dēligitur. Is lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscipit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Sēquanō, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret; pater enim ejus rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat; itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduō, quī eō

---

7. **ūnā ex parte,** *on one side.*

13. **fīnitimīs,** *on their neighbors;* dative with the compound verb *īnferre,* which as a transitive verb takes also the direct object *bellum;* contrast the intransitive *praestēmus,* l. 5, which has only the dative *omnibus.*

14. **Prō,** *in proportion to.*

2. **ea,** *those things,* explained in the following lines, *jūmentōrum . . . cōnfirmāre.*

3. **quam maximum numerum,** *the greatest number possible.*

6. **Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās,** *for the accomplishment of these things;* the gerundive in a prepositional phrase expressing purpose.

7. **dūxērunt:** here in the sense of *regarded, thought.*

tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat. "Perfacile factū est," inquit, "cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse meae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus sum; nōn est dubium quīn tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possint; meīs cōpiīs meōque exercitū vōbīs rēgna conciliābō." Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et jūs jūrandum dant et, rēgnō occupātō, per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

The Death of Orgetorix

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt; sī damnārētur, ignī eum cremātūrī erant. Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad jūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūcit; per eōs, nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs jūs suum exequī cōnārētur multi-

---

13. **plēbī**: dative with *acceptus, acceptable.*

15. **factū,** *to do;* the supine, ablative of respect.

17. **quīn,** *that,* with the subjunctive, is regularly employed after expressions of doubt, when these are accompanied by a negative.

plūrimum possint, *are the strongest (people).*

19. **inter sē dant,** *they exchange;* the phrase *inter sē* denotes mutual or reciprocal action, as in 1, 4.

21. **Galliae**: with *potīrī,* which sometimes governs the genitive instead of the ablative.

1. **indicium**: translate as if *indicēs, informers.*

2. **ex vinculīs,** *in chains;* how, literally?

sī damnārētur, *if he should be convicted.*

3. **causae**: objective genitive after *dictiōnis.*

4. **ad** (*hominum*): used adverbially, *about.*

5. **coēgit**: here and in l. 9 with the meaning *collected,* while in l. 2 it meant *compelled.*

7. **per eōs,** *through their help.*

sē ēripuit, *he escaped.*

tūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgecorīx mortuus est; Helvētiī arbitrantur ipsum sibi mortem cōnscīvisse.

The Helvetians Complete Their Preparations

5. Post ejus mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī ē fīnibus suīs exīre cōnantur. Ubi jam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt, frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt; haec fēcērunt, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mēnsum molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre jubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgīs, fīnitimīs, ut, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exustīs, ūnā cum iīs proficīscantur; Boiōs, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōreiamque oppugnābant, ad sē sociōs recipiunt.

Two Routes Open to the Helvetians

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent; ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Jūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī

---

2. Ubi jam, *when at last.*

3. numerō: ablative of respect. **ad:** see the note on *ad*, 4, 4.

4. prīvāta aedificia: scattered dwellings not in towns and villages.

6. spē sublātā, *by destroying the hope;* ablative absolute, expressing means.

ad . . . subeunda, *to undergo all dangers.*

7. trium mēnsum, *for three months;* genitive of measure.

10. Boiōs: the word Boii survives in the modern name Bohemia.

12. ad sē sociōs recipiunt, *they admit to their numbers as allies.*

1. quibus . . . possent: a relative clause of description, hence the subjunctive.

itineribus: the antecedent in Latin is occasionally repeated in the relative clause; it may be omitted in translation.

dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expedītius, propterea quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nūllīs locīs vadō trānsītur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Cōnsilium erat Helvētiōrum vel persuādēre Allobrogibus, quī nūper pācātī erant et nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidēbantur, vel vī cōgere ut per suōs fīnēs iter darent. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, diem dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus.

Caesar Determines to Stop the Helvetians

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī et quam maximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et

---

4. dūcerentur, *could be drawn;* the clause *vix quā . . . dūcerentur* is somewhat different from the one in ll. 1-2, in that the idea of possibility enters into the subjunctive itself.

altissimus, *very high.*

ut . . . possent: a clause of result.

5. prohibēre: supply *eōs* as object.

8. vadō trānsītur, *is crossed by fording.*

9. fīnibus: dative with *proximum.*

12. bonō animō, *kindly disposed;* ablative of description in the predicate after *vidēbantur.*

13. ut . . . darent: a noun clause, object of *persuādēre* and *cōgere.*

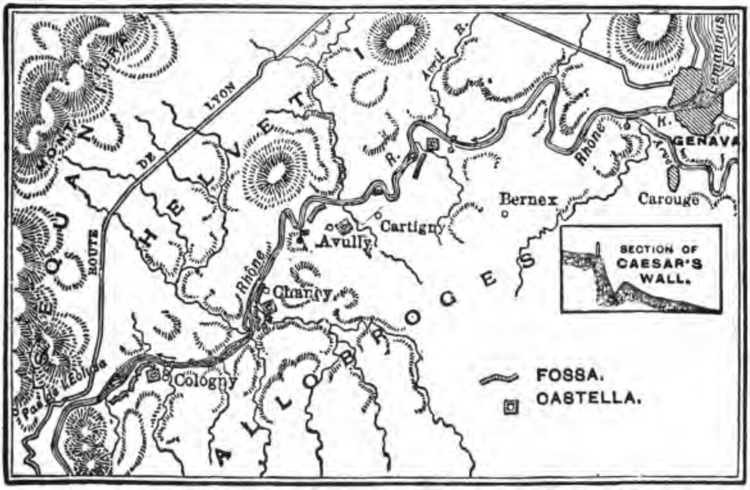
14. quā diē . . . conveniant, *on which (day) they are to assemble;* a relative clause of purpose; *diē* may be omitted in translation, as *itineribus,* l. 1.

15. a. d. v. Kal. Apr., = *ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlēs, five days before the Kalends of April, i.e.,* Mar. 28th.

1. id, *it,* explained by the indirect discourse following, *eōs . . . cōnārī.*

2. quam maximīs potest itineribus, *by the longest journeys possible;* the plural *itineribus* is employed with reference to the daily distance; *potest* might have been omitted, since *quam* and a superlative alone express the highest degree possible, as in 3, 3.

3. Galliam ulteriōrem: the Roman province north of the Alps.



MAP SHOWING FORTIFICATIONS ON THE RHONE

ad Genavam pervenit. Ā prōvinciā tōtā quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum postulat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genavam jubet rescindī. Ubi dē ejus adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis. Hī dīxērunt Helvētiōs habēre in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāvērunt ut ejus voluntāte id sibi facere licēret. Caesar memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum exercitumque ejus ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub jugum missum; concēdendum

4. ad, *into the neighborhood of.* No preposition would be employed if the meaning were "to Geneva."

6. ad, *near, at.*

10. habērent: subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse.

11. ejus voluntāte, *with his approval.*

12. L. Cassium . . . occīsum: in 107 B.C.

13. concēdendum (esse), *the privilege should be granted;* the verb is used impersonally, *i.e.*, its subject is the fundamental idea in the verb itself, to be represented in English by a noun; in like manner *pugnātum est* means *a battle was fought.*

igitur nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimīcō animō temperātūrōs ab injūriā et maleficiō exīstimābat. Tamen, quod mīlitēs quōs imperāverat nōndum convēnerant, lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid vellent, ad Īd. Apr. reverterentur.

Caesar Denies the Helvetians Right of Way Through the Roman Province

8. Intereā ā lacū Lemannō ad montem Jūram mīlia passuum XVIIII mūrum secundum flūmen in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnārentur, prohibēre posset. Ubi lēgātī ad eum diē cōnstitūtō revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī eā spē dējectī nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, perrumpere cōnātī sunt. Eōrum aliī nāvēs jūnxerant ratēsque complūrēs fēcerant; aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, trānsīre cōnābantur. Sed operis mūnītiōne et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

---

17. diem, *time.*

18. ad, *by.*

reverterentur, *let them return;* a subjunctive of indirect discourse, representing an imperative of the direct.

2. mūrum: not a stone wall, but an earthwork made in greater part by cutting down the banks of the river steeply. The trench is shown in the sectional view on the accompanying map (p. 249).

4. quō: this word, it is to be remembered, is employed to introduce a clause of purpose in connection with a comparative; it is in reality an ablative of degree of difference.

6. negat: the usual Latin for "say not," as has before been pointed out; in translating take the negative with *posse*.

8. prohibitūrum: the full expression would be *sē eōs prohibitūrum esse.*

eā spē dējectī, *disappointed in that hope; spē* is ablative of separation, as also *cōnātū*, l. 13.

The Helvetians Arrange to March Through the Country of the Sequani

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat, et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et injūriā trānseant.

Caesar Secures Reinforcements and Pursues the Helvetians

10. Caesarī nūntiātur Helvētiōs habēre in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere; hī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in

---

1. **Relinquēbātur,** *there was left.*

ūna via, *only the road.*

Sēquanīs invītīs, *against the wish of the Sequani,* an ablative absolute.

2. **angustiās:** the narrow passage along the bank of the Rhone described in 6, 2-5.

cum, *since.*

5. **plūrimum poterat,** *had the greatest influence;* the adverb *plūrimum is* in reality the accusative neuter of *plūrimus* expressing degree.

8. **novīs rēbus,** *revolution;* dative with *studēbat.*

9. **habēre obstrictās,** *to have bound* (*to him*).

10. **ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut . . . patiantur,** *prevails upon the Sequani to allow; ut . . . patiantur* is a noun clause, object of *impetrat.*

11-13. **nē . . . prohibeant, ut . . . trānseant:** these clauses contain the purpose of the exchange of hostages; translate freely, *the Sequani agree not to prevent* etc., *the Helvetii agree to pass through,* etc.

prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, hominēs bellicōsī, populī Rōmānī inimīcī, partī prōvinciae patentī maximēque frūmentāriae fīnitimī futūrī erant. Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Italiam magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit et trēs, quae circum Aquileiam hiemābant, ex hībernīs ēdūcit et proximō itinere in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit. Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturīgēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

Several Gallic Tribes Appeal to Caesar for Protection

11. Helvētiī jam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Haeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum sē suaque ab iīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: "Ita nōs," inquiunt, "omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritī sumus, ut paene in cōnspectū exercitūs vestrī agrī vāstārī, līberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī

---

4. Id sī fieret, *if this should be done.*

6. eī mūnītiōnī: dative with the compound verb *praeficit,* with *Labiēnum* as direct object.

12. itinere: ablative of separation, with *prohibēre.*

13. Complūribus: with *proeliīs,* while *hīs* and *pulsīs* go together and form an ablative absolute.

14. citeriōris prōvinciae: the Roman province in northern Italy, also called *Gallia Cisalpīna.*

4. rogātum, *to beg;* the accusative of the supine expressing purpose; it governs the object, *auxilium.*

5. Ita nōs . . . meritī sumus, *we have always so deserved of the Roman people.*

6. ut . . . nōn dēbuerint: a negative clause of result.

nōn dēbuerint." Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē, dēpopulātīs agrīs, nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sē praeter agrī solum nihil habēre reliquum. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn expectāre statuit dum, omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōnsūmptīs, in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

Caesar Defeats a Portion of the Helvetians

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit, incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat jūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus jūnctīs trānsībant, trēsque jam partēs cōpiārum trādūxerant. Caesar dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impedītōs et inopīnantēs aggressus magnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et ejus

---

9. dēpopulātīs: although deponent verbs are regularly active in meaning, the perfect participles are sometimes used as passives.

15. pervenīrent, *should come;* an anticipatory subjunctive with *dum, until.*

2. lēnitāte: ablative of description.

in utram partem fluat: an indirect question.

5. dē tertiā vigiliā, *in the third watch;* literally, *dē* would mean *out of.*

7. aggressus: the perfect participle of a deponent verb is regularly active; it can therefore be used in agreement with the subject to denote an act of the subject. With the perfect participle of a non-deponent verb, the ablative absolute is the construction necessary to denote an act of the subject.

8. mandārunt: a form contracted from *mandāvērunt.*

9. abdidērunt (sēsē), *hid in;* the accusative *silvās* with *in* is used instead of the ablative owing to the motion implied in *abdidērunt.*

12. memoriā: ablative denoting the time when.

exercitum sub jugum mīserat. Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās, sed etiam prīvātās injūriās ultus est; nam Tigurīnī interfēcerant L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, avum L. Pīsōnis, socerī Caesaris, eōdem proeliō quō Cassium.

Negotiations Between Caesar and the Helvetians

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentīnō ejus adventū commōtī sunt; ille enim ūnō diē flūmen trānsierat, id quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfēcerant. Lēgātōs igitur ad eum mittunt, cujus lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: "Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faciet, in eam partem ībunt Helvētiī atque ibi erunt ubi eōs cōnstitueris atque esse volueris; sīn bellō persequī persevērābis, reminīscere et vete-

---

14. quae pars . . . ea: translate as if *ea pars quae.*

15. intulerat: with *bellum* as object this verb means *make* (*war*) *on;* with such a word as *calamitās* or *injūria* as object it means *inflict . . . on.* Why the dative *populō?*

prīnceps, *first,* (*was the*) *first.*

1. ut: introducing a clause of purpose, and to be translated before *cōpiās.*

2. pontem faciendum cūrat, *he causes a bridge to be built;* the gerundive in agreement with an object noun is employed after *dō, cūrō,* and similar verbs, to express purpose.

in Ararī: observe that "over" a river, with reference to a bridge, is expressed by *in* and the ablative; "across" and "over," in the sense of "to," or "on, the other side of," are expressed by *trāns* and the accusative.

Ararī: several *i*-stem nouns of the third declension have an ablative ending in *-ī* and an accusative in *-im. Tiberim* has previously occurred, R. 3, 4.

6. bellō Cassiānō: the campaign of 107 B.C., in which Cassius was defeated by the Tigurini. It is plain that Divico was an old man when he met Caesar.

7. cum Caesare ēgit, *he addressed Caesar;* literally, *ēgit* would mean *treated, dealt.*

10. reminīscere: imperative.

ris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus es, cum iī quī flūmen trānsierant suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nōlī ob eam rem aut tuae magnopere virtūtī tribuere aut nōs dēspicere. Nōs ita ā patribus majōribusque nostrīs didicimus, ut magis virtūte contendāmus quam dolō aut īnsidiīs nītāmur. Quārē nōlī committere ut is locus ubi cōnstiterimus ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen capiat aut memoriam prōdat.

The Helvetians Refuse Caesar's Terms

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: "Eō mihi minus dubitātiōnis datur, quod eās rēs quās commemorāvistis memoriā teneō, atque eō gravius ferō quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidērunt; quī sī alicujus injūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuit difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptus est, quod sē causam timendī habēre nōn intellegēbat. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblī-

---

11. incommodī: the genitive, depending upon a verb of remembering.

12. Quod, *as to the fact that.*

13. nōlī . . . tribuere, *do not on that account attribute much to your own valor. Nōlī,* imperative of *nōlō,* with an infinitive, is the common and polite form of expressing a negative command in Latin.

16. virtūte: ablative of means.

dolō, īnsidiīs: *nītor* takes an ablative of the thing relied upon.

17. ut is locus . . . prōdat: a noun clause, object of *committere, bring about, cause.*

1. Eō minus, *the less; eō* is a combination of ablative of degree of difference and ablative of cause.

3. eō gravius, quō minus, *the more seriously, the less; eō* and *quō* are ablatives of degree of difference.

meritō: ablative of accordance.

4. sī fuisset, *if they had been;* a condition contrary to fact.

sibi: with *cōnscius,* but to be omitted in translation.

5. eō, quod, *by the fact that; quod* here introduces a noun clause of fact.

6. Quod sī vellem, *but if I were willing;* another condition contrary to fact.

contumēliae: for the genitive with verbs of remembering and forgetting, compare *incommodī,* 13, 11.

vīscī vellem, num etiam recentium injūriārum, quod mē invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāvistis, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāvistis, memoriam dēpōnere possum? Quod vestrā victōriā tam īnsolenter glōriāminī quodque tam diū vōs impūnē injūriās tulisse admīrāminī eōdem pertinent. Cōnsuēvērunt enim deī immortālēs, quō gravius scelerātī hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs mihi dabitis, et sī Haeduīs sociīsque eōrum, item sī Allobrogibus, de injūriīs satisfaciētis, vōbīscum pācem faciam." Dīvicō respondit: "Ita Helvētiī ā majōribus suīs īnstitūtī sunt ut obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; ejus reī populus Rōmānus est testis." Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

Defeat of Caesar's Cavalry

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāc-

---

7. quod . . . temptāvistis, *that you attempted;* this and the following *quod* clauses are noun clauses of fact in apposition with *injūriārum;* the latter word depends on *memoriam.* The *quod* clauses in ll. 10-12 are also noun clauses, subjects of *pertinent.*

9. Allobrogas: the ending *-as* is a Greek accusative plural ending sometimes found in nouns of the third declension, particularly in names of peoples.

11. vōs . . . tulisse admīrāminī, *are surprised to have inflicted.*

13. quō, *in order that;* see the note on 8, 4.

14. secundiōrēs rēs, *extraordinary prosperity.*

15. concēdere: depending on *cōnsuēvērunt.*

19. cōnsuērint: contracted from *cōnsuēverint,* perfect subjunctive.

3. coāctum habēbat, *had collected;* the participle *coāctum* agrees with *quem;* the combination of the participle with the imperfect *habēbat* is to be translated in the same way as *coēgerat,* past perfect of *cōgō;* it makes of *habēbat,* however, almost an auxiliary corresponding to English "had" as an auxiliary. The present of *habeō* can be used with a participle in the same way as the imperfect.

tum habēbat, praemittit, quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen īnsecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt. Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnīs populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter xv iter fēcērunt, ut inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum interesset.

Caesar Censures the Haeduans for Failing to Furnish Supplies

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar frūmentum quod Haeduī essent pūblicē pollicitī flāgitābat. Nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis magna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat, propterea ūtī minus poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcunt Haeduī; cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse dīcunt. Ubi sē

---

4. quī videant: relative clause of purpose.

quās in partēs, etc.: indirect question.

9. novissimō agmine, *from their rear line; agmine* is ablative of means.

11. satis habēbat prohibēre, *regarded it as sufficient to prevent.*

13. prīmum: supply *agmen.*

nōn amplius . . . interesset, *there was a distance of not more than five or six miles (a day).*

1. essent polliciti: subjunctive of informal indirect discourse.

3. posita, *situated;* see the note on *dīvīsa,* 1, 1.

5. frūmentō: object of *ūtī,* l. 6.

flūmine Ararī: ablative of the way or route.

6. propterea: take with *quod, for the reason that.*

7. Diem ex diē, *day after day.*

8. dūcunt, *put off; eum* is to be understood as object.

cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse: supply *frūmentum* as subject.

diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre, quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, convocāvit eōrum prīncipēs, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat. In hīs erant Dīviciācus et Liscus, quī summō magistrātuī praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem. Tum Caesar graviter eōs accūsat, quod, cum frūmentum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī possit, hostibus tam propinquīs, ab iīs nōn sublevētur, praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit.

Two Factions Among the Haeduans Pro-Roman and Anti-Roman

17. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus quod anteā tacuerat prōpōnit: "Sunt nōn nūllī, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Propter hōrum sēditiōsam atque improbam ōrātiōnem multitūdō frūmentum nōn cōnferunt quod dēbent: 'Praestat,' inquiunt, 'sī jam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possumus, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs lībertātem sine dubiō ēripient.' Ab īsdem tua cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs geruntur hostibus ēnūntiantur;

---

9. diūtius, *too long.*

12. magistrātuī: dative with the compound verb *praeerat.*

14. in suōs, *over his fellow-citizens.*

15. quod . . . nōn sublevētur: the same explanation applies to the subjunctive here as in l. 1.

16. hostibus tam propinquīs, *with the enemy so near.*

17. magnā ex parte, *to a great extent.*

1. quod: for *id quod.*

3. plūs possint, *have more influence.*

6. Praestat: the subject is the infinitive *perferre,* l. 8.

inquiunt: the subject is "they," referring to the trouble-makers of the preceding lines.

9. Haeduīs, *from the Haedui;* dative of separation with *ēripient.*

hōs coërcēre nōn possum. Quīn etiam intellegō quantō cum perīculō hanc necessāriam rem tibi ēnūntiāverim, et ob eam causam quam diū potuī tacuī."

Dumnorix the Leader of the Anti-Roman Faction

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīviciācī frātrem, dēsignārī sentiēbat, sed quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs jactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dīxerat. Dīcit līberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit, quī ita respondērunt: "Ipse est Dumnorīx, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā, cupidus rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habet, propterea quod, illō licente, contrā licērī audet nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxit et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāvit; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alit et circum sē habet, neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter potest, atque hujus potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō collocāvit; ipse ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habet, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs collocāvit. Favet et cupit Helvētiīs propter eam affīnitātem;

---

11. Quīn etiam, *nay more, more than that;* this phrase has a corrective force.

13. quam diū potuī, *as long as I could.*

2. plūribus praesentibus, *in the presence of too many,* ablative absolute.

4. sōlō: supply *eō*, referring to Liscus.

Dīcit: supply Liscus as subject.

6. magnā: with *grātiā*.

9. redēmpta habet, *has bought in;* see the note on *coāctum habēbat,* 15, 3. Allusion is made here to the ancient practice of letting out on contract to private individuals the collection of taxes. Dumnorix's prestige in his state was so great that none dared compete with him even though he offered low bids to the state officials.

14. largiter potest, *is very influential.*

16. uxōrem: the daughter of Orgetorix, as told in 3, 14.

ōdit etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia ejus dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī habet; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam habet grātiā dēspērat." Initium fugae equitātūs paucīs ante diēbus, ut Caesar in quaerendō repperit, factum erat ā Dumnorīge atque ejus equitibus (nam equitātuī quem auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī mīserant Dumnorīx praeerat); eōrum fugā reliquus erat equitātus perterritus.

Caesar Plans to Punish Dumnorix

19. Ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimae rēs accēdēbant, quod per fīnēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxerat, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāverat, quod ea omnia nōn modo injussū Caesaris et cīvitātis, sed etiam īnscientibus ipsīs fēcerat, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsābātur. Statuit igitur Caesar in eum aut ipse animadvertere aut cīvitātem animadvertere jubēre. Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Dīvi-

---

19. suō nōmine, *on his own account;* a book-keeping term.

quod, etc.: this clause contains a reason attributed to Dumnorix by the speaker, and so on the principle of informal indirect discourse has its verbs, *dēminūta sit* and *restitūta sit,* in the subjunctive.

22. accidat, *should befall.*

23. imperiō, *under the sovereignty;* ablative of attendant circumstance.

24. eā: with *grātiā.*

25. in quaerendō, *upon investigation.*

27. auxiliō Caesarī, *to the aid of Caesar; auxiliō* is dative of purpose, *Caesarī* dative of reference.

1. quod trādūxerat, *that,* etc.; a noun clause in apposition with *rēs,* as in 14, 7.

2. obsidēs dandōs cūrāverat: the use of the gerundive with *cūrō* is explained in the note on 13, 2.

4. īnscientibus ipsīs, *without their knowledge;* ablative absolute.

6. in eum animadvertere, *inflict punishment upon;* literally, *turn the attention to.*

7. rēbus: dative with *repugnābat,* which as a verb of opposing belongs to the list of special verbs governing the dative.

ciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, jūstitiam, temperantiam cognōverat; nam nē ejus suppliciō Dīviciācī animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī jubet et, cotīdiānīs interpretibus remōtīs, per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō colloquitur; simul commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit. Petit atque hortātur ut sine ejus offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō, causā cognitā, statuat, vel cīvitātem statuere jubeat.

Caesar Yields to the Pleas of Diviciacus, Brother of Dumnorix

20. Dīviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret: "Sciō," inquit, "illa esse vēra, neque quisquam ex eō plūs quam ego dolōris capit, propter eā quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum possem domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam posset, per mē crēvit; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam, sed paene ad perniciem meam ūtitur. Commoveor tamen et amōre frāternō et ex-

---

9. **in,** *towards.*

10. **nē,** *that;* how is *ut* to be translated after a verb of fearing?

11. **cōnārētur,** *should attempt;* the anticipatory subjunctive with *priusquam.*

14. **cui,** *in whom;* dative with *fidem habēbat.*

15. **ipsō praesente,** *in his own presence; ipsō* refers to Diviciacus.

18. **ipse:** refers to Caesar; translate, *that either he himself* (*be allowed to*) *decide, or to order the state to decide.*

2. **nē,** *not to;* the clause is a noun clause, object of *obsecrāre.*

gravius, *too severe.*

4. **dolōris:** genitive of the whole after *plūs.*

plūrimum possem, *I was very influential.*

6. **quibus:** to be translated not by a relative, but by a demonstrative.

īstimātiōne vulgī. Quod sī quid eī ā tē gravius accidet, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud tē teneō, nēmō exīstimābit nōn meā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē tōtīus Galliae animī ā mē āvertentur." Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar ejus dextram prēndit; cōnsōlātus rogat fīnem ōrandī faciat; tantī ejus apud sē grātiam esse ostendit ut et reī pūblicae injūriam et suum dolōrem ejus voluntātī ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Dīviciācō frātrī condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur scīre possit.

Caesar Plans to Surprise the Helvetians

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus quī cognōscerent mīsit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā

---

9. Quod sī quid, *but if anything.*

ā tē, *from you, at your hands.*

13. rogat . . . faciat: translate as if *rogat ut faciat; ut* is sometimes missing in noun clauses after verbs of requesting and commanding.

14. tantī: *of so much value, worth so much;* the genitive of this word (in the neuter) as well as *parvī, magnī, quantī, plūris,* is employed to express indefinite value.

15. voluntātī ac precibus, *to meet his wish and prayers;* the datives are dependent upon *condōnet.* Explain the mood of this last word.

18. in reliquum tempus, *for the future.*

19. frātrī, *for the sake of his brother.*

20-21. agat, loquātur: subjunctives in indirect questions, while *possit* is subjunctive in a clause of purpose.

1. certior factus: remember that this phrase takes the construction of indirect discourse, *hostēs cōnsēdisse.*

3. in circuitū, *on all sides.*

quī cognōscerent: relative clause of purpose; supply *explōrātōrēs* as antecedent of *quī;* the verb has for object the indirect question *quālis esset nātūra.*

vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et iīs ducibus quī iter cognōverant summum jugum montis ascendere jubet; quid suī cōnsiliī sit ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī mīlitāris perītissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

The Surprise Fails, Owing to the Mistake of an Officer

22. Prīmā lūce summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenēbātur; ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus aberat, neque, ut posteā ex captīvīs comperit, aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus erat; sed Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dīcit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit. Labiēnus monte occupātō nostrōs expectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Caesar enim

---

5. prō praetōre, *with praetorian rank.* Labienus was Caesar's most trusted lieutenant. He had been assigned to Caesar's staff with the honorary designation *prō praetōre,* as if he had held the office of praetor in Rome.

6. iīs ducibus, *those men as guides.*

7. quid suī cōnsiliī sit, *what his plan is; cōnsiliī* is genitive of the whole with *quid.*

10. reī mīlitāris, *in military affairs;* the genitive is dependent on the adjective *perītissimus.*

11. M. Crassī: supply *exercitū.*

1. summus mōns, *the top of the mountain;* "the highest mountain" would be *mōns altissimus.*

3. neque: take with *aut . . . aut, and neither . . . nor.*

ut, *as.*

4. equō admissō, *with his horse at a gallop.*

5. accurrit: connect this verb with *dīcit* by supplying *et.* Look for another instance below of an omitted conjunction.

6. id, *this fact;* object of *cognōvisse.*

9. proeliō: what kind of ablative?

eum adventum suum expectāre jusserat, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum quod nōn vīdisset prō vīsō sibi renūntiāsse. Eō diē quō cōnsuērat intervāllō hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

Caesar Turns Aside Toward Bibracte, Pursued by the Helvetians

23. Postrīdiē ejus diēī, quod omnīnō bīduī frūmentum superat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāns, iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte, oppidum Haeduōrum, īre contendit. Nam hoc oppidum longē maximum et cōpiōsissimum erat atque nōn amplius mīlibus passuum XVIII aberat. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemiliī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō, nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt.

Both Sides Prepare for Battle

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque quī sustinēret hos-

---

11. **Multō diē,** *well on in the day;* this need not imply anything more than "well on into the morning."

13. **quod:** for *id quod.*

14. **prō vīsō,** *as seen.*

quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, *at the customary interval.*

1. **ejus diēī:** this phrase may be omitted in translation.

bīduī frūmentum, *a two days' supply of grain.*

2. **reī frūmentāriae:** dative with *prōspiciendum* (*esse*), *must look out for;* the verb is used impersonally.

8. **ā novissimō agmine,** *on the rear line;* the positions were now reversed, with the Helvetians following the Roman army.

1. **animum advertit:** this phrase is equivalent to *animadvertit* and takes *id* as a direct object.

2. **quī sustinēret:** relative clause of purpose.

tium impetum mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; in summō jugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat et omnia auxilia collocāvit; impedīmenta sarcināsque in ūnum locum cōnferrī, et eum ab hīs quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant mūnīrī jussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, rejectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

The Battle Begins

25. Caesar prīmum suum, deinde omnium ex cōnspectū remōvit equōs, ut aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae tolleret; cohortātus inde suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs, ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs, facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disjectā, gladiīs dēstrictīs, in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs magnō ad pugnam erat impedīmentō quod plūra eōrum scūta ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfīxa et colligāta erant; nam cum

---

3. **in colle mediō,** *half way up the hill; medius,* like *summus,* is one of the adjectives denoting a part.

triplicem aciem: these lines were arranged one behind another; each line consisted of about eight ranks.

7. **eum:** supply *locum.*

9. **cōnfertissimā aciē,** *in closest array.*

10. **phalange:** a close formation, in which the mass was protected by the shields of the front rank held out before them and by the shields of the ranks behind held overhead.

1. **suum:** supply *equum.*

omnium: the officers only are meant.

2. **aequātō . . . perīculō,** *by making the danger of all equal.*

5. **gladiīs:** the most effective part of a Roman attack was with the sword, which was short and necessitated close fighting.

Gallīs . . . erat impedīmentō, *it was a great hindrance to the Gauls in the battle; impedīmentō* is a dative of purpose or end; the subject of *erat* is the noun clause following, *quod . . . colligāta erant, that,* etc.

6. **plūra,** *in many cases;* the word limits *scūta.* In the phalanx formation the shields overlapped, thus making it possible for a javelin to pierce two shields at one time.

ferrum sē īnflexisset, neque id ēvellere neque sinistrā impedītā satis commodē pugnāre poterant; multī igitur, diū jactātō bracchiō, praeoptāvērunt scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pugnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns suberat circiter mīlle passuum spatiō, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter XV agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō aggressī circumveniēbant; id cōnspicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus īnstāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī signa bipertītō intulērunt; prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs ac summōtīs resisteret, tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

Defeat and Flight of the Helvetians — Caesar Pursues

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī

---

8. ferrum: this refers to the iron head of the javelin, the neck of which was of softer metal than the tip.

sinistrā impedītā, *with the left hand encumbered,* ablative absolute; the shield was carried on the left arm.

9. jactātō bracchiō, *after tossing their arms about;* ablative absolute.

10. nūdō corpore, *with unprotected bodies.*

12. eō: an adverb.

13. Captō: the verb is here used in the sense of *reach, gain.*

14. agmen claudēbant, *brought up the rear.*

15. novissimīs praesidiō erant, *served as a rear guard;* two datives, one of reference, the other of purpose.

ex itinere, *forthwith, at once;* literally, *from their march, i.e.,* without waiting to effect the usual battle formation.

16. ab, *on.*

18. signa bipertītō intulērunt, *advanced in two divisions;* how is it literally?

19. victīs ac summōtīs: referring to the Helvetians, while *venientēs* refers to the Boii and Tulingi.

1. pugnātum est: translate as if *pugnāvērunt, they fought;* or combine with *proeliō* and translate, *a long and stubborn double battle was waged.*

2. alterī . . . alterī, *the one party . . . the other,* referring respectively to the Helvetians and to the Boii and Tulingi.

sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedīmenta pugnātum est, proptereā quod prō vāllō carrōs objēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla conjiciēbant, et nōn nūllī inter carrōs raedāsque matarās ac trāgulās subjiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt; in fīnēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūntiōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē juvārent; aliter sē eōs eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse, trīduō intermissō, cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

Surrender of the Helvetians

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere con-

---

5. cum, *although.*

āversum hostem, *an enemy in flight, the back of an enemy.*

6. Ad multam noctem, *till the night was well advanced.*

ad impedīmenta, *at the baggage.*

7. prō vāllō, *as a rampart.*

15. occīsōrum, *of the slain;* perfect participle as a noun.

17. nē . . . juvārent, *not to assist;* a noun clause depending on the idea of command in *litterās nūntiōsque mīsit.*

nēve: the regular word for *and not* between subjunctives in clauses of purpose, noun clauses of will, or indirect commands.

18. sē . . . habitūrum (esse): indirect discourse depending on the idea of saying suggested by *litterās . . . mīsit.*

eōdem locō quō, *in the same position as.*

2. Quī cum: translate as if *cum iī.*

convēnissent: usually an intransitive verb, but transitive here with *eum* as direct object.

vēnissent, sē ad pedēs prōjēcērunt suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petiērunt. Caesar eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum expectāre jussit. Eō postquam pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs, quī ad eōs perfūgissent, poposcit. Dum ea conquīruntur et cōnferuntur, circiter hominum mīlia VI ejus pāgī quī Verbigenus appellātur prīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contenderunt.

Terms Granted the Helvetians

28. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per fīnēs ierant, hīs ut conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus armīs perfugīs trāditīs, in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrīgōs in fīnēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī jussit et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque

---

3. **flentēs,** *with tears.*

5. **Eō:** an adverb.

6. **Dum ea conquīruntur,** *while these were being hunted up;* remember that *dum* denoting a situation takes the present indicative, whatever the tense of the principal verb.

ea: neuter, because its antecedents are of mixed gender, one of them, *arma,* being neuter.

8. **prīmā nocte,** *at nightfall.*

1. **Quod,** *this,* referring to the fact related at the end of the preceding chapter.

quōrum . . . hīs: translate in the order *hīs per fīnēs quōrum.*

2. **conquīrerent, redūcerent:** supply as object *eōs.*

sī . . . vellent, *if they wished to be free from guilt before him; sibi* is dative of reference.

3. **reductōs:** agreeing with *eōs* to be supplied.

in hostium numerō habuit, *treated them as enemies; i.e.,* he either put them to death or sold them as slaves.

6. **omnibus frūgibus āmissīs:** they had burned all the grain except what they were going to take with them, 5, 5.

7. **quō famem tolerārent,** *with which they could prevent starvation;* the clause is descriptive, with an added idea of possibility.

8. **facerent,** *furnish.*

quōs incenderant restituere jussit. Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trānsīrent et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boiōs in fīnibus Haeduōrum collocāvit; id enim petēbant Haeduī, quī Boiōs ēgregiā virtūte cognōverant; posteā eōs in parem jūris lībertātisque condiciōnem atque ipsī erant recēpērunt.

The Numbers of the Helvetians and Allies

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōminātim ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīsset eōrum quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim quot puerī, senēs, mulierēsque. Quārum omnium ratiōnum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlium CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīlium XXXVI, Latobrīgōrum XIIII, Rauracōrum XXIII, Boiōrum XXXII; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia nōnāgintā duo.

9\. **eā ratiōne,** *for this reason;* explained by the noun clause *quod nōluit, that he did not wish,* etc.

11\. **nē,** *for fear that;* introducing a clause of purpose.

13\. **Galliae prōvinciae:** the two words are in apposition.

15\. **ēgregiā virtūte:** ablative of description, in the predicate after *cognōverant.*

16\. **parem atque,** *the same as; atque* and *ac* after words of likeness may be employed to mean *as.*

1\. **litterīs Graecīs,** *in the Greek alphabet;* the Gauls had devised no alphabet of their own. The language of the records was of course Gallic. Familiarity with the Greek alphabet was due to intercourse with traders and with the city of Massilia, modern Marseilles, a Greek settlement in origin.

3\. **ratiō,** *list, record.*

quī numerus exīsset: an indirect question depending on *ratiō.*

4\. **possent:** subjunctive in a relative descriptive clause.

6\. **capitum,** *of persons;* but the word may be omitted in translation. Compare our use of "head" in speaking of cattle.

8\. **ad,** *about;* used adverbially here and in 9.

Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium C et X.

Envoys from Gallic States Congratulate Caesar

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō, tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt et ita locūtī sunt: "Tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum injūriīs populus Rōmānus ab hīs poenās bellō repetiit, tamen ea rēs nōn minus ex ūsū Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidit; eō enim cōnsiliō flōrentissimīs rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī relīquērunt, ut tōtī Galliae bellum īnferrent imperiōque potīrentur locumque domiciliō opportūnissimum ac frūctuōsissimum dēligerent reliquāsque cīvitātēs stīpendiāriās habērent. Petimus ut tuā voluntāte nōbīs concilium tōtīus Galliae in diem certam indīcere liceat: habēmus quāsdam rēs, quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū ā tē petere volumus. Eā rē permissā, diem conciliō cōnstituērunt et jūre jūrandō, nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

---

10. cēnsū habitō, *when a count was made.*

2. grātulātum: supine, expressing purpose. What limitations are there with regard to the use of this construction? See app. 125.

3. prō, *in retaliation for.*

5. ex ūsū, *to the advantage.*

eō cōnsiliō, *with the purpose; cōnsiliō* is explained by the clause, *ut . . . habērent.*

6. flōrentissimīs rēbus: ablative absolute, which may be translated by a concessive clause, *although,* etc.

8. domiciliō, *for a home,* dative of purpose.

10. ut nōbīs liceat, *that it be permitted us;* a noun clause, object of *petimus.* The subject of *liceat* is the infinitive *indīcere.*

11. ex, *by; ex* means *from,* (*starting*) *from,* and so easily comes to mean *in accordance with,* or as here, *by;* compare *ex ūsū,* l. 5.

13. jūre jūrandō . . . inter sē sānxērunt, *bouna each other by an oath;* the substance of the oath is given in the clauses *nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus . . . mandātum esset, that none should announce their conclusions but those commissioned to do so by common consent.*

Gallic Envoys Appeal to Caesar for Aid Against the Germans

31. Eō conciliō dīmissō, īdem prīncipēs cīvitātum quī ante fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt colloquiumque sēcrētum petiērunt. Eā rē impetrātā, sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōjēcērunt: "Nōn minus volumus," inquiunt, "ea quae dīxerimus cēlāre quam ea quae petimus impetrāre, proptereā quod, sī ēnūntiātum erit, summum in cruciātum veniēmus." Locūtus est prō hīs Dīviciācus Haeduus: "Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs sunt duae; hārum alterīus prīncipātum tenent Haeduī, alterīus Arvernī. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde arcessītī sunt. Hōrum prīmō circiter mīlia xv Rhēnum trānsiērunt; posteāquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamāvērunt, trāductī plūrēs; nunc est in Galliā ad c et xx mīlium numerus. Cum hīs Haeduī eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendērunt; magnam calamitātem pulsī accēpērunt; omnem enim nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmīsērunt. Quibus proeliīs calamitātibusque frāctī, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitiō atque amīcitiā plūrimum ante in Galliā potuerant, coāctī sunt Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs cīvitātis; jūre jūrandō autem cīvitātem obstrīnxērunt sēsē neque obsidēs repetītūrōs neque auxilium

---

3. Caesarī ad pedēs, *at Caesar's feet; Caesarī* is a dative of reference, where we should expect a possessive genitive.

6. sī ēnūntiātum erit, *if* (*what we say*) *is reported.*

10. contenderent, *had contended; multōs annōs* has the same value as *jam prīdem* and *jam diū* in giving the present and the imperfect tenses the meanings of perfects and past perfects.

11. mercēde, *for hire.*

14. ad, *about;* an adverb.

19. virtūte, hospitiō, amīcitiā: ablatives of cause.

20. ante, *before;* an adverb.

21. obsidēs, *as hostages.*

22. sēsē, etc.: the substance of the oath is given in indirect discourse, *that they would not ask back their hostages,* etc.

ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs, sed perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō futūrōs esse. Ūnus ego sum ex omnī cīvitāte Haeduōrum quī addūcī nōn potuerim, ut jūrārem aut līberōs meōs obsidēs darem. Ob eam rem ex cīvitāte prōfūgī et Rōmam ad senātum vēnī auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque jūre jūrandō neque obsidibus tenēbar. Sed pejus victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs accidit, proptereā quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum fīnibus cōnsēdit tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī est optimus tōtīus Galliae, occupāvit, et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere jubet, proptereā quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum XXIIII ad eum vēnērunt, quibus locus ac sēdēs parantur. Futūrum est paucīs annīs ut omnēs Gallī ē fīnibus pellantur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānseant; neque enim cōnferendus est Gallicus cum Germānōrum agrō, neque haec cōnsuētūdō vīctūs cum illā comparanda. Ariovistus autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcit, superbē et crūdēliter imperat, obsidēs nōbilissimī cujusque līberōs poscit et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque

---

23. illōrum = *Sēquanōrum.*

25. quī addūcī nōn potuerim: a relative descriptive clause.

ut jūrārem, *to take oath;* dependent on *addūcī.*

27. auxilium postulātum: for the supine with a direct object see the note on 11, 4.

29. pejus, *a worse fortune;* an adjective used as a noun.

31. tertiam partem agrī Sēquanī: this was a part of Alsace.

35. Futūrum est, *the result will be;* the subject is the noun clause *u . . . trānseant.*

37 cōnferendus: with the same meaning as *comparanda,* l. 39.

38. haec = *Gallica.*

39. ut semel vīcit, *having once defeated;* this was probably in 60 B.C. **Gallōrum:** it is possible that this word is intended to include the Sequani. If so, it would mean that the Sequani had regretted their alliance with Ariovistus and had combined with the Haedui in an attempt to drive him back across the Rhine.

41. in eōs ēdit, *inflicts upon them.*

omnia exempla cruciātūsque, *cruelties of every kind;* literally, *all examples and cruelties.*

ēdit, sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem ejus facta est. Homō est barbarus, īrācundus, temerārius; nōn possunt ejus imperia diūtius sustinērī. Nisi quid in tē populōque Rōmānō erit auxiliī, omnēs Gallī cōgentur, ut Helvētiī ante, domō ēmigrāre, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, petere fortūnamque, quaecumque accidet, experīrī. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō erunt, nōn dubitō quīn dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sunt gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Tū vel auctōritāte tuā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī cēterōs Germānōs Galliā prohibēre potes Gallōsque omnēs ab Ariovistī injūriā dēfendere."

The Sad Plight of the Sequani

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Dīviciācō habitā, omnēs quī aderant magnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt. Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere quās cēterī facerent, sed trīstēs, capite dēmissō, terram intuērī. Ejus reī quae causa esset mīrātus ex ipsīs quaesiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondērunt sed in eādem trīstitiā tacitī permānsērunt. Cum ab hīs saepius quaereret neque ūllam

---

42. ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem, *at his nod or in accordance with his wish.*

45. auxiliī: genitive of the whole; with *quid, some assistance.*

48. quīn, *that;* this is the regular meaning after a word of doubting with a negative.

dē, *on;* with *supplicium sūmat;* what is the literal translation?

50. recentī victōriā: the victory over the Helvetians.

51. Galliā: ablative of separation, with *prohibēre.*

1. habitā, *having been delivered.*

2. animadvertit: like some other verbs meaning "see," "notice," this verb may take indirect discourse, *ūnōs Sēquanōs facere.*

3. ūnōs, *alone.*

4. capite dēmissō: ablative absolute.

5. quae causa esset: indirect question, depending on *mīrātus.* Remember that the perfect participles of several deponent verbs are to be translated as present; so *mīrātus, wondering.*

7. saepius, *again and again.*

omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset, īdem Dīviciācus Haeduus respondit: "Hōc est miserior et gravior fortūna Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audent absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem sīcut praesentis horrent; reliquīs enim Gallīs fugae facultās datur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā fīnēs suōs Ariovistum recēpērunt, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte ejus sunt, omnēs cruciātūs sunt perferendī."

Caesar Resolves to Stop German Encroachments upon Gaul

33. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōnfirmāvit pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūraé futūram: magnam sē habēre spem et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum fīnem injūriīs factūrum. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā, concilium dīmīsit. Secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur ad eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam: imprīmīs, quod Haeduī, frātrēs cōnsanguineīque saepenumerō ā senātū appellātī, in servitūte atque in diciōne Germānōrum tenēbantur, eōrumque obsidēs apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs erant; quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī turpissimum sibi

---

8. **īdem,** *again;* literally, *the same* (*person*).

9. **Hōc:** for the case see the note on *hōc*, 2, 6.

10. **reliquōrum,** *that of the remainder.*

12. **sīcut praesentis,** *as if* (*he were*) *present.*

13. **Sēquanīs omnēs cruciātūs sunt perferendī,** *the Sequani have to submit to all cruelties. Sēquanīs* is a dative of agent, the regular construction used to express agency with the second periphrastic conjugation.

2. **sibi eam rem cūrae futūram** (esse), *that he would give attention to their case; sibi* and *cūrae* are datives of reference and purpose respectively.

3. **sē habēre:** indirect discourse, depending on a verb of saying implied in *pollicitus est.*

5. **Secundum ea,** *in addition to these things, i.e.*, the facts alleged by Diviciacus.

7. **quod,** *the fact that.*

10. **quod,** *a thing which;* relative pronoun, neuter because referring to the fact contained in the preceding sentence.

et reī pūblicae esse arbitrābātur. Paulātim autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsīre et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre populō Rōmānō perīculōsum vidēbat; exīstimābat autem hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs, omnī Galliā occupātā, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam atque inde in Italiam exitūrōs esse, praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus dīvideret; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē occurrendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

Caesar Is Refused a Conference with the German King Ariovistus

34. Quam ob rem, lēgātīs ad Ariovistum missīs, ab eō postulāvit ut aliquem locum medium utrīusque colloquiō dēligeret: velle sēsē dē rē pūblicā et summīs utrīusque rēbus cum eō agere. Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: "Sī quid

---

11. Germānōs trānsīre: elsewhere in his commentaries Caesar says that at an earlier time the Gauls had made war on the Germans and had taken possession of territory on the German side of the Rhine.

13. perīculōsum: predicate adjective after *esse* (to be supplied); the subject of *esse* is the infinitives with subject accusative preceding, *Germānōs cōnsuēscere et multitūdinem venīre;* translate, *he saw that it was dangerous to the Roman people for the Germans gradually to form the habit of crossing the Rhine and for a large number of them to come into Gaul.*

15. ut, *as; fēcissent* is subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse.

Cimbrī Teutonīque: these were the German tribes that Marius conquered. See his life, page 208, l. 15 ff.

17. Rhodanus, *the Rhone* (*alone*).

quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē occurrendum putābat, *this state of affairs he thought must be met as soon as possible; rēbus* is dative with the compound verb *occurrendum* (*esse*), which is itself used impersonally.

20. nōn: take with *ferendus* and translate, *unbearable.*

2. medium utrīusque, *midway between them.*

3. velle sēsē, *he wished* (*he said*).

rē pūblicā, *affairs of state.*

summīs utrīusque rēbus, *questions of the greatest interest to both.*

mihi ā Caesare opus esset, ad eum vēnissem; sī quid ille mē vult, illum ad mē venīre oportet. Praetereā neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audeō quās Caesar possidet, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlīmentō in ūnum locum contrahere possum. Mihi autem mīrum vidētur quid in meā Galliā, quam bellō vīcī, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtiī sit."

Caesar Sends Envoys to Ariovistus with Demands

35. Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: "Quoniam in cōnsulātū Caesaris rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus nunc in colloquium venīre invītātus gravāris atque dē commūnī rē dīcere et cognōscere nōn vīs, haec sunt quae ā tē postulat: prīmum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūcās; deinde ut obsidēs quōs habēs ab Haeduīs reddās Sēquanīsque permittās ut idem faciant; nēve Haeduōs injūriā lacessās nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum īnferās. Sī id ita fēceris Caesarī populōque Rōmānō perpetua grātia atque amīcitia tēcum erit; sī Caesar nōn impetrāverit, Haeduōrum injūriās nōn negleget. Nam ex

---

5. esset: *quid* is the subject, *opus* is predicate nominative; translate, *if I needed anything of Caesar, I should have come to him.*

sī quid ille mē vult, *if he wishes anything of me; volō,* like some verbs of asking, may take two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing, provided the latter is the accusative of a neuter pronoun or adjective.

10. quid Caesarī . . . negōtiī sit, *what business Caesar has;* the clause is an indirect question depending on *mīrum; Caesarī* is dative of possession, and *negōtiī* a genitive of the whole with *quid.*

3. rēx atque amīcus appellātus, *after receiving the title of king and friend.*

4. invītātus, *when invited.*

6. nē . . . trādūcās, *that you shall not lead,* etc.; this and the clauses following are noun clauses defining *haec.*

10. Caesarī, populō: datives of possession.

12. impetrāverit: *impetrāre* is often used without an object, *gain one s request.*

senātūs cōnsultō, quod paucīs ante annīs factum est, quīcumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinet Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfendere dēbet."

Ariovistus' Defiant Reply

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: "Jūs est bellī ut victōrēs victīs quem ad modum velint imperent. Item populus Rōmānus victīs nōn ad alterīus praescrīptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuēvit. Sī ego populum Rōmānum in ejus jūre nōn impediō, nōn oportet mē ā populō Rōmānō in meō jūre impedīrī. Haeduī, bellī fortūnā temptātā, superātī sunt mihique stīpendiāriī sunt factī. Magnam Caesar injūriam facit, quī suō adventū vectīgālia mihi dēteriōra facit. Haeduīs obsidēs nōn reddam, neque iīs neque eōrum sociīs injūriā bellum īnferam, sī in eō manēbunt quod convēnit stīpendiumque quotannīs pendent; sī id nōn fēcerint, longē iīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī aberit. Quod mihi Caesar dēnūntiat sē Haeduōrum injūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēmō mēcum sine suā perniciē contendit. Cum volet, congrediātur; intelleget quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIIII tēctum nōn subierint, virtūte possint."

---

2. quem ad modum, *in what manner.*

velint: subjunctive by attraction, since its clause depends upon another clause in the subjunctive.

3. ad, *according to.*

8. quī dēteriōra facit, *in decreasing;* how, literally?

10. injūriā, *without reason, unjustly;* the ablative of some nouns may be used without a preposition to express manner; *cāsū, by accident,* is another.

sī in eō manēbunt quod convēnit, *if they abide by our compact.*

11. longē iīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī aberit, *the title of brothers of the Roman people will be of little value to them;* literally, *will be far away for them; frāternum = frātrum.*

12. Quod, *as to the fact that;* with *dēnūntiat, as for Caesar's threat that,* etc.

14. congrediātur, *let him come on,* volitive subjunctive.

15. quid virtūte possint, *how strong they are in valor.*

Complaints by the Haeduans and the Treveri of German Aggressions

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur, et lēgātī ab Haeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant; Haeduī querēbantur, quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent, fīnēs eōrum populārentur: sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem dīcēbant pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad rīpās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur; hīs praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi exīstimāvit, nē, sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē conjūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā, magnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

Caesar Seizes the Stronghold of Vesontio

38. Cum trīduī viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est eī Ariovistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, contendere. Id magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar exīstimābat. Namque omnium rērum quae ad bellum ūsuī erant summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, idemque nātūrā locī sīc mūniēbātur, ut magnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, proptereā

---

4. **sēsē . . . potuisse:** indirect discourse depending on a verb of saying implied in *querēbantur*.

obsidibus datīs, *by giving hostages;* ablative absolute.

9. **mātūrandum** (esse) **sibi,** *that he must make haste;* for the dative of agent compare 32, 13, and note.

10. **minus facile resistī posset,** *resistance could be made less easily; resistī* is an impersonal use of the passive.

1. **viam:** accusative of extent, further defined by the genitive of measure, *trīduī*.

4. **praecavendum** (esse), *must be forestalled.*

5. **ūsuī,** *of use;* dative of purpose.

7. **dūcendum:** the verb *dūcere* is sometimes used with the meaning *prolong*.

quod flūmen Dūbis, ut circinō circumductum, paene tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum DC, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet magnā altitūdine, ita ut rādīcēs montis ex utrāque parte rīpae flūminis contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppidō conjungit. Hūc Caesar magnīs nocturnīs diurnīsque itineribus contendit occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium collocat.

Caesar's Army Panic-Stricken from Stories of German Prowess

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem reī frūmentāriae commeātūsque causā morātur, nostrī Gallōs ac mercātōrēs dē Germānīs interrogant; illī ingentī magnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdibilī virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant (saepenumerō sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē vultum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dīcēbant ferre potuisse); quibus ex vōcibus tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret. Hic prīmum ortus est ā tribūnīs mīlitum, praefec-

---

8. **ut,** *as if.*

9. **spatium:** object of *continet.*

10. **pedum DC:** genitive of measure in the predicate; it is to be noted that the comparative *amplius* is here used as an adverb and so without the ablative of comparison.

12. **mūrus circumdatus,** *an encircling wall.* A modern French fort is located at about this point.

1. **ad,** *in the vicinity of.*

3. **magnitūdine, virtūte, exercitātiōne:** ablatives of description, in the predicate.

6. **aciem,** *flash.*

9. **tribūnīs mīlitum:** the military tribunes were officers in the army alone, and not to be confused with the tribunes of the people. They were men of less experience than the *lēgātī.*

praefectīs: the prefects were officers of auxiliary forces, some of them Romans, some of the same nationality as their troops. The Roman prefects are meant in this instance.

tīs, reliquīsque quī ex urbe amīcitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn magnum in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbant; hī, variīs causīs domum proficīscendī illātīs, petēbant ut ejus voluntāte discēdere licēret; nōnnūllī pudōre adductī, ut timōris suspīciōnem vītārent, remanēbant. Hī neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditī in tabernāculīs aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suīs commūne perīculum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtīs castrīs testāmenta obsignābantur. Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātim etiam iī quī magnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, mīlitēs centuriōnēsque quīque equitātuī praeerant, perturbābantur. Quī sē ex hīs minus timidōs exīstimārī volēbant, dīcēbant: "Nōn hostem verēmur, sed angustiās itineris et magnitūdinem silvārum quae intercēdunt inter nōs atque Ariovistum; timēmus etiam ut rēs frūmentāria satis commodē supportārī possit." Nōnnūllī etiam Caesarī nūntiābant mīlitēs propter timōrem neque castra mōtūrōs neque signa lātūrōs.

Caesar Holds a Council of Officers and Allays Their Fears

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus, vehe-

---

10. reliquīs: sons of good families who accompanied Caesar without performing military service.

12. illātīs, *alleging.*

13. ut . . . vītārent, a clause of purpose.

17. tōtīs castrīs, *all through the camp;* some words in very common use may be employed as locative ablatives without a preposition to express the place where.

20. centuriōnēs: the centurions were seasoned veterans who had been promoted from the ranks.

quīque: for *et iī quī.*

21. Quī ex hīs, *such of them as.*

24. ut rēs frūmentāria . . . possit, *that grain supplies can not be brought up to sufficiently good advantage;* what is the meaning of *nē* after verbs of fearing?

1. omnium ōrdinum: it is evident that grades were recognized among the centurions; what the basis of distinction was is not known.

menter eōs incūsāvit: "Vestrum nōn est," inquit, "aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcāminī quaerere aut cōgitāre. Ariovistus mē cōnsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amīcitiam appetiit; cūr hunc tam temere quisquam ab officiō discessūrum jūdicat? Equidem exīstimō, cognitīs meīs postulātīs atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque meam neque populī Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre atque āmentiā impulsus bellum intulerit, quid tandem verēminī aut cūr dē vestrā virtūte aut dē meā dīligentiā dēspērātis? Factum est ejus hostis perīculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō pulsīs; factum etiam nūper in Italiā servīlī tumultū, quī tamen aliquid ūsūs ac disciplīnae ā nōbīs accēperant. Ex quō jūdicārī potest quantum habeat in sē bonī cōnstantia, proptereā quod quī aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā timēbantur, hī posteā armātī ac victōrēs ā mīlitibus Rōmānīs superātī sunt. Dēnique hī sunt eīdem quōs saepenumerō Helvētiī nōn sōlum in suīs sed etiam in illōrum fīnibus superāvērunt; quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuērunt. Nēmō adversō proeliō et fugā Gallōrum commoveātur. Ariovistus enim multōs mēn-

---

3. Vestrum nōn est, *it is not for you;* literally, *it is not yours.* The subject of *est* is *quaerere* and *cōgitāre.*

7. Equidem, *for my part.*

12. perīculum, *trial;* with *ejus hostis* as dependent objective genitive.

13. Cimbrīs . . . pulsīs, *in the defeat of the Cimbri and Teutons by Marius;* the ablative absolute defines the occasion.

factum: supply *est perīculum.*

14. servīlī tumultū, *in the uprising of slaves.* This was a war in 73-71 carried on by an army of runaway slaves led by the gladiator Spartacus. The slaves in many cases were German prisoners of war or their descendants.

quī: the antecedent is *servōrum,* implied in *servīlī.*

ūsūs, disciplīnae: genitives of the whole, depending on *aliquid.*

16. quantum bonī, *how much good; bonī* is genitive of the whole.

quī . . . hī: translate in the order *hī, quī.*

20. quī: the Helvetii; the sentence is a reference to the recent successful campaign against the Helvetii.

21. Nēmō commoveātur, *let no one be disturbed.*

sēs castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuerat neque suī potestātem fēcerat; deinde cum Gallī dēspērārent jam dē pugnā et dispersī essent, subitō eōs adortus magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcit. Hāc ratiōne nē ipse quidem spērat nostrōs exercitūs capī posse. Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris cōnferunt faciunt arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre videantur aut praescrībere audeant. Haec mihi sunt cūrae; frūmentum Sēquanī, Leucī, Lingonēs subministrant, jamque sunt in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsī brevī tempore jūdicābitis. Quod vōs signa nōn lātūrōs dīcitur, nihil eā rē commoveor; quibuscumque enim exercitus nōn pāruit, aut male rē gestā fortūna dēfuit aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritia est convicta; mea innocentia perpetuā vītā, fēlīcitās Helvētiōrum bellō est perspecta. Itaque quod in longiōrem diem collātūrus fuī repraesentābō, et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra mōvēbō, ut quam prīmum intellegere possim utrum apud vōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valeat. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequētur, tamen cum sōlā decimā legiōne ībō, dē quā nōn dubitō, mihique ea praetōria cohors erit." Huic legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter virtūtem cōnfīdēbat maximē.

---

23. suī potestātem, *a chance at him.*

27. Quī: for *iī quī.*

in reī frūmentāriae simulātiōnem, *to a pretended concern about the supply of grain.*

29. cum, *since, in that.*

33. Quod, *as to the fact that.*

nihil, *not at all.*

35. dēfuit: supply *iīs*, dative, *has failed them.*

aliquō facinore compertō avāritia est convicta, *through the disclosure of some misdeed avarice has been proved* (*against them*).

36. fēlīcitās: a Roman general set great store by his "good fortune."

37. in longiōrem diem collātūrus fuī, *what I was going to postpone.*

43. legiōnī: dative with *indulserat* and *cōnfīdēbat*, both belonging to the class of special verbs that govern the dative.

The Confidence of the Army Is Restored — Caesar Marches Against Ariovistus

41. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā, mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs summaque alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī innāta est, prīncepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs mīlitum eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum jūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōnfirmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs mīlitum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt, ut Caesarī satisfacerent: sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse neque dē summā bellī suum jūdicium, sed imperātōris esse exīstimāvisse. Caesar, eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquīsītō per Dīviciācum, quod ex Gallīs eī maximam fidem habēbat, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dīxerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs mīlibus passuum IIII et XX abesse.

Arrangements for an Interview Between Caesar and Ariovistus

42. Cognitō Caesaris adventū, Ariovistus per lēgātōs eī nūntiāvit sē jam in colloquium venīre velle; quoniam Caesar propius accessisset, sē id sine perīculō facere posse exīstimāre. Nōn respuit condiciōnem Caesar jamque eum ad sānitātem revertī pertināciāque dēsistere arbitrābātur. Diēs colloquiō

---

1. **mīrum in modum,** *in a marvelous manner.*

3. **prīnceps,** *first;* an adjective for an adverb.

6. **cum tribūnīs ēgērunt,** *urged the tribunes.*

7. **sē . . . exīstimāvisse:** indirect discourse, (*saying that*) *they,* etc.

8. **suum, imperātōris:** in the predicate after *esse, was their own, but the commander's.*

11. **ex Gallīs:** dependent upon *eī;* translate, *of the Gauls, Caesar had most confidence in him.*

12. **cum iter nōn intermitteret,** *after an unbroken march; i.e.,* without taking the day of rest that would ordinarily fall within a period of seven or eight days.

14. **mīlibus:** ablative of measure of difference.

dictus est ex eō diē quīntus. Interim saepe cum lēgātī ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus dīxit sē īnsidiās verērī postulāvitque ut uterque cum sōlō equitātū ad colloquium venīret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum. Caesar hāc condiciōne acceptā, salūtem suam tamen Gallōrum equitātuī committere nōn audēbat; itaque legiōnāriōs mīlitēs legiōnis decimae in equōs Gallōrum equitum imposuit, ut praesidium quam amīcissimum habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn irrīdiculē quīdam ex mīlitibus decimae legiōnis dīxit: "Plūs quam pollicitus est Caesar facit; pollicitus sē in cohortīs praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum rescrībit."

The Interview—Caesar's Address to Ariovistus

43. Plānitiēs erat magna et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hic locus aequum ferē spatium ā castrīs utrīusque aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium vēnērunt. Legiōnem Caesar quam equīs dēvexerat passibus CC ab eō tumulō cōnstituit. Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllō cōnstitērunt. Ariovistus ex equīs ut colloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ut ad colloquium addūcerent postulāvit. Ubi eō ventum est,

---

6. **saepe cum**: translate as if *cum saepe*.

9. **aliā ratiōne,** *otherwise;* literally, *on other terms.*

10. **Gallōrum equitātuī**: Caesar's cavalry was composed, at various times, of Gauls, Germans, Spaniards. His infantry legions only were Romans.

16. **ad equum rescrībit**: the words are capable of two meanings, *is enrolling us among the knights*, or *is enrolling us in the cavalry*. The knights, *equitēs,* were a social and semi-political order at Rome drawn from the well-to-do middle class that at an earlier period furnished the Roman cavalry. Admission to their ranks would be an honor. Now, however, as observed above, the cavalry was furnished by non-Romans, so that transfer to that branch of the service was no mark of distinction.

4. **equīs,** *on horseback.*

6. **ut**: twice in this line *ut* is crowded out of its normal place at the head of its clause in order to emphasize other words, *ex equīs* in one case and *praeter sē dēnōs* in the other.

7. **ventum est**: *they had come;* impersonal passive.

Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amīcus, quod mūnera amplissimē missa; "haec rēs," inquit, "et paucīs contigit et prō magnīs hominum officiīs cōnsuēvit tribuī; tū, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandī jūstam habērēs, beneficiō ac līberālitāte meā ac senātūs ea praemia cōnsecūtus es. Veterēs jūstāsque causās necessitūdinis Rōmānī cum Haeduīs habent; multa senātūs cōnsulta honōrifica in eōs facta sunt; omnī tempore tōtīus Galliae prīncipātum Haeduī tenuērunt, prius etiam quam nostram amīcitiam appetiērunt. Populī Rōmānī haec est cōnsuētūdō, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōre auctiōrēs velit esse; quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī Rōmānī attulērunt, id iīs ēripī quis patī potest?" Postulāvit deinde eadem quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: nē aut Haeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum īnferret; obsidēs redderet; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur.

Ariovistus Claims the Rights of a Conqueror

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: "Trānsiī Rhēnum," inquit, "nōn meā sponte, sed rogātus et arcessītus ā Gallīs; nōn sine magnā spē magnīsque praemiīs domum propinquōsque relīquī; sēdēs habeō in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stīpendium capiō jūre bellī, quod victōrēs

9. quod, etc.: the *quod* clauses define *beneficia*.

18. cōnsuētūdō: explained by the clause *ut . . . velit, to wish,* etc.

19. suī nihil, *nothing that belongs to them; suī* is a genitive of the whole; literally, *of theirs*.

20. quod . . . attulērunt, *as for what they brought* (*with them*) *when they became friends of the Roman people.* The antecedent of *quod* is the following *id*.

22. nē . . . īnferret, *that he should not make war,* etc. This clause and the following explain *eadem*, l. 22

5. ipsīs: *i. e.*, the Gauls.

victīs impōnere cōnsuērunt. Nōn ego Gallīs sed Gallī mihi bellum intulērunt; omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs ad mē oppugnandum vēnērunt ac contrā mē castra habuērunt; eae omnēs cōpiae ā mē ūnō proeliō pulsae ac superātae sunt. Sī iterum experīrī volunt, iterum parātus sum dēcertāre; sī pāce ūtī volunt, inīquum est dē stīpendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad hoc tempus pependērunt. Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī mihi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrīmentō esse oportet, idque hāc spē petiī. Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium remittētur et dēditīciī subtrahentur, nōn minus libenter recūsābō populī Rōmānī amīcitiam quam appetiī. Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcō, id meī mūniendī, nōn Galliae oppugnandae causā faciō; ejus reī testimōniō est quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnī et quod bellum nōn intulī sed dēfendī. Ego prius in Galliam vēnī quam populus Rōmānus. Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitus populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae fīnibus ēgressus est. Quid tibi vīs? Cūr in meās possessiōnēs venīs? Prōvincia mea haec est Gallia, sīcut illa vestra. Ut mihi concēdī nōn oportēret, sī in vestrōs fīnēs impetum facerem, sīc item vōs estis inīquī, quod in meō jūre mē interpellātis. Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs

---

7. **ego**: supply *bellum intulī*.

12. **dē stīpendiō recūsāre,** *to refuse to pay the tribute.*

14. **ōrnāmentō et praesidiō,** *an honor and a safeguard;* datives of purpose.

17. **Quod**: not *because*.

18. **meī mūniendī**: with the genitives of the pronouns *meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī,* the gerundive takes only the form in *-endī* without attempt to show actual gender; *i.e.*, a woman speaking would say also *meī mūniendī causā*.

19. **est**: the subject is the following clause, *quod . . . vēnī . . . dēfendī; testimōniō* is a predicate dative of purpose or end served. Translate, *the proof of this is, that,* etc.

24. **haec Gallia,** *this part of Gaul.*

25. **vestra**: used instead of *tua* to include the Roman nation, not merely Caesar alone.

concēdī nōn oportēret, *no concession should be made* (*me*)*; concēdī* is an impersonal passive.

dīcis, neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduī Rōmānīs auxilium tulērunt neque ipsī in hīs contentiōnibus quās Haeduī mēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuērunt auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsī sunt. Neque tam barbarus neque tam imperītus sum rērum ut haec nōn sciam. Dēbeō suspicārī tē, simulātā amīcitiā, exercitum in Galliā meī opprimendī causā habēre. Nisi dēcēdēs atque exercitum dēdūcēs ex hīs regiōnibus, tē nōn prō amīcō sed prō hoste habēbō. Quod sī tē interfēcerō, multīs nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum fēcerō; id ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habeō, quōrum omnium grātiam atque amīcitiam tuā morte redimere possum. Quod sī dēcesseris et līberam possessiōnem Galliae mihi trādideris, magnō tē praemiō remūnerābor et quaecumque bella gerī volēs sine ūllō tuō labōre et perīculō cōnficiam."

Caesar Defends Roman Against German Claims

45. Multa ā Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quārē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset: "Neque mea," inquit, "neque populī Rōmānī cōnsuētūdō patitur ut optimē meritōs sociōs dēseram, neque jūdicō Galliam potius esse tuam quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātī sunt Arvernī et Rutēnī ā Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvit neque in prōvinciam redēgit neque stīpendium imposuit. Quod sī antīquis-

---

28. bellō Allobrogum proximō: this war occurred in 62-61 B.C.

32. simulātā amīcitiā, *while pretending friendship.*

35. habēbō, *I shall treat.*

36. grātum, *a welcome thing, a favor;* an adjective used as a noun.

37. compertum habeō: translate as if *comperī,* and see the note on 15, 3.

1. in eam sententiam, quārē, *to show why; quārē . . . posset* is an indirect question; *in eam sententiam* means literally, *in the direction of the opinion.*

3. ut . . . dēseram: *patior* may take either an infinitive with subject accusative or a noun clause; translate as if *mē . . dēserere.*

5. Bellō: in 121 B.C.

6. quibus: dative with a verb meaning "pardon"; from this dative an accusative is to be supplied as the object of *redēgit.*

7. antīquissimum quodque tempus, *mere priority;* literally, *the time furthest back in each case.* Since the Roman conquest in this region went back as far as 121 B.C., Caesar argues that Roman claims were better founded than German.

simum quodque tempus spectārī oportet, populī Rōmānī jūstissimum est in Galliā imperium; sī jūdicium senātūs observārī oportet, lībera dēbet esse Gallia, quam bellō victam suīs lēgibus ūtī voluit.

A Treacherous Attack by the Germans Ends the Interview

46. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre et lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conjicere. Caesar loquendī fīnem fēcit sēque ad suōs recēpit suīsque imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rejicerent. Nam etsī sine ūllō perīculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen nōlēbat hostēs dīcere posse, sī pulsī essent, sē ā Rōmānīs per fidem in colloquiō circumventōs. Ita colloquium dīrēmptum est. Postquam mīlitēs dē hīs rēbus certiōrēs factī sunt, multō major alacritās studiumque pugnandī majus exercituī injectum est.

Ariovistus Asks for Another Conference — Caesar Sends Envoys Instead — Ariovistus Throws Them into Chains

47. Bīduō post Ariovistus, ad Caesarem lēgātīs missīs, nūntiāvit sē velle dē iīs rēbus quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent agere cum eō; petīvit ut aut iterum colloquiō diem cōnstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ē suīs lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret. Colloquendī Caesarī causa

---

10. victam, *although vanquished.*

2. tumulum: accusative; the adverb *propius* may govern an accusative.

8. per fidem, *through their faith in him; i.e.,* treacherously.

11. exercituī injectum est, *was inspired in the army.*

2. agī coeptae essent, *had begun to be discussed;* with a passive infinitive, *coepī* itself is most often put in the passive.

4. sī id minus vellet, *if he were not quite willing for that.*

ē suīs lēgātīs aliquem, *some one of his lieutenants; lēgātōrum,* genitive of the whole, might have been employed.

vīsa nōn est, et eō magis quod Germānī in colloquiō tēla in nostrōs conjēcerant. Lēgātum sēsē magnō cum perīculō ad eum missūrum et hominibus ferīs objectūrum exīstimābat. Mīsit igitur Gallum quendam, C. Valerium Procillum, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā jam Ariovistus longinquā cōnsuētūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānīs causa nōn erat, et ūnā M. Mētium, quī hospitiō Ariovistī ūtēbātur. Hīs mandāvit ut quae dīceret Ariovistus cognōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in castrīs Ariovistus cōnspexisset, exercitū suō praesente conclāmāvit: "Quid ad mē venītis? an speculandī causā?" Cōnantīs dīcere prohibuit et in catēnās conjēcit.

Caesar Offers Battle — Ariovistus Refuses — German Cavalry Tactics

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et mīlibus passuum VI ā Caesaris castrīs sub monte cōnsēdit. Postrīdiē ejus diēī praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et mīlibus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō, ut frūmentō commeātūque quī ex Sēquanīs et Haeduīs supportārētur Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē continuōs v Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem īnstrūctam habuit, ut, sī vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, eī potestās nōn dees-

---

10. quā multā Ariovistus ūtēbātur, *which Ariovistus spoke fluently.*

12. in eō peccandī Germānīs causa nōn erat, *in his case the Germans had no reason for doing wrong; Germānīs* is dative of possession.

ūnā, *along with him;* an adverb, in origin perhaps from *ūnā viā.*

13. ūtēbātur, *enjoyed.*

14. dīceret: subjunctive in an indirect question.

16. an speculandī causā, *is it for the sake of spying?*

17. Cōnantīs dīcere, *when they attempted to speak.*

4. eō cōnsiliō, *with this purpose; cōnsiliō* is explained by the following clause, *ut . . . interclūderet.*

7. ut eī potestās nōn deesset, *that he might not lack the opportunity;* just as the dative is used with the verb *sum* to express possession, so it may be employed with the negative or opposite of *sum.*

set. Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuit, equestrī proeliō cotīdiē contendit. Genus hoc erat pugnae quō sē Germānī exercuerant. Equitum mīlia erant VI, totidem numerō peditēs vēlōcissimī ac fortissimī, quōs ex omnī cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant; cum hīs in proeliīs versābantur, ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant; sī quī graviōre vulnere acceptō equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; sī quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās ut jubīs sublevātī equōrum cursum adaequārent.

Caesar Fortifies a Second Camp

49. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum, quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs DC ab hīs, castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit aciēque triplicī īnstrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre jussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passūs DC, ut dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum XVI mīlia expedīta cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus mīsit, quae cōpiae nostrōs perterrērent et mūnītiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut

---

11. quō, *to which, in which;* ablative.

12. quōs singulī singulōs dēlēgerant, *whom they had chosen, one for each of them; singulī* agrees with the subject of *dēlēgerant, i.e., equitēs* understood, while *singulōs* agrees with *quōs* referring to the *peditēs*.

14. versābantur, *would engage;* this and the following imperfects denote habitual action.

15. dūrius, *more dangerous than usual;* the comparatives in this passage are employed without any definite standard of comparison expressed; they are to be translated by "too," "more than usual."

16. sī quō erat prōdeundum, *if it was necessary to advance to any place.*

1. nē . . . prohibērētur: the clause states the purpose of *dēlēgit* and *vēnit.*

3. castrīs: dative, dependent on *idōneum.*

7. expedīta: the adjective limits *mīlia,* but should be translated as if *expedītōrum,* in agreement with *hominum.*

8. quae cōpiae . . . perterrērent: relative clause of purpose.

ante cōnstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere jussit. Mūnītīs castrīs, duās ibi legiōnēs relīquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra majōra redūxit.

Ariovistus Continues to Refuse Battle

50. Proximō diē īnstitūtō suō Caesar ē castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit paulumque ā majōribus castrīs prōgressus aciem īnstrūxit, hostibus pugnandī potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter merīdiem exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum quae castra minōra oppugnāret mīsit. Ācriter utrimque usque ad vesperum pugnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus, multīs et illātīs et acceptīs vulneribus, in castra redūxit. Cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō non dēcertāret, illī respondērunt: "Apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō est, ut mātrēs familiae eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārent utrum proelium committī ex ūsū sit necne; eae ita dīcunt: 'nōn est fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contenderint.'"

Caesar by Marching on the German Camp Provokes Ariovistus to Battle

51. Postrīdiē ejus diēī Caesar praesidiō utrīsque castrīs quod satis esse vīsum est relīquit; omnīs ālāriōs in cōnspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōnstituit, quod minus multitū-

---

6. **Ācriter . . . pugnātum est,** *both sides fought fiercely till evening; pugnātum est* is an impersonal passive.

9. **quam ob rem,** *why,* introducing an indirect question.

11. **ut . . . dēclārent:** a noun clause explaining *cōnsuētūdō,* while *utrum . . . sit* is an indirect question.

13. **ex ūsū,** *of advantage.*

15. **superāre:** here used without an object.

1. **praesidiō utrīsque castrīs,** *as a guard to both camps;* two datives, one of purpose, the other of reference.

2. **quod satis esse vīsum est,** *what seemed a large enough force.*

3. **multitūdine:** ablative of respect.

dine mīlitum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālāriīs ūterētur; ipse, triplicī īnstrūctā aciē, usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs ēdūxērunt generātimque cōnstituērunt paribus intervāllīs, Harūdēs, Marcomānōs, Tribocōs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedīs et carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficīscentēs mīlitēs passīs manibus flentēs implōrābant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

Progress of the Battle

52. Caesar singulīs legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quaestōrem praefēcit, ut eōs testēs suae quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commīsit; et ita nostrī ācriter in hostēs signō datō impetum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt ut spatium pīla in hostēs conjiciendī nōn darētur. Prōjectīs pīlīs, comminus gladiīs pugnātum est. At Germānī, celeriter ex cōnsuētūdine suā phalange factā, impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī quī in phalangem īnsilīrent et scūta manibus

---

4. **prō,** *in proportion to, in comparison with.*
5. **ad speciem:** the phrase expresses purpose.
10. **raedīs, carrīs:** ablatives of means.
11. **Eō** = *in raedās et carrōs.*
proficīscentēs: with *mīlitēs.*

1. **singulōs lēgātōs et quaestōrem:** Caesar had six legions and one quaestor; five legions were therefore commanded by lieutenants.
2. **eōs testēs,** *these men as witnesses.*
3. **ā dextrō cornū,** *on the right wing.*
5. **itaque** = *et ita.*
6. **pīla:** object of the gerund *conjiciendī,* which depends on *spatium.*
7. **comminus gladiīs pugnātum est,** *they fought hand to hand with swords.*
8. **ex,** *according to.*
10. **quī . . . vulnerārent:** a relative descriptive clause.

revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam conjecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, quī equitātuī praeerat, quod expedītior erat quam iī quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsit.

German Defeat and Flight—Recovery of Caesar's Envoys

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter v pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus cōnfīsī trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus inventīs sibi salūtem repperērunt; in hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēligātam ad rīpam nactus eā profūgit; reliquōs omnēs cōnsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt. Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam domō sēcum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat, ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā periit. Fuērunt duae fīliae; hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est. C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā custōdibus in fugā trīnīs catēnīs vīnctus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs equitātū īnsequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem

---

11. ā: with the same meaning as in l. 3.

14. P. Crassus: son of the M. Crassus who with Caesar and Pompeius formed the first triumvirate. Publius lost his life in 53 B.C. at the battle of Carrhae, in which the army commanded by his father was defeated by the Parthians.

16. labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō, *to the relief of our men in distress.*

2. prius: with *quam;* the two are commonly written as one word.

4. vīribus: ablative with *cōnfīsī, trusting in;* the same verb in the sense of *trust,* with a person as indirect object, takes the dative.

6. eā, *in it;* ablative of means.

7. Duae fuērunt uxōrēs: polygamy was not common among the Germans, being restricted to the chiefs.

13. in Caesarem incidit, *fell in with Caesar.*

quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ē manibus hostium sibi restitūtum vidēbat, neque ejus calamitāte dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus cōnsultum dīcēbat utrum ignī statim necārētur an in aliud tempus reservārētur; sortium beneficiō sē esse incolumem. Item M. Mētius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

Caesar Places His Army in Winter Quarters and Goes to Italy

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō, Suēbī, quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt; ubi iī quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt eōs perterritōs sēnsērunt, īnsecūtī magnum ex iīs numerum occīdērunt. Caesar, ūnā aestāte duōbus maximīs bellīs cōnfectīs, mātūrius paulō quam tempus annī postulābat in hīberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hībernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

---

18. **neque quicquam fortūna dēminuerat,** *and fortune had not subtracted anything.*

19. **dē sē ter sortibus cōnsultum dīcēbat,** *said that the lots had been cast three times with regard to him.*

20. **utrum . . . necārētur an . . . reservārētur,** *as to whether he should be put to death with fire or reserved,* etc.

3. **Rhēnum:** the accusative of a place name may be governed by the adjective *proximus;* in 46, 2, the accusative with the comparative adverb *propius* occurred.

7. **ad conventūs agendōs,** *to hold the (provincial) courts.* A governor of a province was also supreme judge in the provincial courts.

REVIEW OUTLINE FOR FIRST YEAR WORK

FIRST REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW

ager	equus	rosa	magnus	stō
amīcus	fēmina	servus	meus	sum
aurum	fīlia	silva	multus	nōn
avāritia	innocentia	templum	ambulō	saepe
bellum	īnsula	verbum	amō	semper
cōnsilium	liber	via	dō	quod
dominus	nauta	victōria	habitō	ā, ab
ēloquentia	perīculum	vir	laudō	cum
epistula	puer	bonus	portō	in

REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX

(1) First declension of nouns. App. 1.
(2) Second declension of nouns. App. 2.
(3) Adjectives of the first and second declensions. App. 6.
(4) Present, imperfect, and future indicative active of the first and second conjugations. App. 26, 28.
(5) Present, imperfect, and future indicative of **sum**. App. 31.
(6) Agreement of the verb, App. 40.
(7) Agreement of adjectives. App. 38 (1).
(8) Nominative as subject or predicate. App. 41.
(9) Genitive of possession. App. 42.
(10) Dative with adjectives. App. 50.
(11) Dative of indirect object. App. 49.
(12) Accusative as direct object. App. 57.
(13) Ablative of place where. App. 68.

EXERCISES

1. Librōs bonōs laudāmus. 2. Ēloquentia dominī ab amīcīs meīs saepe laudātur. 3. Fīlia servī in magnā īnsulā habitat. 4. Puer amīcō nautae epistulās dat. 5. Saepe in silvā cum puerō ambulō. 6. Verba mea ab amīcīs meīs laudantur. 7. Bellum magnum est, et in perīculō sumus. 8. Templum in magnā silvā stat. 9. Equōs dominī laudō, quod bonī sunt. 10. Fīlia dominī magnam rosam portat. 11. In agrīs et silvīs cum amīcīs saepe ambulāmus. 12. Vir bonus nōn semper cōnsilium (*advice*) bonum dat. 13. Nautae nōn multum aurum portant. 14. Multī virī bella et perīcula amant. 15. Vir aurum amat, sed avāritiam nōn laudat.

1. My friend loves good books. 2. The master gives a letter to the sailor. 3. The boy often walks in the street with the slave. 4. The woman praises the large roses. 5. The master's daughter is in great danger. 6. The woman lives in the forest with the sailor's daughter. 7. Good men praise the words of my friend. 8. The slaves carry letters and gold. 9. The boy's horse stands in the street. 10. The woman gives much gold to the slaves.

SECOND REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW

agricola	nāsus	hic	tuus	pugnō
aquila	numerus	ille	vester	videō
arma	oppidānī	ipse	accūsō	volō
barbarus	oppidum	lātus	aedificō	ē, ex
campus	patria	līber	dēmōnstrō	prō
carrus	poēta	longus	errō	sine
castra	puella	miser	habeō	et
causa	vīcus	noster	labōrō	sed
culpa	aequus	parvus	moneō	
fīlius	benignus	pulcher	mūtō	
folium	grātus	sacer	properō	

REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX

(1) Declension of **hic.** App. 20, *a*.
(2) Declension of **ille** and **ipse.** App. 20 *b*, 22.
(3) Present, imperfect, and future indicative passive of the first and second conjugations. App. 27, 29.
(4) Possessive adjectives of the first and second persons. App. 19.
(5) Apposition. App. 39.
(6) Present active infinitive of the first and second conjugations. App. 26, 28.
(7) Ablative of accompaniment. App. 70.
(8) Ablative of agent. App. 66.
(9) Ablative of place from which. App. 65.

EXERCISES

1. Barbarī saepe magna templa aedificant. 2. Agricola benignus puerō equum bonum dat. 3. Ab amīcīs accūsāmur, sed culpa nōn est nostra. 4. Oppidānī in agrīs nōn labōrant. 5. Fīlia hujus servī est lībera. 6. Poētae hōs campōs lātōs saepe laudant. 7. Oppidānī saepe monentur, quod barbarī in silvīs errant. 8. Fīlius agricolae miser est et nōn labōrat. 9. Amīcus meus multōs equōs pulchrōs habet. 10. Poēta in parvō vīcō habitat. 11. Carrus puerō parvō grātus est. 12. Nōn sine causā patriam nostram amāmus. 13. Puerī properant, quod oppidum vident. 14. Magnam aquilam in silvā vidēmus. 15. Servus magnum numerum equōrum in agrō dēmōnstrat.

1. This farmer always has a large number of good horses. 2. Your son does not often work in the fields. 3. The boys are warned by the woman because they are in danger. 4. The man points out many beautiful villages. 5. That town has many broad streets. 6. The townspeople themselves often fight with the barbarians. 7. The men change their plans because they see the danger. 8. The poet's

daughter does not work, and she is censured. 9. Many boys and men are hastening from the villages and towns. 10. We are building a sacred temple in this forest.

THIRD REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW

aqua	nātūra	angustus	compleō	magnopere
barba	nihil	cārus	explōrō	numquam
bēstia	nūntius	clārus	invītō	nunc
dōnum	pecūnia	ferus	juvō	prīmō
fābula	pictūra	īrātus	maneō	rūrsus
fossa	poena	is	moveō	tamen
Gallia	populus	parātus	nārrō	tum
Gallus	potentia	quattuor	occupō	ad
Germānī	pugna	Rōmānus	superō	ante
gladius	saxum	suus	terreō	circum
hortus	socius	vērus	timeō	per
inimīcus	statua	quis	fortiter	post
locus	vīlla	clāmō	hodiē	aut

REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX

(1) Declension of **is**. App. 20 *c*.
(2) Declension of the interrogative pronoun and adjective. App. 24.
(3) Perfect indicative active. App. 26, 28.
(4) Possessives of the third person. App. 19.

EXERCISES

1. Multa dōna eī puerō dedī. 2. Ea fābula nōn vēra est, et perīculum in silvā nōn timeō. 3. Hortus meus est pulcher, quod labōrō. 4. Inimīcus meus poenam nōn sine causā timet. 5. Tum Gallī erant sociī populī Rōmānī. 6. Puerī nihil timent, et hunc locum explōrābunt. 7. Ferae bēstiae

saepe in hāc silvā videntur. 8. Sociī nostrī īrātī sunt, quod ad (*for*) bellum nōn parātī sumus. 9. Potentia patriae nostrae numquam timētur, quod bellum nōn amāmus. 10. Pictūram pulchram in vīllā poētae hodiē vīdī. 11. Quis hoc magnum saxum ex agrīs portāvit? 12. Illum puerum nōn invītāvī, quod amīcus meus nōn est. 13. Eum iuvābō, sed numquam laudābō. 14. Multī virī clārī in hōc oppidō habitābant. 15. Puer epistulam ad poētam portābat.

1. This man has great power, but we do not fear him. 2. These barbarians are fierce, and they have seized our towns. 3. I was exploring the forest with your son. 4. There are many beautiful villas in our native country. 5. By whom (*singular*) has your daughter been invited? 6. We shall help our allies, because their danger is great. 7. This famous poet will not remain in our town. 8. The messenger was carrying money and a letter. 9. There are many large rocks in this place. 10. I shall see the statue and the pictures in the temple.

FOURTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW

annus	Italia	stīpendium	augeō	rogō
auxilium	lēgātus	vīta	cēlō	vītō
beneficium	mora	adversus	convocō	vulnerō
Britannia	mūrus	aeternus	dūcō	anteā
concilium	porta	altus	expectō	cūr
cōpia	praemium	firmus	mittō	diū
domicilium	praesidium	honestus	necō	ibi
fortūna	proelium	novus	nūntiō	item
fuga	rota	perīculōsus	postulō	longē
glōria	scālae	quīnque	probō	ubi
hōra	schola	septem	relinquō	vix
initium	scūtum	sex	renovō	ultrā
injūria	signum	tantus	repudiō	sī

REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX

(1) Past perfect and future perfect indicative active of regular verbs. App. 26, 28.
(2) Perfect system of **sum.** App. 31.
(3) Perfect system of regular verbs in the passive. App. 27, 29.
(4) Present, imperfect, and future indicative, active and passive, of third conjugation **-ō** verbs. App. 28, 29.
(5) Use of participles. App. 117-121.
(6) Accusative of duration. App. 58.

EXERCISES

1. Cōnsilium tuum ā lēgātō nūntiātum laudābitur. 2. Cōpiae nostrae nōn multōs annōs in Galliā manēbunt. 3. Cūr beneficia ab (*from*) hōc inimīcō expectās? 4. Hic clārus poēta domicilium in Britanniā multōs annōs habuerat. 5. Post initium pugnae fuga erat perīculōsa. 6. In eā scholā erant fīliī multōrum virōrum clārōrum. 7. Sociīs auxilium dabimus et ab (*from*) sociīs auxilium postulābimus. 8. Multī hoc bellum nōn probant, quod nōn sunt amīcī patriae nostrae. 9. Glōria Italiae et populī Rōmānī erit aeterna. 10. Propter moram sociōrum, Gallī in proeliō superātī sunt. 11. Injūriās barbarōrum timēmus, et auxilium vestrum postulāmus. 12. Mūrōs et portās oppidī ex illō locō vidēbimus. 13. Mūrī sunt altī, et portae sunt lātae. 14. Praemia hīs puellīs dabuntur, et multī eās laudābunt.

1. Shields are not carried in this war by our allies. 2. On account of your flight, the lieutenant was in great danger. 3. Why do you ask my help, if you do not fear? 4. We were awaiting our friends in the village. 5. We waited for five hours, but we did not see the signal. 6. I shall not demand so great a reward. 7. We shall reject the money, and we shall not send help. 8. A strong garrison has been left in the town, and the townspeople do not fear. 9. The sailor's son was in the battle and was wounded.

FIFTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW

angulus	sagitta	dēfessus	excēdō	veniō
animus	sonus	īdem	faciō	bis
biennium	terminus	incognitus	fugiō	celeriter
captīvus	flūmen	novem	gerō	interdum
caput	frāter	octō	interficiō	iterum
castellum	frūmentum	prīmus	jaciō	mox
corpus	Hibernia	āmittō	mūniō	nōndum
factum	Hispānia	audiō	oppugnō	posteā
jūstitia	homō	capiō	perveniō	statim
lēx	impedīmentum	cingō	petō	inter
mīles	iter	cōnficiō	pōnō	propter
nēmō	terra	condemnō	reperiō	trāns
rēgnum	tuba	contendō	scrībō	-que
rēx	vāllum	dēfendō	tegō	

REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX

(1) Present, imperfect, and future indicative, active and passive, of verbs of the fourth conjugation. App. 28, 29.

(2) Present, imperfect, and future indicative, active and passive, of **-iō** verbs of the third conjugation. App. 28, 29.

(3) Declension of **īdem.** App. 21.

(4) Third declension nouns with genitive plural in **-um.** App. 3 (1), (2).

(5) Ablative of means. App. 72.

EXERCISES

1. Is rēx cum populō Rōmānō bellum saepe gesserat. 2. Lēgēs patriae nostrae ā multīs laudantur. 3. Frāter hujus hominis domicilium in Hiberniā habet, sed nunc in Britanniā

est. 4. In eō itinere multa et pulchra oppida vīdī. 5. Eundem sonum iterum audiō. 6. Helvētiī impedīmenta in castrīs relīquērunt, et haec ā Rōmānīs capta sunt. 7. Sī honestus es, lēgem nōn timēs. 8. Captīvī barbarī sunt, sed jūstitiam patriae nostrae laudant. 9. In eō flūmine multī vītam āmīsērunt. 10. Factum ejus mīlitis semper probābitur. 11. Nēmō castra dēfendit, et omnēs fūgērunt. 12. Lēgātus cum mīlitibus mox in Galliam perveniet. 13. Saxa et tēla ab oppidānīs jacta sunt, sed mīlitēs oppidum cēpērunt. 14. Terminum silvae mox vidēbimus et iter nostrum cōnficiētur. 15. Mīlitēs dēfessī ex proeliō excēdent.

1. On account of the nature of this place, we shall not remain long. 2. These men praise justice, but they themselves are not honorable. 3. The soldiers were leading the prisoners through the streets of the town. 4. The small villages will not be fortified, and they will be seized by the forces of the barbarians. 5. We heard the sound of the trumpet and we came quickly. 6. The camp is fortified by a high rampart and a wide ditch. 7. We saw the river from the rampart of the camp. 8. Our allies are waging war again with these barbarians. 9. The king led his forces across the river and attacked our camp. 10. My brother and your son were wounded by arrows in the same battle.

SIXTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW

ancora	centuriō	legiō	multitūdō	stella
animal	collis	lūna	nāvis	tēctum
arbor	fīnis	lūx	nox	tempestās
avis	gēns	mare	nūbēs	timor
caedēs	hostis	māter	pars	urbs
caelum	ignis	mōns	pater	ācer
calcar	īnsigne	mors	pāx	celer

fēlīx	tūtus	caedō	incendō	teneō
fortis	ego	canō	incipiō	trādō
laetus	suī	claudō	incolō	vincō
omnis	tū	cupiō	jubeō	ōlim
paucī	aperiō	dēleō	parō	quoque
potēns	appropinquō	dīvidō	retineō	juxtā
sapiēns	arō	expugnō	rīdeō	

REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX

(1) Third declension nouns with genitive in **-ium.** App. 3 (3), (4).
(2) Declension of **vīs.** App. 3 (5).
(3) Third declension adjectives. App. 7.
(4) Declension of **ego** and **tū.** App. 17.
(5) Reflexive pronouns. App. 18.
(6) Ablative of time. App. 69.
(7) Genitive of the whole. App. 43.
(8) Complementary infinitive. 108.

EXERCISES

1. Multa animālia inter arborēs silvae vīdī. 2. Haec avis pulchra est, sed nōn canit. 3. Frāter meus et pater tuus in Italiā eōdem annō erant. 4. Tē nōn dēfendam, quod hostis patriae es. 5. Propter tempestātem ancora nāvem nostram nōn tenēbat. 6. In patriā nostrā sunt magna flūmina et urbēs pulchrae. 7. Haec gēns tum Rōmānīs incognita erat. 8. Ex eō colle ignēs vidēbantur. 9. Nōs pācem semper habēre cupīvimus, sed vōbīs bellum grātum fuit. 10. Mare patriam nostram ab omnibus partibus cingit et dēfendit. 11. Multī in montibus et silvīs errāre cupiunt. 12. Hī fortēs agricolae agrōs suōs ab hostibus dēfendērunt. 13. Nūbēs in caelō erant, et lūnam nōn vidēbāmus. 14. Ōlim laetus erās, nunc miser es. 15. Propter timōrem mortis ex castrīs excessimus.

1. My house is on an island, among large trees. 2. From this hill we saw the sea and the ships. 3. We have come to the end of our journey, and we shall soon see our friends. 4. A multitude of barbarians came into Gaul and seized the lands (fields) of the Gauls. 5. We saw a great fire in the forest, and we sent a messenger to the village. 6. The boy is brave, and he will defend himself. 7. The legions have defeated part of the forces of the king. 8. The boy's mother fears the sea, because her father lost his life in a storm. 9. Who ordered you to give me this letter? 10. This river is swift and dangerous.

SEVENTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW

altitūdō	mōs	facilis	mīlle	praecēdō
amīcitia	nōmen	humilis	quī	prehendō
auctōritās	passus	malus	accipiō	prōcēdō
cīvis	pēs	neuter	ascendō	rēgnō
cornū	pīlum	nūllus	circumveniō	repellō
dux	piscis	reliquus	commemorō	vāstō
exercitus	prōvincia	similis	condūcō	facile
flūctus	tempus	sinister	dēpellō	jam
hasta	virtūs	sōlus	dīcō	lātē
impetus	alius	tōtus	efficiō	quam
lacus	alter	ūllus	emō	satis
lātitūdō	dexter	ūnus	impediō	subitō
lībertās	difficilis	uter	legō	contrā
manus	dissimilis	validus	pateō	dē
modus				

REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX

(1) Fourth declension of nouns. App. 4.
(2) Declension of the relative pronoun. App. 23.
(3) Comparison of adjectives. App. 10, 11.
(4) Declension of comparatives. App. 12.

(5) Adjectives with genitive in -īus. App. 9.
(6) Ablative of respect. App. 76.
(7) Ablative of degree of difference. App. 74.
(8) Ablative of description. App. 77.
(9) Accusative of extent. App. 59.
(10) Genitive of description. App. 44.
(11) Agreement of the relative pronoun. App. 38 (2).

EXERCISES

1. Propter amīcitiam quae semper fuit inter patrēs nostrōs, tē juvābō. 2. Hunc librum lēgī, et novum librum emere cupiō. 3. Auctōritās ejus virī clārī in urbe nostrā semper magna fuit. 4. Cīvis Rōmānus sum, et praesidium lēgum postulō. 5. In hōc parvō lacū sunt multī piscēs. 6. Hic puer nōn multa mīlia passuum ambulābit, quod parvus est. 7. In aliō locō, ubi mūrus humilior est, oppidum oppugnābimus. 8. Nōmen ejus ducis saepe audīvī, sed numquam eum vīdī. 9. Propter lātitūdinem fossae quae castra cingit, hostēs impetum nōn facient. 10. Mōrēs hōrum hominum ā nūllō cīve honestō laudantur. 11. Quid in manū tenēs? Pīlum Rōmānum in manū teneō. 12. Mōrēs nostrī et (mōrēs) barbarōrum dissimillimī sunt. 13. Propter virtūtem mīlitum nostrōrum, hostēs mox fugient. 14. Reliquī cīvēs patriam amant, et (eam) dēfendent. 15. Eō tempore exercitum parvum habēbāmus, sed nunc ad (*for*) bellum parātī sumus.

1. On account of the height of the wall, the town was safe. 2. The legion which was in the province had often fought with these barbarians. 3. From that hill we heard the sound of the waves, and we saw the ships. 4. We love liberty, and we will fight for (prō) liberty. 5. Between these high mountains there is a beautiful lake. 6. The enemy fear the leader whom we have sent. 7. My friend ascended the mountain which you see across the river. 8. I have said this because I love my country. 9. I have received the letter which you sent. 10. We shall easily ward off all attacks in this place.

EIGHTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW

cāsus	respōnsum	varius	dēligō	servō
cīvitās	rīpa	decem	ēgredior	ūtor
cohors	Rōma	absum	implōrō	vereor
colloquium	uxor	agō	inveniō	vīvō
cōnsul	vulnus	arbitror	lūdō	ācriter
diēs	vōx	cognōscō	migrō	bene
equitātus	armātus	condō	polliceor	hīc
imperātor	brevis	cōnor	potior	igitur
līberī	gravis	cōnstituō	praemittō	itaque
lingua	idōneus	crēdō	reddō	male
praeda	invītus	currō	sequor	postquam
rēs	tot			

REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX

(1) Comparison of adverbs. App. 13, 14.
(2) Present participle. App. 26, 28.
(3) Fifth declension of nouns. App. 5.
(4) Deponent verbs. App. 30.
(5) Infinitives of the four conjugations. App. 26, 27, 28, 29.
(6) Ablative absolute. App. 75.
(7) Ablative with **ūtor, fruor,** etc. App. 79.
(8) Indirect discourse. App. 116.

EXERCISES

1. Puer in rīpā flūminis cum patre stābat. 2. Hāc novā urbe conditā, multī ex omnibus partibus vēnērunt. 3. Paucōs diēs in oppidō tuō mānsī, et multōs amīcōs ibi vīdī. 4. Līberī ejus rēgis quī hostēs dūxerat in castrīs captī sunt. 5. Epistulam tuam accēpī, et respōnsum mox reddam. 6. Rōmānī brevibus gladiīs et parvīs scūtīs in proeliō ūsī sunt. 7. Oppidānī gravia saxa in mūrō posuerant, et impetum nostrum

expectābant. 8. In legiōne Rōmānā erant decem cohortēs. 9. Cohortēs et legiōnēs ā centuriōnibus et lēgātīs ductae sunt. 10. Aurum in eīs montibus inventum est quī nōn longē ab illā urbe absunt. 11. Equitātus noster equōs idōneōs nōn habet. 12. Lingua nostra et lingua eōrum barbarōrum dissimillimae sunt. 13. Imperātor fortis est, sed imperātor sine exercitū parātō nihil efficiet. 14. Hostēs crēdidērunt nōs bellum verērī. 15. Lēgātus cum equitātū hostēs fugientēs secūtus est.

1. The general's wife came to (in) the camp with her son. 2. We found much booty in these towns which we captured. 3. When the centurion was killed (the centurion having been killed), the cohort fled. 4. We followed these animals through the forest for many hours. 5. The men who promised their help at this time are true friends. 6. I was not in the army, and I did not receive this wound in war. 7. The lieutenant saw armed forces on the mountain, and he thought that they were Gauls. 8. Many wished to migrate from their native country, but others were unwilling. 9. We have gained possession of the letters which were sent by these men. 10. This answer having been given, the general at once withdrew.

NINTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW

aciēs	mēnsis	victor	plānus	coepī
adventus	obses	acūtus	profundus	eō
aestās	pōns	avārus	proximus	ēripiō
arcus	rēgīna	commūnis	quīdam	exeō
ars	salūs	duplex	quisque	faveō
calamitās	situs	ferōx	addō	īnstruō
canis	soror	fertilis	aggredior	jungō
dēns	vallēs	frīgidus	cadō	metuō
hiems	ventus	ingēns	concurrō	morior

noceō	praeficiō	sciō	herī	ūnā
pāreō	praesum	spērō	inde	nam
persuādeō	queror	trānseō	libenter	neque
placeō	redeō	deinde	sīc	
possum	resistō	dēnique	simul	

REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX

(1) Conjugation of **possum.** App. 32.
(2) Conjugation of **eō.** App. 35.
(3) Declension of **quīdam.** App. 25 *c.*
(4) Declension of **quisque.** App. 25 *a.*
(5) Present imperative. App. 26, 28.
(6) Dative with special verbs. App. 51.
(7) Dative with compounds. App. 55.
(8) Vocative. App. 80.
(9) Ablative of separation. App. 64.

EXERCISES

1. In terrā Helvētiōrum sunt altī montēs et fertilēs vallēs. 2. Situs ejus vīcī est in rīpā parvī flūminis. 3. Hī hominēs nōn habent amīcōs, quod avārī sunt. 4. Hieme in hīs montibus sunt magnī ventī. 5. Ante adventum patrum nostrōrum erant nūllae urbēs magnae in hāc terrā. 6. Omnēs in oppida et vīcōs concurrērunt, quod perīculum commūne vīdērunt. 7. Arcus quem puer habet ā patre suō datus est. 8. Vallem trānsiimus et collem ascendimus. 9. Mare profundum terram nostram ab Āfricā dīvidit. 10. Hae artēs quās laudās nōn bonae sunt. 11. Propter bellum mare eō annō trānsīre nōn poterāmus. 12. Cōnsul quī exercituī eō diē praeerat numquam in proeliō superātus est. 13. Haec magna saxa dē monte cecidērunt quem vidēs.

1. The bridge has been burned, and no one can cross the river. 2. We could hear the sound of the wind in the trees. 3. I have begun to read the book which your sister gave me. 4. The army was defeated because the soldiers did not obey

the general. 5. Each sought the first place and hastened to depart from the camp. 6. The soldier has never used a sword, but he will try to defend himself. 7. A certain man left this letter in the village yesterday. 8. The hostages were killed by the barbarians without cause. 9. The messenger remains in the street because he fears your dog. 10. The Romans made an attack on that part of the Helvetians which had not yet crossed the river.

TENTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW

bōs	majōrēs	cupidus	cōnfiteor	loquor
celeritās	opus	externus	conveniō	pereō
cibus	ōrātiō	fidēlis	creō	quaerō
corōna	ōrātor	fīnitimus	dēbeō	rebellō
cūra	portus	necessārius	dēscendō	soleō
crūdēlitās	senātus	vacuus	dīmittō	volō
deus	sōl	aliquis	discēdō	clam
dictātor	spēs	accēdō	expellō	cotīdiē
dīligentia	stultitia	appellō	ferō	etiam
dolor	tyrannus	audeō	fīō	quotannīs
flōs	vīnum	bellō	fugō	intrā
gaudium	voluntās	committō	gaudeō	nisi
juvenis	cīvīlis	cōnferō	ingredior	quamquam
lacrima	contentus	cōnfīdō	īnferō	ut

REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX

(1) Semi-deponent verbs. App. 30 *a*.
(2) Conjugation of **ferō**. App. 34.
(3) Conjugation of **fīō**. App. 36.
(4) Conjugation of **volō**. App. 37.
(5) Declension of **aliquis**. App. 25 *d*.
(6) Cardinal numerals. App. 15.
(7) Ordinal numerals. App. 15.

(8) The gerund. 122.
(9) Ablative of cause. 78.
(10) Ablative of manner. 71.

EXERCISES

1. Canis meus fidēlis est, et mē in perīculō dēfendet. 2. In urbe diūtius manēre nōn audēs, quod omnēs arbitrantur tē esse tyrannum. 3. Juvenis quem vidēs est fīlius frātris meī. 4. Mīlitēs in exercitū nostrō vīnō nōn ūtuntur. 5. Pācem habēre volumus, sed hōc tempore spēs pācis nōn magna est. 6. In eā valle quae inter illōs collēs est, flōrēs pulchrī saepe inveniuntur. 7. Ōrātor bonus nōn semper cīvis bonus est. 8. Vir fortis et sapiēns creātus est dictātor, et is mox cōpiās hostium fugābit. 9. Quod templa deōrum et tēcta cīvium dēfendī, pater patriae appellātus sum. 10. Bovēs quī in colle errant frātris meī sunt. 11. Oppidānī ē tēctīs fūgērunt, et oppidum vacuum erat. 12. Hās ōrātiōnēs magnā (cum) cūrā lēgī, et iterum legam. 13. Exercitus in hīs locīs cibum reperīre poterit, et mīlitēs castra mūnient. 14. Gallī dīxērunt sē frūmentum cōnferre. 15. Exercitus ex perīculō eō diē ab imperātōre sapiente ēreptus est.

1. We heard the sound of the trumpet, and we returned to (in) camp with great speed. 2. On account of the great storm our ship remained in harbor two days. 3. You have money and friends, but you are not satisfied. 4. We shall elect two consuls yearly, and we shall have no king. 5. I have always been faithful, but I confess that I have not been wise. 6. The folly of certain men in the senate was the cause of this danger. 7. I have often talked with your brother who lives in this city. 8. In the winter these animals descend from the mountains into the valleys. 9. You are an enemy of the country (**patria**), and you will be driven out. 10. I do not trust the man (*dative*) to whom you have given this letter.

LISTS OF ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

NOTE.— The following lists do not include all the words of Latin origin which are to be found among the terms employed in textbooks of the subjects named. They do, however, contain the greater number of those in common use. The Latin word which is given to explain the derivation is not always the word from which the English word is directly derived. For example, *capacity* is derived from *capiō* through the adjective *capāx* and the noun *capācitās*. So far as possible the derivation is given by indicating the connection with a word which is likely to be familiar to the pupil or which shows the fundamental idea appearing in the English word. Definitions are given only for those Latin words with which the pupil is not likely to be familiar from first-year work.

A number of grammatical terms of Latin derivation are omitted for the reason that the pupil will not easily trace the connection between the meaning of the original Latin and the derived English word.

WORDS OF LATIN DERIVATION USED IN GEOGRAPHY

adaptation, *ad: aptō*, fit, adjust
aggradation, *ad: gradior*, step, go. (An area goes to a higher level by continual additions to its surface)
agriculture, *ager: cultūra*, cultivation
alluvial, *ad: luō*, wash
animal, *animal*
annual, *annus*
aqueous, *aqua*
area, *ārea*, an open space
artificial, *ars: faciō*
axis, *axis*, axle

canal, *canālis*, pipe (for conveying water); channel
capacity, *capiō*
carnivorous, *carō* (genitive *carnis*), flesh: *vorō*, devour
cave, *cavus*, hollow

central, *centrum*, center
cereal, *Cerēs* (goddess of harvests and of grain)
chart, *charta*, paper
circulation, *circulus*, circle
cirrus, *cirrus*, a curl
colluvial, *con-*, together: *luō*, wash
coloration, *colōrō*, give color to
commerce, *commercium*, traffic
concrete, *concrētum*, solid matter
condensation, *con-*, with, together: *dēnsō*, make thick
conglomerate, *con-*, with, together: *glomerō*, roll together, collect
coniferous, *cōnus*, cone: *ferō*
conservation, *cōnservō*, preserve
continent, *contineō*, hold together
crater, *crātēr*, bowl
culture, *cultūra*, cultivation
cumulus, *cumulus*, a heap
current, *currō*, run

date, *datum* (participle of *dō*, give)
deposition, *dē*, down from, down: *pōnō*, place
derive, *dērīvō* (*rīvus*, stream), draw off
desert, *dēserō* (past participle, *dēsertum*), abandon
disintegration, *dis-*, apart, not: *integrō*, make whole
dissect, *dis-: secō*, cut
domestic, *domus*, home
equator, *aequus*[1], level, even, equal
estuary, *aestus*[1], tide
fertilize, *fertilis*, fertile
glacier, *glaciēs*, ice
globular, *globus*, ball
gradation, *gradior*, step
gravity, *gravitās*, weight
herbivorous, *herba*, herb: *vorō*, devour
humus, *humus*, earth
igneous, *ignis*, fire
industry, *industria*
interior, *interior*, inner, inner part of
intermediate, *inter: medius*, middle
international, *inter: nātiō*, nation
irrigation, *in: rigō*, moisten
latitude, *lātitūdō*, width, breadth[2]

[1] The Latin diphthong *ae* is commonly represented by *e* in English derivatives.

[2] In the ancient maps the earth is represented as of greater extent from east to west than from north to south. That is, it had length east and west and breadth north and south. Hence the location of a place east or west of a standard meridian is *longitude* and its location north or south of the equator is *latitude*.

lignite, *lignum*, wood
line, *līnea*, linen thread; line
longitude, *longitūdō*, length

marine, *marīnus*, of the sea
mature, *mātūrus*, ripe
Mediterranean, *medius*, middle: *terra*
migration, *migrō*, move

native, *nātīvus*, produced by nature, native
natural, *nātūra*
navigation, *nāvigō*, sail
nimbus, *nimbus*, rain-storm, cloud

ocean, *Ōceanus*, ocean

palm, *palma*, palm, palm tree
port, *portus*, harbor
pressure, *premō* (past participle, *pressum*), press
procession, *prōcēdō* (past participle, *prōcessum*), go forward
projection, *prōjiciō* (past participle, *prōjectum*), throw forward, extend
protection, *protegō* (past participle, *prōtēctum*), cover before, protect
province, *prōvincia*, province

region, *regiō*, region
relation, *relātiō*, bringing back; relation
residual, *resideō*, remain behind
revolution, *revolvō* (past participle, *revolūtum*), roll back, return
rodent, *rōdō*, gnaw
rotation, *rota*, wheel

sedentary, *sedeō*, sit
sediment, *sedeō*, sit
solar, *sōl*
species, *speciēs*, kind
structure, *struō* (past participle, *strūctum*), heap up
strata, *strātum*, layer
substratum, *sub*, under: *strātum*, layer
superior, *superior*, higher, upper

temperature, *temperō*, be moderate, be restrained
terminal, *terminus*, end
transportation, *trānsportō*, convey across

utilization, *ūtilis*, useful

WORDS OF LATIN DERIVATION USED IN ELEMENTARY SCIENCE

absolute, *absolvō* (past participle, *absolūtum*), set free
absorption, *absorbeō* (past participle, *absorptum*), swallow down
action, *agō* (past participle, *āctum*), do
altitude, *altitūdō*, height

ascent, *ascendō*, go up
assimilation, *ad: similis*
association, *ad: socius*

calcium, *calx* (genitive, *calcis*), lime
capillary, *capillus*, hair
carbon, *carbō*, charcoal
cell, *cella*, storeroom, cell
centigrade, *centum: gradus*, step, degree
city, *cīvitās*, state, city
combustion, *combūrō* (past participle, *combustum*), burn up
commercial, *commercium*, traffic
compare, *comparō*, compare
composition, *compōnō* (past participle, *compositum*), put together, arrange
compress, *comprimō* (past participle, *compressum*), press together
connection, *con-*, with, together: *nectō*, bind
contamination, *contāminō*, mingle, corrupt

decomposition, *dē: compōnō*, put together
density, *dēnsus*, thick
dependent, *dē: pendeō*, hang
deposit, *dēpōnō* (past participle, *dēpositum*), lay down
destruction, *dēstruō* (past participle, *dēstrūctum*), tear down
diffusion, *diffundō* (past participle, *diffūsum*), pour out, scatter
dissolve, *dissolvō*, take apart
distillation, *distillō*, drip, trickle
distribution, *distribuō* (past participle, *distribūtum*), distribute

efficient, *efficiō*, accomplish
erosion, *ē, ex: rōdō* (past participle, *rōsum*), gnaw
evaporation, *ē, ex: vapor*, vapor, steam
extinguish, *extinguō*, put out

factory, *faciō*
fermentation, *fermentum*, yeast
flame, *flamma*, flame
fluid, *fluō*, flow
formation, *fōrma*, form

heredity, *hērēs*, heir
humidity, *humidus*, damp

inclination, *inclīnō*, bend
influence, *in: fluō*, flow

liquid, *liquidus*, flowing, fluid (*as adjective*)
location, *locus*

material, *māteria* (or *māteriēs*), material

mercury, *Mercurius*, Mercury, (the messenger and herald of the gods)

mixture, *misceō* (past participle, *mixtum*), mingle

motor, *moveō*

nutrition, *nūtriō*, nourish

origin, *orīgō* (genitive, *orīginis*), origin

particle, *particula*, a small part

pollution, *polluō* (past participle, *pollūtum*), defile

potential, *potēns*, powerful

progressive, *prōgredior* (past participle, *prōgressus*), go forward

refrigerator, *refrīgerō*, make cool again, chill

relative, *referō* (past participle, *relātum*), bring back

residence, *resideō*, remain

respiration, *respīrō*, breathe out, breathe

sanitary, *sānitās*, health

saturation, *saturō*, fill

selection, *sē*, apart from: *legō* (past participle, *lēctum*), choose

simple, *simplex*, single

solid, *solidus*, firm

station, *stō* (future active participle, *stātūrus*), stand

submarine, *sub: marīnus*, of the sea

transformation, *trāns: fōrmō*, shape, form

transmission, *trāns: mittō*

transplant, *trāns: plantō*, plant, set

transpiration, *trāns: spīrō*, breathe

turbine, *turbō*, a top, a whirlwind

useful, *ūtor*

variety, *varius*, varied

WORDS OF LATIN DERIVATION USED IN GRAMMAR

ablative, *auferō* (past participle, *ablātum*), take from

absolute, *absolvō* (past participle, *absolūtum*), set free

abstract, *abstrahō* (past participle, *abstrāctum*), draw from

active, *agō* (past participle, *āctum*), do

adherent, *adhaereō*, cling to

adjective, *adjiciō* (past participle, *adjectum*), place near

adjunct, *adjungō* (past participle, *adjūnctum*), join to
adverb, *ad: verbum*
adversative, *adversus*, against
alternative, *alter*, the other
antecedent, *antecēdō*, go before
apposition, *ad* (=*ap*-): *pōnō*
assimilate, *ad* (=*as*-): *similis*
assume, *ad* (=*as*-): *sūmō*
attribute, *attribuō*, assign
auxiliary, *auxilium*

causal, *causa*
clause, *claudō* (past participle, *clausum*)
cognate, *cognātus*, connected by birth
collective, *colligō* (past participle, *collēctum*), collect
colloquial, *colloquor*, talk
comparative, *comparō*, compare
complement, *compleō*, fill, fill out
complex, *com*-, with, together: *plectō* (past participle, *plexum*), braid, interweave
concessive, *concēdō* (past participle, *concessum*), yield
condition, *conditiō* (earlier, *condiciō*), condition
conjunction, *conjungō* (past participle, *conjūnctum*), join together
consequence, *cōnsequor*, follow
construction, *cōnstruō* (past participle, *cōnstrūctum*), put together
contraction, *contrahō* (past participle, *contractum*), draw together
coördinate, *co*- (*com*-), with, together; *ōrdinō*, arrange
copula, *cōpula*, a fastening

declarative, *dēclārō*, declare
definition, *dēfīniō*, set bounds to
demonstrative, *dēmōnstrō*, point out
dental, *dēns*
dependent, *dēpendeō*, hang from
descriptive, *dēscrībō*, describe
determination, *dētermінō*, mark off, limit

equivalent, *aequus*
exclamation, *exclāmō*, cry out
exercise, *exerceō*, train
expletive, *expleō*, fill out

feminine, *fēmina*
finite, *fīniō* (past participle, *fīnītum*), limit
future, *futūrus*, about to be

illiterate, *in*-, not: *līterātus*, educated (from *littera*, also spelled *lītera*)

imperative, *imperō* (past participle, *imperātum*), command
imperfect, *in-*, not: *perficiō* (past participle, *perfectum*), accomplish
indefinite, *in-*, not; *dēfīniō*, mark off
independent, *in-*, not; *dēpendeō*, hang from, be dependent on
infinitive, *in-*, not; *fīniō* (past participle, *fīnītum*), limit
inflection, *īnflectō*, bend
instrumental, *īnstrūmentum*, instrument
interjection, *interjiciō* (past participle, *interjectum*), throw in
interrogative, *interrogō*, ask
intransitive, *in-*, not: *trānseō*
introduce, *intrōdūcō*, lead *or* bring in
inversion, *invertō*, turn upside down
irregular, *in-* (=*ir-*), not: *rēgula*, rule

limiting, *līmes* (genitive, *līmitis*), path, boundary
locative, *locus*

masculine, *masculīnus*, male, masculine

negative, *negō*, deny
neuter, *neuter*, neither
nominative, *nōmen*, name
numeral, *numerus*, number

omission, *omittō*, pass by, omit
ordinal, *ōrdō*, rank, order

participle, *pars: capiō*
partitive, *pars*
passive, *patior* (past participle, *passus*), endure
perfect, *perficiō* (past participle, *perfectum*), accomplish
personal, *persōna*, person
plural, *plūs* (genitive *plūris*), more
position, *pōnō* (past participle, *positum*)
possession, *possideō* (past participle, *possessum*), possess
predicate, *praedicō*, proclaim, declare
preposition, *praepōnō* (past participle, *praepositum*), place before
present, *praesēns* (genitive, *praesentis*), present
progressive, *prōgredior* (past participle, *prōgressus*), go forward

recipient, *recipiō*, receive
regular, *rēgula*, rule
restrictive, *restringō* (past participle, *restrictum*), restrain

sentence, *sententia*, opinion, thought
sequence, *sequor*, follow
simile, *similis*
subordinate, *sub*, under: *ōrdō*, rank
substantive, *sub*, under: *stō*
superlative, *super*, above
temporal, *tempus* (genitive, *temporis*)
terminology, *terminus*, boundary, limit

translation, *trānsferō* (past participle, *trānslātum*, carry across)

verb, *verbum*, word

vocative, *vocō*, call

WORDS OF LATIN DERIVATION IN ELEMENTARY MATHEMATICS

acute, *acūtus*, sharp
addition, *addō* (past participle, *additum*), add
adjacent, *ad: jaceō*, lie
alternate, *alter*
angle, *angulus*, corner
arc, *arcus*, a bow
ascending, *ascendō*, go up
associative, *ad: socius*

bisect, *bis*,[1] twice: *secō* (past participle, *sectum*) cut

center, *centrum*, center
circle, *circulus*, circle
circumscribe, *circum: scrībō*, write, draw
coefficient, *co-* (*con-*), with, together: *efficiō*, bring about
coincide, *co-* (*con-*) with, together: *incidō*, fall
commutative, *commūtō*, change
complementary, *compleō*, fill out
cone, *cōnus*, a cone
congruence, *congruō*, agree, be in harmony
constant, *cōnstō*, stand firm
construct, *cōnstruō*, heap together, make
contact, *contingō* (past participle, *contāctum*), touch
coördinate, *co-* (*con-*) with, together: *ōrdō*, rank

data, *dō* (past participle, *datum*)
decimal, *decimus*, tenth
difference, *differō*, differ
digit, *digitus*, finger
dissimilar, *dissimilis*, unlike
distance, *distō*, stand apart, be separated
dividend, *dīvidō* (future passive participle *dīvidendus*)

[1] In derivatives *bi-* or *bis-* as a prefix sometimes means *two*. Hence "bisect" means to cut into two parts.

divisor, *dīvidō* (past passive participle, *dīvīsum*)

elevate, *ē, ex: levō,* lift up, raise
eliminate, *ē, ex: līmen,* threshold
equal, *aequus*
equiangular, *aequus: angulus*
equidistant, *aequus: distō,* stand apart
equilateral, *aequus: latus* (genitive *lateris*), side
exponent, *expōnō,* set forth
exterior, *extrā,* outside of
extreme, *extrēmus,* farthest, last

factor, *faciō*
formula, *fōrmula,* form, regulation, rule
fraction, *frangō* (past participle, *frāctum*), break
function, *fungor* (past participle, *fūnctus*), perform
fundamental, *fundāmentum,* foundation

inscribe, *in: scrībō*
intercept, *intercipiō,* interrupt
intersection, *inter: secō* (past participle, *sectum*)
inverse, *invertō* (past participle, *inversum*), turn upside down

lever, *levō,* lift up
literal, *littera* (also spelled *lītera*), a letter
locus, *locus,* place

mariner, *marīnus,* of the sea
member, *membrum,* limb
minute, *minūtus,* very small
motion, *moveō*
multiplication, *multus: plicāre,* fold

negative, *negō,* deny
normal, *nōrma,* rule
notation, *notō,* mark, indicate

oblique, *oblīquus,* slanting
obtuse, *obtundō* (past participle *obtūsum*), make blunt, make dull
operation, *opus* (genitive *operis*), work
opposite, *ob,* towards, before: *pōnō*

partial, *pars*
percent, *per: centum*
perpendicular, *perpendiculum,* plumb-line
plane, *plānus,* level, flat
prime, *prīmus*
product, *prōdūcō,* bring forth
protractor, *prōtrahō* (past participle, *prōtractum*), draw out, lengthen

quadrant, *quadrāns*, a fourth part
quadrilateral, *quattuor*[1]: *latus* (genitive, *lateris*)
quotient, *quotiēns*, how often

radius, *radius*, spoke of a wheel
ratio, *ratiō*, relation
rectangle, *rēctus*, straight: *angulus*
regular, *rēgula*, rule
reduction, *redūcō*, bring back

scale, *scālae*, stairway
segment, *segmentum*, a cutting
semicircle, *sēmi-*[2], half: *circulus*
sign, *signum*, sign
similar, *similis*
simultaneous, *simul*, at the same time
solve, *solvō*, loosen, dissolve
subtraction, *subtrahō* (past participle, *subtractum*), withdraw, take away
superposition, *super*, upon: *pōnō*

table, *tabula*, board
tangent, *tangō*, touch
transit, *trānseō* (past participle, *trānsitum*)
triangle, *trēs: angulus*
trisect, *trēs* (represented in compounds by *tri*), *secō*, cut

unit, *ūnus*
use, *ūtor*

variation, *varius*, different
vertex, *vertex*, highest point
vinculum, *vinculum*, chain
velocity, *vēlōx* (genitive *vēlōcis*), swift

---

[1] *Quattuor* is regularly represented in compounds by the initial syllable *quad-*. There was an adjective *quadrus*, square, which came into use a little later than the time of Caesar.
[2] Used as a prefix in Latin.

GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

SUMMARY OF DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS

NOUNS

1. FIRST DECLENSION, ā-stems

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom.	rosa	rosae
Gen.	rosae	rosārum
Dat.	rosae	rosīs
Acc.	rosam	rosās
Abl.	rosā	rosīs

2. SECOND DECLENSION, o-stems

Singular

N.	dominus	puer	ager	vir	templum
G.	dominī	puerī	agrī	virī	templī
D.	dominō	puerō	agrō	virō	templō
Ac.	dominum	puerum	agrum	virum	templum
Ab.	dominō	puerō	agrō	virō	templō

Plural

N.	dominī	puerī	agrī	virī	templa
G.	dominōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	templōrum
D.	dominīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	templīs
Ac.	dominōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	templa
Ab.	dominīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	templīs

NOTE.—The vocative singular of **-us** nouns ends in **-e**: **domine.** The vocative singular (and sometimes the genitive singular) of **fīlius** and of proper nouns in **-ius** ends in **-ī**: **fīlī.**

3. THIRD DECLENSION

(1) CONSONANT STEMS (Masculine and Feminine)

Singular

N.	lēx	mīles	frāter	homō
G.	lēgis	mīlitis	frātris	hominis
D.	lēgī	mīlitī	frātrī	hominī
Ac.	lēgem	mīlitem	frātrem	hominem
Ab.	lēge	mīlite	frātre	homine

Plural

N.	lēgēs	mīlitēs	frātrēs	hominēs
G.	lēgum	mīlitum	frātrum	hominum
D.	lēgibus	mīlitibus	frātribus	hominibus
Ac.	lēgēs	mīlitēs	frātrēs	hominēs
Ab.	lēgibus	mīlitibus	frātribus	hominibus

NOTE.—Some masculine and feminine nouns have a nominative ending **-s**. If the stem ends in **-c** or **-g**, the combination of the final **-c** or **-g** of the stem with **-s** gives **-x**: **dux,** nominative from the stem **duc-**; **lēx,** nominative from the stem **lēg-**. If the stem ends in **-d** or **-t,** the final consonant is dropped before **-s**: **laus,** nominative from the stem **laud-**. If the vowel **i** stands before the final consonant of the stem it is frequently changed to **e** in the nominative: **prīnceps,** nominative from the stem **prīncip-**; **mīles,** nominative from the stem **mīlit-.**

Nouns with stems ending in **-tr** have the nominative ending in **-ter**: **frāter** from the stem **frātr-**; **māter** from the stem **mātr-.**

Nouns with stems ending in **-din** and **-gin** replace **-in** of the stem by **-ō** in the nominative: **virgō** from the stem **virgin-**; **multitūdō** from the stem **multitūdin-.** The nominative **homō** is formed by replacing **-in** of the stem in the same manner.

(2) CONSONANT STEMS (Neuter)

Singular

N.	flūmen	caput	corpus	iter
G.	flūminis	capitis	corporis	itineris
D.	flūminī	capitī	corporī	itinerī
Ac.	flūmen	caput	corpus	iter
Ab.	flūmine	capite	corpore	itinere

Plural

N.	flūmina	capita	corpora	itinera
G.	flūminum	capitum	corporum	itinerum
D.	flūminibus	capitibus	corporibus	itineribus
Ac.	flūmina	capita	corpora	itinera
Ab.	flūminibus	capitibus	corporibus	itineribus

NOTE.—Nouns with **-in** as the stem ending change **i** of the stem to **e** in the nominative: **flūmen** from the stem **flūmin-**. A few other nouns likewise change the vowel before the final consonant of the stem in forming the nominative: **caput** from the stem **capit-**.

Neuter nouns with stems ending in **-er** or **-or** regularly have the nominative in **-us**: **corpus** from the stem **corpor-**. The nominative **iter** has the stem **itiner-**.

(3) I-STEMS AND MIXED STEMS (Masculine and Feminine)

These include two classes. (1) Nouns having the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative. (2) Nouns having two consonants before the ending of the genitive singular.

Singular

N.	hostis	caedēs	gēns
G.	hostis	caedis	gentis
D.	hostī	caedī	gentī
Ac.	hostem	caedem	gentem
Ab.	hoste	caede	gente

Plural

N.	hostēs	caedēs	gentēs
G.	hostium	caedium	gentium
D.	hostibus	caedibus	gentibus
Ac.	hostīs *or* -ēs	caedīs *or* -ēs	gentīs *or* -ēs
Ab.	hostibus	caedibus	gentibus

NOTE.—The ablative singular of **turris** and sometimes of **ignis** and a few other words ends in **-ī** instead of **-e**. The accusative singular of **turris** is **turrim.**

(4) I-STEMS (Neuter)

These end in **-e, -al,** or **-ar.**

Singular

N.	īnsigne	calcar	animal
G.	īnsignis	calcāris	animālis
D.	īnsignī	calcārī	animālī
Ac.	īnsigne	calcar	animal
Ab.	īnsignī	calcārī	animālī

Plural

N.	īnsignia	calcāria	animālia
G.	īnsignium	calcārium	animālium
D.	īnsignibus	calcāribus	animālibus
Ac.	īnsignia	calcāria	animālia
Ab.	īnsignibus	calcāribus	animālibus

(5) IRREGULAR NOUNS

	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
N.	vīs	vīrēs	bōs	bovēs
G.	—	vīrium	bovis	boum
D.	—	vīribus	bovī	būbus *or* bōbus
Ac.	vim	vīrīs *or* -ēs	bovem	bovēs
Ab.	vī	vīribus	bove	būbus *or* bōbus

4. FOURTH DECLENSION, u-stems

	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
N.	exercitus	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
G.	exercitūs	exercituum	cornūs	cornuum
D.	exercituī *or* -ū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus
Ac.	exercitum	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
Ab.	exercitū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus

	Singular	*Plural*
N.	domus	domūs
G.	domūs	domuum *or* domōrum
D.	domuī *or* domō	domibus
Ac.	domum	domūs *or* domōs
Ab.	domū *or* domō	domibus
Loc.	domī	

5. FIFTH DECLENSION, ē-stems

	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
N.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
G.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
D.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Ac.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Ab.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

ADJECTIVES

6. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

a. **bonus,** *good*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
G.	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
D.	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Ac.	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
Ab.	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

b. **miser,** *unhappy*

Singular

N.	miser	misera	miserum
G.	miserī	miserae	miserī
D.	miserō	miserae	miserō
Ac.	miserum	miseram	miserum
Ab.	miserō	miserā	miserō

Plural

N.	miserī	miserae	misera
G.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
D.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
Ac.	miserōs	miserās	misera
Ab.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

c. **pulcher,** *beautiful*

Singular

N.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
G.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
D.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
Ac.	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
Ab.	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

Plural

N.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
G.	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
D.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
Ac.	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
Ab.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

7. THIRD DECLENSION

(1) THREE TERMINATIONS—(I-STEMS)

ācer, *sharp*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut*
N.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
G.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
D.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Ac.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
Ab.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

(2) TWO TERMINATIONS—(I-STEMS)

omnis, *all*

	Singular		*Plural*	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
G.	omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
D.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus
Ac.	omnem	omne	omnīs *or* -ēs	omnia
Ab.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus

(3) ONE TERMINATION (I-STEMS)

fēlīx, *fortunate* — **potēns**, *powerful*

	Masc. and Fem	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
	Singular			
N.	fēlīx	fēlīx	potēns	potēns
G.	fēlīcis	fēlīcis	potentis	potentis
D.	fēlīcī	fēlīcī	potentī	potentī
Ac.	fēlīcem	fēlīx	potentem	potēns
Ab.	fēlīcī	fēlīcī	potentī, -e	potentī, -e
	Plural			
N.	fēlīcēs	fēlīcia	potentēs	potentia
G.	fēlīcium	fēlīcium	potentium	potentium
D.	fēlīcibus	fēlīcibus	potentibus	potentibus
Ac.	fēlīcīs, -ēs	fēlīcia	potentīs, -ēs	potentia
Ab.	fēlīcibus	fēlīcibus	potentibus	potentibus

(4) **vetus,** *old*

(*a consonant stem*)

	Singular Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	*Plural* Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
N.	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
G.	veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
D.	veterī	veterī	veteribus	veteribus
Ac.	veterem	vetus	veterēs	vetera
Ab.	vetere	vetere	veteribus	veteribus

8. PRESENT PARTICIPLES

	Singular Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	*Plural* Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
N.	portāns	portāns	portantēs	portantia
G.	portantis	portantis	portantium	portantium
D.	portantī	portantī	portantibus	portantibus
Ac.	portantem	portāns	portantīs, -ēs	portantia
Ab.	portante (-ī)	portante (-ī)	portantibus	portantibus

9. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

alius	**ūnus**	**alter**
sōlus	**tōtus**	**neuter**
ūllus	**nūllus**	**uter**

N.	sōlus	sōla	sōlum	alter	altera	alterum
G.	sōlīus	sōlīus	sōlīus	alterīus	alterīus	alterīus
D.	sōlī	sōlī	sōlī	alterī	alterī	alterī
Ac.	sōlum	sōlam	sōlum	alterum	alteram	alterum
Ab.	sōlō	sōlā	sōlō	alterō	alterā	alterō

(*The plurals are like those of* **bonus** *and* **miser.**)

10. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
lātus	lātior, lātius	lātissimus, -a, -um
fortis	fortior, fortius	fortissimus, -a, -um
fēlīx	fēlīcior, fēlīcius	fēlīcissimus, -a, -um
miser	miserior, miserius	miserrimus, -a, -um
facilis	facilior, facilius	facillimus, -a, -um

11. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
bonus	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
malus	pejor, pejus	pessimus, -a, -um
magnus	major, majus	maximus, -a, -um
parvus	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
multus	——, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um

12. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

lātior, *broader*

	Singular		*Plural*	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	lātior	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
G.	lātiōris	lātiōris	lātiōrum	lātiōrum
D.	lātiōrī	lātiōrī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
Ac.	lātiōrem	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
Ab.	lātiōre	lātiōre	lātiōribus	lātiōribus

plūs, *more*

	Singular		*Plural*	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	———	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
G.	———	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
D.	———	——	plūribus	plūribus
Ac.	———	plūs	plūrīs *or* -ēs	plūra
Ab.	———	——	plūribus	plūribus

13. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
lātē	lātius	lātissimē
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
ācriter	ācrius	ācerrimē
facile	facilius	facillimē

14. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

bene	melius	optimē
male	pejus	pessimē
magnopere	plūs	maximē
multum	magis	plūrimum
parum	minus	minimē
prope	propius	proximē
saepe	saepius	saepissimē
diū	diūtius	diūtissimē

15. NUMERALS

Roman Numerals	*Cardinal*	*Ordinal*
I.	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um
II.	duo, -ae, -o	secundus *or* alter
III.	trēs, tria	tertius
IV.	quattuor	quārtus
V.	quīnque	quīntus
VI.	sex	sextus
VII.	septem	septimus
VIII.	octō	octāvus
IX.	novem	nōnus
X.	decem	decimus
XI.	ūndecim	ūndecimus
XII.	duodecim	duodecimus
XIII.	tredecim	tertius decimus
XIV.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
XV.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus
XVI.	sēdecim	sextus decimus
XVII.	septendecim	septimus decimus
XVIII.	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsimus
XIX.	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus
XX.	vīgintī	vīcēsimus
XXI.	ūnus et vīgintī (vīgintī ūnus)	vīcēsimus prīmus

XXVIII.	duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēsimus
XXIX.	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēsimus
XXX.	trīgintā	trīcēsimus
XL.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
L.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus
LX.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
LXX.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus
LXXX.	octōgintā	octōgēsimus
XC.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus
C.	centum	centēsimus
CI.	centum (et) ūnus	centēsimus(et) prīmus
CC.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus
CCC.	trecentī	trecentēsimus
CCCC.	quadringentī	quadringentēsimus
D.	quīngentī	quīngentēsimus
DC.	sescentī	sescentēsimus
DCC.	septingentī	septingentēsimus
DCCC.	octingentī	octingentēsimus
DCCCC.	nōngentī	nōngentēsimus
M.	mīlle	mīllēsimus
MM.	duo mīlia	bis mīllēsimus

16 DECLENSION OF **DUO, TRĒS,** and **MĪLIA**

duo, *two*

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	duo	duae	duo
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Ac.	duōs, duo	duās	duo
Ab.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

	trēs, *three*		**mīlia,** N., *thousands*
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Neut.*
N.	trēs	tria	mīlia
G.	trium	trium	mīlium
D.	tribus	tribus	mīlibus
Ac.	trēs, trīs	tria	mīlia
Ab.	tribus	tribus	mīlibus

a. In the singular, **mīlle,** *thousand,* is an indeclinable adjective. In the plural it is a neuter noun, and the noun denoting the persons or things which are numbered is put in the genitive of the whole.

PRONOUNS

17. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

	First person, **ego,** *I*		Second person, **tū,** *you* (*thou*)	
	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
N.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs
G.	meī	nostrum / nostrī	tuī	vestrum / vestrī
D.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
Ac.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
Ab.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

a. There is no personal pronoun of the third person. Its place is taken either by a demonstrative pronoun (usually **is,** *he,* **ea,** *she,* **id,** *it*), or, if the antecedent is the subject of the sentence or clause, by the reflexive.

18. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

	First person, **meī,** *of myself*		Second person, **tuī,** *of yourself*		Third person, **suī,** *of himself, etc.*	
	Sing.	*Plur.*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*
G.	meī	nostrī	tuī	vestrī	suī	suī
D.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
Ac.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)
Ab.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)

19. POSSESSIVES

Singular

1st pers.	meus, -a, -um, *my*
2d pers.	tuus, -a, -um, *your* (of one person)
3d pers.	suus, -a, -um, *his, her, its* (reflexive) ejus (gen. sing. of is) *his*, etc. (not reflexive)

Plural

1st pers.	noster, -tra, -trum, *our*
2d pers.	vester, -tra, -trum, *your* (of more than one person)
3d pers.	suus, -a, -um, *their* (reflexive) eōrum, eārum, eōrum (gen. plur. of is) *their* (not reflexive)

a. The vocative singular of **meus** is **mī.**

20. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

a. hic, *this*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
G.	hujus	hujus	hujus	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
D.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Ac.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Ab.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

b. ille, *that*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
G.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
D.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Ac.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Ab.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

c. **is,** *this, that, he, she, it*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	is	ea	id	iī, eī	eae	ea
G.	ejus	ejus	ejus	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D.	eī	eī	eī	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs
Ac.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Ab.	eō	eā	eō	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs

(1) **iste** is declined like **ille.**

21. THE IDENTIFYING PRONOUN

īdem, *the same*

	Singular		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	īdem	eadem	idem
G.	ejusdem	ejusdem	ejusdem
D.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
Ac.	eundem	eandem	idem
Ab.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem
	Plural		
N.	īdem *or* eīdem	eaedem	eadem
G.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
D.	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem
Ac.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Ab.	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem

22. THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

ipse, *self*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Ac.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ab.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

23. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

quī, *who*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cujus	cujus	cujus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

24. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	quis	quae	quid *or* quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cujus	cujus	cujus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quid *or* quod	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. In the nominative singular masculine the adjective form is sometimes **quī**. In the nominative and accusative singular neuter it is always **quod.** As a pronoun, **quis** may be either masculine or feminine.

25. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

a. **quisque**, *each*

	Singular		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	quisque	quaeque	quidque, quodque
G.	cujusque	cujusque	cujusque
D.	cuique	cuique	cuique
Ac.	quemque	quamque	quidque, quodque
Ab.	quōque	quāque	quōque

(*The plural is rare*)

b. **quisquam,** *anyone*

Singular

	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*
N.	quisquam	quicquam (quidquam)
G.	cujusquam	cujusquam
D.	cuiquam	cuiquam
Ac.	quemquam	quicquam (quidquam)
Ab.	quōquam	quōquam

(*Plural lacking*)

c. **quīdam,** *a certain*

Singular

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)
G.	cujusdam	cujusdam	cujusdam
D.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
Ac.	quendam	quandam	quiddam (quoddam)
Ab.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

Plural

N.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
G.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
D.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Ac.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Ab.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

d. **aliquis,** *some*

Singular

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	aliquis (aliquī)	aliqua	aliquid (aliquod)
G.	alicujus	alicujus	alicujus
D.	alicui	alicui	alicui
Ac.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (aliquod)
Ab.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

Plural

N.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
G.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
D.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Ac.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Ab.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

REGULAR VERBS

26. FIRST CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **portō, portāre, portāvī, portātum**

PRESENT

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Singular	
portō, *I carry*	portem
portās, *you carry*	portēs
portat, *he carries*	portet
Plural	
portāmus, *we carry*	portēmus
portātis, *you carry*	portētis
portant, *they carry*	portent

IMPERFECT

Singular	
portābam, *I was carrying*	portārem
portābās, *you were carrying*	portārēs
portābat, *he was carrying*	portāret
Plural	
portābāmus, *we were carrying*	portārēmus
portābātis, *you were carrying*	portārētis
portābant, *they were carrying*	portārent

FUTURE

Singular

portābō, *I shall carry*
portābis, *you will carry*
portābit, *he will carry*

Plural

portābimus, *we shall carry*
portābitis, *you will carry*
portābunt, *they will carry*

PERFECT

Singular

portāvī, *I have carried, I carried*	portāverim
portāvistī, *you have carried,* etc.	portāverīs
portāvit, *he has carried,* etc.	portāverit

Plural

portāvimus, *we have carried,* etc.	portāverīmus
portāvistis, *you have carried,* etc.	portāverītis
portāvērunt, -ēre, *they have carried,* etc.	portāverint

PAST PERFECT

Singular

portāveram, *I had carried*	portāvissem
portāverās, *you had carried*	portāvissēs
portāverat, *he had carried*	portāvisset

Plural

portāverāmus, *we had carried*	portāvissēmus
portāverātis, *you had carried*	portāvissētis
portāverant, *they had carried*	portāvissent

FUTURE PERFECT

Singular

portāverō, *I shall have carried*
portāveris, *you will have carried*
portāverit, *he will have carried*

Plural

portāverimus, *we shall have carried*
portāveritis, *you will have carried*
portāverint, *they will have carried*

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

Sing. portā, *carry* (thou)
Plur. portāte, *carry* (*ye*)

FUTURE

Sing. 2. portātō, *thou shalt carry*
3. portātō, *he shall carry*
Plur. 2. portātōte, *ye shall carry*
3. portantō, *they shall carry*

INFINITIVES

Pres. portāre, *to carry*
Past portāvisse, *to have carried*
Fut. portātūrus esse, *to be going to carry*

PARTICIPLES

Pres. portāns, *carrying*
Fut. portātūrus, *going to carry*

GERUND

G. portandī, *of carrying*
D. portandō, *to (for) carrying*
Ac. portandum, *carrying*
Ab. portandō, *from, by carrying*

SUPINE

Ac. portātum, *to carry*
Ab. portātū, *to carry*

27. *PASSIVE VOICE*

PRESENT

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Singular	
portor, *I am carried*	porter
portāris, -re, *you are carried*	portēris, -re
portātur, *he is carried*	portētur
Plural	
portāmur, *we are carried*	portēmur
portāminī, *you are carried*	portēminī
portantur, *they are carried*	portentur

IMPERFECT

Singular

portābar, *I was (being) carried*	portārer
portābāris, -re, *you were (being) carried*	portārēris, -re
portābātur, *he was (being) carried*	portārētur

Plural

portābāmur, *we were (being) carried*	portārēmur
portābāminī, *you were (being) carried*	portārēminī
portābantur, *they were (being) carried*	portārentur

FUTURE

Singular

portābor, *I shall be carried*
portāberis, -re, *you will be carried*
portābitur, *he will be carried*

Plural

portābimur, *we shall be carried*
portābiminī, *you will be carried*
portābuntur, *they will be carried*

PERFECT

Singular	*Singular*
portātus sum, *I have been carried*	portātus sim
portātus es, *you have been carried*	portātus sīs
portātus est, *he has been carried*	portātus sit
Plural	*Plural*
portātī sumus, *we have been carried*	portātī sīmus
portātī estis, *you have been carried*	portātī sītis
portātī sunt, *they have been carried*	portātī sint

PAST PERFECT

Singular	*Singular*
portātus eram, *I had been carried*	portātus essem
portātus erās, *you had been carried*	portātus essēs
portātus erat, *he had been carried*	portātus esset

Plural	*Plural*
portātī erāmus, *we had been carried*	portātī essēmus
portātī erātis, *you had been carried*	portātī essētis
portātī erant, *they had been carried*	portātī essent

FUTURE PERFECT

Singular

portātus erō, *I shall have been carried*
portātus eris, *you will have been carried*
portātus erit, *he will have been carried*

Plural

portātī erimus, *we shall have been carried*
portātī eritis, *you will have been carried*
portātī erunt, *they will have been carried*

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

Sing. portāre, *be (thou) carried*
Plur. portāminī, *be (ye) carried*

FUTURE

Sing. *2.* portātor, *thou shalt be carried*
3. portātor, *he shall be carried*
Plur. ——————
3. portantor, *they shall be carried*

INFINITIVES

Pres. amārī, *to be loved*
Past amātus esse, *to have been loved*
Fut. amātum īrī, *to be about to be loved*

PARTICIPLES

Past portātus, *having been carried*
Fut. portandus, *to be carried*

28. SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum
dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum
capiō, capere, cēpī, captum
audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Singular

moneō	dūcō	capiō	audiō
monēs	dūcis	capis	audīs
monet	dūcit	capit	audit

Plural

monēmus	dūcimus	capimus	audīmus
monētis	dūcitis	capitis	audītis
monent	dūcunt	capiunt	audiunt

IMPERFECT

Singular

monēbam	dūcēbam	capiēbam	audiēbam
monēbās	dūcēbās	capiēbās	audiēbās
monēbat	dūcēbat	capiēbat	audiēbat

Plural

monēbāmus	dūcēbāmus	capiēbāmus	audiēbāmus
monēbātis	dūcēbātis	capiēbātis	audiēbātis
monēbant	dūcēbant	capiēbant	audiēbant

FUTURE

Singular

monēbō	dūcam	capiam	audiam
monēbis	dūcēs	capiēs	audiēs
monēbit	dūcet	capiet	audiet

Plural

monēbimus	dūcēmus	capiēmus	audiēmus
monēbitis	dūcētis	capiētis	audiētis
monēbunt	dūcent	capient	audient

PERFECT

monuī	dūxī	cēpī	audīvī

PAST PERFECT

monueram	dūxeram	cēperam	audīveram

FUTURE PERFECT

monuerō	dūxerō	cēperō	audīverō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

Singular

moneam	dūcam	capiam	audiam
moneās	dūcās	capiās	audiās
moneat	dūcat	capiat	audiat

Plural

moneāmus	dūcāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus
moneātis	dūcātis	capiātis	audiātis
moneant	dūcant	capiant	audiant

IMPERFECT

Singular

monērem	dūcerem	caperem	audīrem
monērēs	dūcerēs	caperēs	audīrēs
monēret	dūceret	caperet	audīret

Plural

monērēmus	dūcerēmus	caperēmus	audīrēmus
monērētis	dūcerētis	caperētis	audīrētis
monērent	dūcerent	caperent	audīrent

PERFECT

monuerim	dūxerim	cēperim	audīverim

PAST PERFECT

monuissem	dūxissem	cēpissem	audīvissem

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

Singular

monē	dūc[1]	cape	audī

Plural

monēte	dūcite	capite	audīte

FUTURE

Singular

monētō	dūcitō	capitō	audītō
monētō	dūcitō	capitō	audītō

Plural

monētōte	dūcitōte	capitōte	audītōte
monentō	dūcuntō	capiunto	audiuntō

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT

monēns	dūcēns	capiēns	audiēns

FUTURE

monitūrus	ductūrus	captūrus	audītūrus

INFINITIVES

PRESENT

monēre	dūcere	capere	audīre

PAST

monuisse	dūxisse	cēpisse	audīvisse

FUTURE

monitūrus esse	ductūrus esse	captūrus esse	audītūrus esse

[1] This is an irregular form. The imperative of mittō is mitte, mittite, etc., which illustrates the regular formation in the 3d conjugation.

GERUND

monendī	dūcendī	capiendī	audiendī
monendō	dūcendō	capiendō	audiendō
etc.	*etc.*	*etc.*	*etc.*

SUPINE

monitum	ductum	captum	audītum
monitū	ductū	captū	audītū

29. *PASSIVE VOICE*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Singular

moneor	dūcor	capior	audior
monēris, -re	dūceris, -re	caperis, -re	audīris, -re
monētur	dūcitur	capitur	audītur

Plural

monēmur	dūcimur	capimur	audīmur
monēminī	dūciminī	capiminī	audīminī
monentur	dūcuntur	capiuntur	audiuntur

IMPERFECT

Singular

monēbar	dūcēbar	capiēbar	audiēbar
monēbāris, -re	dūcēbāris, -re	capiēbāris, -re	audiēbāris, -re
monēbātur	dūcēbātur	capiēbātur	audiēbātur

Plural

monēbāmur	dūcēbāmur	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur
monēbāminī	dūcēbāminī	capiēbāminī	audiēbāminī
monēbantur	dūcēbantur	capiēbantur	audiēbantur

FUTURE

Singular

monēbor	dūcar	capiar	audiar
monēberis, -re	dūcēris, -re	capiēris, -re	audiēris, -re
monēbitur	dūcētur	capiētur	audiētur

Plural

monēbimur	dūcēmur	capiēmur	audiēmur
monēbiminī	dūcēminī	capiēminī	audiēminī
monēbuntur	dūcentur	capientur	audientur

PERFECT

monitus sum	ductus sum	captus sum	audītus sum

PAST PERFECT

monitus eram	ductus eram	captus eram	audītus eram

FUTURE PERFECT

monitus erō	ductus erō	captus erō	audītus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

Singular

monear	dūcar	capiar	audiar
moneāris, -re	dūcāris, -re	capiāris, -re	audiāris, -re
moneātur	dūcātur	capiātur	audiātur

Plural

moneāmur	dūcāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
moneāminī	dūcāminī	capiāminī	audiāminī
moneantur	dūcantur	capiantur	audiantur

IMPERFECT

Singular

monērer	dūcerer	caperer	audīrer
monērēris, -re	dūcerēris, -re	caperēris, -re	audīrēris, -re
monērētur	dūcerētur	caperētur	audīrētur

Plural

monērēmur	dūcerēmur	caperēmur	audīrēmur
monērēminī	dūcerēminī	caperēminī	audīrēminī
monērentur	dūcerentur	caperentur	audīrentur

PERFECT

monitus sim	ductus sim	captus sim	audītus sim

PAST PERFECT

monitus essem	ductus essem	captus essem	audītus essem

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

Singular

monēre	dūcere	capere	audīre

Plural

monēminī	dūciminī	capiminī	audīminī

FUTURE

Singular

2. monētor	dūcitor	capitor	audītor
3. monētor	dūcitor	capitor	audītor

Plural

2. ———	———	———	———
3. monentor	dūcuntor	capiuntor	audiuntor

PARTICIPLES

PAST

monitus	ductus	captus	audītus

FUTURE

monendus	dūcendus	capiendus	audiendus

INFINITIVE

PRESENT

monērī	dūcī	capī	audīrī

PAST

monitus esse	ductus esse	captus esse	audītus esse

FUTURE

monitum īrī	ductum īrī	captum īrī	audītum īrī

a. A group of forms representing one person and number of a verb in all the tenses is called a Synopsis. The synopsis of **portō** in the first person singular of the indicative and subjunctive, active and passive, is as follows:

ACTIVE

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	portō	portem
Imperf.	portābam	portārem
Fut.	portābō	
Perf.	portāvī	portāverim
P. Pf.	portāveram	portāvissem
F. Pf.	portāverō	

PASSIVE

Pres.	portor	porter
Imperf.	portābar	portārer
Fut.	portābor	
Perf.	portātus sum	portātus sim
P. Pf.	portātus eram	portātus essem
F. Pf.	portātus erō	

30. DEPONENT VERBS

I. **cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum**
II. **polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum**
III. **sequor, sequī, secūtus sum**
IV. **potior, potīrī, potītus sum**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I.	II.	III.	IV.
	Singular		
cōnor	polliceor	sequor	potior
cōnāris, -re	pollicēris, -re	sequeris, -re	potīris, -re
cōnātur	pollicētur	sequitur	potītur
	Plural		
cōnāmur	pollicēmur	sequimur	potīmur
cōnāminī	pollicēminī	sequiminī	potīminī
cōnantur	pollicentur	sequuntur	potiuntur

IMPERFECT

cōnābar	pollicēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar

FUTURE

cōnābor	pollicēbor	sequar	potiar

PERFECT

cōnātus sum	pollicitus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum

PAST PERFECT

cōnātus eram	pollicitus eram	secūtus eram	potītus eram

FUTURE PERFECT

cōnātus erō	pollicitus erō	secūtus erō	potītus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

cōner	pollicear	sequar	potiar

IMPERFECT

cōnārer	pollicērer	sequerer	potīrer

PERFECT

cōnātus sim	pollicitus sim	secūtus sim	potītus sim

PAST PERFECT

cōnātus essem	pollicitus essem	secūtus essem	potītus essem

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

cōnāre	pollicēre	sequere	potīre

FUTURE

cōnātor	pollicētor	sequitor	potītor

INFINITIVE

PRESENT

cōnārī	pollicērī	sequī	potīrī

PAST

cōnātus esse	pollicitus esse	secūtus esse	potītus esse

FUTURE

cōnātūrus esse	pollicitūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potītūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

PRESENT

cōnāns	**pollicēns**	**sequēns**	**potiēns**

PAST

cōnātus	**pollicitus**	**secūtus**	**potītus**

FUTURE ACTIVE

cōnātūrus	**pollicitūrus**	**secūtūrus**	**potītūrus**

FUTURE PASSIVE

cōnandus	**pollicendus**	**sequendus**	**potiendus**

GERUND

cōnandī, etc.	**pollicendī, etc.**	**sequendī, etc.**	**potiendī, etc.**

SUPINE

cōnātum	**pollicitum**	**secūtum**	**potītum**
cōnātū	**pollicitū**	**secūtū**	**potītū**

a. The following verbs are semi-deponent. The present system is active and the perfect system is passive:

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *dare*
gaudeō, gaudēre, gavīsus sum, *rejoice*
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, *be accustomed*
fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum, *trust*

IRREGULAR VERBS

31. CONJUGATION OF **SUM**

Principal parts: **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Singular	*Plural*
sum, *I am*	sumus, *we are*
es, *you are*	estis, *you are*
est, *he, she, it is*	sunt, *they are*

IMPERFECT

eram, *I was*	erāmus, *we were*
erās, *you were*	erātis, *you were*
erat, *he, she, it was*	erant, *they were*

FUTURE

erō, *I shall be*	erimus, *we shall be*
eris, *you will be*	eritis, *you will be*
erit, *he, she, it will be*	erunt, *they will be*

PERFECT

fuī, *I have been, I was*	fuimus, *we have been, we were*
fuistī, *you have been, you were*	fuistis, *you have been, you were*
fuit, *he, she, it has been, was*	fuērunt, *or* -ēre, *they have been, they were.*

PAST PERFECT

fueram, *I had been*	fuerāmus, *we had been*
fuerās, *you had been*	fuerātis, *you had been*
fuerat, *he, she, it had been*	fuerant, *they had been*

FUTURE PERFECT

fuerō, *I shall have been*	fuerimus, *we shall have been*
fueris, *you will have been*	fueritis, *you will have been*
fuerit, *he, she, it will have been*	fuerint, *they will have been*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT		IMPERFECT	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
sim	sīmus	essem	essēmus
sīs	sītis	essēs	essētis
sit	sint	esset	essent

PERFECT		PAST PERFECT	
fuerim	fuerīmus	fuissem	fuissēmus
fuerīs	fuerītis	fuissēs	fuissētis
fuerit	fuerint	fuisset	fuissent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2d pers.	es, *be (thou)*	este, *be (ye)*

FUTURE

2d pers.	estō, *be, thou shalt be*	estōte, *be, ye shall be*
3d pers.	estō, *let him be, he shall be*	suntō, *let them be, they shall be*

PARTICIPLE

Fut. futūrus, *about to be*

INFINITIVE

Pres. esse, *to be*
Past fuisse, *to have been*
Fut. futūrus esse *or* fore, *to be about to be*

32. CONJUGATION OF POSSUM

Principal parts: **possum, posse, potuī**

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
Singular	*Plural*		*Singular*	*Plural*
		PRESENT		
possum	possumus		possim	possīmus
potes	potestis		possīs	possītis
potest	possunt		possit	possint
		IMPERFECT		
poteram	poterāmus		possem	possēmus
poterās	poterātis		possēs	possētis
poterat	poterant		posset	possent
		FUTURE		
poterō	poterimus			
		PERFECT		
potuī	potuimus		potuerim	potuerīmus
		PAST PERFECT		
potueram	potuerāmus		potuissem	potuissēmus

FUTURE PERFECT

potuerō	potuerimus

INFINITIVE

Pres. posse *Past* potuisse

33. CONJUGATION OF PRŌSUM

Principal parts: **prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī**

INDICATIVE / SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
prōsum	prōsumus	prōsim	prōsīmus
prōdes	prōdestis	prōsīs	prōsītis
prōdest	prōsunt	prōsit	prōsint

The remaining forms of the present system are conjugated like **sum,** with the prefix **prōd-**. The perfect system is regularly formed with the stem **prōfu-**.

34. CONJUGATION OF FERŌ

Principal parts: **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Active		*Passive*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
fers	fertis	ferris, -re	feriminī
fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
IMPERFECT			
ferēbam	ferēbāmus	ferēbar	ferēbāmur
FUTURE			
feram	ferēmus	ferar	ferēmur
PERFECT			
tulī	tulimus	lātus sum	lātī sumus

PAST PERFECT

tuleram	tulerāmus	lātus eram	lātī erāmus

FUTURE PERFECT

tulerō	tulerimus	lātus erō	lātī erimus

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

feram	ferāmus	ferar	ferāmur

IMPERFECT

ferrem	ferrēmus	ferrer	ferrēmur

PERFECT

tulerim	tulerīmus	lātus sim	lātī sīmus

PAST PERFECT

tulissem	tulissēmus	lātus essem	lātī essēmus

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2 fer	ferte	ferre	feriminī

FUTURE

2 fertō	fertōte	fertor	———
3 fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

INFINITIVE

	Active	*Passive*
Pres.	ferre	ferrī
Past	tulisse	lātus esse
Fut.	lātūrus esse	lātum īrī

PARTICIPLES

	Active		*Passive*
Pres.	ferēns	*Past*	lātus
Fut.	lātūrus	*Fut.*	ferendus

GERUND

ferendī, etc.

SUPINE

Acc. lātum *Abl.* lātū

35. CONJUGATION OF EŌ

Principal parts: **eō, īre, iī** *or* **īvī, itum**

PRESENT

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
eō	īmus	eam	eāmus
īs	ītis	eās	eātis
it	eunt	eat	eant

IMPERFECT

ībam	ībāmus	īrem	īrēmus

FUTURE

ībō	ībimus

PERFECT

iī *or* īvī	iimus *or* īvimus	ierim *or* īverim	ierīmus *or* īverīmus

PAST PERFECT

ieram (īveram)	ierāmus (īverāmus)	īssem (īvissem)	īssēmus (īvissēmus)

FUTURE PERFECT

ierō *or* īverō	ierimus *or* īverimus

IMPERATIVE			INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE	
Pres.	ī,	īte	*Pres.*	īre	*Pres.*	iēns (*gen.* euntis)
Fut.	ītō,	ītōte	*Past*	iisse *or* īsse	*Fut.*	itūrus
	ītō,	euntō	*Fut.*	itūrus esse		

GERUND

eundī, etc.

36. CONJUGATION OF FĪŌ

Principal parts: **fīō, fierī, factus sum**

PRESENT

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
fīō	—	fīam	fīāmus
fīs	—	fīās	fīātis
fit	fīunt	fīat	fīant

IMPERFECT

fīēbam	fīēbāmus	fierem	fierēmus

FUTURE

fīam	fīēmus

PERFECT

factus sum	factus sim

PAST PERFECT

factus eram	factus essem

FUTURE PERFECT

factus erō

IMPERATIVE	INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLES	
Pres. fī, fīte	*Pres.*	fierī	*Past.*	factus
	Past.	factus esse	*Fut.*	faciendus
	Fut.	factum īrī		

37. CONJUGATION OF VOLŌ, AND ITS COMPOUNDS

volō, velle, voluī, *be willing.*
nōlo, nōlle, nōluī, *be unwilling.*
mālō, mālle, māluī, *prefer.*

INDICATIVE

Pres.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
Imperf.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
Fut.	volam	nōlam	mālam
Perf.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
Past Perf.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
Fut. Perf.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	velim	nōlim	mālim
Imperf.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
Perf.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
Past Perf.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	nōlī	nōlīte
Fut.	nōlītō	nōlītōte
	nōlītō	nōluntō

INFINITIVE

Pres.	velle	nōlle	mālle
Past.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	volēns	nōlēns

NOTE.—A few verbs are defective, that is, they lack some forms which are found in the conjugation of other verbs. The most important are **aiō,** *I say, I assent,* **inquam,** *I say,* **coepī,** *I began,* **meminī,** *I remember,* **ōdī,** *I hate.*

(1) The forms of **aiō** most commonly used are found in the present indicative, and are as follows:

	Singular	*Plural*
1.	aiō	
2.	aïs	
3.	aït	aïunt

A few other forms, including the whole of the imperfect indicative and the second and third persons singular of the present subjunctive are sometimes found.

(2) The only forms of **inquam** in common use are found in the present indicative. They are as follows:

Singular	*Plural*
inquam	
inquis	
inquit	inquiunt

(3) The three verbs, **coepī, meminī,** and **ōdī** have no present, imperfect, or future forms. The perfects of **meminī** and **ōdī** are used with present meanings, the past perfects with imperfect meanings, and the future perfects with future meanings. The tenses of **coepī** have their regular meanings. The present, imperfect, and future of **coepī** are supplied by the forms of **incipiō.**

SYNTAX

NOTE.—The statement of grammatical principles which follows is not intended to be in any sense a complete outline of Latin grammar. The topics presented are those which are especially important for the work of the second year. The mood and case uses treated are limited almost entirely to those which are found in the exercises or the connected text of this book.

AGREEMENT

38. (1) Adjectives and participles agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

Magna **urbs;** ***magnae*** **partis;** ***magnīs*** **perīculīs.**

(2) A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its use in its own clause.

Homō ***quem*** **vidēs amīcus meus est,** *the man whom you see is my friend.*

39. A noun in apposition is put in the same case as the noun which it explains.

Agricola, ***vir*** **benignus, puerōs laudat,** *the farmer, a kind man, praises the boys.*

40. A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

Puer ***labōrat,*** *the boy works;* **puerī** ***labōrant,*** *the boys work.*

NOUNS: CASES

THE NOMINATIVE

41. The nominative is the case of the subject or predicate of a finite[1] verb.

***Puella* canit,** *the girl sings.*
***Frāter* tuus est *agricola*,** *your brother is a farmer.*

a. The predicate nominative is used with the verb **sum** and with the passive voice of verbs meaning *to name, call, appoint, choose,* and the like.

Is rēx *tyrannus* appellātus est, *this king was called a tyrant.*

THE GENITIVE

GENITIVE OF POSSESSION

42. The genitive is used to denote the possessor.

Liber *puerī* repertus est, *the boy's book has been found.*

GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE (PARTITIVE GENITIVE)

43. With words denoting a part, a dependent genitive is used to name the whole of that to which the part belongs.

Multī *amīcōrum* meōrum in eā urbe habitant, *many of my friends live in that city.*

a. The ablative with **dē** or **ex** is sometimes used in place of the genitive of the whole, regularly so with cardinal numerals and **quīdam**. **Ūnus *ē fīliīs* tuīs,** *one of your sons.*

GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION

44. The genitive, modified by an adjective, may be used to describe a person or thing.

Homō *magnae virtūtis*, *a man of great courage.*

---

[1] That is, any verb form which denotes person and number.

a. The genitive is often employed in this construction to denote measure.

Mūrus *quattuor pedum*, *a four-foot wall* (*a wall of four feet*).

OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

45. Nouns and adjectives which denote action sometimes take a dependent genitive in a relation similar to that of a direct object to the verb on which it depends.

Timor *periculī*, *fear of danger.*

SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE

46. Nouns which denote action sometimes take a genitive to indicate the person who does the act.

Adventus *Caesaris*, *the arrival of Caesar.*

GENITIVE OF MATERIAL OR COMPOSITION

47. The genitive may be used to denote the material of which something is composed, or the persons or objects making up a collective noun.

Exercitus *virōrum* fortium, *an army of brave men.*

GENITIVE WITH VERBS

48. The verbs **meminī** and **reminīscor,** *remember,* and **oblīvīscor,** *forget,* frequently take a genitive as object. ***Virtūtis* vestrae nōn oblīvīscor,** *I do not forget your courage.*

a. If the object is a neuter pronoun or a neuter adjective used as a noun, it is always in the accusative.

Rōmānī *haec* semper meminerint, *the Romans will always remember these things.*

THE DATIVE

DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT

49. The indirect object is put in the dative.

Fēmina *puerō* epistulam dat, *the woman gives the boy a letter.*

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

50. The dative is used in dependence on adjectives meaning *kind, friendly, pleasing, dear, useful, near,* and some others.

Fīlius tuus *sorōribus* benignus est, *your son is kind to (his) sisters.*

DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS

51. Most verbs meaning *to please, displease, trust, distrust, believe, persuade, serve, obey, favor, resist, envy, threaten, pardon,* and *spare* govern the dative.

Illīs *barbarīs* nēmō nunc cōnfīdit, *no one now trusts those barbarians.*

DATIVE OF POSSESSION

52. The possessor of something may be denoted by a noun or pronoun in the dative, with the word denoting the thing possessed in the nominative as the subject of a form of **sum.**

***Puerō* gladius est,** *the boy has a sword.*

DATIVE OF PURPOSE

53. A noun in the dative is sometimes used to denote the purpose or end which something serves or is intended to serve.

Hunc librum *dōnō* mīsī, *I sent this book as a gift* (lit. *for a gift*).

DATIVE OF REFERENCE

54. The dative is sometimes used to denote the person with reference to whom an act is said to be done or a situation to exist. This use is especially common in expressions which contain a dative of purpose.

Legiō *equitātuī* auxiliō missa est, *the legion was sent as aid* (lit. *for aid*) *to the cavalry.*

DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

55. Verbs compounded with **ante, ob, prae,** and **sub** frequently have a dependent noun or pronoun in the dative case. This construction is sometimes found also with compounds of **ad, circum, con-, in, inter, post, prō,** and **super.**

***Legiōnī* praeest,** *he is in command of the legion.*

a. If the simple verb from which the compound is formed is a transitive verb, the compound may take both the accusative and the dative.

***Labiēnum castrīs* praefēcit,** *he placed Labienus in charge of the camp.*

DATIVE OF AGENT

56. With the future passive participle, the person by whom the act must be done or ought to be done is regularly denoted by the dative.

Epistula *mihi* mittenda est, *a letter ought to be sent by me.*

NOTE.—With a verb which has a dependent dative of some other kind, the dative of agent is sometimes replaced by the ablative of agent (**66**) to avoid confusion in the meaning of the sentence.

ACCUSATIVE

ACCUSATIVE OF DIRECT OBJECT

57. The direct object of a verb is put in the accusative.

***Silvam* vidēmus,** *we see the forest.*

ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME

58. The accusative without a preposition is used to tell how long an act or situation continues.

Multās *hōrās* in īnsulā mānsī, *I remained many hours on the island.*

ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT IN SPACE

59. The accusative without a preposition is used to express extent in space.

Puer quīnque ***milia*** **passuum ambulāvit,** *the boy walked five miles.*

ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE TO WHICH

60. The accusative of **domus** and of names of cities and towns is used without a preposition to denote place to which. With other words in this construction, a preposition, **ad** or **in,** is used.

Exercitus ***Rōmam*** **redībit,** *the army will return to Rome.*
Exercitus ***in urbem*** **redībit,** *the army will return to the city.*

ACCUSATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS

61. Certain prepositions have their objects in the accusative case. Among the most important of these are **ad, ante, apud, circum, contrā, inter, ob, per, post, praeter, propter, trāns.**

Is poēta inter ***barbarōs*** **diū habitāvit,** *this poet lived a long time among barbarians.*

ACCUSATIVE AS SUBJECT OF INFINITIVES

62. The accusative is used as the subject of the infinitive.

Explōrātor dīxit ***urbem*** **incēnsam esse,** *the scout said the city had been burned.*

TWO ACCUSATIVES

63. Verbs of *naming, calling, appointing, thinking,* and the like, may have in addition to the direct object a second accusative telling what the person or thing denoted by the object is named, called, appointed etc.

Frātrem tuum ***praetōrem*** **creāvimus,** *we have elected your brother praetor.*

a. Compounds of **trāns** sometimes take two objects, one governed by the preposition, the other by the simple verb. With the passive of such verbs the object governed by the preposition may be retained.

Legiōnem flūmen trādūxī, *I led the legion across the river.*

Legiō flūmen trāducta est, *the legion was led across the river.*

THE ABLATIVE

ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

64. Verbs meaning to *separate, remove, deprive of, be absent,* and the like, take the ablative of separation, often with **ab** or **ex**.

Hī montēs Galliam *ab Hispāniā* dīvidunt, *these mountains separate Gaul from Spain.*

ABLATIVE OF PLACE FROM WHICH

65. The ablative of **domus** and of names of cities and towns is used without a preposition to express the idea of place from which. With other words in this construction a preposition, **ab, dē,** or **ex,** is used.

Lēgātus *Genavā* profectus est, *the envoy set out from Geneva.*

Lēgātus *ex oppidō* profectus est, *the lieutenant set out from the town.*

ABLATIVE OF AGENT

66. With passive verbs the noun or pronoun which denotes the person by whom the act is done is put in the ablative with **ā** or **ab**.

Explōrātor *ā mīlitibus* captus est, *the scout was captured by the soldiers.*

ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

67. With the comparative form of an adjective (occasionally of an adverb), if **quam** is omitted, the noun or pronoun denoting the person or thing with which comparison is made is put in the ablative without a preposition.

Puella altior *puerō* est, *the girl is taller than the boy.*

a. If **quam** is used, the word denoting the person or thing with which comparison is made stands in the same case as the thing compared.

Puella est altior *quam puer*, *the girl is taller than the boy.*

ABLATIVE OF PLACE WHERE

68. The ablative with **in** denotes the place where something is or where some act occurs.

***In eis montibus* multa animālia reperiuntur,** *many animals are found in these mountains.*

ABLATIVE OF TIME

69. The time at which or within which some act takes place is regularly expressed by a noun or pronoun in the ablative case without a preposition.

***Eō annō* pater meus tēctum novum aedificāvit,** *my father built a new house that year.*

ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

70. The ablative with the preposition **cum** is used to denote the person with whom one is associated in doing an act.

***Cum amicō* ambulō,** *I walk with a friend.*

a. The ablative of accompaniment also denotes the person with whom one is contending.

***Cum Germānīs* bellum gessērunt,** *they waged war with the Germans.*

b. The preposition **cum** may be omitted in military expressions, if the noun in the ablative is modified by an adjective other than a numeral.

***Multīs mīlitibus* flūmen trānsiī,** *I crossed the river with many soldiers.*

***Cum tribus legiōnibus* flūmen trānsiī,** *I crossed the river with three legions.*

ABLATIVE OF MANNER

71. The ablative, frequently with the preposition **cum,** is used to express manner.

Magnā *cum cūrā* (*or* **magnā *cūrā***) **omnia parāvimus,** *we have prepared everything with great care.*

NOTE.—Some words of frequent occurrence omit the preposition in this construction. Among these are **jūre,** *justly* (*with justice*), **injūriā,** *unjustly* (*with injustice*), **meritō,** *deservedly* (*with merit*), **cāsū,** *accidentally* (*by chance*), and some others.

ABLATIVE OF MEANS

72. A word which is used to denote the means employed in accomplishing an act is put in the ablative without a preposition.

Gallī *gladiīs* pugnābant, *the Gauls fought with swords.*

ABLATIVE OF ROUTE

73. The way or route by which one goes may be denoted by the ablative without a preposition.

Breviōre *itinere* rediimus, *we returned by a shorter route.*

ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

74. The ablative without a preposition is used to express the degree or measure of difference beween two things.

Arbor decem *pedibus* altior mūrō (*or* **quam mūrus**) **est,** *the tree is ten feet higher than the wall.*

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

75. A noun or pronoun in the ablative, together with an adjective, a participle, or another noun in agreement, may be used to denote some circumstance or event loosely connected with the rest of the sentence.

***Duce captō*, hostēs fūgērunt,** *the leader having been captured, the enemy fled.*

a. An ablative absolute is frequently translated by a clause introduced by *when*, *after*, *if*, *since*, *although*, or by a prepositional phrase. Thus, the ablative absolute in the preceding example may be translated *when the leader had been captured* or *after the capture of the leader*.

ABLATIVE OF RESPECT

76. The ablative without a preposition is used to indicate in what respect a statement is true.

Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs *virtūte* praecēdunt, *the Helvetians surpass the rest of the Gauls in courage.*

ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

77. The ablative modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing.

Homō *magnā virtūte*, *a man of great courage.*

NOTE.—In many phrases, such as the example given above, either the ablative or the genitive of description (**44**) may be used. But physical characteristics are usually expressed by the ablative and measure always by the genitive.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

78. The ablative is sometimes used to express cause.

Hostēs ***timōre*** **fugere coepērunt,** *the enemy began to flee on account of fear.*

a. Sometimes a preposition (**ab, dē** or **ex**) is used with the ablative of cause.

Ex commūtātiōne **rērum dolent,** *they grieve because of the change of circumstances.*

b. Cause is frequently expressed by **propter** or **ob** with the accusative.

Propter timōrem, *on account of fear.*

ABLATIVE WITH *ŪTOR*, ETC.

79. The deponents **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** and **vēscor** take their objects in the ablative.

Mīlitēs nostrī ***hastīs*** **nōn ūtuntur,** *our soldiers do not use spears.*

a. Occasionally the genitive is used with **potior** instead of the ablative.

Urbis **potīrī cupiunt,** *they wish to gain possession of the city.*

THE VOCATIVE

80. The vocative denotes the person addressed.

Ubi, ***Mārce*****, pater tuus est,** *Marcus, where is your father?*

NOTE.—The vocative regularly stands after one or more words of the sentence in which it is found.

THE LOCATIVE

81. With names of cities and towns and with **domus,** place where is denoted by the locative case, which in the singular of nouns of the first and second declensions has the

same form as the genitive singular; in nouns of the third declension and in the plural of nouns of the first and second declensions it regularly has the same form as the ablative.

Rōmae, *at Rome;* **domī,** *at home;* **Athēnīs,** *at Athens.*

ADJECTIVES

ADHERENT AND PREDICATE ADJECTIVES

82. An adjective which is directly connected with the noun which it modifies is called an adherent adjective. Thus, **vir** ***fortis,*** *a brave man;* **arbor** ***alta,*** *a tall tree.*

83. An adjective which is connected with its noun by some form of the verb meaning *to be* is called a predicate adjective. Thus, **vir** ***fortis*** **est,** *the man is brave.*

SUBSTANTIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES

84. Adjectives and participles are sometimes used as substantives (nouns or pronouns). Words meaning *many, all, others, few* and the like are especially common in this use. The masculine refers to men, or to persons in general, the feminine to women, and the neuter to things.

Multī **tē laudant,** *many praise you.*
Omnia **parāta sunt,** *all things are prepared.*

a. In military expressions **nostrī** is used to mean *our men* or *our soldiers.* Other possessives are sometimes used with a similar meaning. Thus, **tuī** or **vestrī,** *your men, your soldiers.*

ADJECTIVES DENOTING A PART

85. There are a few adjectives which tell what part of an object is meant instead of telling what kind. Among the most important are **summus, medius, extrēmus,** and **īmus.** Thus, ***summus*** **mōns,** *the highest part of the mountain, the mountain top;* ***medius*** **collis,** *the middle of the hill,* ***mediō*** **colle,** *half way up the hill* (*on the middle of the hill*).

ADJECTIVES WITH ADVERBIAL FORCE

86. Sometimes an adjective modifying the subject or object is best translated by an adverb.

***Invītī* vēnērunt,** *they came unwillingly.*

MEANING OF THE COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE

87. The comparative and superlative forms of adjectives and adverbs are commonly translated by the corresponding English forms. But sometimes the comparative is translated by a positive form preceded by *too* or *rather*, and the superlative by a positive form preceded by *very*. Thus, **altior** may mean *rather high*, and **altissimus** may mean *very high*.

VERBS: MOODS

THE INDICATIVE

88. The indicative is used in statements of fact and in questions which imply that the answer expected is a statement of fact.

Caesar aciem *instrūxit*, *Caesar drew up a line of battle.*
Quid Cōnsidius *dīxit*, *what did Considius say?*

SUBJUNCTIVE

VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

89. The subjunctive is used to express an act as willed by some person.

Epistulās statim *mittāmus*, *let us send the letters at once.*

a. The negative used with the volitive subjunctive is **nē**.

***Nē* diūtius *maneāmus*,** *let us not remain longer.*

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

90. The subjunctive, commonly with **utinam,** is used to express a wish. The use of tenses is a follows:

(1) A wish that something had been true in the past has the past perfect subjunctive. **Utinam hunc locum numquam *vidissem*,** *would that I had never seen this place* (*I wish I had never seen this place*).

(2) A wish that something were true in the present has the imperfect subjunctive. **Utinam meliōrem ducem *habērēmus*,** *would that we had a better leader* (*I wish that we had a better leader*).

(3) A wish which may be realized in the future has the present subjunctive. **(Utinam) frāter tuus salvus *redeat*,** *may your brother return safe* (*I hope your brother may return safely*).

NOTE 1.—The imperfect and past perfect (and sometimes the present) in wishes are introduced by **utinam.**

NOTE 2.—The negative used with wishes is sometimes **nē** and sometimes **nōn.**

CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

91. A subordinate clause which expresses purpose has its verb in the subjunctive. Such a clause is commonly introduced by **ut** or (if negative) **nē.**

> **Vēnī *ut* tē *vidērem*,** *I came to see you* (lit. *that I might see you*).
>
> **Mīlitēs missī sunt *nē* urbs *caperētur*,** *soldiers were sent that the city might not be captured.*

a. Sometimes a purpose clause is introduced by a relative pronoun. This form of purpose clause is found chiefly after **mittō** and its compounds, and after **relinquō** and a few other verbs.

> **Puerum mittam *qui* tē *adjuvet*,** *I will send a boy to help you* (lit. *who shall help you*).

b. The clause of purpose may be translated by a simple infinitive, by an infinitive with *in order*, or by a clause with *that* or *in order that.* The following translations are possible for the sentence **Vēnī ut tē vidērem:**

I came to see you.
I came in order to see you.
I came that I might see you.
I came in order that I might see you.

92. A purpose clause which contains a comparative form of an adjective or adverb is introduced by **quō** instead of **ut.** **Pontem faciunt *quō* facilius *trānseant*,** *they are making a bridge that they may cross more easily.*

CLAUSES OF RESULT

93. A subordinate clause which expresses result has its verb in the subjunctive. Such a clause is introduced by **ut,** or occasionally by a relative pronoun. The negative is **nōn.**

Mīlitēs tam fortiter restitērunt *ut* hostēs *repellerentur*, *the soldiers resisted so bravely that the enemy were driven back.*

Tempestātēs tantae erant *ut* ex portū proficīscī *nōn audērēmus*, *the storms were so great that we did not dare to set out from the harbor.*

Est nēmō tam sapiēns *quī* numquam *erret*, *there is no one so wise that he never errs.*

NOUN (OR SUBSTANTIVE) CLAUSES OF DESIRE

94. Verbs expressing an idea of desire, such as those meaning *to command, urge, persuade, request,* and the like may take as object (or as subject in the passive) a clause introduced by **ut** or **nē** with its verb in the subjunctive.

Helvētiīs persuāsit *ut exīrent*, *he persuaded the Helvetians to emigrate.*

Mīlitibus imperāvit *nē* saxa *jacerent*, *he ordered the soldiers not to throw stones.*

NOTE 1.—These clauses are frequently translated by an infinitive with a subject, as in the example above.

NOTE 2.—Such expressions as **jūs est,** *there is a law,* and **cōnsilium est,** *the plan is,* may be followed by a substantive clause telling what the law or plan is to which reference is made.

c. The verbs **jubeō,** *I order,* and **vetō,** *I forbid,* regularly take an infinitive with subject accusative, instead of a subjunctive clause. Verbs meaning *to wish* sometimes take the infinitive with subject accusative.

Legiōnem **flūmen** ***trānsīre*** **jussit,** *he ordered the legion to cross the river.*

NOUN (OR SUBSTANTIVE) CLAUSES OF FACT

95. Verbs meaning *to accomplish* and impersonal verbs meaning *it happens, it results, it remains,* and the like, take a dependent clause with the subjunctive, introduced by **ut.** The negative is **nōn.**

Accidit ***ut*** **duae cohortēs ante castra** ***essent,*** *it happened that there were two cohorts in front of the camp.*

a. Such expressions as **mōs est,** *the custom is,* may be followed by a substantive clause with **ut,** telling what the custom is to which reference is made.

CLAUSES OF FEAR

96. Verbs and other expressions of fear may take a dependent clause with the subjunctive, introduced by **nē** meaning *that* or **ut** meaning *that . . . not.*

Verēbantur ***nē*** **exercitus noster in Galliā** ***manēret,*** *they feared that our army would remain in Gaul.*

Timeō ***ut*** **sē fortiter** ***dēfendat,*** *I fear that he will not defend himself bravely.*

a. Sometimes **nē . . . nōn** is used instead of **ut** after words of fear.

Timeō *nē* sē *nōn dēfendat*, *I fear that he will not defend himself.*

b. Such expressions as **perīculum est** may take the same construction as that used with words of fear.

Perīculum est *nē* cohors *capiātur*, *there is danger that the cohort will be captured.*

NOTE.— The present subjunctive in clauses depending on words of fear is often translated by the English future indicative.

ANTICIPATORY SUBJUNCTIVE

97. The subjunctive may be used in subordinate clauses to denote an act which is anticipated or expected.

Expectābam dum frāter *redīret*, *I was waiting until my brother should return* (or *for my brother to return*).

NOTE.— The anticipatory subjunctive is used mainly after words meaning *until* or *before.*

CLAUSES OF PROVISO

98. The conjunctions **dum, modo,** and **dummodo,** when meaning *provided, provided that,* or *if only,* take the subjunctive. **Urbs salva erit, *dum* tū *exeās*,** *the city will be safe, provided you go away.*

SUBJUNCTIVE IN RELATIVE CLAUSES OF DESCRIPTION (CHARACTERIZING CLAUSES)

99. A relative clause with its verb in the subjunctive is sometimes used to describe the antecedent of the relative.

Paucī erant quī arma ferre nōn *possent*, *there were a few who could not bear arms.*

NOTE 1.—Such clauses are used with indefinite and negative antecedents, and with expressions of existence and non-existence, such as **sunt quī**, *there are those who*, **est nēmō quī**, *there is no one who*.

NOTE 2.—Clauses which are parenthetical in character or which have a personal pronoun as antecedent take the indicative.

CUM CAUSAL CLAUSES

100. A subordinate clause introduced by **cum** meaning *since* has its verb in the subjunctive.

> ***Cum* nūlla nāvis in cōnspectū *sit*, domum revertar,** *since there is no ship in sight, I shall return home.*

> *a.* Sometimes a causal clause with its verb in the subjunctive is introduced by a relative pronoun. **Fēlīx es *quī* tot amīcōs *habeās*,** *you are fortunate, since you have so many friends.*

CUM ADVERSATIVE CLAUSES

101. A subordinate clause introduced by **cum** meaning *although* has its verb in the subjunctive.

> ***Cum* ea urbs parva *esset*, tamen magnam glōriam habēbat,** *although that city was small, nevertheless it had great fame.*

NOTE.—The principal clause with which an adversative clause is connected usually (but not always) contains the adverb **tamen.**

CUM DESCRIPTIVE CLAUSES OF SITUATION (*CUM* TEMPORAL)

102. The imperfect or past perfect subjunctive is often used in a clause introduced by **cum** meaning *when*. Such a clause describes the situation or makes known the time of the main act.

***Cum* pōns factus *esset*, exercitus trāductus est,** *when the bridge had been made, the army was led across.*

a. If the clause with **cum** is used to make definite the time meant by the adverb **tum** or any other word of time, it takes the indicative.

Tum *cum* hostēs impetum *faciēbant*, auxilium nōn missum est, *at the time when the enemy were making an attack, help was not sent.*

b. If the verb of the **cum** clause denotes repeated action, it is commonly in the indicative. In such clauses **cum** is sometimes translated *whenever.*

Cum nāvem hostium vīderant, ad eam properābant, *whenever thay saw a ship of the enemy, they hastened toward it.*

CLAUSES WITH *QUĪN* AFTER EXPRESSIONS OF DOUBT

103. Words and phrases of doubt, when accompanied by a negative, are followed by **quīn** and the subjunctive.

Nōn dubitō *quin* Belgae fortēs *sint*, *I do not doubt that the Belgians are brave.*
Nōn dubium est *quin* tūtī *simus*, *there is no doubt that we are safe.*

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

104. An indirect question has its verb in the subjunctive.

Quaesīvī quis hoc *fēcisset*, *I asked who had done this.*

105. SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

Sometimes a subordinate clause which would otherwise have its verb in the indicative takes the subjunctive because it is closely dependent on a subjunctive or an infinitive.

Ita ācriter pugnāvērunt ut omnēs hostēs quī flūmen *trānsissent* celeriter repellerentur, *they fought so fiercely that all the enemy who had crossed the river were quickly driven back.*

IMPLIED (OR INFORMAL) INDIRECT DISCOURSE

106. The subjunctive may be used in a subordinate clause to indicate that it is a quotation, although no main clause of indirect discourse stands in the context.

Servōs quī ad eōs *perfūgissent* poposcit, *he demanded the slaves who had fled to them (who he said had fled to them).*

The use of the subjunctive in this clause shows that the clause was a part of the utterance of the person who made the demand.

a. A clause of reason introduced by **quod** meaning *because* has its verb in the subjunctive if the reason is quoted from some other person, or from the thought or utterance of the speaker at a previous time. If the reason is given directly as that of the speaker or writer, the verb is in the indicative.

Haeduī querēbantur quod hostēs agrōs eōrum *vāstārent*, *the Haeduans complained because (their) enemies were laying waste their lands.*

Profectus est quod *verēbātur*, *he set out because he was afraid.*

THE IMPERATIVE

107. The imperative mood is used to express commands.

***Dēsilīte*, commīlitōnēs,** *jump down, comrades.*

NOTE.— The English imperative is used only in the present tense and in the second person. The Latin imperative has a future as well as a present. The future has the second and third persons, the present has only the second person.

THE INFINITIVE

THE COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

108. An infinitive is sometimes used to complete the meaning of another verb. When thus used, it denotes another action of the same subject as that of the verb on which it depends.

Omnēs ***redīre*** **volunt,** *all wish to return.*

THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT

109. An infinitive, with or without subject accusative, may be used as the subject of many impersonal verbs and also of **est** with a predicate adjective or noun.

Eum ***manēre*** **oportet,** *he ought to stay.*
Mē īre **necesse est,** *I must go.*

NOTE.— The subjunctive is sometimes used with **necesse est** and with a few other verbs which commonly take the infinitive.

THE INFINITIVE WITH WORDS OF SAYING, ETC.

110. The infinitive with subject accusative is used with words of *saying, hearing, knowing, thinking, believing, seeing,* and the like.

(For examples, see **116**.)

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

NON-COMMITTAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

111. A conditional sentence which does not imply that the condition is either true or false has both verbs in the indicative.

Sī puerī in silvā ***errant,*** **in perīculō** ***sunt,*** *if the boys are wandering in the forest, they are in danger.*

Sī hostēs tūtī ***effūgērunt,*** **nostrī eōs capere nōn** ***cōnātī sunt,*** *if the enemy have escaped safely* (lit. *safe*), *our men did not try to capture them.*

a. Sometimes an imperative or a subjunctive expressing *will* is used in the conclusion of a conditional sentence of this type instead of an indicative.

Sī pācem cupitis, arma *trādite*, *if you wish peace, surrender your arms.*

FUTURE MORE VIVID CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

112. A future more vivid conditional sentence refers to future time and gives no indication as to the attitude of the speaker or writer toward the fulfillment of the condition. The verbs are in the future (or future perfect) tense.

Sī auxilium *mittētur*, oppidum *dēfendētur*, *if aid is* (lit *shall be*) *sent, the town will be defended.*

NOTE 1.— The verb of the condition in a sentence of this type is commonly translated by the present indicative with future meaning, as in the example above. Sometimes the future with *shall* is used.

NOTE 2.— The future perfect may be used in either clause to represent an act as occurring before some expressed or implied future time.

NOTE 3.— The future more vivid conditional sentence is merely a non-committal conditional sentence in future time.

FUTURE LESS VIVID CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

113. A future less vivid conditional sentence refers to future time, and also implies doubt on the part of the writer or speaker as to the fulfillment of the condition. The conclusion refers to a future act or situation as conceivable or imaginable without asserting that it will take place or be realized. The verbs are in the present (or perfect) subjunctive.

Sī mīlitēs flūmen *trānseant*, multī *interficiantur*, *if the soldiers should cross the river, many would be killed.*

NOTE.— The perfect may be used in either clause to show that an act, if occurring, would take place before some expressed or implied future time.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES CONTRARY TO FACT

114. A conditional sentence which implies that the condition is not true has its verbs in the imperfect or past perfect subjunctive, the imperfect to refer to present time and the past perfect to refer to past time.

(*a*) **Sī Haeduī majōrēs cōpiās *habērent*, oppida *dēfenderent*,** *if the Haeduans had larger forces, they would defend the towns.*

(*b*) **Sī Haeduī majōrēs cōpiās *habuissent*, oppida *dēfendissent*,** *if the Haeduans had had larger forces, they would have defended the towns.*

NOTE.— Commonly the tense of the verbs in the two clauses is the same, but the imperfect may be used in one clause and the past perfect in the other, if the sense requires.

NEGATIVE COMMANDS

115. Negative commands (prohibitions) in the second person are frequently expressed by the imperative of **nōlō** (**nōlī, nōlīte**) with the infinitive of the verb denoting the act forbidden.

***Nōlī* hīc *manēre*,** *do not remain here.*

a. Sometimes the perfect subjunctive is used with **nē** to express a negative command.

***Nē* hīc *mānseris*.**

b. The imperative **cavē** (**cavēte**), *beware,* followed by the subjunctive, either with or without **nē,** is sometimes used to express commands.

Cavē nē maneās, *or* **cavē maneās.**

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

116. Indirect discourse is used with words of *saying, hearing, knowing, thinking, believing,* and the like. The use of moods is as follows:

(1) A main clause expressing a statement has its verb in the infinitive with subject accusative.

(2) A main clause expressing a command has its verb in the subjunctive.

(3) All subordinate clauses have their verbs in the subjunctive.

> **Eā condiciōne quae ā Caesare *ferrētur sē ūsūrōs* ostendēbant; sibi trīduī spatium *daret*,** *they stated* (lit. *showed*) *that they would accept the terms which were offered by Caesar; let him give them the space of three days.*

PARTICIPLES

117. The Latin verb has four participles. They are the present active, the past passive, the future active, and the future passive.

> *a.* Deponent verbs have the same number of participles as other verbs. The past participle of a deponent is usually active in meaning, but it is occasionally found in the passive.

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

118. The present active participle denotes an act taking place at the same time as the main verb. It is less frequently used than the English present participle. Its declension is given in section **8**, p. 328.

> **Nostrī in hostēs *adventientēs* impetum fēcērunt,** *our men made an attack on the enemy coming up* (*i.e.*, *as they were coming up*).

Note.— The English present participle is used with a form of *to be* to make the progressive form of the verb. Thus, *he is marching, we were standing.* The Latin present participle is never so used.

THE PAST PARTICIPLE

119. The past passive participle denotes an act taking place before the time of the main verb. It is declined like **bonus,** section **6,** p. 325.

> **Legiō ā Caesare *praemissa* castra mūniēbat,** *the legion, having been sent ahead by Caesar, was fortifying the camp.*

THE FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

120. The future active participle is used chiefly with forms of **sum** to denote an act which someone intends to do or is about to do.

> **Bellum cum Gallīs *gestūri* erant,** *they intended to* (or *were about to*) *wage war with the Germans.*

THE FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

121. The future passive participle is used chiefly with forms of **sum** to denote an act which ought to be done or must be done by some one.

> **Epistula mihi *mittenda* est,** *a letter ought to be sent by me.*

Note.— The future passive participle of a deponent verb is passive in meaning.

THE GERUND

122. The gerund is a verbal noun, used only in four cases and only in the singular number. Its cases are the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative.

a. The genitive of the gerund is used chiefly as an objective genitive with an adjective or noun. With the ablative **causā** it expresses purpose.

cupidus ***bellandī***, *desirous of engaging in war.*
resistendī **causā**, *for the purpose* (*sake*) *of resisting.*

b. The dative of the gerund is little used.

c. The accusative of the gerund is frequently used as the object of the preposition **ad** to express purpose. It is never used as a direct object.

ad oppugnandum, *for attacking, to attack.*

d. The ablative of the gerund is used to express means or cause, or as object of the prepositions **ab, dē, ex,** or **in.**

pugnandō, *by fighting.*
in quaerendō, *on inquiring.*

NOTE.— The infinitive is used to supply the nominative of the gerund and also the accusative when used as a direct object.

THE GERUNDIVE

123. The gerundive is a future passive participle which is used in agreement with a noun or pronoun in a phrase equivalent in meaning to a gerund with an object.

spēs urbis ***capiendae*** *hope of capturing the city.*

a. The case uses of the gerundive are in general the same as those of the gerund.

cupidus oppidī ***expugnandī***, *desirous of storming the town.*
auxiliī ***ferendī*** **causā**, *for the purpose* (*sake*) *of bringing aid.*
ad eās rēs ***cōnficiendās***, *for accomplishing these things.*
dē auxiliō ***mittendō***, *about* (*concerning*) *sending aid.*
lapidibus ***portandīs***, *by carrying stones.*

124. The following distinctions between the gerund and the gerundive are to be observed:

Gerund	*Gerundive*
A noun	An adjective
Active in meaning	Passive
Neuter gender	All genders
Used only in the singular	Both numbers

NOTE 1.—The genitive of the gerund and also the ablative, when used without a preposition, sometimes take a direct object. But no form of the gerund standing as the object of a preposition can have a direct object. The gerundive must be used instead.

THE SUPINE

125. The accusative of the supine is used to express purpose in clauses in which the finite verb expresses motion.

Lēgātōs pācem *petītum* mīsērunt, *they sent envoys to ask peace.*

a. The supine of a transitive verb may take a direct object.

126. The ablative of the supine is used with a few adjectives as an ablative of respect. It is usually translated by the English present infinitive.

optimum *factū*, *best to do* (*the best thing to do*).

TENSES

127. The tenses of the Latin indicative are the present, imperfect, future, perfect, past perfect, and future perfect. In the subjunctive only the present, imperfect, perfect and past perfect are found.

THE PRESENT

128. The present tense, as in English, is used to denote present time.

Note 1.— In a narrative of past events the present indicative is sometimes used for the purpose of presenting the situation more vividly before the mind of the reader or the hearer. This is called the Historical Present.

Note 2.— The present subjunctive is sometimes used with future force. This is especially common in clauses of fear.

THE IMPERFECT

129. The imperfect tense represents a past act as in progress, or a past situation as continuing.

Note 1.— The imperfect indicative is sometimes used to denote an act as customary or of frequent occurrence in past time.

Note 2.— The imperfect indicative is commonly translated by the progressive form of the English past tense — *was praising*, *was warning*, etc., but sometimes the simple past tense is used as its equivalent.

Note 3.— The imperfect subjunctive is sometimes used to express action which was at a past time thought of as future.

THE FUTURE

130. The future tense, as in English, denotes future time.

Note.— With conjunctions meaning *if* and *when* the future tense is regularly used in Latin where the English employs the present in translation.

THE PERFECT

131. The perfect tense has two uses. (1) It may be equivalent in meaning to an English present perfect (translated with the auxiliary verbs *have* or *has*), or (2) it may be the equivalent of the English past tense, referring to an indefinite past act.

Note.— In future less vivid conditional sentences the perfect subjunctive is sometimes used to refer to a future act which, if occurring, would take place before some expressed or implied future time.

THE PAST PERFECT

132. The past perfect is used to represent an act as having occurred before some expressed or implied past time.

Note 1.— The past perfect subjunctive is sometimes used to refer to an act which was thought of in the past as likely to occur before some expressed or implied future time.

Note 2.— The past perfect is sometimes used in subordinate clauses to denote repeated action.

THE FUTURE PERFECT

133. The future perfect is used to show that an act will occur before some expressed or implied future time.

Note.— The future perfect is used more frequently in Latin than in English.

THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

134. The tense of the subjunctive in a dependent clause usually bears a definite relation to the tense in the principal clause. This relation is called the Sequence of Tenses.

1. If the main verb is present, future, or future perfect, the dependent subjunctive is present or perfect.

2. If the main verb is imperfect, perfect, or past perfect, the dependent subjunctive is imperfect or past perfect.

Note 1.— A perfect indicative which is translated by an English present perfect may be followed by a present or perfect subjunctive.

135. Exceptions to the rule for the sequence of tenses are sometimes found.

1. In a clause of result a perfect subjunctive is sometimes used where the sequence of tenses would lead us to expect an imperfect.

2. The historical present may be followed either by the tenses which would follow a perfect or by the tenses which would follow a present.

3. Sometimes a strongly marked difference between the time ideas of the subordinate clause and the main clause leads to a seeming disregard of the sequence of tenses.

PREPOSITIONS

136. The following prepositions take their objects in the ablative case

ā, ab	**ē, ex**
cum	**prae**
dē	**prō**

a. **Cum** is used as an enclitic with **mē, tē, sē, nōbīs,** and **vōbīs,** and commonly with **quō, quā,** and **quibus. Mēcum,** *with me,* **tēcum,** *with you,* **quibuscum,** *with whom.*

137. The prepositions **in** and **sub** are used with the ablative in expressions denoting existence or continuance in a place; they are used with the accusative in expressions denoting motion toward a place.

In urbe mānsī, *I remained in the city*
In urbem vēnī, *I came into the city*

138. All prepositions found in this book except those given above take their objects in the accusative.

139. When the object of a monosyllabic preposition is a noun modified by an adjective, the preposition sometimes stands between the adjective and the noun.

magnō cum perīculō, *with great danger*

EXERCISES IN LATIN COMPOSITION

LESSON I

1. Predicate Nominative, App. 41, *a*
2. Ablative of Means, App. 72

VOCABULARY

brother, frāter, -tris, M.
call, name, appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
choose, dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
city, urbs, urbis, F.
defend, dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum.
elect, creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
his, her, its, their,[1] suus, -a, -um.
kill, interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.
king, rēx, rēgis, M.
leader, dux, ducis, M.
my, meus, -a, -um.
soldier, mīles, mīlitis, M.
sword, gladius, -ī, M.
weapon, tēlum, -ī, N.

EXERCISES

1. The city will be called Rome.[2] 2. Romulus[2] had been elected king. 3. The king was killed with his brother's sword. 4. Romulus killed his brother with a weapon. 5. I shall defend the king with my sword. 6. My brother has been chosen leader of the soldiers. 7. Romulus was called the king of Rome. 8. The soldiers killed their leader with their swords. 9. The city will be defended by the weapons of the soldiers.

---

[1] In reflexive use.
[2] For proper names, see final vocabulary.

LESSON II

1. Apposition, App. 39

2. Agreement of the Relative Pronoun, App. 38 (2)

VOCABULARY

ally, socius, -ī, M.
army, exercitus, -ūs, M.
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
brave, fortis, forte.
consul, cōnsul, cōnsulis, M.
father, pater, -tris, M.
found, condō, -dere, -didī, -ditum.
man, vir, virī, M.
many, multī, -ae, -a.
native country, country, patria, -ae, F.
often, saepe, *adv.*
our, noster, -tra, -trum.
send, mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum.
who, which, what, that, quī, quae, quod.

EXERCISES

1. The brother of Romulus the king had been killed. 2. Many cities which the Greeks founded were beautiful. 3. The consul who was killed was a brave man. 4. Rome is a city of Italy, my native country. 5. The army which we have sent will defend the cities of our allies. 6. Cicero, the consul, was called the father of his country. 7. We have often defended our country with our swords. 8. The brother of the man who was killed will be elected consul.

LESSON III

1. Ablative of Place, App. 68

2. Ablative of Agent, App. 66

VOCABULARY

battle, proelium, -ī, N.
by, ā, ab, *prep. with abl.*
have, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
in, on, in, *prep. with abl.*
into, in, *prep. with acc.*
stand, stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus.
stone, lapis, lapidis, M.
throw, jaciō, -ere, jēcī, jactum.
town, oppidum, -ī, N.
wage, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.
wall, mūrus, -ī M.
war, bellum, -ī, N.
wound, vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
your, *of one person*, tuus, -a, -um; *of more than one*, vester, -tra, -trum.

EXERCISES

1. The Greeks founded many cities in Italy. 2. The Romans waged many wars in Gaul and Spain. 3. Many wars were waged in Gaul by the Romans. 4. Weapons were thrown by the soldiers who were standing on the wall. 5. The leader of our allies was wounded in battle by the Germans. 6. The town was defended by the consul, who had a brave army. 7. The towns of the Gauls, our allies, will be defended by Roman soldiers. 8. I have been wounded by a stone which was thrown by your brother. 9. The town was defended by the soldiers who had been sent into Spain.

LESSON IV

1. Ablative of Accompaniment, App. 70

2. Ablative of Respect (Specification), App. 76

VOCABULARY

cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, M.
courage, virtūs, -tūtis, F.
cross, trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
destroy, dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum.
differ, differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātum.
drive back, repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum.
enemy, hostis, hostis, M.
knowledge, scientia, -ae, F.
nation, gēns, gentis, F.
place, locus, -ī, M. (*pl. usually* loca, N.).
river, flūmen, flūminis, N.
suitable, idōneus, -a, -um.
surpass, praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum.
wisdom, sapientia, -ae, F.
with, cum, *prep. with abl.*

EXERCISES

1. The consul crossed the river with the cavalry. 3. The enemy will send cavalry into Italy with the army. 3. Many nations surpass us in knowledge of war. 4. Men differ from one another (**inter sē**) in courage and in wisdom. 5. The Gauls waged many wars with the Germans, who often crossed into Gaul. 6. We have chosen a place which is

suitable in many respects (rēs). 7. Our soldiers drove back with their weapons the Gauls who had crossed the river. 8. The Gauls who have crossed the river will be driven back by our soldiers. 9. Our army has destroyed many cities of our enemies, the Germans.

LESSON V

1. Ablative with Certain Deponent Verbs, App. 79
2. Ablative of Route, App. 73

VOCABULARY

bridge, pōns, pontis, M.
can, am able, possum, posse, potuī.
custom, mōs, mōris, M.
difficult, difficilis, -e.
gain possession of, potior, -īrī, potītus sum.
grain, frūmentum, -ī, N.
language, lingua, -ae, F.
lead across, trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum.
legion, legiō, -ōnis, F.
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, M.
mountain, mōns, montis, M.
narrow, angustus, -a, -um.
road, iter, itineris, N.
set out, proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum.
this, hic, haec, hoc.
use, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum.

EXERCISES

1. The legion will use the grain which is in the town. 2. We gained possession of a town of the enemy, and we killed their leader. 3. The army crossed the mountains by a road which was narrow and difficult. 4. This is the road by which the Roman legions often set out from the city. 5. The Germans could not gain possession of this city of the Gauls. 6. The lieutenant led the army across by a bridge. 7. The legion could not cross the river with the cavalry. 8. The Helvetians differ from the Germans in language and in customs. 9. The consul was wounded by the weapons of the enemy.

LESSON VI

1. Ablative Absolute, App. 75
2. Ablative of Time, App. 69

VOCABULARY

another, alius, alia, aliud.
because, quod, *conj.*
burn, incendō, -ere, incendī, incēnsum.
camp, castra, -ōrum, N. *pl.*
capture, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.
come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum.
day, diēs, diēī, M., F.
defeat, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
number, numerus, -ī, M.
return, revertor, revertī, (revertō, revertere), revertī, reversum.
same, īdem, eadem, idem.
that, is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud.
twelve, duodecim, *indecl. num.*
village, vīcus, -ī, M.
year, annus, -ī, M.

EXERCISES

1. After defeating the army of the consul (the army of the consul having been defeated), the enemy crossed the river. 2. When the towns of the Gauls had been burned (*not a clause*), we returned to camp. 3. Many cities of our allies were burned that year. 4. The leader of the enemy and the Roman consul came into the town on the same day. 5. After capturing the camp of the king, the legion returned to the town. 6. Our fathers waged many wars in those years. 7. You cannot defend your country because you cannot use weapons. 8. We shall cross the mountains by another road. 9. They burned their towns, twelve in number, and many villages.

LESSON VII

1. Ablative of Separation, App. 64
2. Ablative of Manner, App. 71

VOCABULARY

absent, be absent, absum, abesse, āfuī.
attack, oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
but, sed, *conj.*
care, cūra, -ae, F.
deep, altus, -a, -um.
forces, cōpiae, -ārum, F. *pl.*
great, magnus, -a, -um.
guard, custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
separate, dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum.
several, complūrēs, -ia, *gen.* complūrium.
speed, celeritās, -tātis, F.
time, tempus, temporis, N.
wide, lātus, -a, -um.

EXERCISES

1. The river Rhine, which separates the Gauls from the Germans, is wide and deep. 2. The mountains which separate Gaul from Spain are called the Pyrenees. 3. Our forces attacked the camp of the enemy with great courage. 4. Our cavalry crossed the river with great speed and drove back the cavalry of the enemy. 5. The lieutenant was absent from the camp at that time. 6. The Britons guard their territory (fīnēs) with great care. 7. When we had driven back the cavalry (*not a clause*), we captured several villages. 8. But we were not able to gain possession of the large towns.

LESSON VIII

1. Dative of Indirect Object, App. 49
2. Dative with Adjectives, App. 50

VOCABULARY

cut off, interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum.
dear, cārus, -a, -um.
flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus.
friendly, amīcus, -a, -um.
give, dō, dare, dedī, datum.

help, juvō, -āre, jūvī, jūtum.
live, habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
reward, praemium, -ī, N.
say, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum.
supplies, commeātus, -ūs, M.
supreme power, imperium, -ī, N.
two, duo, duae, duo.
very near, nearest, proximus, -a, -um.
why, cūr, *adv.*

EXERCISES

1. The Romans gave supreme power to two consuls. 2. I will give you a reward because you have helped my brother. 3. Hannibal attacked a city which was friendly to the Romans. 4. Italy, my native country, is dear to me. 5. Why did you say this to your father? 6. These mountains are very near to the town in which I live. 7. The legion which was in the mountains was cut off from supplies. 8. The soldiers defended the city on that day with the greatest courage. 9. When the king had been captured (*abl. abs.*), the army fled.

LESSON IX

1. Dative with Special Verbs, App. 51
2. Dative of Possession, App. 52

VOCABULARY

always, semper, *adv.*
book, liber, -brī, M.
boy, puer, puerī, M.
centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, M.
favor, faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum.
new, novus, -a, -um.
persuade, persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum.
please, placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum.
sister, soror, sorōris, F.
son, fīlius, -ī, M
unwilling, be unwilling, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.

EXERCISES

1. This place which the centurions have chosen will not please the lieutenant. 2. We favor this man because he was a brave leader. 3. Crassus had two sons, who were brave sol-

diers. 4. The boy has a sword, which his father gave him. 5. This boy is unwilling to remain, and I cannot persuade him. 6. The Helvetians have many towns and villages which we shall burn. 7. I gave your sister two new books. 8. The city in which I live is dear to me. 9. Our allies will always defend their native country with great courage.

LESSON X

1. Dative of Purpose, App. 53
2. Dative of Reference, App. 54

VOCABULARY

aid, auxilium, -ī, N.
cohort, cohors, cohortis, F.
danger, perīculum, -ī, N.
displease, displiceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
fear, timeō, -ēre, -uī.
fleet, classis, classis, F.
guard, praesidium, -ī, N.
leave, relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum.
no, nūllus, -a, -um, *gen.* nūllīus.
peace, pāx, pācis, F.
present, dōnum, -ī, N.
reënforcements, subsidium, -ī, N.
see, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum.
townspeople, oppidānī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*

EXERCISES

1. The boy sent these beautiful books as a present (for a present) to his sister. 2. The legion came to reënforce (as reënforcements to) the cavalry, who were in danger. 3. Caesar left two cohorts as a guard for the bridge. 4. Two legions will be sent to the aid of the townspeople (for aid to the townspeople). 5. The cohorts which were left as a guard for the camp did not see the battle. 6. We do not fear the Romans, because they have no fleet (Lesson IX, 2). 7. This peace displeased the consuls, and they sent another army into Spain. 8. After burning the villages (*abl. abs.*), the cavalry returned to camp.

LESSON XI

1. Dative of Agent, App. 56
2. Dative with Compound Verbs, App. 55

VOCABULARY

assemble, conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum.
build, aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
envoy, lēgātus, -ī, M.
hostage, obses, obsidis, M.
if, sī, *conj.*
make war on, bellum īnferō, -ferre, *etc.*
neighbors, fīnitimī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
place in command of, praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.
prison, carcer, carceris, M.
senate, senātus, -ūs, M.
slave, servus, -ī, M.
wish, volō, velle, voluī.

EXERCISES

1. Gaius Marius ought not to be killed by a slave. 2. Hostages ought to be sent by the enemy, if their king wishes peace. 3. We are brave men, but we do not make war on our neighbors. 4. The lieutenant has placed the centurion in command of the cohort. 5. The village ought to be defended by the soldiers. 6. The lieutenant was placed in command of the legion. 7. The fleet which had assembled was an aid (for an aid) to the army. 9. When the fleet had been built (*abl. abs.*), the army set out to Britain. 8. The envoys will not be able to persuade the senate.

LESSON XII

1. Genitive of the Whole, App. 43
2. Genitive of Possession, App. 42

VOCABULARY

arrow, sagitta, -ae, F.
ascend, ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēnsum.
citizen, cīvis, cīvis, M., F.
find, reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum.
fortification, mūnītiō, -ōnis, F.
god, deus, deī (*nom. pl.* dī), M.
hill, collis, collis, M.

house, tēctum, -ī, N.
make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.
part, pars, partis, F.
prisoner, captīvus, -ī, M.
retain, dētineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
temple, templum, -ī, N.
try, cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum.

EXERCISES

1. Part of the town was burned by the enemy. 2. The bravest of the Gauls tried to ascend the hill and attack the camp. 3. Many weapons of the Germans were found in the camp. 4. We have defended the temples of the gods and the houses of the citizens. 5. Many of the prisoners were unwilling to return to Africa. 6. The centurion was wounded by the arrows of the Spaniards, and his brother was killed. 7. Peace has been made, and the prisoners ought not to be retained by the Romans. 8. The consul's brother was placed in command of the fortifications (*singular*) which had been made.

LESSON XIII

1. Objective Genitive, App. 45
2. Genitive of Description, App. 44

VOCABULARY

all, omnis, -e.
children, līberī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
depth, altitūdō, -dinis, F.
desirous, cupidus, -a, -um.
foot, pēs, pedis, M.
founder, conditor, -ōris, M.
horseman, eques, equitis, M.
influence, auctōritās, -tātis, F.
pirate, praedō, -ōnis, M.
praetor, praetor, -ōris, M.
sort, kind, modus, -ī, M.
state, cīvitās, -tātis, F.
three, trēs, tria.

EXERCISES

1. Romulus was called the founder of this city. 2. The leader of the horsemen was wounded by an arrow. 3. This prisoner was a citizen of great influence in his state. 4. The depth of the river which we crossed was (of) three feet. 5.

We are desirous of peace, but we do not fear your army. 6. A man of this sort ought not to have been sent into Asia by the Romans. 7. The Tiber is the largest of all the rivers of Italy. 8. The children of the praetor were captured by the pirates. 9. Caesar made war on the Helvetians and defeated them. 10. The horsemen were sent to the aid of (as aid for) the cohorts which were crossing the river.

LESSON XIV

1. Ablative with a Preposition in Place of the Genitive of the Whole, App. 43 *a*

2. Construction with *mille*, App. 16 *a*

VOCABULARY

arrive, perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum.
boat, nāvis, nāvis, F.
flight, fuga, -ae, F.
hope, spēs, speī, F.
injure, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
march, iter faciō, facere, *etc.*
mile, mīlle passūs *or* passuum, *pl.* mīlia passuum.
one, ūnus, -a, -um.
rest, the rest of, reliquus, -a, -um.
senator, senātor, -ōris, M.
small, parvus, -a, -um.
certain, a certain, quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, *or* quiddam.
stature, statūra, -ae, F.
thousand, mīlle, *pl.* mīlia.

EXERCISES

1. One of my brothers lives in Ireland. 2. Some of the senators were killed by the Gauls who captured Rome. 3. Three thousand men arrived in the town from (**ex**) the flight. 4. On that day we made a march of twelve miles into the territory of the enemy. 5. Two of the hostages remained in Italy, but the rest returned to Africa. 6. Three thousand horsemen crossed the mountains with the legions. 7. The hope of peace is greater, because the enemy have sent envoys. 8. The Romans were [men] of small stature, but they were brave soldiers. 9. Our boats could not injure the boats (Lesson IX, 1) of the Veneti.

LESSON XV

1. Accusative of Duration and Extent, App. 58, 59
2. Two Accusatives with Compounds of *trāns*, App. 63 *a*

VOCABULARY

after, post, *prep. with acc.*
ancestors, majōrēs, -um, M. *pl.*
barbarous, barbarus, -a, -um.
bring back, redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum.
exile, exilium, -ī, N.
four, quattuor, *indecl. num.*
friend, amīcus, -ī, M.
infantry (*adj.*), pedester, -tris, -tre.
month, mēnsis, mēnsis, M.
tired, dēfessus, -a, -um.
today, hodiē, *adv.*
tribune, tribūnus, -ī, M.
walk, ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

EXERCISES

1. My friends remained in Spain for three months. 2. We have walked four miles today, and we are tired. 3. The lieutenant led the infantry forces across the river and attacked a town of the Gauls. 4. Part of our forces had been led across the Rhine by the tribune of the soldiers. 5. Our ancestors waged war with these barbarous nations for many years. 6. The centurion who had led the cohort across the river Allia was killed in battle. 7. Some of my friends have set out into exile. 8. The Romans brought back many thousand slaves to Italy after this war.

LESSON XVI

1. Accusative of Place to Which, General Rule, App. 60[1]
2. Expressions of Place to Which Without a Preposition, App. 60[2]

VOCABULARY

before, ante, *prep. with acc.*
bravely, fortiter, *adv.*
consulship, cōnsulātus, -ūs, M.
death, mors, mortis, F.
go, eō, īre, iī (īvī), itum.
hasten, contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum.
home, domus, -ūs, (-ī) F.

[1] See also section 7 (1), page 59
[2] See also section 8 (1), page 59

hour, hōra, -ae, F.
kingdom, rēgnum, -ī, N.
province, prōvincia, -ae, F.
resist, resistō, -ere, restitī.
send back, remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum.
summer, aestās, -tātis, F.
there, ibi, *adv.*

EXERCISES

1. Why did not the praetor hasten to Gaul with the army? 2. We shall go to Geneva this summer, and we shall remain there several days. 3. The tribune returned to Rome after the death of his friend. 4. Cicero set out to Asia after his consulship. 5. Our friends returned home before the war. 6. The hostages who are in Italy will be sent back into the province. 7. The legion resisted bravely for four hours, and many were killed. 8. The Helvetians had led a large part of their forces across the river. 9. The king returned into his kingdom with three thousand men.

LESSON XVII

1. Expressions of Place in Which with Names of Towns, etc., App. 81

2. Expressions of Place from Which, App. 65

VOCABULARY

delay, moror, -ārī, -ātus sum.
demand, postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
escape, effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus.
few, paucī, -ae, -a.
following, posterus, -a, -um.
forest, silva, -ae, F.
general, imperātor, -ōris, M.
give back, reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum.
prepared, parātus, -a, -um.
where, ubi, *adv.*
withdraw, discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum.

EXERCISES

1. The general is returning from Asia, and he will not delay at Corinth. 2. The Roman citizens who are in Saguntum demand our aid. 3. Cicero set out from Rome with a

few friends. 4. The envoys withdrew from Corinth on the following day. 5. Many citizens were not able to escape from Saguntum. 6. The army is prepared, but the consul is delaying at Rome. 7. I shall set out to Marseilles, where my friends live. 8. The king sent his son to Italy before the war. 9. Two of the boys had been in the forest three hours. 10. Many thousand prisoners who have been captured by the Romans will be given back.

LESSON XVIII

1. The Gerund, App. 122
2. The Gerundive, App. 123, 124

VOCABULARY

accomplish, efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.
collect, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum.
conquer, vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum.
fight, pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
girl, puella, -ae, F.
hurl, conjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum.
lose, āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum.
much, multus, -a, -um.
nothing, nihil, *indecl.*, N.
still, tamen, *adv.*
wife, uxor, -ōris, F.

EXERCISES

1. The enemy have no hope of conquering, but still they fight bravely. 2. We have collected all our forces, and we are prepared for (**ad**) setting out. 3. The Germans were desirous of capturing the town, because there was much grain in it. 4. In capturing the town we lost many men. 5. Divico accomplished nothing by delaying. 6. The Gauls drove back our men by hurling weapons. 7. Brutus had left his wife and children in Rome. 8. This girl wishes to remain at home with her brothers and sisters. 9. We shall return from Geneva in a few days. 10. We shall send two cohorts to Marseilles.

LESSON XIX

1. Participles of Deponent Verbs, App. 117 *a*
2. Position of Monosyllabic Prepositions, App. 139

VOCABULARY

arrival, adventus, -ūs, M.
catch sight of, cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
eighth, octāvus, -a, -um.
follow, sequor, -ī, secūtus sum.
fort, castellum, -ī, N.
lead back, redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum.
perish, pereō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus.
reason, causa, -ae, F.
ten, decem, *indecl. num.*
trader, mercātor, -ōris, M.
undertake, suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
wait for, expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

EXERCISES

1. The cavalry, having followed the enemy for ten miles, returned to camp. 2. Having caught sight of the Gauls who were in the Roman camp, Labienus sent aid to our men. 3. Caesar feared danger for (**dē** *with abl.*) many reasons. 4. The Helvetians undertook this war with great hope, but they were conquered. 5. Having gained possession of the fort (Lesson V, **1**), we waited for the arrival of the eighth legion. 6. The traders went by this road (Lesson V, **2**) with great danger. 7. The lieutenant led back his men into camp because he was not desirous of fighting. 8. The praetor remained to defend Italy (**ad** *with gerundive constr.*). 9. Many who perished at Messina were Roman citizens.

LESSON XX

1. Reflexive Pronouns, App. 18
2. Possessive Adjectives, App. 19

VOCABULARY

barbarians, barbarī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
chief, prīnceps, prīncipis, M.
embassy, lēgātiō, -ōnis, F.
famous, clārus, -a, -um.
field, ager, agrī, M.
grandfather, avus, -ī, M.
(**of**) **himself, herself, themselves,** *reflex.*, suī, etc.
name, nōmen, nōminis, N.
promise, polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum.
surrender, dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum.
swamp, palūs, -ūdis, F.
terrify, perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
wealthy, dīves, dīvitis, *superl.* dītissimus, -a, -um.

EXERCISES

1. Many in Italy surrendered themselves to Hannibal 2. The boy to whom the sword has been given will injure himself (Lesson IX, **1**). 3. Your name and your father's name are famous in Gaul. 4. The barbarians, terrified by our arrival, fled into the forest and swamps. 5. The chiefs of the embassy brought (**dūcere**) with them several wealthy men as (**prō** *with abl.*) hostages. 6. My grandfather had been in Africa with the army. 7. The Britons, having promised hostages, returned to (**in**) their fields. 8. Hannibal crossed the Alps with great danger. 9. He was desirous of destroying Rome.

LESSON XXI

Indirect Discourse, App. 116

VOCABULARY

announce, nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
arrest, comprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum.
believe, crēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum.
hear, audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
know, sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum.
lay waste, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
money, pecūnia, -ae, F.

sailor, nauta, -ae, M.
scout, explōrātor, -ōris, M.
ship, nāvis, nāvis, F.
sink, dēprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum.
valley, vallēs, vallis, F.

EXERCISES

1. The scout says that the enemy are crossing the valley. 2. We know that many sailors are being sent from (ex) Spain. 3. I hear that you have built a new house. 4. All believe that the ship was sunk by the pirates. 5. The scouts say that the enemy (*plural*) will cross the valley. 6. The Romans heard that the Gauls were laying waste the fields of their allies. 7. The centurion announced that two men had been arrested. 8. I believed that you would send back the money. 9. My friend said that the house which his brother had built, had been burned.

LESSON XXII

1. Causal Clauses with *cum*, App. 100
2. Clauses of Result, App. 93

VOCABULARY

any, ūllus, -a, -um.
here, hīc, *adv.*
long, longus, -a, -um.
messenger, nūntius, -ī, M.
never, numquam, *adv.*
no one, nēmō, *dat.* nēminī (*no gen. or abl.*).
now, nunc, *adv.*
seize, occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
shore, lītus, lītoris, N.
since, cum, *conj.*
so, ita, tam.
without, sine, *prep. with abl.*

EXERCISES

1. Why do you remain here, since you have no friends? 2. The danger of the Roman citizens was so great that the consul sent an army. 3. Since I saw no danger, I set out without any weapons. 4. The legion fought so fiercely that the Gauls fled. 5. The enemy resisted so bravely that we

lost many men. 6. Since no one has sent aid, we shall not try to defend the camp. 7. The messenger says that our men have driven back the barbarians and seized the bridge. 8. We knew that many who set out to the war would never return. 9. The sailors said they had found this boy on the shore.

LESSON XXIII

1. Descriptive Clauses of Situation, App. 102
2. Adversative Clauses with *cum*, App. 101

VOCABULARY

although, cum, *conj.*
animal, animal, -ālis, N.
at once, statim, *adv.*
break down, rescindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum.
delay, mora, -ae, F.
honor, honor, -ōris, M.
interpreter, interpres, -pretis, M.
invite, invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
leap, leap down, dēsiliō, -silīre, -siluī.
neighboring, vīcīnus, -a, -um.
not yet, nōndum, *adv.*
summon, arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
when, cum, *conj.*

EXERCISES

1. The Gauls captured Rome when Camillus was in a neighboring city. 2. Although I summoned the interpreter at once, he has not yet arrived. 3. Although we were tired, still we returned without delay. 4. When his friends had broken down the bridge, Horatius leaped into the river. 5. When we were walking in the forest, we saw a large animal. 6. Although all else (**omnia reliqua**) has been lost, still honor has not been lost. 7. Since you are unwilling to go, I shall invite your brother. 8. No one could cross the river, because the bridge had been broken down. 9. The praetor said that he had arrested the leader of these men.

LESSON XXIV

1. Purpose Clauses with *ut* and *nē*, App. 91
2. Relative Purpose Clauses, App. 91 *a*

VOCABULARY

buy, emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptum.
commonwealth, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae.
conspirators, conjūrātī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
disloyal, improbus, -a, -um.
harbor, portus, -ūs, M.
horse, equus, -ī, M.
lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum.
letter, epistula, -ae, F.
people, populus, -ī, M.
quaestor, quaestor, -ōris, M.
read, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum.
six, sex, *indecl. num.*
through, per, *prep. with acc.*
villa, vīlla, -ae, F.

EXERCISES

1. The quaestor set out to a neighboring town to buy grain (that he might buy grain). 2. We arrested the man in order that he might not set out with the conspirators. 3. The lieutenant will send a scout to lead (who shall lead) the horsemen through the forest. 4. The praetor left six cohorts to defend the harbor. 5. I have come to see (that I may see) your new horse. 6. We gave hostages, that our towns might not be burned. 7. When my brother had read the letter, he set out to the villa at once. 8. Although your grandfather was a consul, you wish to destroy the commonwealth. 9. The Roman people know (*singular*) that you are a disloyal citizen.

LESSON XXV

1. Purpose Clauses with *quō*, App. 92
2. Indirect Questions, App. 104

VOCABULARY

ask, quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum.
baggage, impedīmenta, -ōrum, N. *pl.*
fortify, mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
honorable, honestus, -a, -um.
island, īnsula, -ae, F.

long, for a long time, diū, *adv.*
queen, rēgīna, -ae, F.
rapid, celer, celeris, celere.
safely, tūtō, *adv.*
send ahead, praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum.
traveler, viātor, -ōris, M.
write, scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum.

EXERCISES

1. The cohorts left their baggage in camp, that they might make a more rapid flight. 2. Many ask why the king and queen are setting out from the city. 3. No one knew who had written this book. 4. The travelers constructed (made) a bridge in order to cross (that they might cross) the river more safely. 5. I said this in order that you might remain longer. 6. I do not know in what part of the island you live. 7. We broke down the bridge, that the enemy might not cross. 8. The general sent ahead several soldiers to fortify (who should fortify) the camp. 9. I have heard that this boy's father was not an honorable man.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

able, be able, possum, posse, potuī.

absent, be absent, absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus.

accomplish, cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum; efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.

across, trāns, *prep. with acc.*

address, alloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum.

afraid, be afraid, timeō, -ēre, -uī.

after, post, *prep. with acc.*

again, iterum, *adv.*

aid, auxilium, -ī, *n.*

all, omnis, omne.

ally, socius, -ī, *m.*

alone, sōlus, -a, -um, *gen.* sōlīus.

although, cum, *conj.*

always, semper, *adv.*

among, inter, *prep. with acc.*

ancestors, majōrēs, -um, *m. pl.*

and, et, -que, atque, *conjs.*

animal, animal, animālis, *n.*

announce, nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

another, alius, alia, aliud.

answer, respōnsum, -ī, *n.*

any, ūllus, -a, -um.

anyone, quisquam, quicquam *or* quidquam.

armed, armātus, -a, -um.

arms, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*

army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*

arrest, comprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum.

arrival, adventus, -ūs, *m.*

arrive, perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum.

arrow, sagitta, -ae, *f.*

Ascanius, Ascanius, -ī, *m.*

ascend, ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēnsum.

ask, rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum.

assemble, conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum.

at once, statim, *adv.*

Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*

attack, impetus, -ūs, *m.*

attack, oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

attempt, cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum.

await, expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

B

baggage, impedīmenta, -ōrum, *n. pl.*

barbarian, barbarus, -ī, *m.*

barbarous, barbarus, -a, -um.

battle, proelium, -ī, *n.*

be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.

beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.

because, quod, *conj.*

before (*adverb*), anteā.

before (*preposition*), ante, *with acc.*

before (*conjunction*), priusquam.

beg for, petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.

began, coepī, coepisse, coeptum.

behind, post, *prep. with acc.*

believe, crēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum.

better, melior, melius (*compar. of* bonus).

between, inter, *prep. with acc.*

boat, nāvis, nāvis, *f.*

book, liber, librī, *m.*

booty, praeda, -ae, *f.*

born, be born, nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum.

boy, puer, puerī, *m.*

brave, fortis, forte.

bravely, fortiter, *adv.*

break down, rescindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum.
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.
bring back, redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, frātris, *m.*
build, aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
burn, incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum.
but, sed, *conj.*
buy, emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptum.
by, ā, ab, *prep. with abl.*

C

Caesar, Caesar, Caesaris, *m.*
call, vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
camp, castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
can, am able, possum, posse, potuī.
capture, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.
care, cūra, -ae, *f.*
carry, portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
catch sight of, cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
cause, causa, -ae, *f.*
cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, *m.*
censure, accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, *m.*
certain, a certain, quīdam, quaedam, quiddam *or* quoddam.
check, retardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
chief, prīnceps, prīncipis, *m.*
children, līberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
choose, dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
citadel, arx, arcis, *f.*
citizen, cīvis, cīvis, *m.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
change, mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
cohort, cohors, cohortis, *f.*
collect, condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum; cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum.
come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum.
command, imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
common people, plēbs, plēbis, *f.*
commonwealth, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae.
companion, comes, comitis, *m.*
complain, queror, querī, questus sum.
conceal, cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
confess, cōnfiteor, -ērī, cōnfessus sum.
conquer, vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum.
conspirators, conjūrātī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
consul, cōnsul, cōnsulis, *m.*
consulship, cōnsulātus, -ūs, *m.*
Cornelius, Cornēlius, -ī, *m.*
cottage, casa, -ae, *f.*
country, native country, patria, -ae, *f.*
country, territory, fīnēs, -ium. (*pl. of* fīnis, fīnis, *m.*).
courage, virtūs, virtūtis, *f.*
course, iter, itineris, *n.*
cowardly, īgnāvus, -a, -um.
cross, trānseō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum.
custom, mōs, mōris, *m.*
cut off, interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum.

D

danger, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
dangerous, perīculōsus, -a, -um.
dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum.
daughter, fīlia, -ae, *f.*
day, diēs, diēī, *m., f.*
dear, cārus, -a, -um.
death, mors, mortis, *f.*
decide, dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum.
deep, altus, -a, -um.
defeat, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum.
defend, dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum.

delay (*noun*), mora, -ae, *f.*
delay (*verb*), moror, -ārī, -ātus sum.
delighted, be delighted, laetor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
demand, postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
depth, altitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
descend, dēscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum.
desire, cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītum.
desirous, cupidus, -a, -um.
despise, contemnō, -temnere, -tempsī, -temptum.
destroy, dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum.
differ, differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātum.
difficult, difficilis, -e.
disloyal, improbus, -a, -um.
displease, displiceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
ditch, fossa, -ae, *f.*
do, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.
dog, canis, canis, *m.*
draw up, īnstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum.
drive back, repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum.
drive out, expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum.

E

each, quisque, quaeque, quidque.
easily, facile, *adv.*
easy, facilis, facile.
eighth, octāvus, -a, -um.
elect, creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
embassy, lēgātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
end, fīnis, fīnis, *m.*
enemy, hostis, hostis, *m.*; inimīcus, -ī, *m.*
energetically, impigrē, *adv.*
enroll, cōnscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum.
envoy, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
escape, effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī.
ever, umquam, *adv.*
except, praeter, *prep. with acc.*
exile, exilium, -ī, *n.*
explore, explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

F

faithful, fidēlis, -e.
fame, glōria, -ae, *f.*
famous, clārus, -a, -um.
farmer, agricola, -ae, *m.*
father, pater, patris, *m.*
favor, faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum.
fear (*noun*), timor, timōris, *m.*
fear (*verb*), timeō, -ēre, -uī; vereor, -ērī, veritus sum.
few, paucī, -ae, -a.
field, ager, agrī, *m.*
fierce, ferus, -a, -um.
fiercely, ācriter, *adv.*
fight, pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
find, inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum; reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum.
find out, reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum.
fire, ignis, ignis, *m.*
first, prīmus, -a, -um.
five, quīnque, *indecl. num.*
flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus.
fleet, classis, classis, *f.*
flight, fuga, -ae, *f.*
follow, sequor, sequī, secūtus sum.
following, posterus, -a, -um.
folly, stultitia, -ae, *f.*
foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*
for, on behalf of, prō, *prep. with abl.*
forces (*of soldiers*), cōpiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
foreigner, peregrīnus, -ī, *m.*
forest, silva, -ae, *f.*
forget, oblīvīscor, -ī, oblītus sum.
formerly, anteā, *adv.*
fort, castellum, -ī, *n.*
fortification, mūnītiō, -ōnis, *f.*

fortify, mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
found, condō, -dere, -didī, -ditum.
founder, conditor, -ōris, *m.*
four, quattuor, *indecl. num.*
friend, amīcus, -ī, *m.*
friendly, amīcus, -a, -um.
friendship, amicītia, -ae, *f.*
frighten, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
from, ā, ab; ē, ex; dē, *preps. with abl.*

G

gain possession of, potior, potīrī, potītus sum.
garrison, praesidium, -ī, *n.*
Gaul (*a country*), Gallia, -ae, *f.*
Gaul (*an inhabitant of the country of Gaul*), Gallus, -ī, *m.*
general, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
Germans, Germānī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
girl, puella, -ae, *f.*
give, dō, dare, dedī, datum; **give back,** reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum.
go, eō, īre, iī, (īvī), itum; **go out,** exeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum; **go away,** abeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum.
god, deus, -ī, *m.*
gold, aurum, -ī, *n.*
good, bonus, -a, -um.
grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*
grandfather, avus, -ī, *m.*
grandson, nepōs, nepōtis, *m.*
great, magnus, -a, -um.
guard (*noun*), praesidium, -ī, *n.*
guard (*verb*), custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.

H

happen, accidō, -ere, accidī.
harbor, portus, -ūs, *m.*
hasten, properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum.
have, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
hear, audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
height, altitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
help (*noun*), auxilium, -ī, *n.*
help (*verb*), juvō, -āre, jūvī, jūtum.
Helvetians, the Helvetians, Helvētiī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
here, hīc, *adv.*
high, altus, -a, -um.
hill, collis, collis, *m.*
(of) **himself, herself, themselves,** *reflex.*, suī, *etc.*
his, her, its, their, *when reflexive,* suus, -a, -um; *when not reflexive,* ejus, eōrum, eārum.
home, domus, -ūs (-ī) *f.*
honor, honor, honōris, *m.*
honorable, honestus, -a, -um.
hope, spēs, speī, *f.*
horse, equus, -ī, *m.*
horseman, eques, equitis, *m.*
hospitality, hospitium, -ī, *n.*
hostage, obses, obsidis, *m.*
hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*
house, tēctum, -ī, *n.*
hunt, vēnor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
hurl, jaciō, -ere, jēcī, jactum; conjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum.

I, ego, meī.
if, sī, *conj.*
in, in, *prep. with abl.*
increase, grow greater, crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētum.
industrious, impiger, -gra, -grum.
industriously, impigrē, *adv.*
infantry (*noun*), peditēs, -um (*pl. of* pedes, peditis, *m.*); (*adjective*), pedester, -tris, -tre.
influence, auctōritās, -tātis, *f.*
injure, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
interpreter, interpres, interpretis, *m.*
into, in, *prep. with acc.*
invite, invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
island, īnsula, -ae, *f.*

J

javelin, pīlum, -ī, *n.*
journey, iter, itineris, *n.*
joy, gaudium., -ī, *n.*
just, jūstus, -a, -um.
justice, jūstitia, -ae, *f.*
kill, interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum; necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

K

king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
kingdom, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
know, sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum; **not know,** ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
knowledge, scientia, -ae, *f.*

L

Labienus, Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*
lake, lacus, -ūs, *m.*
language, lingua, -ae, *f.*
large, magnus, -a, -um.
Laurentum, Laurentum, -ī, *n.*
Lavinia, Lāvīnia, -ae, *f.*
lay waste, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum.
lead across, trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum.
lead back, redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum.
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*
leap down, dēsiliō, -silīre, -siluī.
leave, relinquō, -ere, relīquī, relictum.
legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*
letter, epistula, -ae, *f.*
liberty, lībertās, -tātis, *f.*
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
life, vīta, -ae, *f.*
light, lūx, lūcis, *f.*
live, habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
long, diū, *adv.*
long (*adjective*), longus, -a, -um.
lose, āmittō, -ere, āmīsī, āmissum.
love, amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
low, humilis, -e.

M

make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum; **make war on,** bellum īnferre, *etc.* (*with dative*).
man, vir, virī, *m.*; homō, hominis, *m.*
many, multī, -ae, -a (*plural of multus*).
march, iter faciō, facere, *etc.*
master, dominus, -ī, *m.*
messenger, nūntius, -ī, *m.*
middle, middle of, medius, -a, -um.
migrate, migrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
mile, mīlle passūs *or* passuum, *pl.* mīlia passuum.
military, mīlitāris, -e.
mob, turba, -ae, *f.*
money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*
month, mēnsis, mēnsis, *m.*
mother, māter, mātris, *f.*
mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
much, multus, -a, -um.
multitude, multitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
my, meus, -a, -um.

N

name, nōmen, nōminis, *n.*
narrow, angustus, -a, -um.
nation, gēns, gentis, *f.*
native country, patria, -ae, *f.*
nature, nātūra, -ae, *f.*
necessary, it is necessary, oportet, -ēre, oportuit.
neighboring, vīcīnus, -a, -um.
neighbors, fīnitimī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
Neptune, Neptūnus, -ī, *m.*
never, numquam, *adv.*
new, novus, -a, -um.
next, proximus, -a, -um.
night (*adjective*), nocturnus, -a, -um.
no, nūllus, -a, -um, *gen.* nūllīus.

no one, nēmō, *dat.* nēminī.
nor, neque, *conj.*
not, nōn, *adv.*
not yet, nōndum, *adv.*
nothing, nihil, *indecl., n.*
now, nunc, *adv.*
number, numerus, -ī, *m.*

O

obey, pāreo, -ēre, pāruī.
observe, spectō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātum.
ocean, Ōceanus, -ī, *m.*
often, saepe, *adv.*
old, vetus, *gen.* veteris.
old man, senex, senis, *m.*
on, in, *prep, with abl.*
on account of, propter, *prep. with acc.*
once, at once, statim, *adv.*
one, ūnus, -a, -um, *gen.* ūnīus.
order, jubeō, -ēre, jussī, jussum.
other, another, alius, -a, -ud.
the other, reliquus, -a, -um.
ought, one ought, oportet, -ēre, oportuit, *impersonal.*
our, noster, -tra, -trum.
outside, outside of, extrā, *prep. with acc.*

P

part, pars, partis, *f.*
peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
people, populus, -ī, *m.*
perish, pereō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus.
permit, it is permitted, licet, -ēre, licuit.
persuade, persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum.
picture, pictūra, -ae, *f.*
pirate, praedō, -ōnis, *m.*
place, locus, -ī, *m.* (*pl.* loca, -ōrum, *n.*)
plan, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
place in command of, praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.
please, placeō, -ēre, -uī.
poet, poēta, -ae, *m.*
point out, dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
power, potentia, -ae, *f.*; imperium, -ī, *n.*
praetor, praetor, -ōris, *m.*
praise, laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
prefer, mālō, mālle, māluī.
prepared, parātus, -a, -um.
present, dōnum, -ī, *n.*
prison, carcer, carceris, *m.*
prisoner, captīvus, -ī, *m.*
promise, polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum.
province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*
purpose, for the purpose of, causā, *preceded by genitive.*

Q

quaestor, quaestor, -ōris, *m.*
queen, rēgīna, -ae, *f.*
quickly, celeriter, *adv.*

R

rampart, vāllum, -ī, *n.*
rapid, celer, celeris, celere.
read, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum.
rear, bring up, ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
reason, causa, -ae, *f.*
receive, accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
reënforcements, subsidium, -ī, *n.*
regain, recuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
reject, repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum.
remember, meminī, meminisse.
Remus, Remus, -ī, *m.*
renew, renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
repulse, repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum.
residence, domicilium, -ī, *n.*

resist, resistō, -sistere, -stitī.
resources, opēs, opum (*pl. of* ops, opis, *f*).
rest, the rest of, reliquus, -a, -um.
result, it results, fit, fierī, factum est.
retain, dētineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
return, redeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum; revertor, revertī, reversus sum.
reward, praemium, -ī, *n*.
right, jūs, jūris, *n*.
rise, orior, orīrī, ortus sum.
river, flūmen, flūminis, *n*.
road, iter, itineris, *n*.
robber, latrō, -ōnis, *m*.
rock, saxum, -ī, *n*.
Roman (*noun*), Rōmānus, -ī, *m*; **the Romans,** Rōmānī, -ōrum, *m. pl*.
Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f*.
Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, *m*.
rose, rosa, -ae, *f*.
route, iter, itineris, *n*.
royal power, rēgnum, -ī, *n*.
rule, regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum.
Rutulians, Rutulī, -ōrum, *m. pl*.

S

sacred, sacer, -cra, -crum.
safe, tūtus, -a, -um.
safely, tūtō, *adv*.
sailor, nauta, -ae, *m*.
same, īdem, eadem, idem.
satisfied, contentus, -a, -um.
say, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum.
scout, explōrātor, -ōris, *m*.
sea, mare, maris, *n*.
see, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum; cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum.
seek, petō, -ere, petīvī, petītum.
seize, occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
self, himself, herself, itself, *pl.,* **themselves,** *when reflexive,* suī, sibi, etc.; *when not reflexive,* ipse, ipsa, ipsum.
senate, senātus, -ūs, *m*.
senator, senātor, -ōris, *m*.
send, mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum.
send back, remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum.
send ahead, praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum.
separate, dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum.
set out, proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum.
several, complūrēs, -ia, *gen.* complūrium.
shepherd, pāstor, -ōris, *m*.
shield, scūtum, -ī, *n*.
ship, nāvis, nāvis, *f*.
shore, lītus, lītoris, *n*.
short, brevis, breve.
sight, cōnspectus, -ūs, *m*.
signal, signum, -ī. *n*.
since, cum, *conj*.
sink, dēprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum.
sister, soror, sorōris, *f*.
six, sex, *indecl. num*.
slave, servus, -ī, *m*.
small, parvus, -a, -um.
so, tam, ita, *advs*.
so great, tantus, -a, -um.
so many, tot, *indeclinable*.
soldier, mīles, mīlitis, *m*.
some, quīdam, quaedam, quoddam *or* quiddam.
son, fīlius, -ī, *m*.
soon, mox, *adv*.
sort, kind, modus, -ī, *m*.
sound, sonus, -ī, *m*.
speed, celeritās, -tātis, *f*.
spend the winter, hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
stand, stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus.
state, cīvitās, -tātis, *f*.
statue, statua, -ae, *f*.

stature, statūra, -ae, *f.*
stay, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum.
still, tamen, *adv.*
stone, lapis, lapidis, *m.;* saxum, -ī, *n.*
storm, tempestās, -tātis, *f.*
street, via, -ae, *f.*
strong, firmus, -a, -um.
struggle, certāmen, -minis, *n.*
suitable, idōneus, -a, -um.
summer, aestās, -tātis, *f.*
summon, arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
sun, sōl, sōlis, *m.*
supplies, commeātus, -ūs, *m.*
supreme power, imperium, -ī, *n.*
surpass, praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum.
surrender, trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum; dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum.
swamp, palūs, -ūdis, *f.*
swift, celer, celeris, celere.
swiftly, celeriter, *adv.*
sword, gladius, -ī, *m.*

T

take, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.
talk, loquor, loquī, locūtus sum
temple, templum, -ī, *n.*
ten, decem, *indecl. num.*
terrify, perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
terror, terror, terrōris, *m.*
that (*demonstrative*), ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id; iste, ista, istud.
that (*conj.*), ut.
  that not, nē.
their, *when reflexive,* suus, sua, suum; *when not reflexive,* eōrum, eārum (*gen. pl. of* is).
then, tum, *adv.*
there, ibi, *adv.*
think, arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum.
this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id.
thousand, mīlle, *pl.* mīlia.
threats, minae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
three, trēs, tria.
through, per, *prep. with acc.*
throw, jaciō, -ere, jēcī, jactum.
time, tempus, temporis, *n.*
tired, tired out, dēfessus, -a, -um.
today, hodiē, *adv.*
top of, highest part of, summus, -a, -um.
toward, ad, *prep. with acc.*
town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*
townspeople, oppidānī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
trader, mercātor, -ōris, *m.*
traveller, viātor, -ōris, *m.*
treason, prōditiō, -ōnis, *f.*
treaty, foedus, foederis, *n.*
tree, arbor, arboris, *f.*
tribune, tribūnus, -ī, *m.*
Trojan, Trojānus, -ī, *m.*, **the Trojans,** Trojānī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
Troy, Troja, -ae, *f.*
true, vērus, -a, -um.
trumpet, tuba, -ae, *f.*
trust, cōnfīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum.
try, cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
turn, flectō, -ere, flexī, flexum.
twelve, duodecim, *indecl. num.*
two, duo, duae, duo.

U

undertake, suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
unjust, injūstus, -a, -um.
until, dum.
unwilling, invītus, -a, -um; **be unwilling,** nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.
urge, hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
use, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum.

V

valley, vallēs, vallis, *f.*
very near, nearest, proximus, -a, -um.
victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*

villa, vīlla, -ae, *f.*

village, vīcus, -ī, *m.*

violate, violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

vow, voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtum.

W

wage, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.

wait, wait for, expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

walk, ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

wall, mūrus, -ī, *m.*

war, bellum, -ī, *n.*

ward off, dēpellō, -ere, dēpulī, dēpulsum.

warn, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

wave, flūctus, -ūs, *m.*

way, via, -ae, *f.*

wealth, dīvitiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*

wealthy, dīves, dīvitis, *superl.* dītissimus, -a, -um.

weapon, tēlum, -ī, *n.*

when, cum, ubi, *conjs.*

where, ubi, *adv.*

who, which, what, that, *rel. pron.*, quī, quae, quod.

who, which, what, *interrogative pron. and adj.*, quis (quī), quae, quid (quod).

why, cūr, *adv.*

wide, lātus, -a, -um.

wife, uxor, uxōris, *f.*

wind, ventus, -ī, *m.*

winter, hiems, hiemis, *f.*, **spend the winter,** hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

wisdom, sapientia, -ae, *f.*

wise, sapiēns, *gen.* sapientis.

wish, cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītum; volō, velle, voluī; **not wish, be unwilling,** nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.

with, cum, *prep. with abl.*

withdraw, excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum; discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum.

without, sine, *prep. with abl.*

woman, fēmina, -ae, *f.*; mulier, mulieris, *f.*

word, verbum, -ī, *n.*

work, labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

wound (*noun*), vulnus, vulneris, *n.*

wound (*verb*), vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

write, scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum.

wrong, injūria, -ae, *f.*

Y

year, annus, -ī, m.

yearly, quotannīs, *adv.*

yesterday, herī, *adv.*

you, tū, tuī.

young man, juvenis, juvenis, *m*

your, *of one person,* tuus, -a, -um; *of more than one person,* vester, -tra, -trum.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

A., *abbr. for* **Aulus.**

ā, ab, *prep. with abl.*, from, by.

ab-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, put away, hide, conceal.

ab-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead away, bring away.

ab-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.*, go away, depart.

abjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr.* [**ab+jaciō**], throw away, throw aside.

Aborīginēs, -um, *m. pl.*, the Aborigines, *the original inhabitants of Rome and vicinity.*

abripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tr.* [**ab+rapiō**], snatch away, steal.

ab-rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, annul; take away (*an office*).

abscīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [**abs+caedō**], cut off.

absēns, -entis, *adj.* [**absum**], absent.

ab-solvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtum, *tr.*, set free; acquit.

abs-tergeō, -tergēre, -tersī, -tersum, *tr.*, wipe off *or* away.

abstineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, —, *intr.* [**abs+teneō**], keep or remain away.

ab-sum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *intr.*, be away, be distant, be absent.

ab-sūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, *tr.*, consume, destroy.

Absyrtus, -ī, *m.*, Absyrtus, *brother of Medea.*

ab-undō, -āre, -āvī, —, *intr.* [**unda**, wave], overflow.

ac, *see* **atque.**

Acastus, -ī, *m.*, Acastus, *son of Pelias.*

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [**ad+cēdō**], approach, draw near; be added.

accendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, *tr.* [**ad+cendō**, burn], kindle, light.

acceptus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **accipiō**], acceptable.

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**ad+capiō**], receive, accept.

accidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, *intr.* [**ad+cadō**], fall upon; happen, come about.

accingō, -cingere, -cīnxī, -cīnctum, *tr.* [**ad+cingō**], gird to, gird.

accommodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**ad+commodō**, lend], fit to, adapt.

accumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitum, *intr.* [**ad+cumbō**, recline], recline (*at table*).

accurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.* [**ad+currō**], run to, come up hurriedly.

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**ad+causa**], accuse, blame, reprimand.

ācer, ācris, ācre, *adj.*, spirited, bold, sharp.

aciēs, -ēī, *f.*, line of battle; flash of the eye.

Ācrisius, -ī, *m.*, Acrisius, *grandfather of Perseus.*

ācriter, *adv.* [**ācer**], fiercely, severely.

āctum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* **agō**], deed, transaction.

acūtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **acuō**, sharpen], sharp.

ad, *prep. with acc.*, to, toward; near, in the vicinity of; according to.

ad-amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, fall in love with.

ad-aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, make equal to; equal, keep up with.

ad-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, add.

ad-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead to, conduct, bring; incite, induce.

ad-eō, -īre, -iī *or* **-īvī, -itum,** *intr.*, go *or* come up to, come up, approach.

ad-eō, *adv.*, to such a degree, so.

ad-equitō, -āre, -āvī, —, *intr.*, ride up to, gallop to.

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.* [**ad+habeō**], apply; summon, admit, employ.

ad-hūc, *adv.*, until now, as yet.

adipīscor, adipīscī, adeptus sum, *tr.* [**ad+apīscor,** reach], attain, obtain, win.

aditus, -ūs, *m.* [**adeō, -īre**], entrance, means of approach, access.

adjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr.* [**ad+jaciō**], hurl to, hurl upon, throw.

ad-jungō, -jungere, -jūnxī, -jūnctum, *tr.*, join to, attach.

ad-juvō, -juvāre, -jūvī, -jūtum, *tr.*, help, assist.

Admēta, -ae, *f.*, Admeta, *daughter of Eurystheus.*

ad-ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, manage, direct.

admīrandus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**admīror**], admirable, wonderful.

admīrātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**admīror**], admiration, surprise.

ad-mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.*, be astonished at, admire.

ad-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.*, send to, let go; admit.

ad-modum, *adv.*, fully, very, quite.

ad-moneō, -monēre, -monuī, -monitum, *tr.*, remind, admonish.

adolēscō, adolēscere, adolēvī, adultum, *intr.*, grow up, grow to maturity.

ad-orior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, *tr.*, fall upon, attack.

ad-ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, worship.

ad-scrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *tr.*, write in addition, add.

ad-stringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictum, *tr.*, bind to, bind.

ad-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *intr.*, be at hand, be near.

adulēscēns, adulēscentis, -ium, *adj.* [*pr. part. of* **adolēscō**], youthful; *subst.*, *m.*, a young man, a youth.

adulēscentia, -ae, *f.* [**adulēscēns**], youth.

adulēscentulus, -ī, *m.* [*dim. of* **adulēscēns**], a very young man.

adultus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **adolēscō**], grown up, mature.

ad-ūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.*, burn, sear.

ad-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.*, come to, come up, approach.

adventō, -ventāre, —, —, *intr.* [*intens. of* **adveniō**], advance, approach.

adventus, -ūs, *m.* [**adveniō**], approach, coming, arrival.

adversārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**adversor**], opposed, hostile; *subst.*, **adversārius, -ī,** *m.*, an opponent, adversary.

adversor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.* [**adversus**], *takes dative,* resist, oppose.

adversus, *prep. with acc.*, opposed to, against.

adversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **advertō,** turn to], opposing; unfavorable; in front.

ad-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr.*, turn to, direct to; **animum advertere,** observe, notice.

Aeacus, -ī, *m.*, Aeacus, *a judge in the lower world.*

aedēs, aedis, -ium, *f. sing.*, temple, sanctuary; *pl.*, dwelling, house.

aedificium, -ī, *n.* [**aedificō**], a building.

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**aedēs+faciō**], build.

aedīlis, aedīlis, -ium, *m.*, aedile, *title of a Roman magistrate.*

aedīlitās, -ātis, *f.* [**aedīlis**], the office of an aedile, aedileship.

Aeētēs, -ae, *m.*, Aeetes, *a king of Colchis.*

aeger, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, ill, sick.

aegrē, *adv.* [**aeger**], painfully; with difficulty; with grief; with resentment.

aegrōtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [**aegrōtus**, sick], be sick.

Aegyptius, -a, -um, *adj.*, Egyptian; *subst.*, **Aegyptius, -ī,** *m.*, an Egyptian.

Aegyptus, -ī, *f.*, Egypt.

Aemilius, -ī, *m.*, L. Aemilius, *a cavalry officer in Julius Caesar's army.*

aemulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**aemulor**, to rival], rivalry.

Aenēās, -ae, *m.*, Aeneas, *a Trojan hero.*

aēneus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**aes**], of copper, of bronze.

aequālis, -e, *adj.*, equal; *subst.*, **aequālis, -is,** *m.*, one of the same age.

aequē, *adv.* [**aequus**], equally.

Aequī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Aequi, *a people of Latium.*

aequitās, -ātis, *f.* [**aequus**], equity, fairness.

aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**aequus**], make equal, equalize.

aequus, -a, -um, *adj.*, level, even; equal.

āēr, āeris, *m.*, the air.

aerārium, -ī, *n.* [**aes**], treasury.

aes, aeris, *n.*, copper, bronze; **aes aliēnum**, debt.

Aesōn, -onis, *m.*, Aeson, *father of Jason.*

aestās, -ātis, *f.*, summer.

aestīvus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**aestās**], of summer, summer (*as adjective*).

aetās, -ātis, *f.*, age.

aeternus, -a, -um, *adj.*, eternal, undying.

Aethiopēs, -um, *m. pl.*, the Ethiopians, *a people of Africa.*

Āfer, -fra, -frum, *adj.*, African.

affectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq. of* **afficiō**], strive after, aim at.

afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum, *tr.* [**ad+ferō**], bring to, bring.

afficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**ad+faciō**], do to; treat; affect.

affīnis, -e, *adj.* [**ad+fīnis**], related by marriage; *subst.*, **affīnis, affīnis, -ium,** *m. and f.*, a relative by marriage.

affīnitās, -ātis, *f.* [**affīnis**], relationship by marriage.

Āfrica, -ae, *f.*, Africa.

Āfricānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Africa, African; *subst.*, **Āfricānus, -ī,** *m.*, Africanus, *a cognomen of P. Cornelius Scipio.*

agellus, -ī, *m.* [*dim. of* **ager**], a little field.

ager, agrī, *m.*, field, land, estate.

aggredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *tr.* [**ad+gradior**, step], attack.

agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq. of* **agō**], drive; impel, instigate.

agmen, -inis, *n.* [**agō**], a marching army, a column.

agnōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum, *tr.* [**ad+(g)nōscō**], recognize.

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, *tr.*, drive, do, act; spend, pass.

agrestis, -e, *adj.* [**ager**], of the country; *subst.* **agrestis, agrestis, -ium,** *m.*, a countryman, a peasant.

agricola, -ae, *m.* [**ager+colō**], farmer.

Agrippa, *see* **Menēnius.**

aiō, *defective verb*, say, affirm.

āla, -ae, *f.*, wing.

alacritās, -ātis, *f.* [**alacer**, eager], eagerness, alacrity.

ālārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**āla**], on *or* of the wings; *subst.*, **ālāriī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, auxiliary troops.

Alba Longa, Albae Longae, *f.*, Alba Longa, *a city of Latium.*

Albānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Alban, of Alba; *subst.*, **Albānī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, the people of Alba, the Albans.

albus, -a, -um, *adj.*, white.

Alcmēna, -ae, *f.*, Alcmena, *mother of Hercules.*

ālea, -ae, *f.*, a game with dice; a die.

aliēnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**alius**], another's; out of place; unfavorable.

alimenta, -ōrum, *n. pl.* [**alō**], food, provisions; support.

aliquamdiū, *adv.*, for a while.

aliquandō, *adv.*, at some time or other, once.

aliquantum, -ī, *n.* [**aliquantus,** some], something.

aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, *indef. pronom. adj.*, some, any.

aliquis, aliquid, *indef. pron.*, someone, something.

aliquot, *indecl. adj.*, several.

aliquotiēns, *adv.* [**aliquot**], several times.

aliter, *adv.* [**alius**], otherwise.

alius, -a, -ud, *adj.*, another, other.

Allia, -ae, *f.*, the Allia, *a small river near Rome.*

Alliēnsis, -e, *adj.*, of the Allia.

alligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**ad+ligō,** bind], bind to, tie to.

Allobrogēs, -um, *m. pl.*, the Allobroges, *a Gallic tribe on the Rhone.*

alloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, *tr.* [**ad+loquor**], speak to, address.

Allucius, -ī, *m.*, Allucius, *the name of a certain Spaniard.*

alō, alere, aluī, altum, *tr.*, nourish, sustain.

Alpēs, -ium, *f. pl.*, the Alps.

Alpīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Alpine.

alter, altera, alterum, *adj.*, the other (*of two*), a second, another.

altitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**altus**], height, depth.

altus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **alō**], high, deep; *subst.*, **altum, -ī,** *n.*, the deep, the sea.

alveus, -ī, *m.*, trough.

amāns, amantis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of* **amō**], loving, fond.

Amāzonēs, -um, *f. pl.*, the Amazons.

Ambarrī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Ambarri, *a Gallic tribe.*

ambitiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**ambiō,** go around], ambition.

ambitus, -ūs, *m.* [**ambiō,** go around], canvassing for votes, bribery.

ambō, -ae, -ō, *num. adj.*, both.

ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, walk.

āmentia, -ae, *f.* [**āmēns,** out of one's mind], madness.

amīcitia, -ae, *f.* [**amīcus**], friendship.

amīcus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**amō**], friendly.

amīcus, -ī, *m.* [**amīcus,** *adj.*], a friend.

amita, -ae, *f.*, (*paternal*) aunt.

ā-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.*, lose.

amnis, amnis, -ium, *m.*, river.

amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, love.

amoenitās, -ātis, *f.*, pleasantness, charm.

amor, -ōris, *m.*, love.

ā-moveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.*, move away.

amphora, -ae, *f.*, jar, flagon.

amplē, *adv.* [**amplus,** ample], abundantly, liberally; *compar.*, **amplius,** more.

Amūlius, -ī, *m.*, Amulius, *a king of Alba.*

an, *conj.*, or, *used in double questions.*

anceps, -cipitis, *adj.*, two-headed, double.

ancora, -ae, *f.*, anchor.

Ancus, -ī, *m.*, Ancus Marcius, *fourth king of Rome.*

Andromeda, -ae, *f.*, Andromeda, *the daughter of Cepheus.*

angor, -ōris, *m.*, anguish, torment.

anguis, anguis, -ium, *m. and f.*, serpent, snake.

angulus, -ī, *m.*, corner.

angustiae, -ārum, *f. pl.* [angustus], narrowness, a narrow place *or* pass, defile.

angustus, -a, -um, *adj.*, narrow.

anima, -ae, *f.*, air, breath; life.

animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, *tr.* [animus+advertō], direct the mind to, observe, notice; punish.

animal, animālis, -ālium, *n.*, an animal.

animus, -ī *m.*, mind, courage, spirit.

Aniō, Aniēnis, *m.*, the Anio, *a river near Rome.*

annōna, -ae, *f.* [annus], the year's produce; supplies, provisions.

annus, -ī, *m.*, year.

annuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [annus] annual, lasting a year.

ānser, -eris, *m.*, goose.

ante, *prep. with acc.*, before, in front of.

anteā, *adv.*, formerly, before.

ante-eō, -īre, -iī *or* **-īvī,** *intr.*, go before *or* ahead.

ante-quam, *conj.*, before.

Antiochus, -ī, *m.*, Antiochus, *a Greek philosopher.*

antīquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ancient, of long ago.

Antōnius, -ī, *m.*, (*1*) C. Antonius, *consul in 63 B.C.*; (*2*) M. Antonius, *consul in 44 B.C., afterwards triumvir.*

antrum, -ī, *n.*, cave.

ānxius, -a, -um, *adj.*, anxious.

Ap., *abbr. for* **Appius.**

aper, aprī, *m.*, a wild boar.

aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertum, *tr.*, open; reveal.

apertus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **aperiō**], open, exposed, unprotected.

Apollō, Apollinis, *m.*, Apollo.

Apollōnius, -ī, *m.*, Apollonius Molo, *a celebrated teacher of oratory at Rhodes.*

apparātus, -ūs, *m.* [**apparō,** prepare], apparatus, equipment.

apparātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**apparō,** prepare], prepared, splendid.

appāritor, -ōris, *m.*, servant.

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, call, name.

appellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [ad+pellō], drive to, bring to; *with or without nāvem,* land, put in.

Appennīnus, -ī, *m.*, the Appennines.

appetō, -petere, -petīvī, *or* **-petiī, -petītum,** *tr. and intr.* [ad+petō], strive after, seek; approach.

Appius, -ī, *m.*, Appius, *a Roman praenomen.*

appōnō, -ponere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [ad+pōnō], place near; serve, set before.

apprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum, *tr.* [ad+prehendō], take hold of, seize.

appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [ad+propinquō, draw near], approach.

Apr., *abbr. for* **Aprīlis, -e,** *adj.*, of April.

aptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, adapted.

apud, *prep. with acc.*, among, with; near; at the house of; on the bank of.

Āpūlia, -ae, *f.*, Apulia, *a region of southern Italy.*

aqua, -ae, *f.*, water.

aquila, -ae, *f.*; eagle.

Aquileia, -ae, *f.*, *a city of Cisalpine Gaul, modern Aquileia.*

Aquītānia, -ae, *f.*, Aquitania, *one of the divisions of Gaul.*

Aquītānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Aquitania, Aquitanian; *subst.*, **Aquītānī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, the Aquitanians.

āra, -ae, *f.*, altar.

Arar, -aris, *m.*, the Arar, *a river in Gaul, now called the Saône.*

arbitrium, -ī, *n.* [**arbiter,** witness, judge], judgment, pleasure.

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.* [**arbiter,** judge], think, suppose.

arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree.

arca, -ae, *f.*, chest, box.

Arcadia, -ae, *f.*, Arcadia, *a district in Greece.*

arcessō, -cessere, -cessīvī, -cessītum, *tr.*, send for, summon.

arcus, -ūs, *m.*, bow, arch.

Ardea, -ae, *f.*, Ardea, *a town of the Rutuli, in Latium.*

Ardeātēs, -ium, *m. pl.*, the people of Ardea.

ārdeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsum, *intr.*, be on fire, burn, burn up.

argenteus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**argentum**], of silver.

argentum, -ī, *n.*, silver.

Argō, -ūs, *f.*, *the ship* Argo.

Argolicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Argolis (*a district of Greece*).

Argonautae, -ārum, *m. pl.*, the crew of the Argo, the Argonauts.

Argus, -ī, *m.*, Argus, *builder of the Argo.*

Arīcīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Aricia (*a town of Latium*).

ariēs, -etis, *m.*, ram.

Ariovistus, -ī, *m.*, Ariovistus, *king of the Suevi, a German people.*

arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, arms, weapons.

aquila, -ae, *f.*, eagle.

armāmentārium, -ī, *n.* [**arma**] arsenal, armory.

armātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **armō**], armed, equipped; *subst.*, **armātī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, armed men.

Armenia, -ae, *f.*, Armenia.

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**arma**], arm, equip.

arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, plough.

Arpīnum, -ī, *n.*, Arpinum, *a town of Latium.*

arripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tr.* [**ad+rapiō**], grasp, seize.

arroganter, *adv.* [**arrogāns,** arrogant], presumptuously.

arrogantia, -ae, *f.* [**arrogāns,** arrogant], arrogance, pride.

Arrūns, -untis, *m.*, Arruns Tarquinius, *a son of Tarquinius Priscus.*

ars, artis, -ium, *f.*, art.

artifex, -icis, *m.*, artificer, artisan.

artus, -ūs, *m.*, joint, limb.

Arvernī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Arverni, *a tribe of Celtic Gaul.*

arx, arcis, -ium, *f.*, citadel.

Ascanius, -ī, *m.*, Ascanius, *legendary founder of Alba Longa.*

ascendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *tr.* [**ad+scandō,** climb], ascend, climb.

ascēnsus, -ūs, *m.* [**ascendō**], way up, ascent.

Asia, -ae, *f.*, Asia.

Asiāticus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Asia, Asiatic.

aspiciō, aspicere, aspexī, aspectum, *tr.* [**ad+speciō,** look], look at, behold, look on.

assīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, —, *intr.* [**ad+sīdō,** sit], take a seat, sit down.

assurgō, -surgere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum, *intr.* [**ad+surgō,** rise], rise up.

asȳlum, -ī, *n.*, a place of refuge, asylum.

at, *conj.*, but.

Athēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, Athens.

Atilius, -ī, *m.*, M. Atilius Regulus, *consul in 256 B. C.*

Atlās, -antis, *m.*, Atlas.

atque, *conj.*, and also, and.

ātrium, -ī, *n.*, atrium, *the principal room or hall of a house.*

atrōciter, *adv.* [**atrōx,** savage], fiercely.

attingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum, *tr.* [**ad+tangō**], touch; arrive at.

auctor, -ōris, *m.* [**augeō**], promoter, instigator.

auctōritās, -ātis, *f.* [**auctor**], influence, authority.

auctus, -a, -um, *see* **augeō.**

audācia, -ae, *f.* [**audāx**], boldness.

audācter, *adv.* [**audāx**], boldly.

audāx, -ācis, *adj.*, daring, bold.

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, *tr. and intr.*, dare, venture.

audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *tr.*, hear.

auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum, *tr.* [**ab+ferō**], carry away, carry off.

aufugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, *intr.* [**ab+fugiō**], flee away, run away.

Augēās, -ae, *m.*, Augeas, *a king of Elis.*

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum, *tr.*, increase; **auctus, -a, -um,** *p. part. as adj.*, increased; abundant, ample.

augurium, -ī, *n.* [**augur,** augur], augury, divination.

Aulus, -ī, *m.*, Aulus, *a Roman praenomen.*

aureus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**aurum**], of gold, golden.

aurum, -ī, *n.*, gold.

aut, *conj.*, or; **aut . . . aut,** either . . . or.

autem, *conj.*, but, on the other hand, however; furthermore.

auxilium, -ī, *n.* [**augeō**], help, aid.

avāritia, -ae, *f.*, [**avārus**], greed, avarice.

avārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, greedy, covetous.

ā-vehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.*, carry off, take away.

ā-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, *tr.*, turn away, avert.

avis, avis, -ium, *f.*, bird.

ā-volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intr.*, fly away.

avunculus, -ī, *m.* [**avus**], (*maternal*) uncle.

avus, -ī, *m.*, grandfather.

B

baculum, -ī, *n.*, staff.

balteus, -ī, *m.*, girdle, belt.

barba, -ae, *f.*, beard.

barbarī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* [**barbarus,** *adj.*, barbarian], barbarians.

beātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, happy, prosperous.

Belgae, -ārum, *m. pl.*, the Belgae, the Belgians.

bellicōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**bellum**], warlike, martial.

bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [**bellum**], carry on war.

bellum, -ī, *n.*, war.

bēlua, -ae, *f.*, wild beast, monster.

bene, *adv.* [**bonus**], well.

beneficium, -ī, *n.* [**bene+faciō**], kindness, favor.

benignē, *adv.* [**benignus**], kindly.

benignitās, -ātis, *f.* [**benignus**], kindness.

benignus, -a, -um, *adj.*, kind.

bēstia, -ae, *f.*, beast.

bibliothēca, -ae, *f.*, library.

bibō, bibere, bibī, —, *tr. and intr.*, drink.

Bibracte, -is, *n.*, Bibracte, *chief town of the Haedui.*

Bibulus, -ī, *m.*, M. Calpurnius Bibulus, *consul in 59 B. C.*

biceps, -cipitis, *adj.*, two-headed.

bīduum, -ī, *n.* [**bis+diēs**], a period of two days, two days.

biennium, -ī, *n.* **[bis+annus],** two years.

bipertītō, *adv.* **[bis+partior,** divide], in two divisions.

bis, *adv.*, twice.

Biturīgēs, -um, *m. pl.*, the Bituriges, *a tribe in central Gaul.*

Bocchus, -ī, *m.*, Bocchus, *a king of Mauretania.*

Bōī (Boiī), -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Boii, *a Gallic tribe.*

bonitās, -ātis, *f.* **[bonus],** goodness, fertility.

bonus, -a, -um, *adj.*, good; *subst.*, **bonum, -ī,** *n.*, what is good, good; **bona, -ōrum,** *n., pl.*, goods, property.

bōs, bovis, *m. and f.*, ox, cow; *pl.*, cattle.

bracchium, -ī, *n.*, the fore-arm, arm.

Brennus, -ī, *m.*, Brennus, *a Gallic king.*

brevis, -e, *adj.*, short.

brevitās, -ātis, *f.* **[brevis],** shortness, brevity.

breviter, *adv.* **[brevis],** briefly.

Britannia, -ae, *f.*, Britain, Great Britain.

Brundisium, -ī, *n.*, Brundisium, *a city on the east coast of Italy, now Brindisi.*

Brūtus, -ī, *m.*, (*1*) L. Junius Brutus, *one of the first two consuls at Rome;* (*2*) M. Junius Brutus, *one of Julius Caesar's assassins.*

Būsiris, -idis, *m.*, Busiris, *a king of Egypt.*

C

C., *abbr. for* **Gaius.**

Cācus, -ī, *m.*, Cacus, *a giant slain by Hercules.*

cadāver, -eris, *n.*, a dead body, corpse.

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *intr.*, fall; be killed.

caecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, blind.

caedēs, caedis, -ium, *f.* **[caedō],** murder, slaughter, massacre.

caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesum, *tr.*, cut, cut down, kill.

caelestis, -e, *adj.* **[caelum],** from heaven, celestial.

caelum, -ī, *n.*, sky, heaven.

Caere, *no gen., n.*, Caere, *a city of Etruria.*

caerimōnia, -ae, *f.*, ceremony, rite.

Caesar, -aris, *m.*, C. Julius Caesar, *consul in 59 B. C., later dictator.*

Calais, -is, *m.*, Calais, *one of the Argonauts.*

calamitās, -ātis, *f.*, disaster, calamity.

calcar, calcāris, -ium, *n.*, spur.

calceus, -ī, *m.*, shoe.

callidus, -a, -um, *adj.* **[calleō,** be callous, be skilled], shrewd, adroit.

calor, -ōris, *m.*, heat.

calvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bald.

Camers, -ertis, *m.*, a citizen of Camerinum (*a city in Italy*).

Camillus, -ī, *m.*, M. Furius Camillus, *a famous Roman general of the fourth century B. C.*

campus, -ī, *m.*, plain.

cancer, -crī, *m.*, a crab.

candidātus, -ī, *m.* **[candidus,** white], candidate.

Canīnius, -ī, *m.*, C. Caninius Rebilus, *a lieutenant of Julius Caesar's and later consul.*

canis, -is, *m. and f.*, dog.

Cannae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, Cannae, *a town in southeastern Italy.*

Cannēnsis, -e, *adj.*, of Cannae.

canō, canere, cecinī, cantum, *intr.*, sing.

cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [*freq. of* **canō**], sing.

Canusium, -ī, *n.*, Canusium, *a town in southeastern Italy.*

capessō, -ere, —, —, *tr.* **[capiō],** seize (eagerly), undertake, undergo.

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, *tr.*, take, capture.

capitālis, -e, *adj.* **[caput],** of the head; of the life, capital.

Capitōlīnus, -a, -um, *adj.* **[Capitōlium],** of the Capitol, Capitoline.

Capitōlium, -ī, *n.*, the Capitol, *the temple of Jupiter in Rome; or,* the hill *on which the Capitol stood.*

captīvus, -ī, *m.*, **[capiō],** prisoner.

caput, capitis, *n.*, head; chief city, capital.

Carbō, -ōnis, *m.*, Cn. Papirius Carbo, *consul in 85, 84, 82 B.C.*

carcer, -eris, *m.*, prison.

carmen, -inis, *n.*, a song; charm, incantation.

carō, carnis, *f.*, flesh.

carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptum, *tr.*, pluck.

carpentum, -ī, *n.*, a carriage (*with two wheels*).

carrus, -ī, *m.*, cart.

Carthāginiēnsis, -e, *adj.* **[Carthāgō],** of Carthage, Carthaginian; *subst.* **Carthāginiēnsēs, -ium,** *m. pl.*, the Carthaginians.

Carthāgō, -inis, *f.*, Carthage, *a city of northern Africa;* **Nova Carthāgō,** New Carthage, *a city of Spain.*

cārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dear, precious.

casa, -ae, *f.*, cottage.

Casca, -ae, *m.*, C. Servilius Casca, *one of the assassins of Julius Caesar.*

Cassiānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Cassius, with Cassius.

Cassius, -ī, *m.*, (*1*) C. Cassius Longinus, *one of the assassins of Julius Caesar;* (*2*) L. Cassius Longinus, *consul in 107 B.C.*

castellum, -ī, *n.*, fort, redoubt.

Casticus, -ī, *m.*, Casticus, *a prominent Sequanian.*

Castor, -oris, *m.*, Castor, *son of Leda and twin brother of Pollux.*

castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, camp.

cāsus, -ūs, *m.* **[cadō],** fall; accident, occurrence, mischance.

catēna, -ae, *f.*, chain.

Catilīna, -ae, *m.*, L. Sergius Catilina, *organizer of a conspiracy against the Roman government in 63 B.C; usually Anglicized as* Catiline.

Catō, -ōnis, *m.*, M. Porcius Cato, *a Roman, prominent towards the close of the republic.*

Caturīgēs, -um, *m. pl.*, the Caturiges, *a Gallic tribe in the Alps.*

cauda, -ae, *f.*, tail.

causa, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason; **causā,** *with preceding gen.*, for the sake of, for the purpose of.

caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, *tr. and intr.*, beware of, beware.

cēdo, cēdere, cessī, cessum, *intr.*, withdraw, retire, yield.

celeber, -bris, -bre, *adj.*, thronged; renowned, famous.

celebrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* **[celeber],** throng; celebrate.

celer, celeris, celere, *adj.*, swift, speedy.

celeritās, -ātis, *f.* **[celer],** speed, swiftness.

celeriter, *adv.* **[celer],** swiftly, quickly.

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, conceal, hide.

Celtae, -ārum, *m. pl.*, the Celts.

Celtibērī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Celtiberi, *a Spanish tribe.*

cēna, -ae, *f.*, dinner.

cēnāculum, -ī, *n.* **[cēna],** dining-room.

Cēnaeum, -ī, *n.*, Cenaeum, *a promontory of Euboea.*

cēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr. and tr.* **[cēna],** dine, dine upon.

cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnsum, *tr.*, estimate; think, believe.

cēnsus, -ūs, *m.* [**cēnseō**], census, enumeration.

centaurus, -ī, *m.*, Centaur, *a mythical creature with a horse's body and a man's head.*

centum, *indecl. num. adj.*, hundred.

centuriō, -ōnis, *m.* [**centuria,** hundred men], centurion.

Cēpheus, -ī, *m.*, Cepheus, *a king of Ethiopia.*

Cerberus, -ī, *m.*, Cerberus, *fabled watch-dog of the Lower World.*

Cerēs, -eris, *f.*, Ceres, *goddess of agriculture.*

cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētum, *tr.*, distinguish; discern, perceive.

certāmen, -inis, *n.* [**certō**], struggle, contest, rivalry.

certē, *adv.* [**certus**], assuredly, certainly.

certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [*freq. of* **cernō**], contend, strive.

certus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **cernō**], fixed, certain.

cervīx, -īcis, *f.*, neck, throat.

cervus, -ī, *m.*, stag.

cēterī, -ae, -a, *adj., pl.*, the other, the rest of.

Ceutronēs, -um, *m. pl.*, the Ceutrones, *a Gallic tribe in the Alps.*

Charōn, -ontis, *m.*, Charon, *the ferryman over the river Styx.*

Chrȳsogonus, -ī, *m.*, L. Cornelius Chrysogonus, *a freedman of Sulla.*

cibārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**cibus**], given as rations; *subst.*, **cibāria, -ōrum,** *n. pl.*, provisions, rations.

cibus, -ī, *m.*, food.

Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*, M. Tullius Cicero, *the famous orator.*

Cimber, -brī, *m.*, a Cimbrian; **Cimbrī, -ōrum,** *pl.*, the Cimbri, *a people of northern Germany.*

Cimberius, -ī, *m.*, Cimberius, *a leader of the Suebi and brother of Nasua.*

Cimbricus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**Cimber**], of the Cimbri, Cimbrian.

Cincinnātus, -ī, *m.*, L. Quinctius Cincinnatus, *a famous Roman of the fifth century B.C.*

Cineās, -ae, *m.*, Cineas, *a minister of king Pyrrhus of Epirus.*

cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctum, *tr.*, surround, encircle.

cinis, cineris, *m.*, ashes.

Cinna, -ae, *m.*, L. Cornelius Cinna, *consul in 87-84 B.C.*

circā, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, around, round about.

Circeiī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, Circeii, *a town of Latium.*

circinus, -ī, *m.*, a pair of compasses.

circiter, *adv.* [**circus**], about, nearly.

circuitus, -ūs, *m.* [**circumeō**], a going around, a circuit.

circum, *prep. with acc.* [**circus**], around, about.

circum-arō, -arāre, -arāvī, *tr.*, plough around.

circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, *tr.*, place around, surround.

circum-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead around.

circum-eō, -īre, -iī *or* **-īvī, -itum,** *tr. and intr.*, go around, go from one to another.

circum-fundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *tr.*, pour around.

circum-saepiō, -saepīre, -saepsī, -saeptum, *tr.*, hedge around, encircle.

circum-sistō, -sistere, -stetī, —, *tr.*, surround.

circum-stō, -stāre, -stetī, —, *intr.*, stand around, surround.

circum-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr.*, come around, surround.

circus, -ī, *m.*, a circle; a circus.

citerior, -ius, *comp. adj.* [**cis,** this side of], on this side; nearer, hither.

cithara, -ae, *f.*, cithara, guitar.

citharoedus, -ī, *m.*, citharoedus, *one who plays on the cithara and sings at the same time.*

citō, *adv.* [**citus,** swift], quickly, speedily.

citrō, *adv.* [**cis,** this side of], to this side; **ultrō citrōque,** hither and thither, backwards and forwards.

cīvicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**cīvis**], of citizens; civic.

cīvīlis, -e, *adj.* [**cīvis**], of citizens, civil.

cīvis, cīvis, -ium, *m.*, citizen.

cīvitās, -ātis, *f.* [**cīvis**], citizenship; the state, a state.

clādēs, clādis, -ium, *f.*, disaster, misfortune; defeat.

clam, *adv.*, secretly.

clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [*freq. of* **clāmō**], call out loudly, cry out.

clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, cry out, shout.

clāmor, -ōris, *m.* [**clāmō**], shout, shouting, noise.

clangor, -ōris, *m.*, noise.

clārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, famous; bright, clear; loud.

classis, classis, -ium, *f.*, class, fleet.

Claudius, -ī, *m.*, Ap. Claudius, *a tribune of the soldiers in 216 B.C.*

claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum, *tr.*, close; **agmen claudere,** to bring up the rear.

clāva, -ae, *f.*, staff, club.

clēmēns, -entis, *adj.*, merciful.

clēmenter, *adv.* [**clēmēns**], mercifully.

clēmentia, -ae, *f.* [**clēmēns**], forbearance, mercy.

Cleopatra, -ae, *f.*, Cleopatra, *a queen of Egypt.*

cliēns, -entis, *m.*, client, follower.

cloāca, -ae, *f.*, sewer.

Clōdius, -ī, *m.*, *another form of* **Claudius**; P. Clodius Pulcher, *a Roman of Cicero's time and an enemy of Cicero.*

Cluilius, -ī, *m.*, Cluilius, *a king of Alba.*

Clūsīnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**Clūsium**], of Clusium (*a city of Etruria*).

Cn., *abbr. for* **Gnaeus.**

co-emō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, *tr.*, purchase, buy up.

coepī, coepisse, coeptum, *tr. and intr., defective verb,* began.

coërceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.* [**com-+arceō,** enclose], restrain, curb.

cōgitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**cōgitō**], reflection, meditation.

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**com-+agitō**], ponder; plan.

cognātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**com-+(g)nāscor**], related.

cognōmen, -inis, *n.* [**com-+(g)nōmen**], cognomen, surname.

cognōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum, *tr.* [**com-+(g)nōscō,** learn], find out, learn; *pf.*, know.

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum, *tr.* [**com-+agō**], drive together, bring together, collect; compel, force.

cohors, cohortis, -ium, *f.*, cohort, *a division of the Roman army.*

co-hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.*, encourage, rally, admonish.

Colchis, -idis, *f.*, Colchis, *a district in Asia to the east of the Black Sea.*

collēga, -ae, *m.*, colleague.

colligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [**com-+legō**], gather together, collect.

colligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**com-+ligō,** bind], bind together.

collis, collis, -ium, *m.*, hill.

collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**com-+locō,** place], station, arrange; give in marriage.

colloquium, -ī, *n.*, [**colloquor**], interview, conference.

colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, *intr.* [**com-+loquor**], converse, confer.

collum, -ī, *n.*, neck.

colō, -ere, coluī, cultum, *tr.*, cultivate, till.

colōnus, -ī, *m.* **[colō]**, farmer; settler, colonist.

color, -ōris, *m.*, color.

columba, -ae, *f.*, dove, pigeon.

columna, -ae, *f.*, column, pillar.

com-, (also **con-** and **co-**), *forms of the preposition* **cum** *employed in composition only.*

combūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.* **[com-+ūrō]**, burn up, consume.

comes, -itis, *m. and f.*, companion.

comitās, -ātis, *f.* **[comis,** courteous], courteousness, affability.

comitium, -ī, *n.* **[com-+eō]**, a place of assembly; the Comitium, *a meeting-place adjoining the old Roman Forum;* **comitia, -ōrum,** *pl.*, public assembly, election.

commeātus, -ūs, *m.* **[commeō]**, going to and fro; furlough; provisions, supplies.

com-memorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, mention.

commentārius, -ī, *m.*, note-book, memorandum; *pl.*, memoirs, records.

com-meō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* **[meō,** go, pass], go and come; resort to.

comminus, *adv.* **[com-+manus]**, hand to hand, at close quarters.

com-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.*, send together; undertake; bring about; **proelium committere,** to begin battle.

commodē, *adv.* **[commodus,** convenient], conveniently, advantageously.

commonefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* **[commoneō+faciō]**, remind, impress upon.

com-moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.*, tarry, linger.

com-moveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.*, move deeply, excite, arouse, alarm.

com-mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *tr.*, fortify, establish strongly.

commūnis, -e, *adj.*, common.

commūniter, *adv.* **[commūnis]**, commonly, in common.

commūtātiō, -ōnis, *f.* **[commūtō]**, change.

com-mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, change (entirely), exchange.

com-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, prepare.

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* **[compār,** like], compare.

com-pellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.*, drive together, collect.

comperiō, -perīre, -perī, -pertum, *tr. and intr.*, find out, ascertain.

com-plector, -plectī, -plexus sum, *tr.* **[com-+plector,** embrace], clasp, embrace.

compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *tr.* **[com-+pleō,** fill], fill, fill up.

com-plūrēs, -plūra *or* **-plūria,** *adj.*, several, a number of, many.

com-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, place together; compose, settle.

com-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, carry together, bring together, collect.

com-prehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum, *tr.*, seize, arrest.

comprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.* **[com-+premō]**, press together, squeeze; suppress.

cōnāta, -ōrum, *n. pl.* [*p. part. of* **cōnor]**, undertaking, enterprise.

cōnātus, -ūs, *m.* **[cōnor]**, attempt.

con-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr. and tr.*, yield; grant, concede.

concidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, *intr.* **[com-+cadō]**, fall, be slain.

concīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* **[com-+caedō]**, cut to pieces, destroy.

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, win, win over, win the favor of.

concilium, -ī, *n.*, council.

concipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**com-+capiō**], take hold of; conceive.

concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, rouse, incite.

con-clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, cry out together, cry out loudly, exclaim.

concordia, -ae, *f.* [**concors,** harmonious], concord, harmony.

con-currō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.*, run together.

con-cursus, -ūs, *m.*, a running together, concourse; assault, charge.

condemnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**com-+damnō**], condemn.

condiciō, -ōnis, *f.* [**condīcō,** agree], agreement; terms, conditions.

conditor, -ōris, *m.* [**condō**], founder.

con-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, put away, store up; found.

con-dōnō -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, give; overlook, pardon.

con-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, bring together, collect.

con-ductī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* [*p. part. of* **condūcō**], mercenary soldiers, mercenaries.

cōn-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.*, bring together, collect; compare; **sē cōnferre,** betake oneself, proceed.

cōnfertus, -a, -um, *adj,* [*p. part. of* **cōnferciō,** press together], crowded, dense.

cōnfessiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**cōnfiteor**], confession.

cōnfestim, *adv.*, at once, immediately.

cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**com-+faciō**], finish, complete; weaken, overcome.

cōn-fīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum, *intr.* (*takes dative*), trust; be confident, have confidence.

cōn-firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, strengthen, establish.

cōnfiteor, -fitērī, -fessus sum, *tr. and intr.* [**com-+fateor,** acknowledge], confess.

cōn-flagrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, be on fire, be consumed.

cōn-flīgō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flīctum, *intr.*, dash *or* strike together.

cōn-flō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, blow together, kindle; **aes aliēnum cōnflāre,** to contract a debt.

cōn-fodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, *tr.*, stab, pierce.

congredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *intr.* [**com-+gradior,** step], come together, meet.

congressus, -ūs, *m.* [**congredior**], meeting, conference.

conjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr.* [**com-+jaciō**], throw together; hurl cast.

con-jungō, -jungere, -jūnxī, -jūnctum, *tr.*, fasten together, join.

conjūnx, conjugis, *m. and f.* [*compare* **conjungō**], a married person, husband, wife.

conjūrātī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* [*p. part. of* **conjūrō**], conspirators.

conjūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**conjūrō**], conspiracy.

con-jūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, swear together, form a conspiracy, conspire.

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr. and intr.*, try, attempt.

conquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, *tr.* [**com-+quaerō**], hunt for, search out.

cōn-sanguineus, -a, -um, *adj.*, related by blood; *subst.*, **cōnsanguineī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, kinsmen, blood-relations.

cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēnsum, *tr.* [**com-+scandō,** climb], climb; go aboard, embark on.

cōn-scīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum, *tr.* [**scīscō,** approve], resolve upon; **mortem sibi cōnscīscere,** commit suicide.

cōnscius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**com-+sciō**], conscious, aware.

cōn-scrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *tr.*, enroll, organize.

cōn-sēnsus, -ūs, *m.* [**cōnsentiō,** agree], agreement.

cōn-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr.*, follow up; overtake; gain.

cōn-servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, retain, preserve.

Cōnsidius, -ī, *m.*, P. Considius, *an officer in Caesar's army.*

cōn-sīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum, *intr.*, sit down, take one's seat.

cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*, plan, counsel, advice.

cōn-sistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *intr.*, take one's stand, halt, make a stand.

cōn-sociō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, associate, unite.

cōn-sōlor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.* [**sōlor,** comfort], console, cheer, comfort.

cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.* [**cōnspiciō**], sight, view.

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.* [**com-+speciō,** look], perceive, observe.

cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.*, catch sight of, observe, see.

cōnstantia, -ae, *f.* [**cōnstāns,** firm], constancy, firmness.

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, *tr.* [**com+statuō**], station; decide, determine.

cōn-stō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, *intr.*, stand together; consist; *impers.*, **cōnstat,** it is known, it is certain.

cōn-suēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, suētum, *intr.*, become accustomed; *pf.*, be accustomed, be in the habit of.

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, *f.* [**cōnsuēscō**], custom, habit, way.

cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*, consul, *one of the chief magistrates at Rome.*

cōnsulāris, -e, *adj.* [**cōnsul**], of a consul, consular.

cōnsulātus, -ūs, *m.* [**cōnsul**], consulship.

cōnsulō, -sulere, -suluī, -sultum, *tr. and intr.*, consult; consult the interests of (*with dative*).

cōnsultō, *adv.* [*abl. of* **cōnsultum**], intentionally.

cōnsultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [*freq. of* **cōnsulō**], consult, deliberate.

cōnsultum, -ī, *m.* [**cōnsulō**], decree.

cōn-sūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, *tr.*, consume, spend.

con-tegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *tr.*, cover.

con-temnō, -temnere, -tempsī, -temptum, *tr.*, scorn, despise.

contemptor, -ōris, *m.* [**contemnō**], despiser, scorner.

con-tendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *intr.*, contend, fight; hasten.

contentiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**contendō**], struggle, contest.

contentus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part of* **contineō,** hold together], satisfied, contented.

con-texō, -texere, -texuī, -textum, *tr.*, weave.

continēns, -entis, *f.* [**contineō**], continent, mainland.

continenter, *adv.* [**continēns,** continuous], continuously.

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [**com-+teneō**], hold together; shut in, confine.

contingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum, *tr.* [**com-+tangō**], touch, adjoin; *intr. and impers.*, **contingit,** it befalls, happens to.

continuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [continuus], make continuous, hold without an interval.

continuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [contineō], successive, continuous.

cōntiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*compare* com- *and* veniō], a public assembly; a speech, a contio.

contrā, *prep. with acc.*, against, opposite.

con-trahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.*, draw or bring together.

contrōversia, -ae, *f.* [contrōversus, disputed], dispute, quarrel.

contumēlia, -ae, *f.*, insult, abuse.

cōnūbium, -ī, *n.* [com-+nūbō], marriage.

con-vallis, -vallis, -ium, *f.*, valley.

conveniēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of* conveniō], agreeing, appropriate.

con-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.*, assemble, come together; *impers.*, **convenit**, an agreement is made, it is agreed.

conventus, -ūs, *m.* [conveniō], meeting, assembly.

con-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr.*, turn round, turn.

con-vincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victum, *tr.*, convict; prove.

con-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, call together.

co-orior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, *intr.*, come forth, arise.

cōpia, -ae, *f.*, plenty; *pl.*, forces, troops.

cōpiōsē, *adv.* [cōpiōsus], copiously, at length.

cōpiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cōpia], plentiful, well supplied.

Corinthius, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Corinth, Corinthian.

Corinthus, -ī, *f.*, Corinth, *a city of Greece.*

Cornēlia, -ae, *f.*, Cornelia, *name of a woman or girl.*

Cornēlius, -ī, *m.*, (*1*) P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus Major, *a famous Roman general who conquered Hannibal;* (*2*) P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus Minor, *who destroyed Carthage;* (*3*) L. Cornelius Sulla, *consul in 88 B.C., later dictator.*

corneus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cornū], of horn.

corneus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cornum, cornel-cherry], of cornel-wood.

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn; wing (*of an army*).

corōna, -ae, *f.*, garland, wreath, crown.

corpus, corporis, *n.*, body.

corrigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *tr.* [com-+regō], correct, reform.

corripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tr.* [com-+rapiō], seize, take hold of, snatch up.

corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.* [com-+rumpō, burst], ruin; corrupt.

cortex, -icis, *m. and f.*, bark.

cotīdiānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cotīdiē], daily.

cotīdiē, *adv.* [quot+diēs], every day, daily.

Crassus, -ī, *m.*, (*1*) M. Licinius Crassus, *a member of the First Triumvirate with Caesar and Pompeius;* (*2*) P. Licinius Crassus, *son of Marcus.*

crēdibilis, -e, *adj.* [crēdō], credible.

crēditor, -ōris, *m.* [crēdō], creditor.

crēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, believe, trust, entrust; lend.

cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, burn, consume.

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, elect, choose.

Creōn, -ontis, *m.*, Creon, *a king of Thebes.*

crepitus, -ūs, *m.* [crepō, to rattle], clattering, noise.

crepundia, -ōrum, *n., pl.* [**crepō,** to rattle], a child's rattle, a rattle.

crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum, *intr.*, increase, grow greater.

Crēta, -ae, *f.*, Crete, *an island in the Mediterranean Sea.*

crīmen, -inis, *n.*, charge, accusation.

crīnis, crinis, -ium, *m.*, hair.

cruciātus, -ūs, *m.* [**cruciō,** to torture], torture.

crūdēlis, -e, *adj.*, cruel.

crūdēlitās, -ātis, *f.* [**crūdēlis**], cruelty.

crūdēliter, *adv.* [**crūdēlis**], cruelly.

crūs, crūris, *n.*, leg.

crux, crucis, *f.*, gallows, cross.

cubiculum, -ī, *n.* [**cubō**], bedchamber.

cubō, -āre, cubuī, cubitum, *intr.*, lie down, recline.

culpa, -ae, *f.*, fault, blame.

culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**culpa**], blame, rebuke.

culter, -trī, *m.*, knife.

cultus, -ūs, *m.* [**colō**], cultivation, culture; civilization, refinement.

cum, *prep. with abl.*, with.

cum, *conj.*, when, since, although.

cūnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, a cradle.

cūnctātor, -ōris, *m.* [**cūnctor**], a delayer; *as a proper noun, bestowed informally as a cognomen on Q. Fabius Maximus.*

cūnctor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.*, delay, hesitate.

cupidē, *adv.* [**cupidus**], eagerly.

cupiditās, -ātis, *f.* [**cupidus**], eagerness, longing, desire.

cupīdō, -inis, *f.* [**cupidus**], passion, greed.

cupidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**cupiō**], desirous, fond.

cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītum, *tr.*, wish, desire.

cūr, *adv.*, why.

cūra, -ae, *f.*, care.

Curēs, -ium, *m. and f. pl.*, Cures, *chief town of the Sabines.*

cūria, -ae, *f.*, curia (*a division of the Roman people*), ward; senate house.

Cūriātius, -ī, *m.*, Curiatius, *an Alban name; name of triplet brothers who fought the Roman Horatii.*

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**cūra**], care for, attend to; have done.

currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum, *intr.*, run.

currus, -ūs, *m.*, chariot.

cursus, -ūs, *m.* [**currō**], course.

curūlis, -e, *adj.*, curule.

custōdia, -ae, *f.* [**custōs**], watch, custody, guard.

custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *tr.* [**custōs**], watch, guard.

custōs, -ōdis, *m. and f.*, guard, guardian, keeper.

cyathus, -ī, *m.*, cup.

Cyzicus, -ī, *f.*, Cyzicus, (*1*) *an island or peninsula in the Sea of Marmora;* (*2*) *a town situated on* (*1*).

D

Dācus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Dacian; *subst.*, **Dācī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, the Dacians.

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**damnum,** loss], condemn, convict.

Danaē, -ēs, *f.*, Danae, *mother of Perseus.*

dē, *prep. with abl.*, down from, from; concerning, about.

de-ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, walk, stroll.

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.* [**dē+habeō**], owe, ought.

dēbitor, -ōris, *m.* [**dēbeō**], debtor.

dē-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.*, withdraw, depart; die.

decem, *indecl. num. adj.*, ten.

December, -bris, -bre, *adj.* [**decem**], of December; *subst.*, **December, -bris,** *m.*, December.

dē-cernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, *tr.*, decide, decree.

dē-certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, fight it out, fight a decisive battle.

dēcidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, *intr.*, [**dē+cadō**], fall down, fall off.

decimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**decem**], tenth.

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**dē+capiō**], beguile, deceive.

dē-clārō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**clārō**, make bright], disclose, reveal.

decorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**decus**, decoration], adorn, honor.

decuriō, -ōnis, *m.* [**decuria**, a division of ten], decurion, the leader of a decuria.

dē-currō, -currere, -cucurrī, -cursum, *intr.*, run down; manoeuvre.

dē-decus, -decoris, *n.* [**decus**, decoration; honor], disgrace, dishonor.

dēditīcius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**dēdō**], surrendered; *subst.*, **dēditīcii, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, prisoners of war.

dēditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**dēdō**], surrender.

dēditus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **dēdō**], surrendered; *subst.*, **dēditī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, prisoners of war, captives.

dēdō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditum, *tr.* [**dē+dō**], give up, surrender.

dē-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead away; draw down; **nāvem dēdūcere**, to launch a ship.

dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsum, *tr.*, repel; defend.

dēfēnsor, -ōris, *m.* [**dēfendō**], defender.

dē-ferō, -ferre, dētulī, dēlātum, *tr.*, carry away, carry down; confer.

dēfessus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part of* **dēfetīscor**, grow weary], tired out, exhausted.

dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr. and intr.* [**dē+faciō**], fail, run out; withdraw, desert.

dē-fīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *tr.*, fasten down; strike motionless, stupefy.

dē-fīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *tr.*, limit, define.

dēfōrmitās, -ātis, *f.* [**dēfōrmis**, misshapen], deformity, disfigurement, unsightliness.

Dēianīra, -ae, *f.*, Deianira, *wife of Hercules.*

deinceps, *adv.*, in succession.

deinde, *adv.*, next, then.

dējiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr.* [**dē+jaciō**], throw down.

dē-lābor, -lābī, -lāpsus sum, *intr.*, fall down, slip down.

dēlēctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **dēligō**], chosen, choice; *subst.*, **dēlēctī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, chosen men, picked men.

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *tr.*, destroy.

dē-līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, ponder, meditate.

dēliciae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, pleasure, luxury.

dē-ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, tie up, bind fast, moor.

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [**dē+legō**], choose.

Delphī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, Delphi, *a city in Greece famous for the oracle of Apollo.*

Dēmarātus, -ī, *m.*, Demaratus, *father of Tarquinius Priscus.*

dē-minuō, -minuere, -minuī, -minūtum, *tr.*, lessen, diminish, impair.

dēmissus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **dēmittō**], downcast, dejected.

dē-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.*, send down, let fall.

dē-mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, point out, show.

dēmum, *adv.*, at last, at length.

dēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, ten each.

dēnique, *adv.*, finally, at last.

dēns, dentis, *m.*, tooth.

dēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, close, thick.

dē-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, announce, proclaim; give warning.

dē-pellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.*, ward off.

dē-perdō, -perdere, -perdidī, -perditum, *tr.*, destroy, lose.

dē-plōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, deplore, lament.

dē-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, set down, deposit; lay aside, give up.

dē-populor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.*, lay waste, plunder, pillage.

dēprecātor, -ōris, *m.* **[dēprecor]**, intercessor, mediator.

dē-precor, -ārī, -ātus, sum, *tr.*, avert by prayer, deprecate.

dē-prehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum, *tr.*, seize upon; discover.

dēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tr.* **[dē+rapiō]**, tear away, pull off.

dēscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *intr.* **[dē+scandō,** climb], descend, dismount.

dē-serō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum, *tr.* **[serō,** join], abandon, desert.

dēsertus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **dēserō**], deserted.

dēsīderium, -ī, *n.*, **[dēsīderō,** long for], desire, longing.

dē-signō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, mark out; mean, intend.

dēsiliō, -īre, -uī, —, *intr.* **[dē+saliō,** leap], leap down.

dē-sistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, *intr.*, leave off, desist from.

dē-spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, despair of, despair.

dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.* **[dē+speciō,** look], look down upon, despise.

dē-spondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, *tr.*, betroth, promise in marriage.

dē-stringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictum, *tr.* **[stringō,** bind], strip off, unsheathe, draw.

dē-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *intr.*, be wanting, be lacking.

dē-super, *adv.*, from above.

dētēctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **dētegō,** uncover], uncovered, bare.

dēterior, -ius, *compar. adj.*, of less value, less.

dē-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, frighten away, deter.

dē-trahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.*, draw off, strip off.

dētrīmentum, -ī, *n.* **[dēterō,** wear away], loss.

deus, -ī, *m.*, a god.

dēversōrium, -ī, *n.* **[dēversor,** turn aside, lodge], inn, lodging-place.

dē-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, —, *intr.*, turn away, turn aside.

dē-vincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victum, *tr.*, conquer completely.

dē-vorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, swallow, devour.

dexter, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, right, right-hand.

dextra, -ae, *f.* **[dexter]**, the right hand.

diadēma, -atis, *n.*, diadem.

Diāna, -ae, *f.*, Diana, *goddess of the chase.*

diciō, -ōnis, *f.*, authority, rule, sway.

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum, *tr.*, say; appoint, name.

dictātor, -ōris, *m.* **[dictō,** dictate], dictator.

dictātūra, -ae, *f.* **[dictātor]**, dictatorship.

dictiō, -ōnis, *f.* **[dīcō]**, a speaking, a pleading.

dictitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [*intens. of* **dictō,** dictate], say often, maintain.

diēs, diēī, *m. and f.*, day.

differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātum, *tr. and intr.* [**dis-+ferō**], carry apart; put off; differ.

difficilis, -e, *adj.* [**dis-+facilis**], difficult.

difficiliter, *adv.* [**difficilis**], with difficulty.

difficultās, -ātis, *f.* [**difficilis**], difficulty.

diffundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *tr.* [**dis-+fundō**], pour out, spread, diffuse.

dignitās, -ātis, *f.* [**dignus**], worth; authority, prestige.

dignus, -a, -um, *adj.*, worthy.

dīligenter, *adv.* [**dīligēns,** industrious], industriously, diligently.

dīligentia, -ae, *f.* [**dīligēns**], watchfulness, diligence.

dīligō, -ligere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *tr.* [**dis-+legō**], single out; esteem, love.

dī-lūcēscō, -lūcēscere, -lūxī, —, *intr.* [**lūx**], grow light, dawn.

dī-micō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [**micō,** flash], fight, contend.

dīmidius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**dis-+medius**], half.

dī-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.*, send out, send forth; dismiss.

Diomēdēs, -is, *m.*, Diomede, *a Greek hero.*

dirimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, *tr.* [**dis-+emō**], take apart; interrupt; compose, settle.

dīripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tr.* [**dis-+rapiō**], plunder.

dīrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dreadful, dire.

dis- *or* **dī-** *inseparable particle employed in composition*, apart, away, in different directions.

dis-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.*, withdraw, depart.

disciplīna, -ae, *f.* [**discō**], training, discipline.

discipulus, -ī, *m.* [**discō**], learner, pupil.

discō, -ere, didicī, —, *tr.*, learn.

dī-scrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *tr.*, distribute, divide.

discrīmen, -inis, *n.* [**discernō,** separate], crisis, peril.

discrīminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**discrīmen**], divide, distinguish.

discus, -ī, *m.*, discus, quoit.

disertus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*from p. part. of* **disserō**], fluent, eloquent.

disjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr.* [**dis-+jaciō**], throw asunder, break up, disperse.

dis-pār, *gen.* **disparis,** *adj.*, unequal, unlike.

dīspergō, -spergere, -spersī, -spersum, *tr.* [**dī-+spargō,** scatter], scatter, spread, disperse.

displiceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *intr.* [**dis-+placeō**], displease.

dis-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, place here and there, distribute.

dis-putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, argue, discourse.

dissēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**dissentiō,** disagree], disagreement.

dis-serō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum, *intr.* [**serō,** join], discourse, argue.

dis-similis, -simile, *adj.*, dissimilar, unlike.

diū, *adv.*, long, for a long time.

diurnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*compare* **diēs**], of the day, daily.

diūturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**diū**], lasting, long.

dī-vellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, *tr.*, tear apart, tear away.

dī-versus, -versa, -versum, *adj.*, turned different ways, opposite.

dīves, *gen.* **dīvitis,** *adj.*, rich, wealthy.

Dīviciācus, -ī, *m.*, Diviciacus, *a prominent Haeduan.*

Dīvicō, -ōnis, *m.*, Divico, *a prominent Helvetian.*

dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum, *tr.*, divide, separate.

dīvīnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [dīvus, divine], divine.

dīvitiae, -ārum, *f. pl.* [dīves], riches, wealth.

dō, dare, dedī, datum, *tr.*, give.

doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum, *tr.*, teach; show, explain.

doctrīna, -ae, *f.* [doceō], teaching; learning, erudition.

doctor, -ōris, *m.* [doceō], teacher.

doctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* doceō], learned, skilled.

doleō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *intr. and tr.*, suffer; grieve.

dolor, -ōris, *m.* [doleō], sorrow, suffering, pain.

dolus, -ī, *m.*, trick, treachery, deceit.

domesticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [domus], of the house; private, personal.

domicilium, -ī, *n.* [domus], residence, dwelling-place.

dominātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dominor], rule, supremacy.

dominor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.*, rule.

dominus, -ī, *m.*, master.

domō, -āre, domuī, domitum, *tr.*, subdue, master.

domus, -ūs (-ī), *f.*, home, house.

dōnec, *conj.*, as long as, while; until.

dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [dōnum], present, bestow.

dōnum, -ī, *n.*, gift.

dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *intr.*, sleep.

dorsum, -ī, *n.*, back; ridge.

dōs, dōtis, *f.*, dowry.

dracō, -ōnis, *m.*, serpent, dragon.

dubitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dubitō], doubt, hesitation.

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [dubius], doubt, hesitate.

Dūbis, -is, *m.*, the Dubis, *a river in Gaul, now the Doubs.*

dubius, -a, -um, *adj.*, doubtful, uncertain.

ducentī, -ae, -a, *num. adj.* [duo+centum], two hundred.

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum, *tr.*, lead; prolong.

dūdum, *adv.*, before, formerly; **jam dūdum,** this long time, a long time ago.

dulcis, -e, *adj.*, sweet, agreeable.

dum, *conj.*, while; until.

Dumnorix, -īgis, *m.*, Dumnorix, *a prominent Haeduan.*

duo, duae, duo, *num. adj.*, two.

duodecim, *indecl. num. adj.* [duo+decem], twelve.

duo-dē-vīgintī, *indecl. num. adj.*, twenty.

duplex, *gen.* **duplicis,** *adj.*, double, twofold.

dūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [dūrus], harden; last, endure.

dūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hard, harsh, severe.

dux, ducis, *m.* [dūcō], leader.

E

ē, ex, *prep. with abl.*, from within, out of, from.

ecquis, ecquid, *pron., interrog.*, anyone, anything, whether anyone, whether anything.

ē-dīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictum, *tr.*, declare, proclaim, appoint.

ēdictum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* ēdīcō], edict.

ē-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, give out, put forth; give birth to, exhibit; inflict.

edō, -ere, ēdī, ēsum, *tr.*, eat.

ē-ducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, bring up, rear, train.

ē-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead out.

effēminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [ex+fēmina], make womanish, enervate.

efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, *tr.* [**ex+ferō**], carry forth, remove; lift up, raise.

effervēscō, -fervēscere, -ferbuī, —, [**ex+fervēscō,** boil], boil up, boil.

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**ex+faciō**], accomplish, bring about, cause.

effigiēs, -ēī, *f.*, semblance, effigy.

efflō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**ex+flō,** blow], breathe out.

effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, *intr.* [**ex+fugiō**], escape.

effundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *tr.* [**ex+fundō**], pour out; use up, waste.

Egeria, -ae, *f.*, Egeria, *the nymph of a fountain near Rome.*

ego, meī, *pers. pron.*, I.

ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, *intr.* [**ē+gradior,** step], go out, depart.

ēgregiē, *adv.* [**ēgregius**], excellently, unusually.

ēgregius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ē+grex,** flock], distinguished, eminent.

ē-lābor, -lābī, -lāpsus sum, *intr.*, glide out, glide away, escape.

ē-labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* endeavor, take pains.

ēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [**ē+legō**], choose, select.

Ēlis, -idis, *f.*, Elis, *a district in Greece.*

ēloquentia, -ae, *f.* [**ēloquēns**], eloquence.

Ēlysius, -a, -um, *adj.*, Elysian.

ē-migrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, move, depart, migrate.

ē-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.*, send forth, release; utter.

emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum, *tr.*, buy.

ēn, *interj.*, behold! see!

enim, *conj.* (*postpositive*), for.

ē-niteō, -nitēre, -nituī, —, *intr.*, shine forth, gleam; be displayed.

ē-nītor, -nītī, -nīxus *or* **-nīsus sum,** *intr.*, struggle out; struggle, strive.

ēnsis, -is, *m.*, sword.

ē-numerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, reckon up, recount.

ē-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, assert; proclaim, reveal.

eō, īre, iī *or* **īvī, itum,** *intr.*, go.

eō, *adv.* [**is**], to that place, thither; on that account.

eōdem, *adv.* [**īdem**], to the same place; to the same end, to the same result.

Ephesius, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Ephesus, Ephesian.

epigramma, -atis, *n.*, epigram.

Ēpīrus, -ī, *f.*, Epirus, *a district in northwestern Greece.*

epistula, -ae, *f.*, letter, epistle.

eques, equitis, *m.* [**equus**], horseman; *pl.*, horsemen, cavalry.

equester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [**eques**], of a horseman, equestrian, cavalry (*as adj.*).

equidem, *adv.*, truly, at all events; *with first person verb*, I for my part.

equitātus, -ūs, *m.* [**equitō**], cavalry.

equitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [**eques**], ride.

equus, equī, *m.*, horse.

ērēctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **ērigō**], upright, erect; resolute.

ergā, *prep. with acc.*, towards, for.

Ergīnus, -ī, *m.*, Erginus, *a king of the Minyae.*

ergō, *adv.*, therefore.

Ēridanus, -ī, *m.*, the Eridanus, *a river.*

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *tr.* [**ē+regō**], lift up; arouse, encourage.

ēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tr.* [**ē+rapiō**], snatch away, take away, rescue.

errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, wander, stray; be mistaken, err.

ērudiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *tr.* [**ē+rudis,** rough], educate, instruct.

ē-rumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *intr.*, break out, burst forth.

ē-ruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, *tr.*, dig out, cast forth.

Erythīa, -ae, *f.*, Erythia, *an island.*

Erymanthius, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Erymanthus (*a chain of mountains in Arcadia*), Erymanthian.

etiam, *adv.* [et+jam], now too, yet; also, besides; even.

Etrūscus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Etruscan, of Etruria; *subst.*, **Etrūscī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, the Etruscans.

et-sī, *conj.*, though, although, even if.

Eunomus, -ī, *m.*, Eunomus, *name of a certain youth.*

Eurīpidēs, -is, *m.*, Euripides, *an Athenian tragic poet.*

Eurōpa, -ae, *f.*, Europe.

Eurystheus, -ī, *m.*, Eurystheus, *a king of Tiryns.*

Eurytiōn, -ōnis *m.*, Eurytion, *a giant.*

Eurytus, -ī, *m.*, Eurytus, *a king of Oechalia.*

ē-vādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsum, *intr.*, come out, make one's way; escape.

ē-vellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, *tr.* [vellō, pluck], pull out.

ē-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.*, come out; result, turn out.

ē-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr.*, overturn, overthrow.

ē-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, call out.

ē-vomō, -vomere, -vomuī, -vomitum, *tr.*, vomit forth.

ex, *see* ē.

ex-animō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, put out of breath, stun; exhaust.

ex-ārdēscō, -ārdēscere, -ārsī, -ārsum, *intr.*, blaze out; be inflamed, be enraged.

ex-audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *tr.*, hear clearly, hear.

ex-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.*, withdraw.

excellō, -cellere, —, -celsum, *intr.*, be eminent, excel.

excelsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **excellō**], lofty, tall; distinguished.

excerpō, -cerpere, -cerpsī, -cerptum, *tr.*, [**carpō**], pick out, select.

excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**ex+capiō**], take out, take up, catch; receive, entertain.

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, call out; rouse.

ex-clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, cry out, exclaim.

ex-cruciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, rack, torture.

excūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**ex+causa**], excuse.

execror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.* [**ex+sacrō**, doom], curse.

exemplum, -ī, *n.*, example, precedent.

ex-eō, -īre, -iī *or* **-īvī, -itum,** *intr.*, go out.

exequor, -exequī, -execūtus sum, *tr.* [**ex+sequor**], follow up; carry out, enforce.

exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.* [**ex+arceō**, enclose], train, drill.

exercitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**exercitō**, train], exercise, training.

exercitātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **exercitō**], trained, experienced.

exercitus, -ūs, *m.* [**exerceō**], army.

exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [**ex+agō**], drive out, expel; exact; spend.

exiguus, -a, -um, *adj.*, scanty, small.

exiliō, -īre, -uī, —, *intr.* [**ex+saliō**, leap], spring forth.

exilium, -ī, *n.* [**exul**], exile.

eximius, -a, -um, *adj.*, unusual, distinguished.

exīstimātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**exīstimō**], judgment, opinion.

existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**ex+aestimō,** estimate], estimate; judge, think.

exitium, -ī, *n.*, destruction, ruin.

exitus, -ūs, *m.* [**exeō**], outcome, end, close.

ex-orior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, *intr.*, come forth, arise, appear.

expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**ex+spectō**], expect, await, wait for.

expectātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**expectō**], awaiting, expectation.

expedītus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **expediō,** extricate], unimpeded, free, open.

ex-pellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.*, drive out, expel.

experior, -perīrī, -pertus sum, *tr.*, prove, test.

ex-piō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**piō,** appease], atone for, appease.

expīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**ex+spīrō,** breathe], breathe out.

explōrātor, -ōris, *m.* [**explōrō**], scout.

explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, explore.

ex-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, set forth, explain; expose, abandon; set ashore.

exprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.* [**ex+premō**], press out; wring out, elicit.

expugnātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**expugnō**], a taking by storm, storming.

ex-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, take by storm, capture.

exquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, *tr.* [**ex+quaerō**], search out, inquire about.

extemplō, *adv.*, immediately, forthwith, without delay.

externus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**exterus,** on the outside], foreign, outer.

extō, -āre, —, —, *intr.* [**ex+stō**], stand forth; be extant, exist.

extrā, *prep. with acc.*, outside of.

ex-trahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.*, draw out; extricate, release.

extra-ōrdinārius, -a, -um, *adj.*, extraordinary, uncommon.

extrēmus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**exterus,** on the outside], outermost, farthest; most distant.

extruō, -uere, -ūxī, -ūctum, *tr.* [**strūo**], pile, heap up; erect.

exul, -ulis, *m.*, an exile.

exultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [*freq. of* **exsiliō**], leap up (for joy), exult.

exuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.*, take off, remove.

ex-ūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.*, burn up.

F

faber, -brī, *m.*, workman, smith.

Fabiānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Fabius.

Fabius, -ī, *m.*, (*1*) Q. Fabius Maximus, *a Roman commander in the Second Punic War;* (*2*) Q. Fabius Maximus, *consul in 121 B.C.*

Fābricius, -ī, *m.*, C. Fabricius, *a prominent Roman of the 3d century B.C.*

fabricor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.* [**faber**], make, construct, build.

fābula, -ae, *f.*, story, tale.

facētē, *adv.* [**facētus,** witty], wittily, humorously.

facile, *adv.* [**facilis**], easily.

facilis, -e, *adj.*, easy.

facinus, facinoris, *n.*, deed; crime.

faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, *tr.*, make do.

factiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**faciō**], faction, party.

factum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* **faciō**], deed, action.

facultās, -ātis, *f.* [**facilis**], means, opportunity, chance.

fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsum, *tr.*, deceive, cheat, elude.

falsō, *adv.* [**falsus**], falsely.

falsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **fallō**], false, deceptive, misleading.

falx, falcis, *f.*, sickle.

fāma, -ae, *f.*, report, rumor, talk.

famēs, -is, *f.*, hunger.

familia, -ae, *f.* [**famulus,** servant], household establishment, slaves in a household; family.

familiāris, -e, *adj.* [**familia**], of a household; **rēs familiāris,** private property, estate; *subst.*, **familiāris, -is,** *m.*, a friend, an intimate aquaintance.

fānum, -ī, *n.*, shrine, temple.

fār, farris, *n.*, grain, meal.

fās, (*only nom. and acc. sing.*), *n.*, divine law (*as opposed to* **jūs,** *human law*); the right; **fās est,** it is lawful, it is permitted.

fāstī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, calendar.

fatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, weary, tire, fatigue.

fātum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* **for,** speak], fate, destiny.

faucēs, -ium, *f. pl.*, throat.

Fausta, -ae, *f.*, Fausta, *daughter of L. Cornelius Sulla.*

Faustulus, -ī, *m.*, Faustulus, *the shepherd who reared Romulus and Remus.*

Faustus, -ī, *m.*, Faustus, *son of L. Cornelius Sulla.*

faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum, *intr.* (*takes dative*), favor.

favor, -ōris, *m.* [faveō], favor, good-will.

fax, facis, *f.*, torch, firebrand.

fēlīcitās, -ātis, *f.* [**fēlīx**], good fortune, luck.

fēlīciter, *adv.* [**fēlīx**], happily, luckily.

fēlīx, *gen.* **fēlīcis,** *adj.*, fortunate, happy.

Fēlīx, -īcis, *m.*, Felix (= the lucky), *a cognomen assumed by L. Cornelius Sulla.*

fēmina, -ae, *f.*, woman.

femur, femoris, *n.*, thigh.

fera, -ae, *f.*, wild beast, wild animal.

ferē, *adv.*, about, nearly; in general, usually.

Ferentīna, -ae, *f.*, Ferentina, *a goddess of the Latins.*

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *tr.*, bear, bring, carry; endure; **signa ferre,** advance the standards, advance; **fertur,** it is said; **ferunt,** they say.

ferōciter, *adv.* [**ferōx**], courageously, fiercely, arrogantly.

ferōx, *gen.* **ferōcis,** *adj.*, fierce, high-spirited; emboldened, aggressive.

ferreus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ferrum**], of iron.

ferrum, -ī, *n.*, iron; sword.

fertilis, -e, *adj.*, fertile.

ferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wild.

fessus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wearied, tired, exhausted.

festīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [**festīnus,** hasty], hasten.

fētiālis, -e, *adj.*, diplomatic, fetial; *subst.*, **fētiālis, -is,** *m.*, a fetial priest.

fidēlis, -e, *adj.* [**fidēs**], faithful.

Fidēnātēs, -ium, *m. pl.*, the Fidenates, the people of Fidenae (*a town near Rome*).

fidēs, -eī, *f.*, faith, confidence; faithfulness; pledge.

fīdō, -ere, fīsus sum, *intr.*, trust, rely upon.

fīlia, -ae, *f.*, daughter.

fīlius, -ī, *m.*, son.

fingō, fingere, finxī, fictum, *tr.*, form, fashion, make up.

fīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *tr.* [**fīnis**], limit, determine, fix.

fīnis, fīnis, -ium, *m. and f.*, end, limit; *pl.*, country, territory.

fīnitimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**fīnis**], neighboring; *as subst.*, **fīnitimī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, neighbors.

fīō, fierī, factus sum, *intr.*, become, be made.

firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**firmus**], strengthen, make firm.

firmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, firm, strong.

flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, demand urgently, demand.

flamma, -ae, *f.*, flame.

flectō, -ere, flexī, flexum, *tr.*, turn, bend.

fleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *intr.*, weep, cry.

flētus, -ūs, *m.* [**fleō**], weeping, wailing.

flōrēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pr. part. of* **flōreō**], flourishing, prosperous.

flōreō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.* [**flōs**], blossom; flourish, be prosperous, be eminent.

flōs, flōris, *m.*, flower.

flūctus, -ūs, *m.* [**fluō**], wave, billow.

flūmen, flūminis, *n.* [**fluō**], river.

fluō, -ere, flūxī, flūxum, *intr.*, flow.

focus, -ī, *m.*, fire-place, hearth.

foedus, foederis, *n.*, treaty, alliance.

folium, -ī, *n.*, leaf.

fōns, fontis, *m.*, spring, fountain.

forās, *adv.* [*compare* **foris**], out of doors, out.

fore, *fut. inf. of* **sum.**

foris, -is, *f.*, door; *frequently pl.* (*with reference to the two leaves of a double door*).

fōrma, -ae, *f.*, form, appearance; beauty.

fōrmōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**fōrma**], beautiful, handsome.

forte, *adv.* [*abl. of* **fors,** chance], perhaps, by chance.

fortis, -e, *adj.*, strong; brave, valiant.

fortiter, *adv.* [**fortis**], bravely.

fortitūdō, -dinis, *f.* [**fortis**], fortitude, bravery.

fortūna, -ae, *f.* [**fors**], fortune.

forum, -ī, *n.*, an open space; market-place; *especially,* **Forum Rōmānum,** the Roman Forum.

forus, -ī, *m.*, gangway; a row of seats *in the theatre or circus*, seats.

fossa, -ae, *f.* [**fodiō,** dig], ditch.

frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum, *tr.*, break; weaken, dishearten.

frāter, frātris, *m.*, brother.

frāternus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**frāter**], of a brother, brotherly.

fraus, fraudis, *f.*, deceit, deception, fraud.

fremitus, -ūs, *m.* [**fremō,** roar], a roar, a loud noise.

(**frendō, -ere,**) *intr.*, *only in pres. participle,* gnash the teeth.

frequēns, -entis, *adj.*, crowded, in numbers.

fretum, -ī, *n.*, a strait, channel.

frīgidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**frīgus**], cold.

frīgus, frīgoris, *n.*, cold, coldness.

frūctuōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**frūctus,** fruit], fruitful, productive.

frūgālitās, -ātis, *f.* [**frūx**], thriftiness, frugality.

frūmentum, -ī, *n.* [**fruor**], grain.

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, *intr.* (*takes ablative*), enjoy, have the benefit of.

frūstrā, *adv.*, in vain, to no purpose.

frūx, frūgis, *f.*, *usually pl.*, fruit, produce, crops.

Fūcinus, -ī, *m.*, Fucinus, *a lake of Latium, now Lago Fucino.*

Fūfidius, -ī, *m.*, Fufidius, *a friend of L. Cornelius Sulla.*

fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight.

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *intr.*, flee.

fugitīvus, -ī, *m.* [**fugiō**], a runaway, a fugitive slave.

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**fuga**], rout, put to flight.

fulmen, -inis, *n.*, lightning-flash, thunderbolt.

fūmus, -ī, *m.*, smoke.

fundāmentum, -ī, *n.* [**fundō,** found], foundation.

fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum, *tr.*, pour, pour out; rout, defeat.

fundus, -ī, *m.*, farm, estate.

furor, -ōris, *m.* [**furō,** to rage], madness, fury.

fūrtum, -ī, *n.* [**fūr,** thief], theft.

futūrus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*fut. part. of* **sum**], yet to be, to come, future.

G

Gabiī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, Gabii, *a town in Latium.*

Gabīnius, -ī, *m.*, A. Gabinius, *consul in 58 B.C.*

Gabīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Gabii; *subst.*, **Gabiī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, the people of Gabii.

Gaetūlī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Gaetulians, *a people of northwestern Africa.*

Gaius, -ī, *m.*, Gaius (*or* Caius), *a Roman praenomen.*

galea, -ae, *f.*, helmet.

Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gaul.

Gallicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**Gallia**], of the Gauls, Gallic.

Gallus, -ī, *m.*, a Gaul; *pl.*, the Gauls.

Garunna (*less correctly,* **Garumna**), **-ae,** *m.*, the Garunna, *a river of Gaul, now called the Garonne.*

gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, *semi-deponent, intr.*, rejoice, be glad.

gaudium, -ī, *n.*, joy, gladness.

geminī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, twins.

gemō, -ere, gemuī, —, *intr.*, groan, lament.

Genava, -ae, *f.*, Genava, *a city on Lake Geneva, now Genevà.*

gener, -erī, *m.*, son-in-law.

generātim, *adv.* [**genus**], by kinds; by tribes, by nations.

gēns, gentis, -ium, *f.*, nation, tribe.

genū, -ūs, *n.*, knee.

genus, generis, *n.*, race, family, birth, descent; kind, class.

Germānī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Germans.

Germānicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Germans, Germanic.

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, *tr.*, carry, carry on, wage; wear; wield.

Gēryōn, -onis, *m.*, Geryon, *name of a Spanish giant.*

gestō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq. of* **gerō**], bear, carry, wear.

gigās, -antis, *m.*, giant.

gignō, -ere, genuī, genitus, *tr.*, give birth to; beget.

gladius, -ī, *m.*, sword.

Glaucē, -ēs, *f.*, Glauce, *daughter of Creon.*

glōria, -ae, *f.*, glory, fame.

glōrior, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.* [**glōria**], boast, pride oneself.

glōriōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**glōria**], glorious, famous, renowned.

Gnaeus, -ī, *m.*, Gnaeus, *abbr.* **Cn.,** *a Roman praenomen.*

Gorgō, -onis, *f.*, a Gorgon.

gradus, -ūs, *m.*, step, pace; *pl.*, steps, stairs.

Graeae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, the Graeae.

Graecia, -ae, *f.*, Greece.

Graecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Greek, Grecian; *subst.*, **Graecī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, the Greeks.

Graiocelī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Graioceli, *a Gallic tribe in the Alps.*

grandis, -e, *adj.*, large, extensive.

graphium, -ī, *n.*, stylus, pen.

grātia, -ae, *f.* [**grātus**], favor, influence; gratitude, thanks, requital; **grātiās agere,** to express thanks; **grātiam referre,** to make requital, to requite; **grātiā** (*with gen.*), for the sake of.

grātulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**grātulor**], rejoicing, joy.

grātulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.* [**grātus**], manifest joy, congratulate.

grātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pleasing; grateful.

gravis, -e, *adj.*, heavy; difficult.

gravitās, -ātis, *f.* **[gravis]**, heaviness; importance; dignity.

graviter, *adv.* **[gravis]**, heavily; severely; with dignity, impressively.

gravor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.* **[gravis]**, be reluctant, do unwillingly.

H

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, have, hold; treat; consider, regard.

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [*freq. of* **habeō**], live, dwell.

Hādēs, -ae, *m.*, Hades, *the abode of the dead.*

Haeduus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Haeduan; *subst.*, **Haeduī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, the Haedui, the Haeduans, *a Gallic tribe.*

haereō, -ēre, haesī, haesūrus, *intr.*, stick, cling; hesitate.

haesitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [*freq. of* **haereō**], stick fast, remain fixed, hesitate.

Hamilcar, -aris, *m.*, Hamilcar, *a Carthaginian general, father of Hannibal.*

Hannibal, -alis, *m.*, Hannibal, *a famous Carthaginian general, son of Hamilcar.*

Hammōn, -ōnis, *m.*, Hammon, *an Egyptian god.*

Hannō, -ōnis, *m.*, Hanno, *a prominent Carthaginian.*

harēna (*sometimes spelled* **arēna**), **-ae,** *f.*, sand; shore, beach.

Harpyiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, the Harpies.

Harūdēs, -um, *m. pl.*, the Harudes, *a German tribe.*

harūspex, -icis, *m.*, soothsayer.

Hasdrubal, -alis, *m.*, (*1*) Hasdrubal, *a Carthaginian general, son-in-law of Hamilcar;* (*2*) *another general of the same name, a little later in time.*

hasta, -ae, *f.*, spear.

haud, *adv.*, not at all, by no means, not.

haud-quāquam, *adv.*, by no means, not at all.

hauriō, -īre, hausī, haustum, *tr.*, draw, drain; swallow.

Helvētius, -a, -um, *adj.*, Helvetian, of the Helvetii; *subst.*, **Helvētiī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, the Helvetii, the Helvetians, *a Gallic people.*

herba, -ae, *f.*, herb; grass, turf.

Herculēs, -is, *m.*, Hercules, *a famous Greek hero.*

hērēs, -ēdis, *m. and f.*, heir, heiress.

Herminius, -ī, *m.*, T. Herminius, *a hero of the early Roman Republic.*

herī, *adv.*, yesterday.

Hēsionē, -ēs, *f.*, Hesione, *daughter of Laomedon.*

Hesperidēs, -um, *f. pl.*, the Hesperides.

Hibernia, -ae, *f.*, Ireland.

hībernus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of winter; *subst.*, **hīberna, -ōrum,** *n. pl.*, winter-quarters.

hic, haec, hoc, *dem. pron.*, this; the latter; the following; he, she, it.

hīc, *adv.*, here.

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* **[hiems]**, spend the winter, winter.

hiems, hiemis, *f.*, winter.

Hierosolyma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, Jerusalem.

hinc, *adv.* **[hic]**, from this place, hence.

Hippolytē, -ēs, *f.*, Hippolyte, *queen of the Amazons.*

Hispānia, -ae, *f.*, Spain.

Hispānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Spanish.

historia, -ae, *f.*, narrative, history.

hodiē, *adv.* **[hoc+diē]**, today.

homō, hominis, *m.*, a man, a human being.

honestās, -ātis, *f.* **[honor]**, honesty, honor.

honestē, *adv.* **[honestus],** honorably, properly.

honestus, -a, -um, *adj.* **[honor],** honorable; honored, eminent.

honor, -ōris, *m.*, honor, repute, esteem; **Honor, -ōris,** *m.*, Honor *personified as a god.*

honōrificus, -a, -um, *adj.* **[honor+faciō],** honorable, doing honor.

hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour.

Horātius, -ī, *m.*, Horatius; (*1*) *the name of three brothers who fought the Alban Curiatii;* (*2*) *the father of the three Horatii;* (*3*) Horatius Cocles.

horreō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr. and tr.*, shudder, shudder at, dread.

horreum, -ī, *n.*, storehouse, granary.

horribilis, -e, *adj.* **[horreō],** terrible, fearful, dreadful.

hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.*, urge, encourage, exhort.

hortus, -ī, *m.*, garden.

hospes, -itis, *m.*, host, guest; friend, guest-friend.

hospitium, -ī, *n.* **[hospes],** hospitality.

Hostīlius, -ī, *m.*, (*1*) Hostius Hostilius, *a Roman commander in the time of Romulus;* (*2*) Tullus Hostilius, *third king of Rome.*

hostis, hostis, -ium, *m.*, enemy.

hūc, *adv.* **[hic],** this way, to this place.

hūmānitās, -ātis, *f.* **[hūmānus],** culture; kindness.

hūmānus, -a, -um, *adj.* **[homō],** human; kind.

humī, *adv.* [*locative of* **humus,** ground], on the ground.

humilis, -e, *adj.* **[humus,** ground], low; humble.

Hydra, -ae, *f.*, the Hydra.

Hylās, -ae, *m.*, Hylas, *one of the Argonauts.*

I

ibi, *adv.*, there, in that place.

ictus, -ūs, *m.*, blow, stroke.

īdem, eadem, idem, *dem. pron.* **[is+-dem],** the same.

ideō, *adv.*, for that reason, therefore.

idōneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, suitable, fit.

Īdūs, Īduum, *f. pl.*, the Ides, *the middle of the month.*

igitur, *adv.*, therefore.

ignāvus, -a, -um, *adj.* **[in-+gnāvus,** busy], inactive, cowardly.

ignis, ignis, -ium, *m.*, fire.

ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, not know, be unaware of.

ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtum, *intr.* **[in-+(g)nōscō,** know], overlook, pardon.

ille, illa, illud, *dem. pron.*, that; the former; he, she, it.

illīc, *adv.* **[ille],** there, yonder.

illūdō, -lūdere, -lūsī, -lūsum, *tr.* **[in+lūdō,** play], make sport of, ridicule.

illūstris, -e, *adj.*, bright; distinguished, illustrious.

illuviēs, —, *abl.* **-ē,** *f.*, overflow; dirt, filth.

imber, -bris, *m.*, rain, storm.

imbuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.*, soak, steep.

imitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.*, imitate, copy after.

immittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* **[in+mittō],** send in, let in.

immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* **[in+mola,** meal], sacrifice.

immortālis, -e, *adj.* **[in-+mortālis],** immortal.

immōtus, -a, -um, *adj.* **[in-+mōtus],** unmoved, unaffected.

impedīmentum, -ī, *n.* **[impediō],** hindrance; *pl.*, baggage.

impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *tr.* **[in+pēs],** hinder, impede.

impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [**in**+**pellō**], drive forward; impel, urge on.

impendeō, -ēre, —, —, *intr.* [**in**+**pendeō,** hang], hang over, overhang.

imperātor, -ōris, *m.* [**imperō**], general, commander.

imperātum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* **imperō**], command, order.

imperītus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-** + **perītus**], inexperienced, unskilled.

imperium, -ī, *n.* [**imperō**], power, authority.

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [**in**+**parō**], command; control.

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [**in**+**patrō,** perform], gain, gain one's request.

impetus, -ūs, *m.* [**in**+**petō**], attack, raid.

impiger, -gra, -grum, *adj.* [**in-**+**piger,** lazy], industrious, energetic.

impigrē, *adv.* [**impiger**], energetically, industriously.

impleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *tr.* [**in**+**pleō,** fill], fill, fill up.

implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**in**+**plōrō,** wail], implore, beseech.

impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**in**+**pōnō**], place upon, impose; put on board.

importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**in**+**portō**], bring in, import.

imprīmīs, *adv.* [**in**+*abl. pl. of* **prīmus**], especially, chiefly.

improbus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-**+**probus,** honest], bad, wicked.

imprōvīsō, *adv.* [**imprōvīsus,** unforeseen], unexpectedly.

impugnō, -āre, -āvī, ātum, *tr.* [**in**+**pugnō**], attack, assail.

impūne, *adv.* [*compare* **in-** *and* **poena,** penalty], with impunity.

impūnitās, -ātis, *f.* [*compare* **impūne**], impunity, freedom from punishment.

īmus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*contr. for* **īnfimus,** *superl. of* **īnferus,** lower], lowest, lowest part of, base of.

in, *prep. with abl. and acc.; with abl.,* in, on; *with acc.,* into, against.

in-, *inseparable negative particle used in composition,* not, un-, in-.

in-ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* walk up and down.

in-audītus, -a, -um, *adj.,* unheard of, unusual.

incendium, -ī, *n.* [**incendō**], fire, conflagration.

incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, *tr.,* set fire to, burn; irritate; make angry.

inceptum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* **incipiō**], beginning; attempt, undertaking.

incidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, *intr.* [**in**+**cadō**], fall in, fall into.

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr. and intr.* [**in**+**capiō**], begin.

in-citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**citō,** rouse], rouse, incite, instigate.

inclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [**in**+**claudō**], shut up, enclose.

in-cognitus, -a, -um, *adj.,* unknown.

incola, -ae, *m. and f.* [**incolō**], inhabitant, resident.

in-colō, -colere, -coluī, —, *tr.,* inhabit.

incolumis, -e, *adj.,* unharmed, safe.

in-commodum, -ī, *n.,* inconvenience, misfortune, loss.

incrēdibilis, -e, *adj.,* incredible.

in-crepō, -crepāre, -crepuī, -crepitum, *tr.,* resound; upbraid.

incumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitum, *intr.,* lean upon; bend to, apply oneself to.

incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**in**+**causa**], accuse, complain of.

inde, *adv.,* thence, from that place; from that time, then.

index, -dicis, *m. and f.,* informer, witness; index, sign.

indicium, -ī, *n.*, information, disclosure.

in-dīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictum, *tr.*, proclaim, declare, appoint.

in-dictus, -a, -um, *adj.*, (not said), not pleaded, unheard.

indignātiō, -ōnis, *f.* **[indignor]**, indignation.

indignitās, -ātis, *f.* **[indignus]**, indignity, outrage.

in-dignor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.*, be indignant, be offended.

in-dignus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unworthy, undeserving.

in-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead in; move, induce.

indulgeō, -ēre, indulsī, indultum, *intr.*, be indulgent, be favorable.

induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtum, *tr.*, put on.

in-eō, -īre, -iī (*or* **-īvī**), **-itum,** *tr.*, enter; enter upon, form.

inermis, -e, *adj.* **[in-+arma]**, unarmed, defenceless.

iners, -ertis, *adj.* **[in-+ars]**, idle, inert, indolent.

īn-fandus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unspeakable, shocking.

īn-fāns, *gen.* **-fantis,** *adj.*, without speech; *subst.*, *m. and f.*, infant, babe.

īn-fēlīx, -fēlīcis, *adj.*, unfortunate, unhappy.

īnferī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* **[īnferus,** below, lower**]**, those of the lower world, the dead, the shades.

īnferior, -ius, *compar. adj.*, lower; inferior.

īn-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.*, bring upon, cause; allege; **bellum īnferre,** make war on; **signa īnferre,** advance to the attack, attack.

īnfestus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unsafe; hostile.

īnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* **[in+faciō]**, stain, dye, color.

īn-flectō, -flectere, -flexī, -flexum, *tr.*, bend, bow.

īn-flō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, blow into, inflate.

īn-fluō, -fluere, -flūxī, *intr.*, flow into, empty into.

īn-fōrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, shape, mould; instruct, educate.

īnfrā, *prep. with acc.*, below, underneath.

īn-fundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *tr.*, pour into, pour upon.

ingenium, -ī, *n.*, intellect, ability, character; disposition.

ingēns, *gen.* **ingentis,** *adj.*, huge, very large, very great.

ingenuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, free-born.

ingredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *tr. and intr.* **[in+gradior,** step**]**, step, enter, go into, advance.

inimīcitia, -ae, *f.* **[inimīcus]**, enmity, hostility.

inimīcus, -a, -um, *adj.* **[in-+amīcus]**, unfriendly, hostile; *subst.*, **inimīcus, -ī,** *m.*, an enemy.

inīquus, -a, -um, *adj.* **[in-+aequus]**, uneven; unfair, unjust.

initium, -ī, *n.* **[ineō]**, beginning.

injiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr.* **[in+jaciō]**, throw into, hurl upon; inspire in, cause.

injūria, -ae, *f.* **[in-+jūs]**, injury; **injūriā,** unjustly.

(in-jussus -ūs) *m.* **[in-+jubeō]**, *only abl.* **injussū,** without command, without order.

in-jūstus, -a, -um, *adj.* unjust.

in-nāscor, -nāscī, -nātus sum, *intr.*, be born in, spring up, arise.

in-nītor, -nītī, -nixus sum, *intr.*, lean upon, support oneself by.

innocentia, -ae, *f.* **[innocēns,** harmless, blameless**]**, honesty, innocence.

in-noxius, -a, -um, *adj.*, harmless, innocent.

inopia, -ae, *f.* [**inops**], want, lack; poverty.

in-opīnāns, *gen.* **inopīnantis,** *adj.* [**in-**+ *pres. part. of* **opīnor,** suppose], not expecting, unawares, off one's guard.

inops, -opis, *adj.* [**in-**+**ops**], poor, destitute.

inquam, inquis, inquit, *intr. defect.*, say, *employed in direct quotations.*

īn-sciēns, *gen.* **-scientis,** *adj.*, unknowing, without knowledge, unaware.

īn-scius, -a, -um, *adj.*, unknowing, unaware.

īn-sequēns, *gen.*, **-sequentis,** *adj.* [*pres. part. of* **īnsequor**], following, next.

īn-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr. and intr.*, follow after, pursue, follow up.

īnsidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, snare; ambuscade, ambush; plot.

īnsigne, īnsignis, -ium, *n.*, [**īnsignis**], badge, decoration.

īnsignis, -e, *adj.* [**in**+**signum**], noted, eminent, distinguished.

īnsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, —, *intr.* [**in**+**saliō,** leap], leap in, leap upon.

īnsolenter, *adv.* [**īnsolēns,** insolent], haughtily, insolently.

īnspergō, -spergere, -spersī, -spersum, *tr.* [**in**+**spargō,** sprinkle], sprinkle over.

īnstituō, -situere, -stituī, -stitūtum, *tr.* [**in**+**statuō**], establish, institute, appoint; train.

īnstitūtum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part of* **īnstituō**], custom, usage, institution.

īn-stō -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, *intr.*, approach, be at hand; press on.

īnstrūmentum, -ī, *n.*, implement, tool; *as collective in the sing.*, implements, tools.

in-struō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *tr.*, draw up, arrange; furnish, equip.

īnsula, -ae, *f.*, island.

in-sum, -esse, -fuī, *intr.*, be in, be upon.

integer, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, untouched, unhurt; fresh, vigorous.

intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *tr.* [**inter**+**legō**], perceive, understand, know.

in-tendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *tr.*, stretch; bend, aim.

intentus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **intendō**], attentive, intent.

inter, *prep. with acc.*, among, between.

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**inter**+**capiō**], intercept.

interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [**inter**+**claudō**], out off.

interdīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictum, *tr.*, forbid, interdict.

interdiū, *adv.*, during the day, by day.

inter-dum, *adv.*, sometimes, from time to time.

inter-eā, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime.

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**inter**+**faciō**], kill, slay.

interim, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime.

interimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, *tr.* [**inter**+**emō,** *take out*], destroy, slay, kill.

interjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr.* [**inter**+**jaciō**], throw between, interpose.

inter-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.*, suspend, interrupt; let pass; *pass.*, intervene.

interneciō, -ōnis, *f.*, slaughter, extermination.

interpellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, interrupt, obstruct.

interpres, -etis, *m.*, interpreter.

interpretor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.* [**interpres**], explain, interpret.

inter-rēgnum, -ī, *n.*, interregnum.

inter-rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, ask, question.

inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *intr.*, be between, lie between; be present at, attend.

inter-vāllum, -ī, *n.*, interval, distance.

inter-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.*, come upon, come in.

in-tolerābilis, *adj.*, intolerable, unbearable.

intrā, *prep. with acc.*, within.

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, enter.

introitus, -ūs, *m.* [**introeō,** go in], entrance.

in-tueor, -tuērī, -tuitus sum, *tr.*, look upon, gaze at; protect, defend.

in-undō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, overflow, inundate.

in-ūsitātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unusual, extraordinary.

in-vehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.*, carry in; *pass.*, be carried, ride in.

in-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr.*, find, come upon.

in-victus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unconquered, invincible.

in-videō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, *intr.*, envy, be jealous of.

invidia, -ae, *f.* [**invidus,** envious], envy, jealousy.

invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, invite.

invītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unwilling.

Iolāus, -ī, *m.*, Iolaus, *a companion of Hercules.*

Iolē, -ēs, *f.*, Iole, *daughter of Eurytus.*

Iphiclēs, -is, *m.*, Iphicles, *brother of Hercules.*

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *dem. pron.*, self, himself, herself, itself; *pl.*, themselves.

īra, -ae, *f.*, anger, wrath, ire.

īrācundus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**īra**], irritable, passionate.

īrātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **īrāscor**], angry, angered.

irrīdeō, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, *intr.* [**in+rīdeō**], laugh at, jeer, mock.

irrīdiculē, *adv.* [**in-+rīdiculē,** absurdly], without wit, without humor.

irrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr. and intr.* [**in+rumpō,** burst], break in, rush into, burst into.

irruō, -ruere, -ruī, —, *intr.*, rush in, rush upon.

is, ea, id, *demonstr. pron.*, this, that; he, she, it.

iste, ista, istud, *demonstr. pron.*, that of yours, that.

Isthmus, -ī, *m.*, the Isthmus (of Corinth).

ita, *adv.*, so, in such a way, thus.

Italia, -ae, *f.*, Italy.

ita-que, *conj.*, and so, accordingly, therefore.

item, *adv.*, likewise, also.

iter, itineris, *n.*, road, march, journey.

iterum, *adv.*, again, a second time.

J

jaceō, -ēre, jacuī, —, *intr.*, lie, be prostrate.

jaciō, jacere, jēcī, jactum, *tr.*, throw, cast, hurl.

jactātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**jactō**], tossing, motion.

jactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq. of* **jaciō**], toss about; discuss.

jam, *adv.*, already, now; **nōn jam,** no longer.

Jāniculum, -ī, *n.*, the Janiculum, *a hill in Rome, west of the Tiber.*

Jānus, -ī, *m.*, Janus, *the Roman god of beginnings and of doors and entrances.*

Jāsōn, -onis, *m.*, Jason, *leader of the Argonauts.*

jocus, -ī, *m.*, jest, joke.

juba, -ae, *f.*, mane.

Juba, -ae, *m.*, Juba, *a king of Numidia.*

jubeō, -ēre, jussī, jussum, *tr.*, order, command.

jūcundus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pleasant, agreeable.

Jūdaeī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Jews.

jūdex, -icis, *m.*, judge.

jūdicium, -ī, *n.* [**jūdex**], judgment; trial; court.

jūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**jūdex**], judge, decide.

jūgerum, -ī (*gen. pl.* **jūgerum**), *n.*, an acre, a juger (*about two-thirds of an English acre*).

jugulum, -ī, *n.* [**jugum**], throat, neck.

jugum, -ī, *n.*, yoke.

Jugurtha, -ae, *m.*, Jugurtha, *a king of Numidia.*

Jugurthīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of *or* with Jugurtha, Jugurthine.

Jūlia, -ae, *f.*, Julia, *a woman's name.*

Jūlius, -ī, *m.*, *see* **Caesar.**

jūmentum, -ī, *n.* [*compare* **jugum** *and* **jungō**], draught-animal, beast of burden.

jungō, -ere, jūnxī, jūnctum, *tr.*, join, fasten together; form.

jūnior, *adj.* [*compar. of* **juvenis**], younger.

Jūnius, -ī, *m.*, L. Junius Brutus, *one of the first two consuls of Rome.*

Jūnō, -ōnis, *f.*, Juno, *queen of the gods.*

Juppiter, Jovis, *m.*, Jupiter, *king of the gods.*

Jūra, -ae, *m.*, the Jura, *a chain of mountains between the Rhine and the Rhone.*

jūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [**jūs**], swear, take oath.

jūs, jūris, *n.*, right, law, justice.

jūs jūrandum, jūris jūrandī, *n.*, an oath.

jussum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* **jubeō**], order, command.

(**jussus, -ūs**), *m.*, *only in the abl.*, **jussū**, by order, command, decree.

jūstitia, -ae, *f.* [**jūstus**], justice.

jūstus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**jūs**], just, upright.

juvenis, -is, *adj.*, young, youthful; *subst. m.*, young man, a youth.

juvō, -āre, jūvī, jūtum, *tr.*, help, assist.

jūxtā, *prep. with acc.*, next to, near.

K

Kal., *abbr. for* **Kalendae, -ārum,** *f. pl.*, the Calends, *the first day of each month in the Roman calendar.*

L

L., *abbr. for* **Lūcius.**

Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*, Titus Atius Labienus, *an officer in Caesar's army.*

lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum, *intr.*, glide, slip, fall.

labor, -ōris, *m.*, labor, toil.

labōriōsē, *adv.* [**labōriōsus,** toilsome], laboriously.

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr. and tr.* [**labor**], work; suffer, be in pain; be in difficulties; labor for.

Lacedaemonius, -a, -um, *adj.*, Lacedaemonian, of Lacedaemon (*a city of Laconia*).

lacessō, -cessere, -cessīvī, -cessītum, *tr.*, provoke, challenge, attack.

Lacōnia, -ae, *f.*, Laconia, *a country of the Peloponnesus.*

lacrima, -ae, *f.*, tear.

lacus, -ūs, *m.*, lake.

laedō, laedere, laesī, laesum, *tr.*, injure, offend.

laetitia, -ae, *f.* [**laetus**], joy, happiness.

laetor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.* [**laetus**], rejoice, be delighted.

laetus, -a, -um, *adj.*, joyful, happy, glad.

laeva, -ae, *f.* [**laevus,** on the left side], the left hand.

Lāomedōn, -ontis, *m.*, Laomedon, *a king of Troy.*

lapis, lapidis, *m.*, stone.

laqueus, -ī, *m.*, noose.

Larcius, -ī, *m.*, Spurius Larcius, *a hero of the early Roman republic.*

Lārentia, -ae, *f.*, Larentia, *wife of Faustulus.*

largior, -īrī, -ītus sum, *tr. and intr.* [**largus,** abundant], give lavishly.

largiter, *adv.* [**largus,** abundant], in abundance, much.

largītiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**largior**], lavish giving, generosity.

Lārissa, -ae, *f.*, Larissa, *a city of Thessaly.*

Lars, Lartis, *m.*, Lars Porsena, *a king of Clusium.*

lassitūdō, -dinis, *f.* [**lassus,** weary], weariness.

lātē, *adv.* [**lātus**], widely, far and wide, extensively.

latebrae, -ārum, *f. pl.* [**lateō**], hiding-place.

lateō, -ēre, latuī, —, *intr.*, lie hid, be hidden.

Latīnē, *adv.* [**Latīnus**], in Latin.

Latīnī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* [**Latīnus,** *adj.*], the Latins, *a nation of central Italy.*

Latīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Latium, Latin.

Latīnus, -ī, *m.*, Latinus, *a king of the Laurentines.*

lātitūdō, -dinis, *f.* [**lātus**], width.

Latium, -ī, *n.*, Latium, *a district of west central Italy.*

Latobrīgī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Latobrigi, *a German tribe.*

latrō, -ōnis, *m.*, robber, brigand.

lātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wide, broad.

latus, lateris, *n.*, side; flank, wing.

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**laus**], praise, laud.

laurea, -ae, *f.*, laurel-tree; laurel wreath.

Laurentēs, -um, *m. pl.*, the people of Laurentum, the Laurentines.

Laurentum, -ī, *n.*, Laurentum, *a town of Latium.*

laus, laudis, *f.*, praise, glory.

Lāvīnia, -ae, *f.*, Lavinia, *daughter of King Latinus.*

Lavīnium, -ī, *n.*, Lavinium, *a city of Latium.*

lectīca, -ae, *f.* [**lectus**], a litter, sedan.

lectus, -ī, *m.*, couch, bed.

lēgātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**lēgō,** appoint as deputy], embassy, legation.

lēgātus, -ī, *m.* [*p. part. of* **lēgō,** appoint as deputy], lieutenant, ambassador, envoy.

legiō, -ōnis, *f.*, legion.

legiōnārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**legiō**], legionary.

lēgitimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**lēx**], fixed by law, legal.

legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum, *tr.*, collect; choose; read.

Lemannus, -ī, *m.*, Lake Geneva.

lēnis, -e, *adj.*, mild, gentle.

lēnitās, -ātis, *f.* [**lēnis**], smoothness, gentleness.

Lentulus, -ī, *m.*, P. Cornelius Lentulus, *Cicero's son-in-law.*

leō, -ōnis, *m.*, lion.

Lernaeus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Lerna (*a marsh near Argos*), Lernaean.

Lēthē, -ēs, *f.*, Lethe, *the river of forgetfulness in the lower world.*

Leucī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Leuci, *a tribe of Celtic Gaul.*

levis, -e, *adj.*, light, slight, trifling.

leviter, *adv.* [**levis**], lightly, slightly.

lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law.

libenter, *adv.* [**libēns,** willing], willingly, with pleasure.

liber, librī, *m.*, book.

līber, lībera, līberum, *adj.*, free.

līberālis, -e, *adj.* [**līber**], befitting a freeman; honorable, liberal.

līberālitās, -ātis, *f.* [**līberālis**], generosity, liberality.

līberātor, -ōris, *m.* [**līberō**], liberator.

līberē, *adv.* [**līber**], freely, boldly.

līberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* [**līber**], children.

līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**līber**], set free, free, liberate, release.

lībertās, -ātis, *f.* [**līber**], freedom, liberty.

lībertus, -ī, *m.* [**līber**], freedman.

Libya, -ae, *f.*, Libya, *a country of northern Africa.*

licentia, -ae, *f.* [**licēns,** free], freedom, license; boldness.

liceor, -ērī, licitus sum, *intr.*, bid, make a bid.

licet, licēre, licuit, *impers.*, it is permitted, it is allowed, one may.

Lichās, -ae, *m.*, Lichas, *a companion of Hercules.*

līctor, -ōris, *m.*, lictor.

ligneus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**lignum**], of wood, wooden.

lignum, -ī, *n.*, wood, firewood.

Ligurēs, -um, *m. pl.*, the Ligures, the people of Liguria.

Liguria, -ae, *f.*, Liguria, *a district of northern Italy.*

līmen, -inis, *n.*, threshold, door.

līmus, -ī, *m.*, mud, mire.

Lingonēs, -um, *m. pl.*, the Lingones, *a people of Celtic Gaul.*

lingua, -ae, *f.*, language, tongue.

linter, -tris, *f.*, boat, skiff.

Linus, -ī, *m.*, Linus, *a centaur who instructed Hercules in music.*

Liscus, -ī, *m.*, Liscus, *chief magistrate of the Haedui.*

littera, -ae, *f.*, a letter (*of the alphabet*); *pl.*, a letter, an epistle; literature.

litterātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**littera**], of letters, learned, educated.

lītus, lītoris, *n.*, sea-shore, beach.

locus, -ī, *m.* (*pl.* **loca, -ōrum,** *n.*), place.

longē, *adv.* [**longus**], far, at a distance; by far.

longinquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**longus**], remote, distant; lengthy, long.

longitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**longus**], length.

longus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long.

loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *intr.*, speak.

lōrum, -ī, *n.*, thong, strap.

Lūcius, -ī, *m.*, Lucius, *a Roman praenomen.*

Lucrētia, -ae, *f.*, Lucretia, *whose death caused the expulsion of king Tarquin.*

lūctor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.*, wrestle, contend, struggle.

lūctus, -ūs, *m.* [**lūgeō,** mourn], sorrow, mourning, affliction.

Lūcullus, -ī, *m.*, L. Licinius Lucullus, *a noted Roman general of the last century B.C.*

Lucumō, -ōnis, *m.*, Lucumo, *an Etruscan name; the original name of* **Tarquinius Prīscus.**

lūdibrium, -ī, *n.* [*compare* **lūdus**], object of ridicule, mockery.

lūdicrum, -ī, *n.* [*compare* **lūdus**], sport, game; public exhibition.

lūdus, -ī, *m.*, game, sport.

lūmen, -inis, *n.* [*compare* **lūx**], light, a light.

lūna, -ae, *f.*, the moon.

lupa, -ae, *f.*, a she-wolf.

lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light; **prīmā lūce,** at dawn.

lūxuriōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**lūxuria,** luxury], luxurious, voluptuous.

lūxus, -ūs, *m.*, luxury, splendor.

M

M., *abbr. for* **Mārcus.**

Macedonia, -ae, *f.*, Macedonia, *a country of southeastern Europe.*

macellum, -ī, *n.*, a meat-market.

maeror, -ōris, *m.* [**maereō,** be sad], mourning, sorrow.

maestus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**maereō,** be sad], sad, sorrowful.

magicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, magical, magic.

magis, *compar. adv.*, more, rather.

magister, -trī, *m.*, master, teacher.

magistrātus, -ūs, *m.* [**magister**], magistracy, office; magistrate.

magnificus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**magnus+ faciō**], splendid, fine, magnificent.

magnitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**magnus**], size, magnitude.

magnopere, *adv.* [**magnō+opere**], greatly.

magnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, large, great.

Magnus, -ī, *m.*, the Great, *a cognomen* of **Cn. Pompeius.**

majestās, -ātis, *f.* [**major**], dignity, majesty.

major, majus, *adj.* [*compar. of* **magnus**], larger, greater; **major nātū,** older; *subst.*, **majōrēs, -um,** *m. pl.*, ancestors.

male, *adv.* [**malus**], badly, ill; *compar.* **pejus,** *superl.* **pessimē.**

maleficium, -ī, *n.* [**male+faciō**], an evil deed; mischief, injury.

mālō, mālle, māluī, —, *tr.* [**magis+ volō**], prefer.

malum, -ī, *n.* [**malus**], evil; misfortune.

malus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bad.

mandātum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* **mandō**], injunction, command.

mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**manus +dō**], consign, intrust.

māne, *adv.*, in the morning, early in the morning.

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum, *intr.*, remain.

mānēs, -ium, *m. pl.*, a departed spirit, shade, ghost.

manifestus, -a, -um, *adj.*, clear, evident, manifest.

Mānlius, -ī, *m.*, L. Manlius Vulso, *consul in 256 B.C.*

mānsuētūdō, -inis, *f.* [**mānsuētus,** mild], mildness, gentleness, clemency.

manubiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, booty, prize-money.

manus, -ūs, *f.*, hand; band (*of armed men*).

Marcomannī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Marcomanni, a German tribe.

Mārcus, -ī, *m.*, Mārcus, *a Roman praenomen.*

mare, maris, *n.*, the sea.

marītus, -ī, *m.*, husband.

Marius, -ī, *m.*, C. Marius, *a famous Roman general, consul seven times, died 86 B.C.*

marmor, -oris, *n.*, marble.

Mārs, Mārtis, *m.*, *the Roman god of war.*

Mārtius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**Mārs**], of Mars; of the month of March; **Campus Mārtius,** the Campus Martius, *an open field and drill-ground in Rome on the bank of the Tiber.*

Masinissa, -ae, *m.*, Masinissa, *a king of Numidia.*

Massīva, -ae, *m.*, Massiva, *grandson of Masinissa.*

matara, -ae, *f.*, javelin, pike.

māter, -tris, *f.*, mother.

mātrimōnium, -ī, *n.* [**māter**], marriage; **in mātrimōnium dare,** give in marriage, arrange a marriage for; **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** marry.

mātrōna, -ae, *f.* [**māter**], married woman, wife, matron.

Matrona, -ae, *f.*, the river Marne.

mātūrē, *adv.* [**mātūrus**], early, quickly, soon.

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [**mātūrus**], set about early, hasten.

mātūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, full grown, mature, ripe.

maximē, *superl. adv.* **[maximus]**, in the highest degree, most, especially, exceedingly.

maximus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*superlative of* **magnus**], largest, greatest.

Mēdēa, -ae, *f.*, Medea, *wife of Jason.*

medicāmentum, -ī, *n.* **[medeor,** heal], drug, antidote.

medicīna, -ae, *f.* **[medeor,** heal], the healing art, medicine.

medicus, -a, -um, *adj.* **[medeor,** heal], of healing, medical.

medicus, -ī, *m.* **[medicus,** medical], physician, surgeon.

mediocriter, *adv.* **[mediocris,** medium], moderately, slightly.

meditor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr. and tr.*, reflect; meditate, plan.

medium, -ī, *n.* **[medius]**, the middle, the intervening space.

medius, -a, -um, *adj.*, middle, intervening, middle of.

Medūsa, -ae, *f.*, Medusa, *a Gorgon.*

melior, -ius, *adj.* [*compar. of* **bonus**], better.

membrum, -ī, *n.*, limb, member.

meminī, *infin.* **meminisse,** *defect., tr.*, remember.

memoria, -ae, *f.*, **[memor,** mindful], memory, remembrance.

memorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* **[memor,** mindful], mention, recount, relate.

Menēnius, -ī, *m.*, Menenius Agrippa, *a prominent Roman of the early Republic.*

mēns, mentis, *f.*, the mind.

mēnsa, -ae, *f.*, table.

mēnsis, mēnsis, -ium *or* **-um,** *m.*, month.

mentiō, -ōnis, *f.*, mention.

mercātor, -ōris, *m.* **[mercor,** to trade], trader, merchant.

mercennārius, -a, -um, *adj.* **[mercēs]**, hired, paid; *subst.*, **mercennārius, -ī,** *m.*, hired servant.

mercēs, -ēdis, *f.*, hire, pay, fee.

Mercurius, -ī, *m.*, Mercury, *messenger of the gods and god of traders.*

mereō, -ēre, meruī, meritum, *and* **mereor, -ērī, meritus sum,** *tr. and intr.*, be deserving, deserve, merit.

mergō, -ere, mersī, mersum, *tr.*, plunge, sink.

merīdiēs, -ēī, *m.* **[medius+diēs]**, mid-day, noon; the south.

meritum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* **mereō**], merit, desert.

meritus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **mereō**], due, deserved, just.

merx, mercis, *f.*, goods, merchandise.

Messāla, -ae, *m.*, M. Valerius Messala, *consul in 61 B.C.*

-met, *an enclitic suffix*, self, own.

Metellus, -ī, *m.*, Q. Caecilius Metellus Numidicus, *consul in 109 B.C.*

mētior, -īrī, mēnsus sum, *tr.*, measure; deal out, distribute.

Metius, -ī, *m.*, M. Metius, *employed by Julius Caesar as an envoy to Ariovistus.*

Mettius, -ī, *m.*, Mettius Fufetius, *an Alban dictator.*

metuō, -ere, metuī, —, *tr.* **[metus]**, fear, dread.

meus, -a, -um, *adj.* **[mē]**, my, mine.

migrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, migrate, remove.

mīles, mīlitis, *m.*, soldier.

mīlitāris, -e, *adj.* **[mīles]**, military.

mīlitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* **[mīles]**, serve as a soldier, wage war.

mīlle, *num. adj.* (*pl.* **mīlia, -ium,** *neuter noun*), thousand.

mīlliēs, *adv.* **[mīlle]**, a thousand times.

minae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, threats.

Minerva, -ae, *f.*, Minerva, *the goddess of wisdom.*

minimē, *superl. adv.* [**minimus**], least, very little; by no means, not at all.

minimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*superl. of* **parvus**], least, smallest, very small; youngest.

ministerium, -ī, *n.* [**minister,** servant], office, service, labor.

minitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.* [*freq. of* **minor,** threaten], threaten, menace.

minor, minus, *adj.* [*compar. of* **parvus**], less, smaller; **minor nātū,** younger.

Mīnōs, -ōis, *m.*, Minos, *a judge in the lower world.*

Minturnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, Minturnae, *a city of Latium.*

Minucius, -ī, *m.*, M. Minucius Rufus, *master of horse in 217 B.C.*

minuō, -ere, minuī, minūtum, *tr.*, diminish, weaken, impair.

minus, *adv.* [*neut. of* **minor**], less.

Minyae, -ārum, *m. pl.*, the Minyae, *neighbors of the Thebans.*

mīrābilis, -e, *adj.* [**mīror**], wonderful.

mīrāculum, -ī, *n.* [**mīror**], marvel, miracle.

mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr. and intr.* [**mīrus**], be astonished; wonder at.

mīrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wonderful, strange.

miser, -era, -erum, *adj.*, unhappy.

misericordia, -ae, *f.* [**misericors,** compassionate], pity, compassion.

miseror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.* [**miser**], lament, bewail.

Mithridātēs, -is, *m.*, Mithridates, *a king of Pontus.*

Mithridāticus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of *or* with Mithridates, Mithridatic.

mītis, -e, *adj.*, mild, gentle, kind.

mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum, *tr.*, send, hurl.

moderātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**moderor,** to control], moderation, self-control.

modo, *adv.* [*abl. of* **modus**], only, merely; a little while ago, recently.

modus, -ī, *m.*, manner, kind, way; limit, measure.

moenia, -ium, *n. pl.*, walls (*of a city*).

mola, -ae, *f.*, meal, coarse flour.

molestē, *adv.* [**molestus**], with difficulty, with vexation; **molestē ferre,** to be annoyed.

molestia, -ae, *f.* [**molestus**], vexation, annoyance.

molestus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**mōlēs,** a load], troublesome, annoying.

mōlīmentum, -ī, *n.* [**mōlior,** make exertion], trouble, effort.

mollis, -e, *adj.*, soft.

molō, -ere, moluī, molitum, *tr.* [**mola**], grind; **molitus, -a, -um,** *p. part. as adj.*, ground.

Molō, *see* **Apollōnius.**

moneō, -ēre, monuī, monitum, *tr.*, warn, advise.

monitus, -ūs, *m.* [**moneō**], admonition, advice.

mōns, montis, -ium, *m.*, mountain.

mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**mōnstrum**], show, exhibit; point out.

mōnstrum, -ī, *n.* [**moneō**], a divine omen, portent; monster.

mora, -ae, *f.*, delay.

morbus, -ī, *m.*, sickness, disease.

mordeō, -ēre, momordī, morsum, *tr.*, bite.

moribundus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**morior**], dying.

morior, morī, mortuus sum, *intr.*, die.

moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr. and intr.* [**mora**], delay, linger; hinder.

mors, mortis, *f.*, death.

mortālis, -e, *adj.* [**mors**], mortal; *subst.*, **mortālis, -is,** *m.*, a mortal, a person.

mortifer, -era, -erum, *adj.* [**mors+ferō**], death-dealing, deadly.

mortuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **morior**], dead.

mōs, mōris, *m.*, custom.

mōtus, -ūs, *m.* [**moveō**], movement; disturbance, tumult.

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *tr.*, move.

mox, *adv.*, soon, presently.

mūgiō, -īre, -īvī, —, *intr.*, low, bellow.

mūgītus, -ūs, *m.* [**mūgiō**]; lowing, bellowing.

muliebris, -e, *adj.* [**mulier**], of a woman.

mulier, -eris, *f.*, woman.

multitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**multus**], multitude.

multō, *adv.* [*abl. of* **multum**], by much, much, by far, far.

multō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**multa,** a fine], punish, fine.

multum, *adv.* [*acc. of* **multum**], much, greatly.

multus, -a, -um, *adj.*, much; *pl.* many; *subst.*, **multum, -ī,** *n.*, much.

mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *tr.* [**moenia**], fortify, protect; build (*a road*).

mūnītiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**mūniō**], fortification, intrenchment.

mūnus, mūneris, *n.*, service, duty; present, gift.

mūrus, -ī, *m.*, wall.

mūsica, -ae, *f.*, music.

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq. of* **moveō**], change.

mūtuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**mūtō**], mutual.

Mysia, -ae, *f.*, Mysia, *a district of Asia Minor.*

Mytilēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, Mytilene, *a city on the island of Lesbos.*

nam, *conj.*, for.

nam-que, *conj.*, for, for in fact; inasmuch as.

nancīscor, -ī, nactus sum, *tr.*, get, obtain; meet with, find.

nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, tell, relate.

nāscor, -ī, nātus sum, *intr.*, be born; arise, grow.

Nasua, -ae, *m.*, Nasua, *a leader of the Suebi, a German tribe.*

nāsus, -ī, *m.*, nose.

nātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**nāscor**], race, nation, people.

natō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [*freq. of* **nō,** swim], swim, float.

nātūra, -ae, *f.* [**nāscor**], nature.

nātūrālis, -e, *adj.* [**nātūra**], of nature, natural.

naufragium, -ī, *n.* [*compare* **nāvis** *and* **frangō**], shipwreck.

nauta, -ae, *m.* [*for* **nāvita**; *compare* **nāvis**], sailor.

nauticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**nauta**], naval, nautical.

nāvālis, -e, *adj.* [**nāvis**], of ships, nautical, naval.

nāvicula, -ae, *f.* [*dim. of* **nāvis**], boat, skiff.

nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [**nāvis+agō**], sail, navigate.

nāvis, nāvis, -ium, *f.*, ship, boat.

-ne, *enclitic particle employed as the sign of a direct question that may be answered by "yes" or "no".*

nē, *conj.*, that . . . not, in order that . . . not; *after words of fear*, that; *as* **adv.**, not; **nē . . . quidem,** not even, not . . . either.

necessāriō, *adv.* [*abl. of* **necessārium**], unavoidably, necessarily.

necessārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**necesse**], necessary, unavoidable, pressing; *subst.*, **necessāriī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, connections, kinsmen.

necesse, *indecl. adj.*, necessary.

necessitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**necesse**], close relationship, intimacy.

nec-ne, *adv.*, or not, *used in double questions.*

necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* **[nex],** kill, put to death.

nefāstus, -a, -um, *adj.* **[nefās,** wrong, crime], unhallowed; **diēs nefāstus,** a day not open to the transaction of state business.

neglegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *tr.* **[nec+legō],** disregard, neglect, slight.

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, say no, say that not; refuse, deny.

negōtium, -ī, *n.* **[nec+ōtium],** business; matter, affair, task; difficulty, trouble.

Nemaeus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Nemean, of Nemea (*a city of Argolis*).

Nemetēs, -um, *m. pl.*, the Nemetes, *a German tribe.*

nēmō, *dat.* **nēminī,** *acc.* **nēminem,** *no gen. or abl., m. and f.* **[ne+homō],** no one.

nepōs, -ōtis, *m.*, grandson.

Neptūnus, -ī, *m.*, Neptune, *god of the sea.*

nē-quāquam, *adv.*, by no means, not at all.

ne-que, *conj.*, nor, and . . . not.

nervus, -ī, *m.*, sinew, muscle, power, strength.

ne-sciō, -īre, -īvī, —, *tr.*, not know, be ignorant.

Nessus, -ī, *m.*, Nessus, *a centaur.*

neuter, -tra, -trum, *pronom. adj.* **[ne+uter],** neither.

nē-ve, *conj.*, and that not, and not.

nex, necis, *f.*, death, murder.

nī, *conj.*, if not, unless.

niger, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, black.

nihil, *indecl., n.* **[ne+hilum,** a shred], nothing.

nihilum, -ī, *n.* **[ne+hilum,** a shred], nothing; *esp. in the abl. with a compar., e.g.* **nihilō minus,** none the less.

Nīlus, -ī, *m.*, the river Nile.

nimbus, -ī, *m.*, rain-storm; thunder-cloud.

nisi, *conj.* **[ne+sī],** uuless, if not; *adv.*, except.

nītor, -ī, nīxus *or* **nīsus sum,** *intr.*, lean; strive; rely, depend upon.

nix, nivis, *f.*, snow.

nōbilis, -e, *adj.* **[nōtus],** famous, well known; noble; *subst.*, **nōbilēs, -ium,** *m. pl.*, the nobles, the nobility.

nōbilitās, -ātis, *f.* **[nōbilis],** high birth; *collect.*, the nobility, the nobles.

noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitum, *intr.*, injure.

noctū, *adv.* **[nox],** at night, by night.

nocturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* **[nox],** nightly, at night, night (*as adjective*).

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *tr. and intr.* **[ne+volō],** be unwilling, not to wish.

nōmen, -inis, *n.*, name.

nōminātim, *adv.* **[nōminō],** by name, in detail.

nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* **[nōmen],** call by name, mention.

nōn, *adv.*, not.

nōnāgintā, *indecl. num.*, ninety.

nōn-dum, *adv.*, not yet.

nōn-nūllus, -a, -um, *adj.*, some, several.

nōn-numquam, *adv.*, sometimes, a few times.

Nōreia, -ae, *f.*, Noreia, *a town of Noricum, now Neumarkt.*

Nōricus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Noricum (*a district south of the Danube*).

nōs, *pl. of* **ego.**

noster, -tra, -trum, *adj.* **[nōs],** our, ours.

nōtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **nōscō,** learn, know], known, familiar.

novem, *indecl. num.*, nine.

novitās, -ātis, *f.* [**novus**], newness, novelty.

novus, -a, -um, *adj.*, new; *superl.*, last, latest; **novissimum agmen,** the rear line (*of an army*); *subst.*, **novissimī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, those in the rear line, the rear line.

nox, noctis, -ium, *f.*, night.

noxa, -ae, *f.* [**noceō**], harm, injury.

nūbēs, nūbis, -ium, *f.*, cloud.

nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptum, *intr.*, cover, veil; *of a bride*, veil oneself, marry, be married.

nūdus, -a, -um, *adj.*, naked, bare.

nūllus, -a, -um, *adj.*, no, none.

num, *interrog. particle, introducing a question expecting a negative answer; with indirect questions*, whether.

Numa, -ae, *m.*, Numa Pompilius, *second king of Rome.*

numerus, -ī, *m.*, number.

Numida, -ae, *m.*, a Numidian, an inhabitant of Numidia.

Numidia, -ae, *f.*, Numidia, *a country of northern Africa.*

Numitor, -ōris, *m.*, Numitor, *a king of Alba.*

nummus, -ī, *m.*, a coin.

numquam, *adv.* [**ne+umquam**], never.

nunc, *adv.*, now.

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**nūntius**], announce, report.

nūntius, -ī, *m.*, messenger, message.

nūper, *adv.*, newly, lately, recently.

nūptiae, -ārum, *f. pl.* [**nūbō**], marriage, wedding.

nusquam, *adv.* [**ne+usquam**], nowhere.

nūtriō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *tr.*, nourish, nurse.

nūtus, -ūs, *m.* [**nuō,** nod], a nod; hint.

nympha, -ae, *f.*, nymph.

O

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of.

ob-aerātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ob+aes**], debtor.

objiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr.* [**ob+jaciō**], throw before, throw to, offer, expose; set against, oppose.

ob-linō, -linere, lēvī, -litum, *tr.*, daub, smear over.

oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum, *tr.*, forget.

ob-noxius, -a, -um, *adj.*, liable, exposed.

obscūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**obscūrus**], darken, cover, hide.

obscūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dark, dim.

obsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**ob+sacrō,** make sacred], entreat, implore.

ob-serō, -serere, -sēvī, -situm, *tr.*, plant; cover, fill.

ob-servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, watch, heed, observe.

obses, obsidis, *m.*, hostage.

obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.* [**ob+sedeō**], beset, besiege, block, blockade.

obsidiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**ob+sedeō**], siege, blockade.

ob-signō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, seal, seal up.

ob-sistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, *intr.*, resist, oppose.

obsōnium, -ī, *n.*, victuals, viands.

ob-stringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictum, *tr.*, bind; lay under obligations.

ob-struō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *tr.*, stop up, bar.

obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, tentum, *tr.* [**ob+teneō**], hold, possess.

obtrectātor, -ōris, *m.* [**obtrectō,** disparage], traducer, disparager.

ob-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.*, come to, befall; fall to the lot of.

ob-viam, *adv.*, in the way, to meet.

ob-volvō, -volvere, -volvī, -volūtum, *tr.*, wrap round, enfold.

occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**ob+cadō**], opportunity, occasion, chance.

occāsus, -ūs, *m.* [**ob+cāsus**], falling down, setting; **sōlis occāsus**, sunset.

occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsum, *intr.* [**ob+cadō**], fall; set (*applied to the sun*); **occidēns, -entis**, *pres. part. as adj.*, setting.

occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [**ob+caedō**], cut down, kill.

occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq. of* **occulō**, hide], hide, keep concealed.

occultus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **occulō**, hide], hidden, concealed; *subst. n.*, **in occultō**, in secret.

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, seize.

occurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.* [**ob+currō**], run to meet, meet.

Ōceanus, -ī, *m.*, the Ocean.

Ocelum, -ī, *n.*, Ocelum, *a town on the western edge of Cisalpine Gaul.*

Octāviānus, -ī, *m.*, Octavian, *grand-nephew of Julius Caesar, better known as the Emperor Augustus.*

Octāvius, -ī, *m.*, Octavius Mamilius, *a leader among the early Latin peoples.*

octō, *indecl. num.*, eight.

octōgintā, *indecl. num.*, eighty.

oculus, -ī, *m.*, eye.

ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus, *defect.*, *tr.*, hate.

odium, -ī, *n.* [**ōdī**], hatred.

odor, -ōris, *m.*, smell, odor.

Oechalia, -ae, *f.*, **Oechalia**, *a town of Euboea.*

Oeneus, -ī, *m.*, Oeneus, *father of Deianira.*

Oeta, -ae, *f.*, Oeta, *a mountain in Thessaly.*

offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *tr.* [**ob+-fendō**, strike], offend.

offēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**offendō**], offense,

offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum, *tr.* [**ob+ferō**], bring before, offer.

officium, ī, *n.* [**opus+faciō**], duty, service.

ōlim, *adv.*, formerly, once upon a time.

Olympus, -ī, *m.*, Olympus, *a mountain on the frontiers of Macedonia and Thessaly.*

ōmen, -inis, *n.*, omen.

omittō, -ere, omīsī, omissum, *tr.* [**ob+mittō**], let go; neglect.

omnīnō, *adv.* [**omnis**], altogether, entirely, at all; only

omnis, -e, *adj.*, all.

onerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**onus**, a burden], load, fill.

onustus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**onus**, a burden], loaded, burdened.

opera, -ae, *f.* [**opus**], effort, labor, toil.

operārius, -ī, *m.* [**opera**], laborer, workman.

operiō, -īre, operuī, opertum, *tr.*, cover, cover over, conceal.

opīniō, -ōnis, *f.* [**opīnor**, suppose], opinion; expectation.

oportet, oportēre, oportuit, *impers.*, it is necessary, it is proper, one must, one ought.

oppidānī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* [**oppidum**], townspeople, inhabitants of a town.

oppidum, -ī, *n.*, town.

opportūnē, *adv.* [**opportūnus**], fitly, opportunely.

opportūnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ob+portus**], fit, seasonable, opportune.

opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.* [**ob+premō**], press down, weigh down, overwhelm, overpower.

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**ob+pugnō**], attack.

ops, opis, *f.* power; *pl.*, resources, influence.

optimē, *superl. adv.* [optimus], best.

optimus, -a, -um, *adj.* (*superl. of* **bonus**), best.

opus, operis, *n.*, work, task, need.

ōrāculum, -ī, *n.* [ōrō], oracle.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [ōrō], oration.

ōrātor, -ōris, *m.* [ōrō], orator.

orbis, orbis, -ium, *m.*, ring, circle; **orbis terrārum,** the earth, the world.

Orcus, -ī, *m.*, Orcus, *the lower world.*

ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*, order, rank.

Orgetorīx, -īgis, *m.*, Orgetorix, *a Helvetian chieftain.*

orīgō, orīginis, *f.* [orior], origin.

orior, orīrī, ortus sum, *intr.*, rise, arise; break out; **oriēns, -entis,** *pres. part. as adj.*, rising.

ōrnāmentum, -ī, *n.* [ōrnō], equipment; mark of honor, ornament.

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, fit out, furnish, equip; adorn.

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [ōs], beg, entreat, ask for.

Orpheus, -ī, *m.*, Orpheus, *a famous musician of Thrace.*

ōs, ōris, *n.*, mouth.

ōsculor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.* [ōsculum], to kiss.

ōsculum, -ī, *n.* [ōs], a kiss.

ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *tr.* [ob+tendō], show, point out.

Ōstia, -ae, *f.*, Ostia, *a city at the mouth of the Tiber.*

ōstium, -ī, *n.* [*compare* ōs], door; mouth, entrance.

ōtiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ōtium], at leisure, unoccupied.

ōtium -ī, *n.*, peace, quiet.

P

P., *abbr. for* **Pūblius.**

pābulum, -ī, *n.* [*compare* **pāscō**], food, pasturage, fodder.

pacīscor, pacīscī, pactus sum, *intr.*, bargain, agree.

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**pāx**], pacify, subdue.

pactiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**pacīscor**], agreement, bargain.

paene, *adv.*, nearly, almost.

pāgus, -ī, *m.*, district, canton, division.

palaestra, -ae, *f.*, wrestling-place, place of exercise.

palam, *adv.*, openly, publicly, plainly.

Palātium, -ī, *n.*, the Palatine hill, *one of the seven hills of Rome.*

palūdāmentum, -ī, *n.*, military cloak.

palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, swamp, marsh.

pandō, -ere, pandī, passum, *tr.*, spread out, stretch out.

papāver, -eris, *n.*, a poppy.

pār, paris, *adj.*, equal, like.

parātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **parō**], prepared, ready.

parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsūrus, *intr.* (*takes dative*), spare, treat with forbearance.

parcus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**parcō**], sparing, frugal.

parēns, parentis, *m. and f.* [**pariō**], parent.

pāreō, -ēre, pāruī, —, *intr.*, obey.

pariō, -ere, peperī, partum, *tr.*, bring forth, give birth to, produce.

pariter, *adv.* [**pār**], equally, in like manner, as much.

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, prepare; obtain, get.

parricīdium, -ī, *n.* [*compare* **pater** *and* **caedō**], parricide, murder of a father.

pars, partis, -ium, *f.*, part; direction.

Parthī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Parthians, *a people of Asia.*

partus, -ūs, *m.* [**pariō**], a bearing. birth.

parum, *adv.*, too little, insufficiently.

parvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, small.

pāscō, pāscere, pāvī, pāstum, *tr.*, supply with food, feed; *pass.*, graze, feed.

passim, *adv.* [**pandō**], scattered, here and there, in every direction.

passus, -ūs, *m.*, pace; **mīlle passūs,** a mile.

pāstor, -ōris, *m.* [**pāscō**], shepherd.

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* [**pateō+faciō**], lay open, open, throw open.

patella, -ae, *f.* [*dim. of* **patina,** pan], a small pan, a small dish.

patēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of* **pateō**], open, exposed.

pateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, extend; be open.

pater, patris, *m.*, father.

paternus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**pater**], of a father, paternal.

patiēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of* **patior**], enduring, tolerant, patient.

patientia, -ae, *f.* [**patiēns**], patience, endurance.

patior, patī, passus sum, *tr.*, bear, suffer; permit.

patria, -ae, *f.* [*fem. of adj.* **patrius,** of a father; *with terra understood*], country, native land.

patrimōnium, -ī, *n.* [**pater**], paternal estate, patrimony.

patrōnus, -ī, *m.* [**pater**], protector, patron; defender, advocate.

patruus, -ī, *m.* [**pater**], a father's brother, uncle.

paucī, -ae, -a, *adj., pl.*, few, a few.

paulātim, *adv.* [**paulum,** little], gradually.

paulisper, *adv.* [**paulum,** little,+**per**], a little while, a short time.

paulō, *adv.* [*abl. of* **paulum,** a little], (by) a little, a little, somewhat.

paulum, *adv.* [*acc. of* **paulum,** a little], somewhat.

pauper, -eris, *adj.*, poor, of small means.

paupertās, -ātis, *f.* [**pauper**], small means, poverty.

pavor, -ōris, *m.* [**paveō,** be afraid], terror, alarm.

pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace.

peccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, do wrong, transgress, offend.

pectus, pectoris, *n.*, breast.

pecuārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**pecū,** cattle], of cattle; *subst.*, **pecuāria, -ae,** *f.* (**rēs** understood), cattle-breeding.

pecūnia, -ae, *f.* [**pecus**], money.

pecus, pecoris, *n.*, cattle, herd, flock.

pecus, pecudis, *f.*, a head of cattle, beast; *pl.*, flock, herd.

pedes, peditis, *m.* [**pēs**], foot-soldier; *pl.*, infantry.

pediculus, -ī, *m.* [**pēs**], a little foot, a small base.

Peliās, -ae, *m.*, Pelias, *uncle of Jason.*

pellis, pellis, -ium, *f.*, skin, hide, pelt.

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum, *tr.*, beat; drive out, drive away, rout.

pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsum, *tr.*, weigh, pay out, pay.

per, *prep. with acc.*, through.

per-agō, -agere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.*, (drive through); finish, complete.

peragrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**per+ager**], wander through, traverse.

percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**per+capiō**], perceive, feel.

percussor, -ōris, *m.* [**percutiō**], assassin.

percutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussum, *tr.* [**per+quatiō,** shake], pierce, strike.

per-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, ruin, destroy.

per-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead through, lead, bring, conduct.

peregrīnus, -a, -um, *adj.* **[per+ager],** strange, foreign; *subst.,* **peregrīnus, -ī,** *m.,* a foreigner.

perennis, -e, *adj.* **[per+annus],** lasting through the year, perennial.

per-eō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, *intr.,* perish, be destroyed.

per-facilis, -e, *adj.,* very easy.

per-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.,* bear through; bear, endure, withstand; bring; carry (*a law*).

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* **[per+faciō],** accomplish, perform, complete.

per-fodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, *tr.,* dig through; transfix.

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum, *tr.* **[per+frangō],** break through.

perfuga, -ae, *m.,* **[perfugiō],** deserter.

per-fugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, *intr.,* flee for refuge, flee.

pergō, -ere, perrēxī, perrēctum, *intr.* **[per+regō],** go on, proceed.

perīculōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* **[perīculum],** dangerous.

perīculum, -ī, *n.,* danger; trial, test.

perītia, -ae, *f.* **[perītus],** experience, knowledge.

perītus, -a, -um, *adj.,* experienced, skilled.

per-maneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *intr.,* remain, continue.

per-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.,* permit; entrust.

per-moveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.,* move deeply, excite, induce.

perniciēs, -ēī, *f.* **[per+nex],** destruction, ruin.

perniciōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* **[perniciēs],** destructive, ruinous.

per-paucī, -paucae, -pauca, *adj.,* very few.

perpetuō, *adv.* **[perpetuus],** continually.

perpetuus, -a, -um, *adj.,* continuous, constant, perpetual; *subst., n. sing.,* **in perpetuum,** for all time, forever.

per-rumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.,* burst through, burst asunder.

per-saepe, *adv.,* very often.

per-scrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *tr.,* write in full, write out, describe fully.

per-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr.,* follow after, pursue.

Perseus, -ī, *m.,* Perseus, *a Greek hero.*

persevērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* **[per+sevērus,** strict], persist, persevere.

per-solvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtum, *tr.,* pay, pay over.

perspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.* **[per+speciō,** look], perceive clearly, discern.

per-suādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *intr.,* persuade.

per-terreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territum, *tr.,* frighten thoroughly, terrify.

pertinācia, -ae, *f.* **[pertināx,** stubborn], stubbornness, obstinacy.

pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, —, *intr.* **[per+teneō],** stretch out, extend; relate, pertain.

per-turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.,* throw into confusion, throw into disorder, disturb.

per-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.,* come up, arrive.

pēs, pedis, *m.,* foot.

pessimus, -a, -um, *adj.* (*superl. of* **malus**), worst.

pestilentia, -ae, *f.* **[pestilēns,** pestilential], plague, pestilence.

petītiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*compare* **petō**], (a seeking), candidacy, canvass.

petō, -ere, petīvī, petītum, *tr.,* seek; ask; attack, assail.

phalanx, -angis, *f.*, phalanx.

phalerae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, decorations *of metal (for the breast).*

Pharnacēs, -is, *m.*, Pharnaces, *son of king Mithridates of Pontus.*

Pharsālicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Pharsalus, Pharsalian.

Pharsālus, -ī, *f.*, Pharsalus, *a city in Thessaly.*

Phāsis, -idos, *m.*, the Phasis, *a river of Colchis.*

philosophia, -ae, *f.*, philosophy.

philosophus, -ī, *m.*, philosopher.

Phīneus, -ī, *m.*, Phineus, *a king of Salmydessus, in Thrace.*

Phrixus, -ī, *m.*, Phrixus.

pictūra, -ae, *f.* [**pingō,** to paint], a picture.

pietās, -ātis, *f.* [**pius,** pious], devotion, piety.

pilleus, -ī, *m.*, a cap.

pīlum, -ī, *n.*, javelin.

piscātor, -ōris, *m.* [**piscor,** to fish], fisherman.

piscis, piscis, -ium, *m.*, fish.

Pīsō, -ōnis, *m.*, (*1*) M. Pupius Piso, *consul in 61 B.C.;* (*2*) L. Calpurnius Piso, *consul in 58 B.C.;* (*3*) L. Calpurnius Piso, *a Roman commander, grandfather of No. 2.*

placeō, -ēre, placuī, placitum, *intr.*, please; *impers.*, **placuit,** it was resolved, it was decided, it was thought best.

plācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, soothe, appease, placate.

plāga, -ae, *f.*, blow, wound.

plānitiēs, -ēī, *f.* [**plānus**], a plain.

plānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, level, flat.

plausus, -ūs, *m.* [**plaudō,** to clap], clapping, applause.

plēbeius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**plēbs**], of the common people, plebeian.

plēbs, plēbis, *f.*, the common people, plebeians.

plēnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, full, filled.

plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque, *adj.*, a very great part, very many, the greater part of, most of.

plērumque, *adv.* [*n. acc. of* **plērusque,** most], for the most part, commonly.

plūrimum, *adv.* [*n. acc. of* **plūrimus**], very much, most.

plūrimus, -a, -um, *adj.* (*superl. of* **multus**), most, very much, very many.

plūs, plūris, (*compar. of* **multus**), *subst.*, *n. sing.*, more; *pl.*, **plūrēs, plūra,** *adj.*, more, a greater number of.

plūs, *adv.* [*n. acc. of* **plūs**], more.

Plūtō, -ōnis, *m.*, Pluto, *king of the lower world.*

poena, -ae, *f.*, punishment.

Poenus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Punic, Carthaginian; *subst.*, **Poenus, -ī,** *m. sing.*, a Phoenician, a Carthaginian; *pl.*, the Phoenicians, the Carthaginians.

poēta, -ae, *m.*, poet.

polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum, *tr.*, promise, offer.

Polydectēs, -is, *m.*, Polydectes, *a king of Seriphus.*

Polyphēmus, -ī, *m.*, Polyphemus, *one of the Argonauts.*

Pompeiānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Pompeius, Pompeian.

Pompeius, -ī, *m.*, Cn. Pompeius Magnus, *a famous Roman general of the last century B.C.*

Pomptīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Pomptine, Pontine; **palūdēs Pomptīnae,** the Pomptine marshes (*in Latium*).

pōmum, -ī, *n.*, fruit, apple.

pondō, *adv.* [*compare* **pondus**], by weight, in weight.

pondus, ponderis, *n.* [*compare* **pendō**), weight, a weight.

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, *tr.*, place, fix; **castra pōnere,** to pitch camp.

pōns, pontis, -ium, *m.*, bridge.

Ponticus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Pontus, Pontic.

Pontius, -ī, *m.*, Pontius Cominius, *name of a Roman youth.*

Pontus, -ī, *m.*, Pontus, *a country in Asia Minor.*

populāris, -e, *adj.* [**populus**], of the people, democratic, popular.

populātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**populor**], a laying waste, plundering.

populor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.*, lay waste, plunder.

populus, -ī, *m.*, a people, nation; the people, the populace.

Porsena, -ae, *m.*, Lars Porsena, *a king of Clusium.*

porta, -ae, *f.*, gate, door.

portendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *tr.* [**por** *for* **prō+tendō**], indicate, foretell.

portentum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* **portendō**], omen, portent.

porticus, -ūs, *f.* [**porta**], colonnade, portico.

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, carry.

portōrium, -ī, *n.* [**portus**], tax, duty, toll.

portus, -ūs, *m.*, harbor, port.

poscō, -ere, poposcī, —, *tr.*, ask, request, demand.

Posīdōnius, -ī, *m.*, Posidonius, *a Stoic philosopher of Rhodes.*

possessiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**possīdō,** take possession of], a possessing, occupation; possession, property.

possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.* [**por** *for* **prō+sedeō**], possess, have.

possum, posse, potuī, *intr.* [**potis,** able, +**sum**], be able, can.

post, *prep. with acc.* behind, after.

post-eā, *adv.*, afterward, thereafter.

posteā-quam, *conj.*, after.

posterus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**post**], following, next.

post-hāc, *adv.*, hereafter, in the future.

post-quam, *conj.*, after, when.

postrēmō, *adv.* [*abl. of* **postrēmus,** last; supply **tempore**], at last, at length.

postrīdiē, *adv.* [**posterō +diē**], the next day.

postulātum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* **postulō**], a demand, request.

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, demand, claim.

potēns, *gen.*, **-entis,** *adj.* [**possum**], powerful, influential.

potentātus, -ūs, *m.* [**potēns**], power, dominion.

potentia, -ae, *f.* [**potēns**], power.

potestās, -ātis, *f.* [**potis,** able], power; privilege, chance, opportunity.

pōtiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**pōtō,** to drink], a drink, drink.

potior, -īrī, potītus sum, *intr.* [**potis,** able], gain possession of.

potius, *adv.* (*compar. of* **potis,** able), rather, preferably.

praebeō, -ēre, praebuī, praebitum, *tr.* [**prae,** before, +**habeō**], hold forth, offer; furnish, supply; exhibit, show.

prae-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr. and tr.*, go before; surpass, excel.

praeceps, -cipitis, *adj.* [**prae,** before, +**caput**], headforemost, headlong.

praeceptor, -ōris, *m.* [**praecipiō**], teacher, instructor.

praeceptum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* **praecipiō**], maxim, precept, order.

praecīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [**prae,** in front, +**caedō**], cut off.

praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**prae,** before, +**capiō**], enjoin upon, impose upon; teach.

praecipuē, *adv.* [**praecipuus,** especial], especially.

prae-clārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, very bright, brilliant; splendid, distinguished.

praecō, -ōnis, *m.*, herald.

praeda, -ae, *f.*, booty, spoil.

prae-dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [**dicō,** dedicate], proclaim, assert.

prae-dīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictum, *tr.*, foretell, predict.

praedō, -ōnis, *m.* [**praeda**], pirate, robber.

praefectus, -ī, *m.* [*p. part. of* **praeficiō**], commander, prefect.

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**prae,** before, +**faciō**], place in charge of, place in command of.

prae-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.*, send ahead.

praemium, -ī, *n.*, reward.

prae-optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, choose rather, prefer.

prae-scrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *tr.*, determine in advance, prescribe, dictate.

praescrīptum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* **praescrībō**], precept, direction.

praesēns, *gen.*, **-entis,** *adj.* [*pres. part. of* **praesum**], at hand, present.

praesentia, -ae, *f.* [**praesēns**], presence; the present; **in praesentiā,** at the moment, for the present.

praesertim, *adv.*, especially.

praesidium, -ī, *n.* [*compare* **prae,** before, *and* **sedeō**], protection; guard, garrison.

prae-stāns, *gen.*, **-stantis,** *adj.* [*pres. part. of* **praestō**], preëminent, distinguished, surpassing.

prae-stō, -stāre, -stitī, -stitum, *intr and tr.*, stand before; excel, be better; exhibit, show.

prae-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, *intr.*, be in command of, be in charge of.

praeter, *prep. with acc.* [*compare* **prae,** before], except; past, beyond; in addition to; contrary to.

praeter-eā, *adv.*, in addition, besides, further.

praeter-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *tr. and intr.*, go by, go past, pass; **praeteritus, -a, -um,** *p. part. as adj.*, gone by, past.

praeteritus, -a, -um, *see* **praetereō.**

praetextus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **praetexō,** to border], bordered; **toga praetexta,** *the toga of a Roman magistrate, which was edged with scarlet.*

praetor, -ōris, *m.* [*for* **praeitor,** *from* **praeeō,** go before], (a leader); **praetor,** *title of a Roman magistrate charged with judicial duties.*

praetōrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**praetor,** leader, general], of a praetor, praetorian; **praetōria cohors,** a general's bodyguard.

prae-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr. and tr.*, come before, precede; anticipate.

prāvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, crooked; bad, dishonest.

precēs, -um, *f. pl.*, prayer, entreaty.

prehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum, *tr.*, grasp, seize.

premō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.*, press; burden, weigh down.

pretium, -ī, *n.*, price, value; reward, recompense.

Priamus, -ī, *m.*, Priam, a king of Troy.

prīdem, *adv.*, long ago.

prīdiē, *adv.* [*compare* **prior** *and* **diēs**], the day before.

prīmō, *adv.* [**prīmus**], at first.

prīmum, *adv.* [**prīmus**], in the first place, first of all; **cum prīmum,** as soon as; **quam prīmum,** as soon as possible.

prīmus, -a, -um, *adj.* (*superl. of* **prior**), first.

prīnceps, *gen.* **prīncipis,** *adj.* [*compare* **prīmus** *and* **capiō**], first; *subst.*, *m.*, chief, prominent man.

prīncipātus, -ūs, *m.* [**prīnceps**], leadership, supremacy.

prior, prius, *compar. adj.*, former, previous; first.

prīstinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*compare* **prior**], former, original.

prius, *adv.* [*n. of* **prior**], before, first.

prius-quam, *conj.*, before.

prīvātim, *adv.* [**prīvātus**], in a private capacity, privately.

prīvātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **prīvō**], private, personal; *subst.*, **prīvātus, -ī,** *m.*, a private citizen.

prīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**prīvus,** private], deprive, rob.

prō, *prep. with abl.*, in front of; for, on behalf of, for the sake of.

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**probus,** good], approve, approve of.

Proca, -ae, *m.*, Proca, *a king of Alba.*

prō-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.*, advance, proceed.

Procillus, -ī, *m.*, C. Valerius Procillus, *a Gallic friend of Julius Caesar.*

procul, *adv.*, in the distance, at a distance, far off.

prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitum, *intr.* [**prō+-cumbō,** recline], fall forwards, fall prostrate.

prō-currō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.*, run *or* rush forwards, charge.

prōd-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [**prōd** *for* **prō**], go forth, go forward, advance.

prōdigium, -ī, *n.*, omen, portent, prodigy.

prōditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**prōdō**], treason, betrayal.

prō-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, hand down, transmit; betray.

prō-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead forth, bring out.

proelium, -ī, *n.*, battle.

profectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**proficīscor**], setting out, departure.

profectō, *adv.* [**prō+factō**], actually, in fact, assuredly, certainly.

prō-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.*, bring forth, carry forward, extend, defer.

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, *intr.*, set out, start, depart.

profiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum, *tr.* [**prō +fateor,** confess], declare publicly, profess, avow.

pro-fugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, *intr.*, flee, escape.

profugus, -ī, *m.* [**profugiō**], fugitive, refugee.

pro-fundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *tr.*, pour out; spend freely, squander.

profundus, -a, -um, *adj.*, deep.

prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *intr.* [**prō+gradior,** step], go on, advance, proceed.

prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum, *tr.* [**prō+habeō**], check, stop, restrain; keep out, prohibit.

prōjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr.* [**prō+jaciō**], hurl forward, hurl down.

pro-inde, *adv.*, therefore, accordingly.

prōmineō, -minēre, -minuī, *intr.*, stand out; project, lean out.

prō-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.*, send forth, promise.

prō-moveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.*, move forward, advance.

prōmptus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **prōmō,** bring forth], ready, prompt.

prōmunturium, -ī, *n.*, headland, promontory.

prope, *adv. and prep. with acc.; as adv.*, near, nearly, almost, about; *as prep.*, near, near to.

prō-pellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.*, drive forward; drive off, repel, rout.

properē, *adv.* [**properus**, speedy], hastily, speedily.

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [**properus**, speedy], hasten.

propinquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**prope**], near, neighboring; *subst.*, **propinquī, -ōrum**, *m. pl.*, relatives, kinsmen.

prō-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, set forth, relate; offer, propose.

prōpositum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part.* of **prōpōnō**], plan, intention, purpose.

propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, by reason of.

propter-eā, *adv.*, on that account; **proptereā quod**, for the reason that, because.

prō-pulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq. of* **prōpellō**], drive back, repel.

prōra, -ae, *f.*, bow, prow.

prō-scrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *tr.*, publish; outlaw, proscribe.

prōscrīptiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**prōscrībō**], proscription, outlawry.

prō-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr.*, follow, follow after, attend.

Prōserpina, -ae, *f.*, Proserpina, Proserpine, *queen of the lower world.*

prōsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, —, *intr.* [**prō** + **saliō**, leap], leap forward, spring up.

prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *intr.* [**prō**+**speciō**, look], look ahead; look out for, provide.

prō-sternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum, *tr.*, spread out; overthrow, lay prostrate.

prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfuī, *intr.*, be useful, benefit, profit, serve.

prō-vehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.*, carry forward; *pass.*, ride forward; sail out; **aetāte prōvectus**, advanced in years.

prō-videō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, *tr. and intr.*, foresee; provide for, make provision for.

prōvincia, -ae, *f.*, province.

proximē, *adv.* [**proximus**], nearest; most recently, last.

proximus, -a, -um, *adj.* (*superl. to* **propior**, nearer), nearest, next.

Ptolomaeus, -ī, *m.*, Ptolemy, *a king of Egypt.*

pūbēs, *gen.* **-eris**, *adj.*, grown up, adult; *subst.*, **pūberēs, -um**, *m. pl.*, adults, men.

pūblicē, *adv.* [**pūblicus**], in the name of the state, at public expense.

pūblicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**populus**], of the people *or* state, public.

Pūblius, -ī, *m.*, Publius, *a Roman praenomen.*

pudor, -ōris, *m.*, shame, sense of honor.

puella, -ae, *f.* [*dim. of* **puer**], girl.

puer, -puerī, *m.*, boy.

puerīlis, -e, *adj.* [**puer**], of a child, of children, childish.

pūgiō, -ōnis, *m.*, dagger, poniard.

pugna, -ae, *f.*, fight, battle.

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [**pugna**], fight.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *adj.*, beautiful.

pūnctum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* **pungō**], point; moment.

pungō, -ere, pupugī, pūnctum, *tr.*, prick, sting, pierce.

Pūnicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**Poenus**], Punic, Carthaginian.

pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**pūrus** +**agō**], clean, cleanse; excuse; **pūrgātus, -a, -um**, *p. part. as adj.*, free from blame.

pūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, clean, pure; unadorned.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* (clean, prune); think, suppose.

Pȳrēnaeus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Pyrenaean; *subst.*, **Pȳrēnaeī, -ōrum**, *m. pl.*, the Pȳrenees.

Pyrrhus, -ī, *m.*, Pyrrhus, *a king of Epirus.*

Pȳthia, -ae, *f.*, Pythia, *the prophetic priestess in the temple of Apollo at Delphi.*

Q

quā, *adv.* [*abl. fem. of* **quī**], by which way, where.

quadrāgintā, *indecl. num.* [**quattuor**], forty.

quadringentī, -ae, -a, *num. adj.* [**quattuor+centum**], four hundred.

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, *tr.*, inquire, ask.

quaestor, -ōris, *m.* [*for* **quaesītor,** *compare* **quaerō**], quaestor, *a Roman magistrate connected with state finances.*

quaestūra, -ae, *f.* [**quaestor**], the office of quaestor, quaestorship.

quālis, -e, *pronom. adj.; interrog.*, of what sort? what kind of? *relative*, of such kind, such as, as.

quāliscumque, quālecumque, *indef. pron.*, of any kind whatever.

quam, *adv.* [**quī**], than, (rather) than, as, how.

quam-diū, *adv.*, as long as.

quam-quam, *conj.*, although, though; and yet, yet.

quantus, -a, -um, *interrog. adj.*, how great? how large? *relative (following* **tantus**), as; *e. g.* **tantus . . . quantus,** as large . . . as; *subst.*, **quantum, -ī,** *n.*, as much as, all that.

quā-rē, *adv.*, wherefore, therefore; wherefore? why?

quārtānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**quārtus**], occurring every fourth day, quartan; *subst.*, **quārtāna, -ae,** *f.* (*supply* **febris,** fever), quartan ague.

quārtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**quattuor**], fourth.

qua-si, *adv.*, as if.

quater, *adv.* [**quattuor**], four times.

quattuor, *indecl. num.*, four.

-que, *enclitic conj.*, and.

queror, querī, questus sum, *intr. and tr.*, complain, complain of.

quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.*, who, which, what, that.

quia, *conj.*, because.

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *indef. pron.*, whoever, whatever, everyone who, everything that.

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam *or* **quiddam,** *indef. pron. adj.*, a certain, a certain one; *subst.*, a certain one, somebody.

quidem, *adv.*, certainly, in fact; to be sure, it is true; **nē . . . quidem,** not even, not . . . either.

quiēs, -ētis, *f.*, rest; peace, quiet.

quiētus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **quiēscō,** keep quiet], quiet, peaceful, free from labor.

quīn, *conj. and adv.* [**quī,** how,+**ne**]; *as conj., after words of doubt,* that; *after words of hindering,* from; *as adv.*, **quīn etiam,** nay, nay even, nay in fact.

Quīnctius, -ī, *m.*, L. Quinctius Cincinnatus, *Roman dictator in 458 B.C.*

quīndecim, *indecl. num.* [**quīnque+decem**], fifteen.

quīngentī, -ae, -a, *num. adj.* [**quīnque+centum**], five hundred.

quīnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [**quīnque**], five each.

quīnquāgintā, *indecl. num.* [**quīnque**], fifty.

quīnque, *indecl. num.*, five.

quīntus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**quīnque**], fifth.

Quirīnālis, -e, *adj.* [**Quirīnus**], of Quirinus, Quirinal; **Quirīnālis collis,** the Quirinal Hill, *one of the seven hills of Rome.*

Quirīnus, -ī, *m.*, Quirinus, *a name given to Romulus.*

Quirītēs, -ium, *m. pl.*, Quirites, *a name applied to the Romans; it may be translated* citizens, fellow-citizens.

quis, qua, quid, *indef. pron.*, anyone, anybody, anything, someone, somebody, something.

quis (quī), quae, quid (quod), *interrog. pron. and adj.*, who? which? what?

quis-quam, quicquam, *indef. pron.*, any one, any thing, any one *or* thing at all.

quis-que, quid-que, *indef. pron.*, each, each one, each man.

quis-quis, quicquid, *indef. pron.*, whoever, whatever, every one who, every thing that.

quō, *adv.* [**quī**]; *interrog.*, whither? where? *relative*, to which place or point, whither; *indef.*, to any place, anywhere; *with compar.*, in order that.

quo-ad, *adv. and conj.*, until, as long as.

quod, *conj.* [**quī**], because; the fact that, that; **quod sī,** but if, now if.

quoniam, *conj.* [**quom,** *for* **cum,+ jam**], since, inasmuch as.

quoque, *conj.*, also.

quotannīs, *adv.* [**quot,** how many,+ *abl. of* **annus**], every year, yearly.

quotiēns, *adv.* [**quot,** how many], *interrog.*, how often? *relative*, as often as.

quo-usque, *adv.*, till when? how long?

R

rādīx, -dīcis, *f.*, root, lower part; foot, base (*of a mountain*).

raeda, -ae, *f.*, carriage, wagon (*with four wheels*).

rāmus, -ī, *m.*, branch, bough.

rapīna, -ae, *f.* [**rapiō**], robbery, plunder, rapine.

rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum, *tr.*, seize, carry off.

rārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, rare, scarce.

ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*, reckoning, account; list, record; plan, course, manner; principle, reason.

ratis, -is, *f.*, raft, float.

Rauracī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Rauraci, *a Gallic people on the Rhine.*

re-bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, rebel, make war again.

re-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.*, retire, withdraw.

recēns, *gen.* **-entis,** *adj.*, recent, new.

re-cēnseō, -cēnsēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsum, *tr.*, number, reckon; review.

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**re-+capiō**], take back, regain; accept, receive; **sē recipere,** to recover oneself, to withdraw, to retreat.

re-conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, win back, recover; reconcile.

re-creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, renew, restore, refresh.

rēctē, *adv.* [**rēctus**], straight; right, properly.

rēctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **regō,**] straight, direct; upright.

recuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, regain, recover.

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [**re-+causa**], refuse, decline.

red-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, give back, return; render.

red-eō, -īre, -iī, (-īvī), -itum, *intr.*, go back, return.

reditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**redeō**], a going back, return.

redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [**red-+agō**], force back; bring under, reduce; collect.

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, *tr.* [**red-+emō**], buy back, ransom, buy up.

red-integrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**integrō,** make whole], renew, restore.

reditus, -ūs, *m.* [**redeō**], return.

re-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead back.

re-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.*, bear back, bring back; **pedem referre,** withdraw, retire, retreat; **grātiam referre,** requite.

reficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**re-+faciō**], make again; renew, recruit, repair; reëlect.

refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum, *tr.* [**re-+frangō**], break down.

re-fugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, *intr.*, flee back; flee away, escape.

re-fulgeō, -fulgēre, -fulsī, —, *intr.*, flash back, glitter.

rēgia, -ae, *f.* [**rēgius**], palace.

rēgīna, -ae, *f.* [**rēx**], queen.

regiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**regō**], region, district.

rēgius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**rēx**], royal, of the king.

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [**rēgnum**], reign, rule.

rēgnum, -ī, *n.* [**rēx**], royal power, kingdom.

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum, *tr.*, guide, direct; rule, govern.

regredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *intr.* [**re-+gradior,** step], go back, return.

rejiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr.* [**re-+jaciō**], hurl back, drive back, repulse.

religiō, -ōnis, *f.*, scruple, religion; religious observance.

re-linquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum, *tr.*, leave behind, leave.

reliquiae, -ārum, *f. pl.* [*compare* **relinquō**], remains, relics, remnants.

reliquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*compare* **relinquō**], remaining, rest of, the remainder of.

re-lūctor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.*, struggle against, resist.

re-maneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *intr.*, remain.

remedium, -ī, *n.* [**re-,** *compare* **medeor,** heal], remedy, cure.

rēmigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [**rēmex,** rower], row, ply an oar.

reminīscor, -ī, *intr. and tr.*, remember, recall.

re-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.*, send back; relax, discontinue.

remōtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **removeō**], distant, remote.

re-moveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.*, move back; take away, remove.

re-mūneror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.*, repay, reward.

Remus, -ī, *m.*, Remus, *brother of Romulus.*

rēmus, -ī, *m.*, oar.

re-novō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, renew.

re-nuō, -nuere, -nuī, —, *intr.*, shake the head, refuse.

re-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, bring back word, report, announce.

re-pellō, -pellere, reppulī, repulsum, *tr.*, drive back, repulse; avert.

repente, *adv.* [**repēns,** sudden], suddenly.

repentīnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**repēns,** sudden], sudden, unexpected.

reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum, *tr.*, find, discover.

re-petō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītum, *tr.*, demand back; **rēs repetere,** to demand reparation.

re-pleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, *tr.*, fill again, refill.

re-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, replace, restore; put away, keep, preserve.

re-praesentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*compare* **praesēns,** present], make present, display; do immediately.

re-prehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum, *tr.*, hold back, seize; censure, rebuke.

repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**repudium,** a casting off], reject, divorce.

re-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, fight back, resist, oppose.

repulsa, -ae, *f.* [*p. part. of* **repellō**], repulse, defeat.

rēs, reī, *f.*, thing, affair.

re-scindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum, *tr.*, cut down, break down.

re-scīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum, *tr.* [**scīscō**, approve], learn, find out.

re-scrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *tr.*, write back; rewrite, enroll anew.

re-servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, keep back, save up, reserve.

re-sistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *intr.*, resist, make a stand.

respiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr. and intr.* [**re-+speciō**, look], look back; have regard for.

re-spīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, breath out; breathe.

re-spondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, *intr.*, reply, respond, answer.

respōnsum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* **respondeō**], reply, answer.

re-spuō, -spuere, -spuī, —, *tr.*, refuse, spurn.

re-stinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxī, -stīnctum, *tr.*, put out, quench.

restituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, *tr.* [**re-+statuō**, station], restore.

re-tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, keep back, check.

retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [**re-+teneō**], restrain, retain.

re-vellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, *tr.*, pull away.

re-vertor, -vertī, (*perf.*) **-vertī, -versum,** *intr.*, turn back, return.

re-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, call back, recall.

rēx, rēgis, *m.* [**regō**], king.

Rhadamanthus, -ī, *m.*, Rhadamanthus, *a judge in the lower world.*

Rhēa, -ae, *f.*, Rhea Silvia, *mother of Romulus and Remus.*

Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*, the river Rhine.

rhētor, -oris, *m.*, a teacher of oratory, rhetorician.

Rhodanus, -ī, *m.*, the river Rhone.

Rhodus, -ī, *f.*, the island of Rhodes.

rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsum, *intr.*, laugh.

rīpa, -ae, *f.*, bank (of a stream).

rītē, *adv.* [*compare* **rītus**], in a proper manner, fitly, duly.

rītus, -ūs, *m.*, rite, ceremony.

rixa, -ae, *f.*, quarrel, dispute.

rōbur, rōboris, *n.*, oak.

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, ask, request.

rogus, -ī, *m.*, funeral pile, funeral pyre.

Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Roman; *subst.*, **Rōmānus, -ī,** *m.*, a Roman; *pl.*, the Romans.

Rōmulus, -ī, *m.*, Romulus, *the founder of Rome.*

rosa, -ae, *f.*, rose.

Rōscius, -ī, *m.*, Sextius Roscius, *defended by Cicero on a charge of murder.*

rōstrum, -ī, *n.* [**rōdō**, gnaw], beak; *pl.*, **rōstra, -ōrum,** the Rostra, *a platform for speakers in the Forum, adorned with beaks of captured ships.*

rota, -ae, *f.*, wheel.

Rubicō, -ōnis, *m.*, the Rubicon, *a river in northeastern Italy.*

ruīna, -ae, *f.* [**ruō**, fall in ruins], ruin, downfall; *pl.*, ruins.

rūpēs, -is, *f.*, rock, cliff.

rūrsus, *adv.* [*contr. for* **reversus**], again, in turn.

rūs, rūris, *n.*, the country; *pl.*, the fields, the country.

rūsticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**rūs**], of the country, rustic.

Rutēnī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Ruteni, *a Gallic tribe, partly in the Transalpine province.*

Rutulī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Rutuli, the Rutulians, *a nation of central Italy.*

S

Sabīnī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Sabines, *a people of central Italy.*

sacer, -cra, -crum, *adj.*, sacred; *subst.*, **sacra, -ōrum,** *n. pl.*, sacred rites, religious customs; **Mōns Sacer,** a hill near Rome.

sacerdōs, -ōtis, *m. and f.* [**sacer**], priest, priestess.

sacerdōtium, -ī, *n.* [**sacerdōs**], priesthood.

sacrificium, -ī, *n.* [*compare* **sacrificō**], sacrifice.

sacrificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [**sacer+faciō**], offer sacrifice, sacrifice.

saepe, *adv.*, often.

saepe-numerō, *adv.*, very often, again and again.

saeviō, -īre, -iī, -ītum, *intr.* [**saevus,** savage], be furious, rage.

saevus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fierce, savage.

sagīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**sagīna,** feeding], fatten.

sagitta, -ae, *f.*, arrow.

sagulum, -ī, *n.* [*dim. of* **sagum,** mantle], a military cloak.

Saguntīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Saguntum, Saguntine; *subst.*, **Saguntīnī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, the Saguntines, the people of Saguntum.

Saguntum, -ī, *n.*, Saguntum, *a city in Spain.*

sāl, salis, *m.*, salt.

salīnum, -ī, *n.* [**sāl**], salt-cellar.

Salmydessus, -ī, *m.*, Salmydessus, *a town in Thrace.*

salsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sāl**], salted.

saltus, -ūs, *m.*, [**saliō,** leap], leaping, a leap.

saltus, -ūs, *m.*, ravine, mountain pass, mountain valley.

salūs, -ūtis, *f.*, safety.

salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**salūs**], greet, hail.

salveō, -ēre, —, —, *intr.*, be well; **salvē,** *imper.* (*in greetings*), hail to you.

Samnīs, -ītis, *adj.*, of Samnium (*a district of central Italy*), Samnite; *subst.*, **Samnītēs, -ium,** *m. pl.*, the people of Samnium, the Samnites.

sanciō, -īre, sānxī, sānctum, *tr.*, make sacred; decree, enact.

sānctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **sanciō**], sacred, holy, inviolate.

sanguis, sanguinis, *m.*, blood.

sānitās, -ātis, *f.* [**sānus**], health, sanity.

Santonī, -ōrum *or* **-um,** *m., pl.* the Santoni, *a Gallic people of Aquitania.*

sānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sound, healthy; sane, sensible.

sapiēns, *gen.* **-entis,** *adj.* [*pres. part. of* **sapiō,** have taste, be sensible], wise.

sarcina, -ae, *f.*, pack; *pl.*, packs, light baggage.

Sardinia, -ae, *f.*, Sardinia.

satis, *adv.*, enough.

satis-faciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *intr.*, give satisfaction, make reparation, apologize.

satisfactiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**satisfaciō**], apology, explanation.

saxum, -ī, *n.*, rock, stone.

scālae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, stairway, stairs; ladder.

scapha, -ae, *f.*, skiff, boat.

scelerātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**scelus**], wicked, criminal.

scelus, sceleris, *n.*, wickedness, crime.

schola, -ae, *f.*, school.

scientia, -ae, *f.* [**sciēns,** knowing], knowledge, expertness, skill.

scīlicet, *adv.* [**scīre+licet**], of course, no doubt, doubtless.

sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *tr.*, know.

Scīpiō, -ōnis, *m.*, Q. Caecilius Metellus Pius Scipio, *father-in-law of Pompeius; see also* **Cornēlius.**

scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, *tr.*, write.

scrīnium, -ī, *n.*, book-box, letter-case.

scūtum, -ī, *n.*, shield.

sē- *or* **sēd-,** *inseparable prefix*, apart, away.

sē-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.*, go apart, retire, withdraw.

sēcrētō, *adv.* [**sēcrētus**], separately, secretly, in private.

sēcrētus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **sēcernō,** to separate], secret; *subst.*, **sēcrētum, -ī,** *n.*, secret; privacy.

sector, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.* [*freq. of* **sequor**], follow after, attend.

secundum, *prep. with acc.* [**sequor**], following, along; in accordance with.

secundus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sequor**], second; favorable, successful.

secūris, -is, *f.*, axe.

sed, *conj.*, but.

sēdecim, *indecl. num.* [**sex+decem**], sixteen.

sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum, *intr.*, sit.

sēdēs, -is, *f.* [**sedeō**], seat, chair; residence, abode.

sēditiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sēditiō,** sedition], seditious, factious.

Sedusiī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Sedusii, *a German tribe.*

Segusiāvī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Segusiavi, *a Gallic tribe west of the Rhone.*

sella, -ae, *f.* [**sedeō**], chair, seat.

semel, *adv.*, once; **semel atque iterum,** time and again, repeatedly.

sēmentis, -is, *f.* [**sēmen,** seed], a seeding, a sowing.

semper, *adv.*, always.

senātus, -ūs, *m.* [**senex**], senate.

senectūs, -ūtis, *f.* [**senex**], old age.

senēscō, -ere, senuī, —, *intr.* [*compare* **senex**], grow old.

senex, senis, *adj.*, old; *subst.*, *m.*, old man.

sēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num.* [**sex**], six each.

senior, *gen.* **-ōris,** *adj.* (*compar. of* **senex**), older; *subst.*, *m. pl.*, the older men, the elders.

Senonēs, -um, *m. pl.*, the Senones, *a Gallic tribe that settled in northern Italy.*

sententia, -ae, *f.* [**sentiō**], opinion, thought, purpose.

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, *tr.*, feel, see, perceive.

sēparātim, *adv.* [**sēparātus,** separate], separately, severally.

sepeliō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *tr.*, bury.

septem, *indecl. num.*, seven.

septendecim, *indecl. num.* [**septem+decem**], seventeen.

septentriōnēs, -um, *m.* [**septem+triōnēs,** plowing oxen], the constellation of the Great Bear, the Big Dipper; the north.

septimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**septem**], seventh.

sepultūra, -ae, *f.* [**sepeliō**], burial.

Sēquana, -ae, *f.*, the river Seine.

Sēquanus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Sequani, Sequanian; *subst.*, **Sēquanī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, the Sequani, *a tribe of eastern Gaul.*

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *tr. and intr.*, follow, pursue.

Sergius, -ī, *m.*, *see* **Catilīna.**

sēriō, *adv.* [**sērius,** serious], seriously, in earnest.

Serīphus, -ī, *f.*, Seriphus, *an island in the Aegean Sea.*

sermō, -ōnis, *m.* [**serō,** entwine] talk, conversation.

serō, serere, sēvī, satum, *tr.*, sow, plant.

serpēns, *gen.* **-entis,** *f.* [*pres. part. of* **serpō,** crawl], serpent.

Sertōrius, -ī, *m.*, Q. Sertorius, *a Roman general and a friend of Marius.*

servīlis, -e, *adj.* [**servus**], of slaves, servile.

servitūs, -ūtis, *f.* [**servus**], servitude, slavery.

Servius, -ī, *m.*, Servius Tullius, *the sixth king of Rome.*

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, save; observe.

servus, -ī, *m.*, slave, servant.

sēstertius, -ī, *gen. pl.*, **sēstertium,** sesterce, *a small silver coin worth four and one tenth cents.*

sētius, *compar. adv.*, less, in a less degree (*with negatives only*); **nihilō sētius,** nevertheless.

seu, *see* **sīve.**

sevērē, *adv.* [**sevērus,** serious], seriously, severely, strictly.

sex, *indecl. num.*, six.

sexāgintā, *indecl. num.*, sixty.

sexcentī, -ae, -a, *num. adj.* [**sex+centum**], six hundred.

sextus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sex**], sixth.

Sextilius, -ī, *m.*, Sextilius, *name of a certain Roman praetor.*

sī, *conj.*, if.

sīc, *adv.*, so, thus.

siccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**siccus**], dry, drain.

siccus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dry; *subst.*, **siccum, -ī,** *n.*, dry land.

Sicilia, -ae, *f.*, Sicily.

Siculus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Sicilian; *subst.*, **Siculī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, the Sicilians.

sīc-ut, *adv.*, just as, as.

Signia, -ae, *f.*, Signia, *a town in Latium.*

signifer, -ī, *m.* [**signum+ferō**], standard bearer.

significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**signum+faciō**], point out; signify, mean.

signō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**signum**], affix a seal to, seal.

signum, -ī, *n.*, mark, sign; signal; standard (*military*).

silentium, -ī, *n.* [**sileō,** be still], silence.

silva, -ae, *f.*, forest.

similis, -e, *adj.*, like, similar.

similitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**similis**], likeness, resemblance.

simul, *adv.*, at the same time.

simulācrum, -ī, *n.* [**simulō**], likeness, semblance.

simulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**simulō**], pretence, simulation.

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**similis**], make like; pretend.

sīn, *conj.* [**sī+ne**], but if.

sine, *prep. with abl.*, without.

singulī, -ae, -a, *adj.*, one at a time; *distrib.*, one on a side.

sinister, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, left, on the left hand.

sinistra, -ae, *f.* [**sinister**], the left hand.

sinus, -ūs, *m.*, a fold; bosom.

sitiēns, *gen.* **-entis,** *adj.* [*pres. part. of* **sitiō,** to thirst], thirsty.

situs, -ūs, *m.*, site, location.

sī-ve *or* **seu,** *conj.*, whether, or if; **sīve . . . sīve,** whether . . . or, either . . . or.

sōbrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sē-+ebrius,** drunk], sober.

socer, -erī, *m.*, father-in-law.

societās, -ātis, *f.* [**socius**], association, alliance.

socius, -ī, *m.*, associate, ally.

sōl, sōlis, *m.*, the sun.

soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, *semi-deponent, intr.*, be accustomed, be in the habit.

sōlitārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sōlus**], lonely, solitary.

solium, -ī, *n.*, throne.

sollemnis, -e, *adj.*, established, fixed, regular; solemn.

sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, disturb, tempt, incite.

solum, -ī, *n.*, bottom, base; ground, soil.

sōlum, *adv.* [**sōlus**], only, merely, alone.

sōlus, -a, -um, *adj.*, alone, only.

solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum, *tr.*, loosen, unbind, release; relax; *of ships, with or without* **nāvem** *or* **nāvēs,** set sail, weigh anchor.

somnus, -ī, *m.*, sleep.

sonus, -ī, *m.*, sound.

soror, -ōris, *f.*, sister.

sors, sortis, *f.*, lot, casting of lots.

Sp., *abbr. for* **Spurius.**

spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsum, *tr.*, strew, scatter, sprinkle.

spatium, -ī, *n.*, space, distance, interval.

speciēs, -ēī, *f.*, appearance, aspect.

spectāculum, -ī, *n.* [**spectō**], spectacle.

spectātor, -ōris, *m.* [**spectō**], looker-on, spectator.

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq. of* **speciō,** look], observe, watch, look at, look to.

speculātor, -ōris, *m.* [**speculor**], spy.

speculor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr. and intr.* [**specula,** watch-tower], spy, observe.

speculum, -ī, *n.* [**speciō,** look], mirror.

spēlunca, -ae, *f.*, cave, cavern.

spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētum, *tr.*, despise, scorn, spurn.

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [**spēs**], hope, expect.

spēs, speī, *f.*, hope.

spīritus, -ūs, *m.* [**spīrō,** breathe], breath; spirit, pride, ambition, arrogance.

spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**spolium**], despoil, plunder.

spolium, -ī, *n.*, skin; booty, spoil.

(**spōns, spontis**), *f.* [*compare* **spondeō,** promise], *only abl. sing.* (*usually with the possessives* **meā, tuā, suā**), of one's own accord, voluntarily.

spōnsus, -ī, *m.* [*p. part. of* **spondeō,** promise], betrothed, lover.

Spūrinna, -ae, *m.*, Spurinna, *name of a certain soothsayer.*

Spurius, -ī, *m.*, Spurius, *a Roman praenomen.*

squālor, -ōris, *m.*, squalor, filth.

stabulum, -ī, *n.*, stable, stall.

statim, *adv.* [**stō**], at once, immediately.

statiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**stō**], station, post; sentries, outposts.

Stator, -ōris, *m.* [*compare* **stō** *and* **statuō**], the Stayer, *an epithet of Jupiter.*

statua, -ae, *f.* [*compare* **status,** a standing], statue.

statuō, -ere, statuī, statūtum, *tr.* [**status,** a standing], cause to stand; resolve, determine.

statūra, -ae, *f.* [**status,** a standing], height, stature.

stella, -ae, *f.*, star.

Sthenius, -ī, *m.*, Sthenius, *a Sicilian.*

stīpendiārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**stīpendium**], tributary, paying tribute.

stīpendium, -ī, *n.* [**stips,** gift, + **pendō**], tax, tribute; pay; service, campaign.

stīpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, pack, crowd; attend, accompany.

stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus, *intr.*, stand.

strātum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* **sternō,** spread out], bed-covering, coverlet.

strepitus, -ūs, *m.* [**strepō,** make a noise], noise, uproar, confusion.

stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strictum, *tr.*, strip off; draw, unsheathe.

studeō, -ēre, studuī, —, *intr.* (*takes dative*), be devoted, apply oneself, study; favor.

studiōsē, *adv.* [**studiōsus**], eagerly, devotedly.

studiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**studium**], eager, fond, studious.

studium, -ī, *n.* [**studeō**], zeal, enthusiasm, eagerness.

stultitia, -ae, *f.* [**stultus,** foolish], folly; imbecility.

stupeō, -ēre, stupuī, —, *intr.*, be astounded, amazed, aghast.

Stymphālis, *gen.* **-idis,** *adj.*, of Stymphalus, Stymphalian.

Stymphālus, -ī, *m.*, Stymphalus, *a town of Arcadia.*

Styx, Stygis, *f.*, the Styx, *a river of the lower world.*

suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum, *tr. and intr.* [*compare* **suāvis**], advise, recommend, urge.

suāvis, -e, *adj.*, sweet, agreeable, pleasant.

sub, *prep with acc. and abl.*, under.

sub-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, put under, apply.

sub-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead up, lead away; draw up, beach.

sub-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr. and tr.*, go under; undergo, submit to; enter.

subigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [**sub+agō**], drive under, reduce, subdue.

subitō, *adv.* [**subitus**], suddenly, unexpectedly.

subitus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sudden, unexpected.

subjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr.* [**sub+jaciō**], hurl under, hurl from below.

sub-levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, hold up, support; assist, help.

sublicius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sublica,** pile, stake], of piles, resting on piles.

sublīmis, -e, *adj.*, uplifted, high; up, aloft.

sub-ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**ministrō,** provide], furnish, supply.

subsidium, -ī, *n.* [*compare* **sub** *and* **sedeō**], reënforcements, support, aid.

sub-sistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *intr.*, make a stand; oppose, resist.

sub-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, *intr.*, be at hand, be close by.

sub-trahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.*, draw from under; take away.

sub-vehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.* [**vehō,** carry], bring up, transport.

succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [**sub+cēdō**], go under; succeed, take the place of; withdraw.

successor, -ōris, *m.* [**succēdō**], successor.

successus, -ūs, *m.* [**succēdō**], success.

succīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [**sub+caedō**], cut down, fell.

sūcus, -ī, *m.*, juice, sap.

sūdor, -ōris, *m.*, perspiration.

Suēbī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Suebi, *a people of Germany comprising various tribes.*

Suēbus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Suebi, Suebic.

suī, *reflexive pron.*, of himself, herself, itself, themselves.

Sulla, -ae, *m.*, *see* **Cornēlius.**

Sullānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Sulla; *subst.*, **Sullānī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, the adherents of Sulla.

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *intr.*, be, exist.

summa, -ae, *f.* **[summus],** chief place, supremacy; sum, total.

summoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* **[sub+moveō],** drive away, remove.

summus, -a, -um, *adj.* (*superl. of* **superus**), highest; utmost, greatest; top of, highest part of; *subst.*, **summum, -ī,** *n.*, the top.

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *tr.* **[sub+emō],** take, take up.

sūmptuārius, -a, -um, *adj.* **[sūmptus],** sumptuary.

sūmptus, -ūs, *m.* **[sūmō],** expense, cost.

supellex, -lectilis, *f.*, domestic utensils, furniture.

superbē, *adv.* **[superbus],** haughtily, arrogantly.

superbia, -ae, *f.* **[superbus],** pride, haughtiness.

superbus, -a, -um, *adj.*, haughty, proud; *subst.*, **Superbus, -ī,** *m.*, the Proud, *an epithet applied to the second king Tarquin as a cognomen.*

superior, -ius, *adj.* (*comp. of* **superus**), higher; previous, preceding; superior.

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* **[superus],** defeat, overcome.

super-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, *intr.*, be left over, survive, remain.

superus, -a, -um, *adj.* **[super, above],** upper, higher; **Mare Superum,** the upper sea, *i.e.* the Adriatic.

super-vīvō, -vīvere, -vīxī, —, *intr.*, outlive, survive.

suppetō, -petere, -petīvī *or* **-petiī, -petītum,** *intr.* **[sub+petō],** be at hand, be available.

suppleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *tr.* **[sub+pleō, fill],** fill up, fill out, recruit.

suppliciter, *adv.* **[supplex, suppliant],** as suppliants, submissively.

supplicium, -ī, *n.* **[supplex, suppliant],** punishment.

suppōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* **[sub+pōnō],** put under.

supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* **[sub+portō],** convey, bring up.

suprā, *adv.* **[superus],** above, before.

suprēmus, -a, -um, *adj.* (*superl. of* **superus**), highest; last.

suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* **[sub+capiō],** undertake.

suspendō, -pendere, -pendī, -pēnsum, *tr.* **[sub+pendō],** hang up, suspend.

suspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.* **[sub+speciō, look],** suspect.

suspīciō, -ōnis, *f.* [*compare* **suspiciō**], suspicion, distrust.

suspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.* [*compare* **suspiciō**], suspect.

sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* **[sub+teneō],** hold up, sustain, withstand.

suus, -a, -um, *reflexive adj.* [*compare* **suī**], his, her, its, their, his own, her own etc.

Symplēgadēs, -um, *f.*, the Symplegades, the clashing rocks.

Syphāx, -ācis, *m.*, Syphax, *a king of Numidia.*

Syrācūsae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, Syracuse, *a city in Sicily.*

Syria, -ae, *f.*, Syria.

T

tabernāculum, -ī, *n.* **[taberna, hut],** tent.

tabula, -ae, *f.*, board, plank; tablet, list, record.

taceō, -ēre, tacuī, tacitum, *intr. and tr.*, be silent, be silent about.

tacitus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **taceō**], silent, still.

taedium, -ī, *n.* **[taedet, it wearies],** weariness, loathing.

Taenarum, -ī, *n.*, Taenarum, *a promontory of Laconia, in Greece.*

tālāris, -e, *adj.* [**tālus,** ankle], of the ankles; *subst.*, **tālāria, -ium,** *n. pl.*, winged sandals.

tālis, -e, *adj.*, such, of such a kind.

tam, *adv.*, so.

tamen, *adv.*, nevertheless, still, yet, however.

tametsī, *conj.* [*for* **tamen-etsī**], although.

tam-quam, *adv.*, as if, just as if.

Tanaquil, -īlis, *f.*, Tanaquil, *wife of Tarquinius Priscus.*

tandem, *adv.*, at length, at last, finally.

tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum, *tr.*, touch.

tantopere, *adv.* [**tantō+opere**], so greatly.

tantum, *adv.* [*acc. n. of* **tantus**], so greatly; this much, only.

tantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, so great, so large; **tantus . . . quantus,** as large . . . as; *subst.*, **tantī,** *n.*, *gen.*, of so much value, worth so much, worth while.

tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**tardus,** slow], hinder, retard.

Tarentum, -ī, *n.*, Tarentum, *a city in southern Italy, now Taranto.*

Tarpeius, -a, -um, *adj.*, Tarpeian; **mōns Tarpeius,** the Tarpeian Rock, *on the Capitoline Hill in Rome.*

Tarquinia, -ae, *f.*, Tarquinia, *sister of king Tarquinius Superbus.*

Tarquiniī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, Tarquinii, *a city of Etruria.*

Tarquinius, -ī, *m.*, Tarquinius, Tarquin: (*1*) Tarquinius Priscus, *fifth king of Rome;* (*2*) L. Tarquinius, *son of Priscus and afterwards king himself with the added name* Superbus; (*3*) Arruns Tarquinius, *son of Priscus;* (*4*) Sextus Tarquinius, *son of Superbus.*

Tartarus, -ī, *m.*, Tartarus, *the infernal regions.*

taurus, -ī, *m.*, bull.

tēctum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* **tegō**], roof, house, abode.

tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum, *tr.*, cover, protect.

tēlum, -ī, *n.*, weapon, missile.

temerārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**temere**], rash, heedless, inconsiderate.

temere, *adv.*, rashly, heedlessly.

temperantia, -ae, *f.* [**temperāns,** moderate], self-control, discretion.

temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**tempus**], restrain, abstain from, refrain from.

tempestās, -ātis, *f.* [**tempus**], storm, weather.

templum, -ī, *n.*, temple.

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*intens. of* **tendō**], try, make trial of.

tempus, temporis, *n.*, time.

tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentum, *tr.*, stretch, aim, direct.

teneō, -ēre, tenuī, —, *tr.*, hold.

tenuis, -e, *adj.*, slight, thin; shallow.

ter, *adv.* [**trēs**], three times, thrice.

tergum, -ī, *n.*, back.

terminus, -ī, *m.*, boundary, end.

ternī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [**ter**], three each.

terra, -ae, *f.*, the earth, land.

terrēnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**terra**], of earth, earthen.

terreō, -ēre, terruī, territum, *tr.*, frighten, terrify.

terribilis, -e, *adj.* [**terreō**], dreadful, terrible.

terror, -ōris, *m.* [**terreō**], terror, fright.

tertius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ter**], third.

testāmentum, -ī, *n.* [**testor,** call to witness], a (last) will.

testimōnium, -ī, *n.* [**testis**], evidence, proof.

testis, -is, *m. and f.*, witness.

tēstūdō, -dinis, *f.* [**tēsta,** shell, hard covering], tortoise; covered column (*a military term*).

Teutonī (**-ēs**), *gen.* **Teutonum**, *m. pl.*, the Teutons, *a German people.*

theātrum, -ī, *n.*, theatre.

Thēbae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, Thebes, *a Greek city, in Boeotia.*

Thēbānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Thebes, Theban; *subst.*, **Thēbānī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, the Thebans.

Thermōdōn, -ontis, *m.*, the Thermodon, *a river of Pontus, in Asia Minor.*

Thēseus, -eī, *m.*, Theseus, *an Athenian hero.*

Thessalia, -ae, *f.*, Thessaly.

Thrācia, -ae, *f.*, Thrace.

Tiberis, -is, *m.*, the Tiber, *a river of Italy.*

Tīcīnus, -ī, *m.*, the Ticinus, *a river of northern Italy, now called the Ticino.*

Tigrānēs, -is, *m.*, Tigranes, *a king of Armenia.*

Tigurīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Tigurini; *subst.*, **Tigurīnī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, the Tigurini, *a division of the Helvetii.*

timeō, -ēre, timuī, —, *tr. and intr.*, fear.

timidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**timeō**], timid, cowardly.

timor, -ōris, *m.* [**timeō**], fear.

tingō, -ere, tīnxī, tīnctum, *tr.*, dip, dye.

Tīryns, Tīrynthis, *f.*, Tiryns, *a city of Argolis, in Greece.*

toga, -ae, *f.*, toga.

togātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**toga**], clad in the toga.

tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, endure, withstand.

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, *tr.*, lift, elevate, raise; elate; remove.

Tolōsātēs, -ium, *m. pl.*, the Tolosates, the people of Tolosa, *in Gaul.*

torpeō, -ēre, —, —, *intr.*, be inactive, languish.

torvē, *adv.* [**torvus,** stern], sternly, fiercely.

tot, *indecl. adj.*, so many.

totidem, *indecl. adj.* [**tot+īdem**], just as many, the same number of.

totiēns, *adv.* [**tot**], so many times, so often.

tōtus, -a, -um, *adj.*, the whole of, all.

tractō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq. of* **trahō**], handle, treat.

trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**trāns+dō**], deliver over, surrender.

trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**trāns+dūcō**], lead across.

trāgula, -ae, *f.*, a dart, a javelin thrown by a strap.

trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum, *tr.*, draw, drag.

trājiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr. and intr.* [**trāns+jaciō**], hurl across; pierce.

trājectus, -ūs, *m.* [**trājiciō**], crossing over, passage.

trānō, -nāre, -nāvī, —, *tr. and intr.* [**trāns+nō,** swim], swim across.

tranquillitās, -ātis, *f.* [**tranquillus**], stillness; a calm (*at sea*).

tranquillus, -a, -um, *adj.*, calm, still.

trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across, on the other side of.

trāns-eō, -īre, -iī (**-īvī**), **-itum,** *tr. and intr.*, cross, go over.

trāns-figō, -figere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *tr.*, pierce, transfix.

trānsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, —, *tr. and intr.* [**trāns+saliō,** leap], leap over.

trāns-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, carry over, transport.

trāns-vehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.*, convey across, carry over.

trāns-versus, -a, -um, *adj.*, lying across, cross (*as an adjective*).

Trasumennus, -ī, *m.*, Trasumennus, *a lake in Etruria.*

Trebia, -ae, *m.*, Trebia, *a river in northern Italy.*

trēs, tria, *gen.* **trium,** *num. adj.*, three.

Trēverī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Treveri, *a people of Belgic Gaul. Compare modern Treves.*

Tribocī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Triboci, *a German tribe.*

tribūnus, -ī, *m.* [**tribus,** tribe], tribune, *title of a Roman official.*

tribuō, -ere, tribuī, tribūtum, *tr.* [**tribus,** tribe], assign, bestow.

tribūtum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of* **tribuō,** assign], tribute, payment.

trīduum, -ī, *n.* [**trēs+diēs**], a period of three days, three days.

triennium, -ī, *n.* [**trēs+annus**], a period of three years, three years' time.

trigeminus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**trēs+ geminus,** born together], born three at a birth; *subst.*, **trigeminī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, triplets.

trīgintā, *indecl. num.*, thirty.

trīnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num.* [**trēs**], three each; three-fold, triple.

triplex, -icis, *adj.* [**trēs+plicō,** fold], threefold, triple.

trīstis, -e, *adj.*, dejected, depressed, sad.

trīstitia, -ae, *f.* [**trīstis**], dejection, sadness.

triumphō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [**triumphus**], celebrate a triumph, triumph.

triumphus, -ī, *m.*, a triumphal procession, triumph.

Troja, -ae, *f.*, Troy, a city in Asia Minor.

Trojānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Troy, Trojan; *subst.*, **Trojānī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, the Trojans.

Troucillus, -ī, *m.*, *see* **Valerius.**

trucīdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, slaughter, massacre.

truncus, -ī, *m.*, trunk (*of a tree*); trunk, body.

tū, *gen.* **tuī,** *pers. pron.*, you.

tuba, -ae, *f.*, trumpet.

tueor, -ērī, tūtus sum, *tr.*, gaze upon; watch over, protect.

tugurium, -ī, *n.*, hut, cottage.

Tulingī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Tulingi, *a German people on the Rhine.*

Tullia, -ae, *f.*, Tullia, *name of a woman or girl; especially, the two daughters of King Servius Tullius.*

Tullius, -ī, *m.*, *see* **Cicerō** *and* **Servius.**

tum, *adv.*, then, at that time.

tumultus, -ūs, *m.*, confusion, disturbance, uprising.

tumulus, -ī, *m.*, mound, hillock.

Tūnēs, -ētis, *m.*, Tunes (*now Tunis*), *a town of northern Africa.*

turba, -ae, *f.*, crowd, mob; confusion, tumult.

turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**turba**], disturb, confound, throw into confusion.

turbō, turbinis, *m.* [*compare* **turbō,** disturb], whirlwind, hurricane.

Turnus, -ī, *m.*, (*1*) Turnus, *king of the Rutuli;* (*2*) Turnus Herdonius, *of Aricia.*

turpis, -e, *adj.*, unseemly, shameful, disgraceful.

turris, turris, -ium, *f.*, tower.

Tusculānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Tusculum, (*a city of Latium*).

tūtor, -ōris, *m.*, [**tueor**], defender; guardian.

tūtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **tueor**], safe; *subst.*, **tūtum, -ī,** *n.*, safety, place of safety.

tuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**tū**], your, yours (*referring to one person*).

tyrannus, -ī, *m.*, tyrant.

U

ubi, *adv.*, when, where.

Ubiī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Ubii, *a German tribe.*

ulcīscor, -ī, ultus sum, *tr.*, take vengeance on, avenge.

ūllus, -a, -um, *adj.*, any.

ulterior, -ius, *compar. adj.*, farther.

ultimus, -a, -um, *adj.* (*superl. of ulterior*), farthest, most distant, last; *subst.*, *n.*, **ad ultimum,** at last.

ultor, -ōris, *m.* [**ulcīscor**], avenger.

ultrā, *prep. with acc.*, beyond.

ultrō, *adv.*, beyond; of one's own accord, voluntarily.

umbra, -ae, *f.*, shadow.

umerus, -ī, *m.*, upper arm, shoulder.

umquam, *adv.*, ever.

ūnā, *adv.* [**ūnus**], at the same time, together, along.

unda, -ae, *f.*, wave.

unde, *adv.*, from which place, whence.

ūndecimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ūndecim,** eleven], eleventh.

ūndēvīgintī, *indecl. num.* [**ūnus+dē+vīgintī**], nineteen.

undique, *adv.*, from all parts, on all sides, all around, everywhere.

unguentum, -ī, *n.* [**ungō,** anoint], ointment.

ūniversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ūnus+versus**], all together, all.

ūnus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, one.

urbānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**urbs**], of a city, urban; *subst.*, **urbānī, -ōrum,** *m.*, *pl.*, inhabitants of a city.

urbs, urbis, -ium, *f.*, city.

urgeō, -ēre, ursī, —, *tr.*, press, press hard, urge, distress.

ūrō, -ere, ussī, ustum, *tr.*, burn.

usquam, *adv.*, any place, anywhere.

usque, *adv.*, all the way, even, all the time, until.

ūsūrpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, make use of, use.

ūsus, -ūs, *m.* [**ūtor**], use; practice, experience.

ut, *adv. and conj.; as adv.*, as, when; *as conj.*, that, in order that, so that.

ūter, ūtris, *m.*, a vessel of skin, leather bottle.

uter, -tra, -trum, *pron.*, which (of two).

uterque, utraque, utrumque, *pron.*, each (of two).

ūtilis, -e, *adj.* [**ūtor**], useful, expedient.

utinam, *adv.* [**utī** (=**ut**)+**nam**], oh that, I wish that, would that.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *intr.*, use, make use of, enjoy.

utrimque, *adv.* [**uterque**], on both sides.

utrum, *adv.* [*neut. of* **uter**], whether, *used in double indirect questions.*

uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife.

V

vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, be empty, be unoccupied.

vacuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**vacō**], vacant, empty.

vadum, -ī, *n.*, ford, shallow.

vae, *interj.*, woe!

vāgītus, -ūs, *m.* [**vāgiō,** to cry], wailing, crying.

vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.* [**vagus,** strolling], range, rove.

valeō, -ēre, valuī, valitūrus, *intr.*, be strong, have power, be valid.

Valerius, -ī, *m.;* (*1*) C. Valerius Troucillus, *a Gallic leader;* C. Valerius Procillus, *a Gallic friend of Julius Caesar.*

validus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**valeō**], strong.

vallēs, vallis, -ium, *f.*, valley.

vāllum, -ī, *n.* [**vāllus,** stake], rampart, wall.

Vangionēs, -um, *m. pl.*, the Vangiones, *a German tribe.*

varius, -a, -um, *adj.*, various, different.

vās, vasis, *n.*, vessel, utensil.

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**vāstus,** waste, desert], lay waste.

vāticinātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**vāticinor,** foretell], prophecy.

-ve, *enclitic conj.*, or.

vectīgal, -ālis, *n.*, revenue, tax.

vegetus, -a, -um, *adj.*, lively, animated.

vehementer, *adv.* [**vehemēns,** vehement, violent], violently; very much, greatly.

vehō, -ere, vexī, vectum, *tr.*, bear, carry, bring.

Veiēns, *gen.* **-entis,** *adj.*, of Veii, Veientian; *subst.*, **Veientēs, -ium,** *m. pl.*, the people of Veii, the Veientians.

Veiī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, Veii, *a city of Etruria not far from Rome.*

vellus, velleris, *n.*, fleece, pelt.

vēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**vēlum,** veil], cover, envelop, veil.

vēlōciter, *adv.* [**vēlōx**], swiftly.

vēlōx, *gen.* **-ōcis,** *adj.*, swift, speedy.

vēnātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**vēnor**], hunting, the chase.

vēndō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**vēnum,** sale, +**dō**], sell.

venēnum, -ī, *n.*, drug, poison.

venerātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**veneror,** reverence], deep respect, reverence.

venia, -ae, *f.*, pardon.

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum, *intr.*, come.

vēnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.*, hunt.

venter, -tris, *m.*, belly.

ventus, -ī, *m.*, wind.

Verbigenus, -ī, *m.*, Verbigenus, *a division of the Helvetii.*

verbum, -ī, *n.*, word.

vērē, *adv.* [**vērus**], truly.

verēcundia, -ae, *f.* [*compare* **vereor**], shame, sense of shame.

vereor, -ērī, veritus sum, *tr.*, fear.

vergō, -ere, —, —, *intr.*, be inclined, slope.

vergobretus, -ī, *m.*, vergobret, *title of the chief magistrate of the Haedui.*

vērō, *adv.* [**vērus**], in fact, certainly; but in fact, however.

versor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.* [*dep., and freq. of* **vertō**], occupy oneself, engage, conduct oneself.

versus, -ūs, *m.* [**vertō**], line; verse.

vertō, -ere, vertī, versum, *tr.*, turn.

vērus, -a, -um, *adj.*, true.

vēscor, -ī, —, —, *intr.*, feed upon.

Vesontiō, -ōnis, *m.*, Vesontio, *a city of the Sequani, now Besançon.*

vesper, -erī, *m.*, evening.

Vesta, -ae, *f.*, Vesta, *Roman goddess of the hearth.*

Vestālis, -e, *adj.*, of Vesta, Vestal; *subst.*, *f.*, a priestess of Vesta, a vestal virgin.

vester, vestra, vestrum, *adj.* [**vōs**], your, yours (*referring to more than one person*).

vestibulum, -ī, *n.*, entrance, vestibule.

vestīgium, -ī, *n.*, footstep, track.

vestis, -is, *f.*, garment, clothing.

vestītus, -ūs, *m.* [**vestiō,** to clothe], clothing.

veterānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**vetus**], veteran.

vetō, -āre, vetuī, vetitum, *tr.*, forbid.

vetus, *gen.* **veteris,** *adj.*, old.

vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, harass.

via, -ae, *f.*, road, street, way.

viātor, -ōris, *m.* [**via**], traveller.

vīcīnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**vīcus**], neighboring.

vicis, *f. gen.* (*no nom.*), change; **in vicem,** in turn.

victima, -ae, *f.*, victim (*for sacrifice*).

victor, -ōris, *m.* [**vincō**], victor, conqueror; *as adj.*, victorious.

victōria, -ae, *f.* [**victor**], victory.

vīctus, -ūs, *m.* [**vīvō**], means of living, provisions; mode of living.

vīcus, -ī, *m.*, quarter, street; village.

videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum, *tr.*, see.

videor, -ērī, vīsus sum, *intr.* [*pass. of* **videō**], seem, appear.

vigilantia, -ae, *f.* [**vigilāns,** watchful], watchfulness, vigilance.

vigilia, -ae, *f.* [**vigil,** awake], a watching; a watch (*as a division of time*).

vīgintī, *indecl. num.*, twenty.

vīlicus, -ī, *m.* [**vīlla**], steward, bailiff.

vīlla, -ae, *f.*, villa, country house.

vīminālis, -e, *adj.* [**vīmen,** osier, willow], of osier; **Vīminālis Collis,** the Viminal Hill, *in Rome.*

vinciō, -īre, vīnxī, vīnctum, *tr.*, bind, fasten.

vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum, *tr.*, conquer, defeat.

vinculum, -ī, *n.* [**vinciō**], bond, fetter.

vīnum, -ī, *n.*, wine.

violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, violate.

vir, virī, *m.*, man, a male person.

virgō, virginis, *f.*, young woman, maiden, virgin.

virītim, *adv.* [**vir**], man by man, to each man.

virtūs, -ūtis, *f.* [**vir**], manliness, courage, bravery, virtue.

vīs (*see App.* **3** *c*), *f.*, force, violence; *pl.*, strength.

vīsō, -ere, vīsī, vīsum, *tr.* [*freq. of* **videō**], go to see, visit.

vīta, -ae, *f.*, life.

vitium, -ī, *n.*, fault, vice.

vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, avoid.

vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum, *intr.*, live.

vīvus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**vīvō**], living, alive.

vix, *adv.*, scarcely, with difficulty.

Vocciō, -ōnis, *m.*, Voccio, *king of Noricum.*

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**vōx**], call, summon.

Vocontiī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Vocontii, *an Alpine Gallic tribe.*

Volcānus, -ī, *m.*, Vulcan, *the god of fire.*

volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, fly.

volō, velle, voluī, *tr.*, wish, be willing.

Volscī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Volscī, *a people of Latium.*

volucris, -is, *f.* [**volucer,** flying], bird.

voluntārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**voluntās**], voluntary; *subst.*, **voluntāriī, -ōrum,** *m. pl.*, volunteers.

voluntās, -ātis, *f.* [**volō,** wish], wish, approval, sanction, good-will.

voluptās, -ātis, *f.*, pleasure, enjoyment.

vōs, *pl. of* **tū,** you.

vorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, devour.

voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtum, *tr.*, vow, promise solemnly.

vōx, vōcis, *f.* voice, cry, utterance, word.

vulgāris, -e, *adj.* [**vulgus**], ordinary, common.

vulgō, *adv.* [**vulgus**], generally, everywhere.

vulgus, -ī, *n.*, the multitude, the public.

vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**vulnus**], wound.

vulnus, vulneris, *n.*, wound.

vultur, vulturis, *m.*, vulture.

vultus, -ūs, *m.*, face, features, expression.

X

Xanthippus, -ī, *m.*, Xanthippus, *a Lacedaemonian general.*

Z

Zama, -ae, *f.*, Zama, *a town of Numidia.*

Zētēs, -ae, *m.*, Zetes, *one of the Argonauts.*

INDEX

This index refers to the syntactical material tó be found in the Lessons of this book, pp. 57-125, in the Notes to the selections for reading, and in the Grammatical Appendix. In the case of the Notes references are made only to a few typical occurrences of the principle involved. Numerals refer to section numbers in the Appendix, to line numbers in the Perseus, Hercules, and The Argonauts, to section and line in the stories from Roman History, and to chapter and line in Caesar.